

# Manual for FOMA® SH901iS 705.5



Table of Contents/ Precautions

Before Using the FOMA Terminal

Calling/Receiving

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/ Light Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode

Mail

i-αppli

i-motion

i-mode FeliCa Mobile Wallet

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

> Other Useful Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Text Input

Appendix

Easy Search/Index/ Quick Manual



# **Apology and Correction**

The "Manual for FOMA SH901iS" contains an error. We apologize for any inconveniences. Please read the applicable part of the text as shown below.

Corresponding text	Incorrect	Correct
P.605		
"Main	Approximately 148 g	Approximately 150 g
Specification"	(with battery pack installed)	(with battery pack installed)
Weight		

# **DoCoMo W-CDMA System**

#### Thank you for purchasing the FOMA SH901iS.

Make sure to thoroughly read this manual and the manuals for accessories before and during use to ensure proper operation. If any of the contents in this manual are unclear, please contact number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual. The FOMA SH901iS is designed to make your everyday life more convenient. Careful use will ensure a long service life.

### **Using the FOMA Terminal**

- Because it relies on radio signals, the FOMA terminal cannot be used in places with no signal (such as tunnels, underground, or in buildings), in places with a weak signal or outside the FOMA service area. There may be times when the terminal cannot be used in the upper floors of a building even with no obstructions in sight. There may also be times when the signal is strong and you are not moving but the call is interrupted.
- Make sure not to disturb others when using in public places, places with many people or quiet places.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses electrical signals, it is possible for a third party to listen in on a conversation. However, the W-CDMA system automatically applies privacy to every call, a third party that tries to listen in only hears static.
- The FOMA terminal converts conversations into a digital signal and sends it to the other party over the
  radio. If the signal cannot be reconverted properly by such as moving to an area with a weak signal, the
  voice may not be heard correctly.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be liable for any such damage or loss.
  - Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, Inc.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

### **Using this Manual**

Use this manual to find explanations of operations or when using the FOMA terminal for the first time. There are several ways to find information in this manual.

#### Table of contents (PPP. 2)

The table of contents is divided into chapters based on function. Find chapters by function.

#### Index (🎏 P. 612)

Search quickly by looking up the function name.

#### Indexed pages ( C Cover)

Find chapters by flipping through this manual and looking at the sides of pages.

The beginning of each chapter has a listing of the contents.

#### Features (摩P. 4)

What can the FOMA terminal do? How is it different from other mobile phones? Read the features to find out answers to these types of questions.

#### Easy search (PPP P. 610)

Frequently used functions are found here. Search for functions you want to find out about.

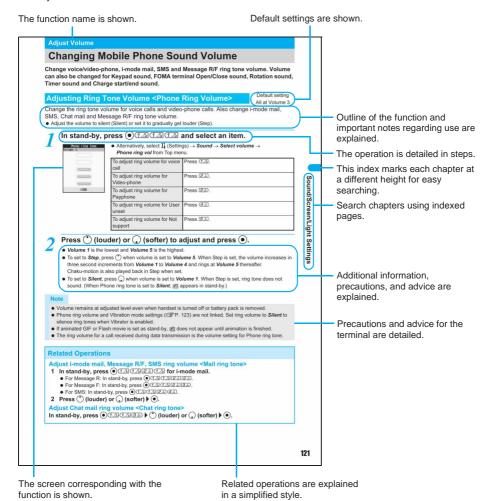
#### Quick manual (🎏 P. 620)

Frequently used functions are described in the Quick manual. Tear out the Quick manual to keep as reference when away from home.

- Note that "FOMA SH901iS" is referred to as the "FOMA terminal" in this manual.
- This manual describes functions using the miniSD Memory Card. Please note that miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately (TP P. 381 for details).
- Reproduction of this manual in part or in whole is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual may change without warning.

### **Layout of Manual**

The layout of this manual is as illustrated below.



#### **Note**

- Refer to P. 28 for key notations used in this manual.
- Refer to "Menu List" on P. 562 to P. 568 for default settings.
- This manual refers to "miniSD Memory Card" as "miniSD Memory Card" or "miniSD".
- This manual refers to "Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli with IC-card function" as "Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli".

#### Viewing the display

- The explanations in this manual are based on default settings. The actual screens may differ depending on settings changed after purchase.
- When Flash movies and icons featuring animation effects are displayed, screens may differ from those described in this manual.

# **Table of Contents**

Structure of this Manual
Before Using the FOMA Terminal 23
Component Names and Functions, Viewing the Display, Making Menu Selections, Supportbook, FOMA Card, Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack, Charging the Mobile Phone, Battery level, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Initial Settings, Date Settings, Notify Caller ID, Own Number
Calling/Receiving51
Making Calls, Switching from Voice Call to Video-phone, Redial, Add 186/184, Pause Dial, WORLD CALL, Sub Address, Reconnect Control, Noise Reduction, Hands-free, Answering Calls, Any Key Answer, Close Operation, Received Calls, Earpiece Volume, On Hold, On Hold Tone, Hold Tone, Drive Mode, Missed Calls, Record Message, Quick Message, Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos
Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls77
Using Video-phone, Making Video-phone Calls, Receiving Video-phone Calls, Chara-den, Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party, Video-phone Set, Indicate V-phone, Picture Memo
Phonebook 95
Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal, Add to Phonebook, Add to FOMA Card Phonebook, Saving from Redials and Received Calls, Group Settings, Search Phonebook, Edit Entries, Delete Entries, Set Secret, 2-touch Dialing
Sound/Screen/Light Settings 117
Sound Settings, Adjust Volume, Vibrator, Quality Alarm, Mail Ring Duration, Ring Output, Manner Mode, Original Manner Mode, Stand-by Display, Call/Receive Display, Send/Receive Display, Picture Call Set, Power Saver Set, User Set, Personalize, Themes, Called LED, Font Style
Security Settings143
FOMA Terminal Security Code, Change Security Code, FOMA Card (UIM) Settings, Disabling PIN Lock, Lock Functions, All Lock, Self Mode, PIM Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, IC-card Lock, Key Guard, Show Call/Received, Secret Mode, Accept Calls, Reject Calls, Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure, Set Mute Seconds, Reject Unknown, Other Security Settings
Camera
Before Using the Camera, Shoot Still Picture, Shoot Movie, Change Settings for Shooting, Change Camera Settings, Send Message, Bar Code Reader, Character Reader (OCR)
i-mode
i-mode, View Sites, Site Layout and Operation, マイメニュー (My Menu), Change i-mode Password, Internet Access, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Save Image, i-melody, Download PDF Files from Sites, Download Icons Collectively, Download Dictionary, Chara-den Download, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To, Setting i-mode, Message R/F, Receive Message R/F, Check New Message, View Message R/F, Using Certificates
Mail
The FOMA Terminal Mail Function, i-mode Mail, Mail Menu, Create/Send i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Using and Sending a Template, Attachments, Save i-mode Mail, Auto Receive, Receive Option, Check New Message, Reply i-mode Mail, Forward i-mode Mail, Add to Phonebook, Receive Image Mail, Receive i-motion Mail, Check File, Check Message Image, Save Template, Outbox/Inbox, Received/Sent Messages History, Mail

Setting, Create/Send Chat Mail, Create/Send SMS, Receive SMS, SMS Settings, Saving SMS to FOMA Card,

Delete SMS

i-αppli309
i-αppli, i-αppliDX, Download, Run i-αppli, Auto Start, i-αppli To Function, i-αppli Stand-by, Managing i-αppli, Using Various i-αppli Functions
i-motion
i-motion, Download i-motion, Automatic Replay, i-motion Type
i-mode FeliCa Mobile Wallet
Mobile Wallet(おサイフケータイ)
Displaying/Editing/Managing Data341
Image Viewer, Edit Image, Video Player, Edit Movie, Chara-den Player, Melody Player, miniSD Memory Card, Copy to miniSD, Backup/Restore, View miniSD Data, Copy to Main, Managing miniSD Memory Card, Managing Data, Ir Exchange, Sending and Receiving Data Individually, Sending and Receiving All Data Items, Using Ir Exchange with i-αppli Software, Infrared Remote Control, Voice Recorder, PDF Viewer, Managing PDF Files, Document Viewer, Managing Documents, Check File, BookReader, Using the Information in Book/Dictionary, Character Reader, Managing Book/Dictionary, Print Setting (DPOF)
Other Useful Functions
Check Settings, Multiaccess, Assistant View, Auto Power ON, Auto Power OFF, Timer, Alarm, ToDo Lists, Save Schedule, Record Video, Shortcut Menu, Owner Information, Voice Memo (During Call)/Voice Memo (Stand-by), Calculator, Money Calculator, Talk Time/Charge, Text Memo, AV Output, Earphone/Microphone with Switch, Auto Answer Set, Reset Settings, Delete User Data
Network Services
Network Services from the FOMA Terminal, Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Barring Service, Notify Caller ID Service, Caller ID Request Service, Dual Network Service, English Guidance, Service Number, Arrival Call Act, Set Arrival Act, Remote Control, Multi Number (Not Yet Available), Additional Services (USSD)
Data Communication
Data Communication, General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication, Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC, Installing the Communication Setting File, Communication Settings with/without the FOMA PC Setup Software, FirstPass PC Software, Communication Settings, Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX), AT Command List
Text Input
Text Input, 5-touch, Save Phrases, Copy Characters, Kuten Code Input, Register Words (User Dictionary), Clear Memory Terms, Download Dictionary, Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess, 2-touch
Appendix561
Menu List, Dial Key Assignments (5-touch), Dial Key Assignments (2-touch), Symbol/Special Character List, Phrase List, JIS Kuten Code List, Using the Calculator, Multiaccess Combinations, Assistant View Combinations, Services, Options and Accessories, Using with External Devices, Data Link Software, Playing i-motion Created with PC on the FOMA Terminal, Troubleshooting, List of Error Messages, Warranty and After-sales Services, Software Update, Scanning Function, Main Specifications, Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)
Easy Search/Index/Quick Manual
Easy search, Index, Quick Manual

### Features of the FOMA SH901iS

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as a global standard for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

#### The World of i-mode

Use the i-mode terminal display to access i-mode, an online service used to access useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode supported sites, or easily send and receive e-mail.

#### i-mode (monthly fees apply)

View screens of up to 100 KB. Enjoy more detailed information than before. © P. 202

#### i-shot compatible P. 252

#### i-motion mail

Attach movies (shot with the built-in camera) or i-motion (downloaded from sites or the Internet) to i-mode mail. P. 275

#### Large Flash movies compatible

Large Flash movies compatible. Enjoy richer expressions than before. Set Flash movies as the stand-by display. 

P. 212

#### i-mode mail

Attach still pictures and movies up to 500 KB.

#### i-motion compatible

Download and enjoy images and music from sites or the Internet. Set i-motion as Chaku-motion to use as ring tone or receive display. P. 333

#### Chat mail compatible P. 296

# Large i- $\alpha$ ppli and i- $\alpha$ ppliDX compatible

Download i- $\alpha$ ppli from sites to play games and automatically update stock prices and weather information. With i- $\alpha$ ppliDX, use i- $\alpha$ ppli in conjunction with phonebook or mail information in the i-mode terminal.  $\mathcal{E}$  P. 204

#### **Face-to-face Communication**

#### Video-phone

Talk with people far away while viewing images of them. Play the other person's voice through the speaker or switch to the main camera to show your surroundings. Also, switch from a normal voice call to Video-phone without disconnecting the call.

#### **Deco-mail**

#### **Deco-mail compatible**

Create and send expressive mail by adding text color, changing character size or background color, or inserting Deco-mail pictures or images shot with the built-in camera. Easily make Deco-mail by using received Deco-mail or Deco-mail downloaded from a site as a template. P. 258

#### Chara-den compatible

When using Video-phone, select a downloaded character or a character preset in the handset as a substitute image in place of the user's image. Press keys to change the character's expressions or movements. TPP. 205. P. 371

#### **Security Settings**

There are various lock functions and security settings for the FOMA terminal.

- Lock functions P. 149
- Secret mode P. 156
- PIM lock P. 153
- Show call/received P. 155

#### **Numerous Network Services**

- Dual Network Service (monthly fees apply)
   P. 492
- Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply)
   P. 484
- Call Waiting Service (monthly fees apply)
   P. 487
- SMS (Short Message) P. 301
- Call Forwarding Service P. 488

### 3.16 Million Effective Pixel Camera and High-definition Display

#### 3.16 million effective pixel CCD camera

(Recorded pixels: 3.15 million (main camera), 0.1 million (sub camera))

Shoot and play back still pictures and movies using auto-focus with the built-in digital camera. Multishot and shooting with frames are also available. Use the CCD camera (3.16 million effective pixels) or the CMOS sub camera (110,000 effective pixels) to shoot images of yourself or to use Video-phone.

# 2.4 inch QVGA High-definition Large Display LCD

Display shot still pictures, movies and characters expressively.

#### A Wide Array of Functions

#### i-mode FeliCa: Mobile Wallet (IC-card)

Download Mobile Wallet compatible i- $\alpha$ ppli to deposit electronic money from sites to the FOMA terminal IC-card and check your balance and usage history. Use "Mobile Wallet" to turn your mobile phone into a convenient tool using it as an airline ticket, point card, and more.  $\mathcal{E}$  P. 338

# Viewing still images and movies on TV screen (AV output) and recording video (AV input)

Use a flat-plug AV cable (sold separately) to view Video-phone, PDF viewer or Document viewer files, and images shot with the camera on a TV screen. Connect to a TV or VCR and record TV programs and other video to a miniSD Memory Card.

#### Scan text or bar codes

Scan printed URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers and bar codes (JAN/QR codes) with camera. Save scanned text in phonebook or play scanned images and melodies. Fig. P. 195, P. 198

# Infrared exchange/Infrared remote control

Data can be exchanged between FOMA terminals or with other infrared compatible devices using the Infrared exchange function. Additionally, use with devices that are TV Ir remote control compatible.

#### Zoom menu

Perform basic phone, mail, camera and i-mode operations and settings with larger characters in Zoom menu. 

P. 35

#### **Multiaccess**

Use multiple data transmissions, such as voice calls and some packet transmissions (receiving i-mode mail or transmitting data with PCs), simultaneously.

# 3D sound compatible

Enjoy playing deep and vibrant 3D sound compatible melodies through the stereo speakers. © P. 123

#### 3D×3D

Experience realistic racing games with improved 3D graphics and sound. P. 123

# Melodies (64 tones: PCM Sound Source)

Also use downloaded melodies and voices (sound effects) as the ring tone.  $\ensuremath{\, \boxtimes \hspace*{-.5em} P \!}{}^{\, P \!}{}_{\, 118}$ 

#### Supportbook

Supportbook (preset) is a simple operations guide on the FOMA terminal. Use this function when unsure of operations. © P. 36, P. 422

#### **Assistant View**

Check or copy other data during voice call and other functions. Check schedule or phonebook during voice call or use mail address or phone number from phonebook while composing message.

#### **BookReader**

Purchase e-book/dictionaries (such as novels, picture books, and English-Japanese dictionaries) and save to the miniSD Memory Card. Read or search through them with the FOMA terminal.

#### **Key operations in viewer position**

Use the side Multi-guide key and clear key for operations in the same way as in normal position. (Operations differ slightly.) P. 27, P. 29

# **Expanded Functionality with PCs**

#### **Document viewer**

Save Word, Excel, and PowerPoint documents to the miniSD Memory Card for portable accessibility. With smooth enlarging/reduction of the document, contents may be easily read on the handset's high-definition large LCD display. P. 413

#### miniSD Memory Card compatible

FOMA terminal supports compact miniSD Memory Cards. Exchange data between the FOMA terminal and miniSD Memory Cards, or use miniSD Memory Card with a PC. Save movies directly to the miniSD Memory Card to shoot and play long movie files. Save movie or music data created on an external device to the miniSD Memory Card and play back on the FOMA terminal. (Depending on the condition, some files may not be played back.) © P. 1777, P. 381, P. 585

#### **PDF** viewer

View PDF documents. Download useful information such as maps, catalogs, or schedules to easily browse with the i-mode terminal when on the go.

# Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH901iS

The functions of the FOMA SH901iS are described below.

### Video-phone

**☞ P. 78** 

# Face-to-face communication using the sub camera

Have conversations while looking at each other's faces



#### Chara-den

Enjoy communication even more during video-phone calls



# Home video-phone P. 474

View video-phone image on TV screen to let many people join.



# Shoot live movies with the main camera

Use main camera and microphone to send image + voice of surroundings in real time.



### Vanity mirror

Before using the video-phone, view own image in FOMA terminal display. Useful for checking and fixing appearance.

Use Vanity mirror when making a video-phone call.



### **PDF Viewer/Document Viewer**

### PDF viewer @P. 405

View PDF documents on the FOMA terminal downloaded from i-mode sites or saved on miniSD Memory Cards.



# Document viewer P. 413

View Word, Excel, PowerPoint, text and image files (JPEG, GIF, PNG, BMP) saved in the miniSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal.



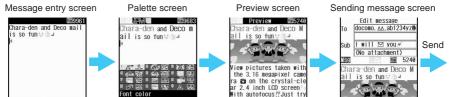




### **Deco-mail**



Easily make Deco-mail from i-mode mail by changing text size/background color or pasting images.



# **Desktop Style**

Orario Ouk Como



OME - DE

Set the FOMA terminal on a desk in desktop style and view i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites or recorded TV programs.



# Power Saver Set/ User Set

**☞ P. 132** 

Turn on Power saver mode and set display with User settings to conserve battery power and lengthen period of use.

# **AV Exchange**

Olumn.

# Recording from TV or VCR P. 455

Use a flat-plug AV cable (sold separately) to record from TV or VCR to a miniSD Memory Card. Enjoy viewing recorded video on the FOMA terminal. Use Program or i-αppli to set the recording time.

OUK : 600

■ Viewing images on a TV screen

© P. 474

Use a flat-plug AV cable (sold separately) to view Videophone, My picture, i-motion, and Document viewer images on a TV screen for all to enjoy. Also play still pictures as a slide show.



Sound extension: 3D sound, stereo twin speaker compatible P. 123

Enjoy i-αppli and melodies with dynamic stereo sound.

# G-GUIDE Program Schedule Remote Control

# Schedule Remote Control P. 317 or "FOMA i-mode User's Manual"

This convenient application combines a TV program schedule with an AV remote control. Download EPG (electronic program guide) from the server and easily get TV program information anywhere, anytime. Use the remote control for TVs, VCRs, and DVD players.



Look up G-Code®. Save favorite programs in Schedule list and program them into a schedule. Set an alarm to sound before the program starts.



Search programs using keywords such as program genre or TV personality name.

\* The screens shown are only examples. Actual screens may differ. Channels for your area will be shown.

# Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed)

- Before use, read these Safety Precautions carefully and use your FOMA properly.
   Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.

The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury or damage that may occur if information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used improperly.

<b>⚠</b> Danger	This symbol indicates that "death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use."	
<b>⚠ Warning</b>	This symbol indicates that "death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use."	
This symbol indicates that "bodily injury and/or property damage may from improper use."		

#### The following symbols indicate specific directions.

Don't	Indicates a prohibited action.		
No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble the device.	No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water or get it wet.
No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.		

Instruction	Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed).	
Unplug	Indicates that the power cord must be unplugged from the power outlet.	

# Safety Precautions are explained in the following six sections.

•	•	•	
<ul><li>Handling the FOMA</li></ul>	Terminal, Battery Pack, ar	nd Adapters (Chargers)	(General) P. 9
<ul><li>Handling the FOMA</li></ul>	Terminal		P. 10
<ul><li>Handling the Batter</li></ul>	y Pack		P. 12
<ul> <li>Handling the Adapte</li> </ul>	ers (Chargers)		P. 14
<ul><li>Handling Mobile Ph</li></ul>	ones Near Electronic Medic	cal Equipment	P. 16
<ul> <li>Handling the FOMA</li> </ul>	Card		P. 17

# Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, and Adapters (Chargers) (General)

# **A** Danger

Use only the battery packs and adapters (chargers) specified by the DoCoMo group companies for use with the FOMA terminal.



The use of devices other than those specified may result in the malfunction of the FOMA terminal or battery pack. Leaking, overheating, exploding or fire may occur.

- Battery pack SH05
- Desktop holder SH04
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01

For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo retailer.

Do not get the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapters (chargers) wet.



Contact with water, pet urine, and other liquids may cause overheating, electric shock, fire or malfunctions. Be attentive to where and how you use the handset.

# **Warning**

Make sure to turn off the mobile phone in locations such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated. In addition, do not recharge the battery. It may cause a gas explosion or fire.



To use Osaifu-Keitai in locations such as gas stations, make sure to turn off the power in advance. (If the IC card lock is set, disable the lock before turning off the power.)

Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or catch fire.

Do not allow conductive materials (such as metal objects and pencil lead) to come into contact with the charger terminal or external device terminal. In addition, do not insert such objects.



The battery pack may short-circuit and cause a fire or malfunction.

If the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) emit smoke or an unusual odor, or is damaged, immediately perform the following.



- 1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.
- 2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
- 3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continued use (charging) may result in a fire or other accident.

After removing the battery pack, contact a DoCoMo retailer.

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapters (chargers) inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or pressure cookers.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal and adapters (chargers) may overheat, emit smoke or catch fire. The internal circuitry may also be damaged.

# **⚠** Caution

Keep the FOMA out of the reach of young children.



A small child may swallow or suffer other bodily injury.

er C

Do not store the FOMA in locations that are subject to dust, humidity, or high temperatures.



May cause a malfunction.

If being used by a child, have a guardian teach them the proper handling procedures. In addition, check that the child is using the FOMA as directed.



May result in bodily injury.

Instruction

Do not leave the FOMA on unstable surfaces, such as on a wobbling table or sloped surface.



The FOMA may fall and cause injury or be damaged.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or disfigure other devices and cause damage. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.

### **Handling the FOMA Terminal**

# **Marning**

# Never use the FOMA while driving a motor



May interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop your vehicle in a safe place or activate Drive mode. In accordance with changes in the Road Traffic Law, drivers using handsets while driving are subject to criminal punishment as of November 1, 2004.

#### Do not attempt to disassemble or modify.



May cause accidents such as fires. bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction.

#### Do not connect to the Desktop holder, AC adapter or DC adapter while the FOMA is wet.



May cause a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.

Turn off the FOMA in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.



The FOMA may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. In addition, make sure that the Auto power ON function is set to OFF before turning the FOMA OFF.

Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. In addition, actions such as speaking on a mobile phone aboard aircraft are prohibited and may be punishable by law.

Turn the FOMA terminal off near highprecision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals.



The FOMA may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment. Take particular care with the

# following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverterdefibrillators, or other electronic medical equipment. Fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverterdefibrillator or other medical equipment. contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by signals.

If you are using electronic medical equipment, do not put the FOMA in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.



Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction. Do not look directly at the illuminated picture light, or point it directly into someone's eyes.



May damage eyesight. May also cause momentary sight loss or startle someone and cause an accident.

If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring tone volume for incoming calls.



Various settings may have effects on your heart.

Do not aim the Ir (Infrared) data port towards the eyes.



May cause eye injury. In addition, do not aim or direct the Ir data port towards another Ir device as this may cause the device to malfunction.

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal under high temperatures, such as near an open flame or heating appliance.



May cause overheating, accidents such as igniting of fire, or malfunction.

Do not point the illuminated light directly at someone's eyes.



May damage eyesight. May also cause momentary sight loss or startle someone and cause an accident.

Do not place the FOMA terminal on the dashboard or near the airbag where it could interfere with the airbag inflating.



If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

# **⚠** Caution

Using the FOMA in an automobile may sometimes affect the electronic equipment in some vehicle models.



In such cases, stop using the FOMA, as this could impede safe driving.

Never place a magnetic card near or in the FOMA terminal.



The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its strap, etc.



The FOMA may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA or other property.

When closing the FOMA terminal, do not close it on the strap or card, etc.



May cause damage to the display.

Do not leave the internal camera lens exposed to direct sunlight or other powerful light source for a long period of time.



The lens may focus the beam, causing a fire or malfunction.

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA outdoors, immediately turn it off and move to a safe location.



There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Before use, confirm that there are no foreign objects attached to the sides of the FOMA terminal or on the surface of the display.



Push-pins or thumbtacks attached to the magnet in the side speakers or speakers below the display may cause unexpected injuries. Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material, or other foreign objects to enter the FOMA card port on the FOMA terminal.



May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

Use of the FOMA may cause skin irritations such as itchiness, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA and seek medical treatment.



External connector terminal, charger terminal, sections around the main camera and the area inside the miniSD Memory Card slot are metal (chrome-plated). Additionally, the back of the FOMA terminal uses an aluminum panel.

Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material, or other foreign objects to enter the miniSD Memory Card slot on the FOMA terminal.



May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

# **Handling the Battery Pack**

Check the type of battery using the information printed on the battery pack label.

Message	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

# **⚠** Danger

Do not disassemble or modify the battery pack. In addition, do not solder directly to the FOMA.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not use or charge batteries that are wet with water, rain, seawater, pet urine, etc.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not use or leave the battery pack in places where it is exposed to high temperatures, such as near an open flame or heating appliance.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not touch terminals with metallic objects such as wires. In addition, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not puncture, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

If you are having difficulty fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing the correct direction before you attach it.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

If the battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.



Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.

# **Warning**

If you notice anything unusual about the battery pack, such as unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately remove it from the FOMA terminal and do not use it.



The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

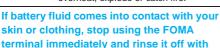
If the battery pack is not fully charged after

the specified time has elapsed, stop



Continued use of the faulty battery pack may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

> Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperatures, such as in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.





The battery pack may leak, overheat or



clean water.

Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop use and move it away as far as possible from any flame or fire.



The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

Instruction

# 

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.



May cause fires and environmental damage. Place tape over the terminals to insulate unnecessary battery packs, and take them to a DoCoMo retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area.

# **Handling the Adapters (Chargers)**

# **Marning**

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when connected to a power outlet or cigarette lighter. Also, take care not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.



The FOMA terminal may detach, overheat, or cause a fire or malfunction.

May result in a fire, electric shock, equipment malfunction or bodily injury.

Never use the adapters (chargers) in places where it is likely to get wet from water, rain, seawater, pet urine, etc.



locations such as a bathroom.

No liquids

May cause accidents such as overheating or catching fire or malfunction (insufficient charging).

May result in electric shock.

Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong

Never use the AC adapter, desktop holder

Do not place the charger and desktop

holder on an unstable surface during

charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger

or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.

Do not plug too many appliances into a single socket.



May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

force or impacts. Don't

May cause bodily injury, electric shock, or overheating due to adapters (chargers) damage.

To prevent fires, do not charge in places where flammable gases accumulate.



May cause explosions or fires.

Do not leave the cord of the adapters (chargers) near heating appliances.



May melt the cord insulation, causing a fire or electric shock

Do not handle the cord and plug of the adapters (chargers) with wet hands.



May result in electric shock.

Do not touch the FOMA terminal or adapters (chargers) if you hear thunder.



There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Do not use if the adapter's (charger's) cord or power cord is damaged.



May cause electric shock, overheating,

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify.



May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions

Always use the specified power supply and voltage.



Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction.

When using overseas, use the overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01.

AC adapter: AC100V (To be connected only to domestic 100V outlets) DC adapter: DC12V/24V (for negative grounded vehicles only)

If the fuse in the DC adapter or in-car adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.



Instruction

Using the incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.

#### Wipe off any dust on the plug.



May cause a fire.

when not using for a long time.



May cause an electric shock, equipment malfunction, or fire.

Unplug the power cord from the outlet

# **Warning**

Should water or pet urine enter the adapters (chargers), remove the plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter immediately.



May cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.

The DC adapter and in-car adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. Never use these adapters in positively grounded vehicles.



May cause a fire.

If the cigarette lighter socket has foreign objects in it, such as ash, the plug may overheat due to poor contact. Always clean before use.



May cause electric shock, shortcircuiting or fire. When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.



May cause electric shock, shortcircuiting or fire.

# **A** Caution

Use the adapters (chargers) between temperatures of 5°C to 35°C.



Use in temperatures not in this range may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. In addition, the battery pack may suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapters (chargers).



May result in electric shock.

Do not use the adapters (chargers) if the plug in the power outlet or the cigarette lighter socket is loose, or when the power plug is hot.



Continued use may result in a fire or electric shock.

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapters (chargers) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull by the cord or power cord.



Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

Do not charge the battery pack if it is wet.



May cause the battery pack to overheat, catch fire or explode.

Do not place heavy objects on the power cords for the adapters (chargers).



May cause an electric shock or fire.

# **Handling Mobile Phones Near Electronic Medical Equipment**

The safety precautions detailed here conform to the guidelines drawn up by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from signals emitted by mobile phones.

# **Warning**

If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverterdefibrillator, always carry or use your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from your implant.



Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverterdefibrillators.

Turn off your FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.



Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverterdefibrillators.

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities.



- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If Auto power ON function is set to ON, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone.

Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of signals on the equipment.



Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

# **Handling the FOMA Card**

# **⚠ Warning**

Never place the FOMA card inside a microwave oven or pressure cooker.



May cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, lost data, or malfunctions.

# **A** Caution

# Use the FOMA card only in equipment specified by DoCoMo.



Using other equipment may cause data loss or malfunctions. For more information regarding designated equipment, contact a DoCoMo retailer.

Be careful when detaching the FOMA card (IC).



May cause injuries to your hand or fingers.

Do not touch the IC haphazardly, or short the IC.



May cause data loss or malfunctions.

# Keep the FOMA card out of the reach of young children.



A small child may swallow or suffer other bodily injury.

Do not drop or otherwise subject the FOMA card to severe impact.



May cause a malfunction.

# Never bend or place a heavy weight on the FOMA card.



May cause a malfunction.

Do not damage the IC.



May cause a malfunction.

#### Do not heat or burn the FOMA card.



May cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, lost data, or malfunctions.

Do not store the FOMA card in a dusty location.



May cause a malfunction.

#### Do not store the FOMA card in direct sunlight, high temperatures, or high humidity.



May cause a malfunction.

Do not use or leave the FOMA card near open flames, heaters, or other high temperature locations.



May cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, lost data, or malfunctions.

#### Keep the FOMA card dry.



Contact with liquids such as water or pet urine may cause malfunctions.

# Do not disassemble or modify the FOMA card.



isassembly

May cause data loss or malfunctions.

# **Handling Precautions**

#### **General Notes**

- Do not expose to water. FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapters (chargers) are not waterproof. Do not use in humid or steamy areas such as bathrooms and avoid exposing to rain and other forms of moisture. If FOMA terminal is carried close to skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in malfunction. Note that if problem is found to be due to moisture, handset and parts are not covered by warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since damage is not covered by warranty.
- Clean only with a soft, dry cloth. The surface of the handset's LCD has a special coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Forceful rubbing of LCD with a dry cloth may scratch LCD surface. Handle the handset carefully and clean using a soft, dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period. Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents, as these agents may erase the printing on the handset or cause discoloration.
- Do not use in places where magnetic fields exist, such as near electrical appliances, AV equipment or OA
  equipment. Do not use where there are electromagnetic waves (near microwave ovens, speakers, TVs, radios,
  fax machines, fluorescent lamps, word processors, kotatsu, inverter air conditioners, electromagnetic cooking
  appliances, etc.). Magnetic and electric interference may create static and cause difficulty during conversation.
  (Microwaves ovens, in particular, interfere with reception.)
- Interference may arise when trucks, cars or motorcycles pass nearby.
- Do not leave the handset where it can get dirty easily.
- The sides of the FOMA terminal (speakers) and the earpiece contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep ATM cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the side of the FOMA terminal (speakers) and microphone. Cards may become unusable.
- Occasionally clean connection terminals with a dry cotton swab.
   Unclean connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Additionally, keep terminal clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab to prevent charge performance loss.
- Use FOMA terminal in areas with a temperature between 5°C and 35°C.
- Do not place the handset near an air conditioning vent. Condensation formed due to rapid changes in humidity may cause internal corrosion and lead to malfunction.
- Do not leave handset in a location subject to excessive force.
   Carrying the handset in a tightly packed bag, or sitting on the handset in your pocket may result in damage to LCD or other internal components, which are not covered by warranty. Clean the handset periodically as dust and other particles on LCD or keys may scratch LCD.
- Read the manuals supplied with the battery pack and adapters (chargers) carefully.
- If the FOMA terminal is used in a manner which seriously creates a public nuisance, the owner may be subject to punishment under legal and/or regulatory guidelines (such as nuisance prevention ordinance).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### **Notes About FOMA Terminal**

- Using the handset close to landline phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far away as possible from such items before use.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of data.
- Do not put the handset in back pocket and then sit on it. Additionally, do not put handset where it may be subjected to excessive weight or pressure, such as the bottom of a briefcase. May cause malfunction.
- Do not close FOMA terminal on strap. May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- Avoid using the handset in extremely high or low temperatures. Use FOMA terminal in areas with a temperature between 5°C and 35°C.
- FOMA terminal may become warm with continuous use or during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Continuous talking and consecutive camera use may result in the battery becoming warm. This is not a malfunction.
- The front of the FOMA terminal uses aluminum materials. Because aluminum is a soft metal, the surface can easily be dented or scratched.
- Leaving the miniSD Memory Card slot cover open may result in damage from force. Always close miniSD Memory Card cover after inserting or removing miniSD Memory Card.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight. May cause discoloration or burn-in.

#### **Handling Battery Pack**

- Battery pack is a consumable product. Though usage time varies with use, change battery if battery level is
  extremely low even after fully charged. Purchase a new battery pack for specified handset.
- The estimated service life for a battery pack is about one year. However, the service life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.
- Shorting battery pack by touching terminals with a metal object causes a large amount of current to flow and
  may overheat the battery. Handle with care.
- Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage. Place tape over terminals to insulate unnecessary battery packs and take to a DoCoMo retailer or refer to local regulations on how to dispose of used batteries.
- Always charge the battery before the first use or after not using battery for a long time.
- The usage time for a battery depends on the usage and deterioration of battery pack.
- Charge battery in areas with a temperature between 5°C and 35°C.
- Store in a cool, ventilated location that is not exposed to direct sunlight. If the battery pack will not be used for a long time, remove from the FOMA terminal and store.
- Do not store or leave the battery pack empty. If the battery pack will be left unused for a long time, remove
  from the FOMA terminal, and store in a cool, dry place. In addition, charge once every six months or so.

# **Handling the Adapters (Chargers)**

- Always charge battery pack with the specified adapters (chargers). Failure to use the specified adapters (chargers) may result in an accident. Use adapters (chargers) only for charging battery pack.
- Adapters (chargers) may become warm during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Do not charge battery pack in the following locations:
  - Areas where ambient temperature is lower than 5°C or higher than 35°C
  - Areas with high humidity or dust, or in areas exposed to strong vibrations
  - Close to landline phones, TVs or radios
- Do not use DC adapter to charge battery when the car engine is not running. May cause car battery to run
  down.
- When using an electrical outlet with a feature to prevent the plug from being removed accidentally, follow instructions in the outlet user's guide.
- Do not subject to strong force or impacts. Also, do not disfigure the charger terminals. May cause a malfunction.

#### **Notes About FOMA Card**

- Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.
- Always keep IC area clean.
- Be careful when inserting or ejecting card.

  Be not analysis and interesting and interest
- Do not apply unnecessary force when inserting card into FOMA terminal.

   FOMA card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Customer is responsible for malfunctions arising from inserting FOMA card into a different IC-card reader/
- To protect the environment, please take any unnecessary FOMA cards to your local DoCoMo retailer.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA card. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of data.
- Clean only with a soft, dry cloth.

# **Intellectual Property**

### Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

- Data with third party copyrights such as text, images, music and software that is downloaded or acquired via Internet web pages, shot by the FOMA terminal, or acquired from TV or other video cannot be duplicated, altered or publicly transmitted without rightful party's consent. Only duplicating, quoting, etc. for personal use is permitted under copyright laws.
  - Even if for personal use, filming and recording may be prohibited for demonstrations, performances and exhibitions. Also, shooting another's image or posting another's image on Internet web pages without their consent may constitute a violation of one's right to their image.
- If the FOMA terminal is used in a manner which seriously creates a public nuisance, the owner may be subject to punishment under legal and/or regulatory guidelines (such as nuisance prevention ordinance).

#### Registered Trademarks and Trademarks

- "FOMA/フォーマ", "mova/ムーバ", "おサイフケータイ", "i メロディ /アイメロディ ", "mopera/モペラ", "mopera U/モペラユー", "i アプリサーチ/アイアプリサーチ", "i エリア/アイエリア", "FirstPass", "キャラ電", "デコメール", "着モーション", "i ショット/アイショット", "マルチアクセス", "i モーションメール/アイモーションメール", "i アプリ/アイアプリ", "i アプリDX", "i モーション/アイモーション", "i モード", "i アニメ/アイアニメ", "ショートメール", "WORLD WING", "ドライブモード", "DoPa/ドゥーパ", "WORLD CALL", "デュアルネットワーク", "M-stage V ライブ", "クイックキャスト", "セキュリティスキャン", "musea/ミュゼア", "sigmarion/シグマリオン", the "mova" logo, the "i-mode" logo, the "i-motion" logo, the "FOMA" logo, the "WORLD CALL" logo, and the "FirstPass" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- NetFront and NetFront' are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- Windows and PowerPoint are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.
   (The official name for Windows is Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> operating system.)
- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A.
- IrFront® is a registered trademark or trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- AVE-TCP is a registered trademark or trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are registered trademarks or trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the U.S.A and other countries.
- MinisD™ icon is a registered logo of the SD Association.
- Powered by JBlend™ © 1997-2005 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
   JBlend and JBlend related trademarks are registered trademarks or trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- picsel 🔔

Document viewer is made possible by Picsel Technologies. Picsel Technologies is a registered trademark of Picsel Technologies.

- This handset features LCFONT, developed by Sharp Corporation, to make the LCD easier to view and read.
   LCフォント/LCFONT and といる。
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
  - All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.

    © 2004 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- FeliCa, which uses non-contact IC-card technology, was created by Sony Corporation.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE Mobile, and the Gガイドモバイル logo are trademarks in Japan of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. Gガイド, G-GUIDE, the Gガイド logo, Gコード, and G-Code are registered trademarks in Japan of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc.
- All other company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

#### **Others**

This product is equipped with NetFront v3.0 for FOMA for Internet functions.

NetFront v3.0 is a product of ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright © 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- Some software in this product includes modules developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product uses WAVE from ACCESS Co., Ltd. as a simple window manager.

Copyright © 1997-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.

• This FOMA uses IrFront® from ACCESS Co., Ltd. for Ir data exchange functions.

Copyright © 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- Under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, customers have licensed permission for the following use
  of this product to engage in non-profit personal use. Other uses are not permitted.
  - · Encoding MPEG-4 standard video (henceforth referred to as MPEG-4 video).
  - · Decoding an MPEG-4 video that a customer not engaged in personal commercial activities has encoded.
  - Decoding an MPEG-4 video obtained from a licensed provider.

For details on other intended uses, contact MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard. An additional license and payment of royalties are necessary in the following cases.
  - · Data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis.
  - Data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or
    use.

Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. Contact MPEG LA, LLC for additional details.

 Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

4,901,307	5,490,165	5,056,109	5,504,773	5,101,501	5,506,865
5,109,390	5,511,073	5,228,054	5,535,239	5,267,261	5,544,196
5,267,262	5,568,483	5,337,338	5,600,754	5,414,796	5,657,420
5,416,797	5,659,569	5,710,784	5,778,338		

• This product uses AVE-TCP from ACCESS Co., Ltd. for Internet communication functions.

Copyright © 1986-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.

This product uses Macromedia<sup>®</sup> Flash™ technology from Macromedia, Inc.

Copyright © 1995-2005 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.

• This product uses Adobe Reader from Adobe Systems Inc.

Copyright © 2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated.

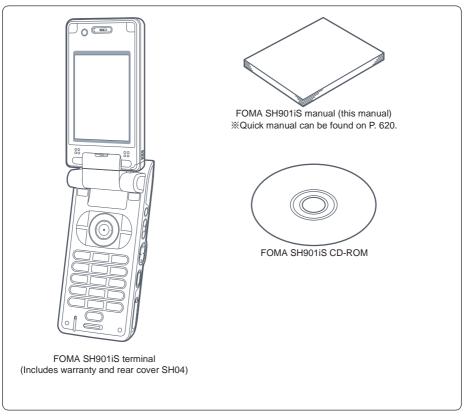
All rights reserved. Patents pending.

Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

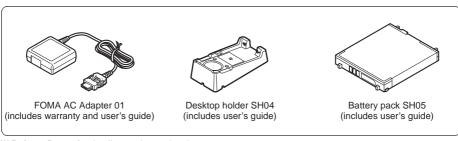
CP8 PATENT

# Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts

# Standard package



# Main optional parts



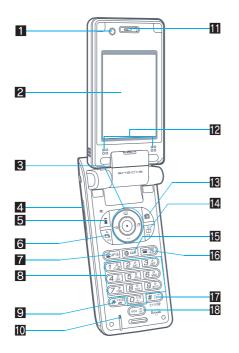
X Refer to P. 583 for details on other optional parts.

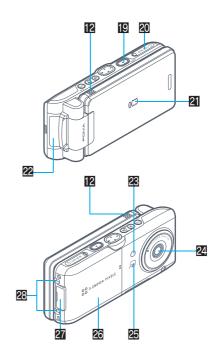
# Before Using the FOMA Terminal

Component Names and Functions	
Viewing the Display	30
Making Menu Selections	
Displaying the Supportbook	Supportbook>36
Using a FOMA Card	<foma card="">38</foma>
<ul><li>Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack</li></ul>	
Charging the Mobile Phone	
How to Check the Battery Level	<battery level="">46</battery>
Turning the Power On and Off	<power off="" on="">47</power>
Switching Display to English	<select language="">47</select>
Making the Initial Settings	
Setting the Date and Time	<date settings="">48</date>
• Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party	Notify Caller ID>49
Checking Your Phone Number	< Own Number > 49

# **Component Names and Functions**

### Normal position





X The front design may differ from the illustration above.

#### The internal antenna area

- The FOMA terminal has an internal antenna.
- Do not touch or cover the internal antenna area with your hands.
- Do not cover the internal antenna area with a sticker. The call quality will deteriorate.





#### Attaching a commercially available strap

 With the FOMA terminal closed, pass the strap through the strap ring and pass the other end through the loop on the other side.



#### 1 Sub camera

Use to shoot own image (FP. 164) or to send video shot during a video-phone call (FP. 78) to the other party.

#### 2 Display (PP. 30)

# Multi-guide key (four-way key and OK key) (♥ P. 28)

Press to display and select function menus, Redial, Received calls, Record message/ Voice memo, and the Shortcut menu as well as use these functions.

#### 4 miniSD Memory Card slot cover

Slot for miniSD Memory Card is under this cover. (© P. 382)

Be sure to close the cover when using a miniSD.

#### i-mode/Guidance key 📵

- Press to make or receive a video-phone call. (PP P. 79, P. 83)
- Press to use i-mode. (PP P. 202)
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower left of the display in guidance. (PP P. 28)
- Press for 1+ seconds to display the i-αppli screen. (PP P. 313)

#### 6 Mail/A/a key @

- Press to use mail functions. (@P. 254)
- Switches between upper and lower case when entering text. (© P. 550)
- Press for 1+ seconds in text input screen to display insert phrase screen.
   P. 551)
- Press twice to check new messages.
   (PP P. 270)

#### 7 Start/Hands-free key

- Press to make or receive a voice call.
- Press for 1+ seconds during a voice call to switch to Hands-free. (PP P. 53)
- Press during a video-phone call to switch to Hands-free. (PP. 81)

#### 8 Dial/Text entering keys

- Press to enter a phone number.
   (P P. 52)
- Press to enter text. (PP. 544)

### 

- Press to enter an asterisk (¥), dakuten
   (`), handakuten (°) or a line break.
   (♥₱ P. 545)
- Press for 1+ seconds to set or cancel Drive mode. (♥₹ P. 70)

#### 10 Microphone

Sends out your own voice.

#### 11 Earpiece

- Emits the other party's voice.
- When in stand-by, listen to Record message/Voice memo using the earpiece.

#### 12 Speakers

- Emits ring tones and other sounds.
- Listen to other party's voice during hands-free voice/video-phone calls.

#### 🖪 Camera/Guidance key 🖻

- Press to use Camera mode. (PP P. 170)
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower right of the display in guidance. (PP P. 28)
- Press for 1+ seconds to display My picture of Data box. (© P. 342)

#### 14 Phonebook key 🗐

- Press to use the phonebook. (PP P. 95)
- Press to change the type of text to be entered. (PP P. 548)
- In text input screen, press for 1+ seconds to use Internet-related phrases.
   P. 551)

#### [5 Clear/i-αppli stand-by key @c.R

- Use to delete phone numbers and text.
   (P. 549)
- Press to return to the previous menu or page.
- To start i-αppli: Press when i-αppli stand-by is set. (PP P. 326)
- Press to play or pause when animated GIF or Flash movies are set in stand-by.
   Press while setting i-motion to play or stop.

### 16 Power/End/On hold key

- Press for 2+ seconds to turn the power on or off. (PP P. 47)
- Press to end a call or i-mode, or to put calls on hold. (PP P. 68)

#### #/Manner mode/Camera mode key # ===

- Press to enter a #, prolonged sound (—), touten (, ), kuten (, ), exclamation mark (!), question mark (?), or chuten(.).
- Press for 1+ seconds to set or cancel Manner mode. (♥ P. 126)
- Switches between the main camera and the sub camera while shooting images.
   (FP P. 181)

#### 18 View key view 2

- To start Assistant View: Press during a voice call or while using other functions to check data from other functions, such as the phonebook or mail. (PP P. 430)
- To view Supportbook: Press in stand-by to view Supportbook (preset). (♥₱ P. 36)
- To save a shortcut in the Shortcut menu: Press for 1+ seconds when 

   is on the screen to save a shortcut. (☞ P. 461)
- To display a still picture full screen:
   Press while playing back a still picture in
   Data box before or after shooting in
   Camera mode to display the picture in
   full screen. (PP P. 191)

#### 19 Shutter key (•)

- Use to shoot still pictures and movies.
   (定了P. 172. P. 177)
- Press for 1+ seconds to start Camera in Movie mode. (PP P. 170)
- Press fully to shoot using auto-focus.
- Alternatively, press halfway to lock focus and press fully to shoot. (PP P. 189)
- Press for 1+ seconds with the FOMA terminal closed with the display facing inwards to activate picture light.
   Press the shutter while picture light is lit to switch the color of the light from white, red, green, blue, yellow, purple and light blue consecutively. Wait 30 seconds, press a side key other than shutter or open the FOMA terminal to turn off picture light.
- Press in stand-by with the FOMA terminal closed with the display facing inwards to use the vibrator as an alert for missed calls, recorded messages, new mail, unread mail, mail saved at the i-mode center and recorded voice mail messages. (PP P. 72, P. 76, P. 269)

#### AV input/output and Earphone/ Microphone terminal

 Connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold

separately). (PP P. 478)



When using an earphone plug adapter (sold separately), an earphone/ microphone with a switch can also be used.

 Connect a flat-plug AV cable (sold separately) to output/input audio and video. (PP P. 455, P. 474)

### 21 Called LED/Charging LED

- Flashes when there is an incoming call.
- Stays lit while charging.

#### 22 Infrared port

Port for sending and receiving infrared data. (© P. 399)

#### **22** Picture light/Message LED

- Provides extra light for shooting images in dark places. (PP P. 181)
- Flashes when there is an incoming call.
- Lights while charging.
- Flashes yellow when Screen display time is set to LED display on in User set in Power saver mode. (PP P. 134)

#### 24 Main camera (27 P. 164)

Use to shoot an image of your surroundings or send a video of your surroundings shot during a video-phone call to the other party.

#### 25 FeliCa mark 2

The IC-card is built in. (It cannot be removed.) Use Mobile Wallet by holding the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device) (EFP. 339).

#### 26 Rear cover (@P. 41)

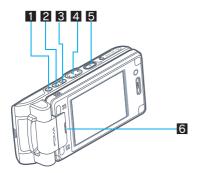
#### 27 External connection terminal

Terminal for connecting external devices, such as an AC adapter, a DC adapter (©P P. 44), or a FOMA USB cable (sold separately).

#### 28 Charger terminal

Terminal for recharging with the desktop holder. (© P. 45)

# Viewer position



#### 1 Clear key (1 P. 28)

- Works the same way as the Clear key in normal position.
- Press for 1+ seconds when calling or during a call to disconnect. If a call is being received, the call is placed on hold.
- If pressed for 1+ seconds when the FOMA terminal is closed or is in viewer position, side key operations are locked and Power saver mode is activated

#### 2 Left guidance key (P. 28)

- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower left of the display in guidance.
- Works the same way as the i-mode/ Guidance key in normal position.

#### Right guidance key (P. 28)

- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower right of the display in guidance.
- Works the same way as the Camera/ Guidance key in normal position.

### 4 Four-way key 🕻 (🎏 P. 28)

Works the same way as the four-way key in normal position.

### **5** Shutter key **○** (**□** P. 28)

- Press for 1+ seconds to start Camera in Movie mode.
- Press for 1+ seconds to start Assistant View during a call or when using a function other than camera.
- Works the same way as the OK key in normal position.

#### 6 Earpiece

Emits the other party's voice.

### **How to Open the FOMA Terminal**

To use the FOMA terminal, open it (normal position) or use it in viewer position.

• Keeping the FOMA terminal closed as shown in the diagram for step 1 when carrying is recommended.

# Normal position





Open carefully with both hands.

2



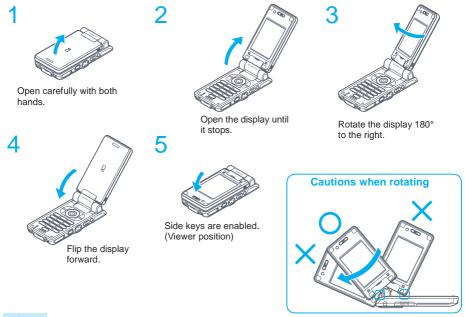
3



Push the display back as far as it will go. (Normal position)

### Viewer position

- To rotate the FOMA terminal display from normal position, open the display to where it stops midway (step 2 position) and then rotate it to the right 180°.
- A sound effect is heard when the FOMA terminal display is rotated. (FP P. 120)



#### **Note**

- When rotating the FOMA terminal display, be careful not to hit the buttons on the display side, stoppers or
  the terminal. Also, do not rotate in the opposite direction or further than 180°. Doing so may damage the
  key surface, terminal or stopper. (See "Cautions when rotating" above)
- Operations with keys other than the side keys are available when opening the FOMA terminal to normal
  position or while rotating from normal position to viewer position.
- Do not forcefully pull the rubber covers of the AV input/output and earphone/microphone terminal, miniSD Memory Card slot and the external connector terminal. May cause damage.

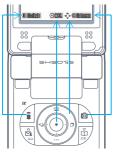
# How to Use the Multi-guide Key and Guidance Key

Use the Multi-guide key (four-way key and OK key) to select and set menus.

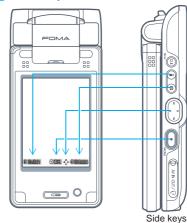
Move the cursor with the four-way key and set the selection using the OK key. To display a sub menu, use the Camera key (right guidance key), and use the i-mode key (left guidance key) to end an operation.

These keys are assigned different functions depending on the situation, so the functions assigned for the situation are displayed in the bottom of the screen as guidance.

# Normal position



# Viewer position



### Basic key layout for normal position and viewer position

The corresponding keys for normal and viewer positions are as shown below. If there is no particular notation about viewer position in this manual, both of the keys above can be used.

Normal position	Viewer position (Side keys)
(i)	(left guidance)
•	• (shutter)
	(right guidance)
○, ○, ○	0, 0, 0
$\bigcirc$ , $\bigcirc$ , $\bigcirc$	9, 6, 0
<b>:</b>	<b>\$</b>
<b>⊚</b> CLR	(CIR)

In viewer position, press the Clear key for 1+ seconds while calling or during a call to disconnect. Incoming
calls are put on hold.

#### Note

#### Options not available in viewer position

- Dial/Text entry keys (Text cannot be entered using these keys.)
- Direct selection using Dial/Text entry keys
- Auto scroll for i-mode/mail
- Switching on/off of volume for i-motion set as the stand-by
- Saving to shortcut menu
- Turning power off
- Display cannot be switched between stand-by and calendar.

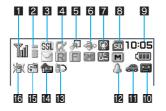
# Viewing the Display

The display allows you to check the current status after the power is turned on or while setting up functions.

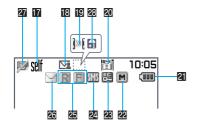
The display lights for a set period of time when a key is pressed. The default setting is 15

seconds. (@P. 133)

Icons displayed in the upper part of the display



Icons displayed in the upper part of the display



Icons displayed in the lower part of the display



- 11 Signal status (©P. 52) Indicates the strength of the signal.
- 2 i-mode ☼ ♦ १ (ﷺ P. 208) Indicates the i-mode status.
- Indicates that an SSL-enabled site or Internet web page is currently being viewed.
- 4 i-αppli (@P. 313)

Indicates the i- $\alpha$ ppli status.

**α**: i-αppli is running

i-αppli stand-by is running :i-αppli stand-by is set\*

i-αppliDX stand-by is running

: i-αppliDX stand-by is set\*

\* Indicates that an i-αppli is in stand-by, but cannot be used.

5 Shortcut menu 🗗 (12 P. 461)

Appears when the function can be added to the Shortcut menu.

External device connection (P. 503)

Appears when a PC or other external device is connected.

- : External device connected
- (green): During hands-free (FP. 61)
- 7 Manner mode 🕲 (🕼 P. 126)

Appears when Manner mode is set.

B miniSD Memory Card (FP. 381)

Appears when miniSD Memory Card is inserted.

(gray) : miniSD Memory Card is inserted

(pink) : Data on miniSD Memory Card is being viewed

flashes): miniSD Memory Card is being accessed

Ock display (P. 48)

Indicates the time that is set.

🔟 Record message 🖭 (🕼 P. 72)

Appears when Record message (voice/ video-phone calls) is set. When there are messages, at to appears, indicating the total number of both types of messages.

II Drive mode ♣ (♥ P. 70)

Appears when Drive mode is set.

Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm △ (№ P. 433, P. 447, P. 439)

Appears when a Schedule alarm, ToDo alarm or alarm is set for that day.

Appears if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected when Auto answer is set.

Indicates the number of recorded voice mail messages (one to nine messages).

appears if the number of messages exceeds 10.

### **ⓑ** Silent 🧐 (🔊 P. 121)

Appears when the ring volume is set to Silent.

# 16 Vibrator **№** (123)

Appears when the vibrator is set.

### 17 Self mode औ (№ P. 152)

Appears when Self mode is set, and the handset cannot make/receive calls, send/receive i-mode mail or SMS, use i-mode functions or use Ir exchange.

#### IB Assistant View (№ P. 430)

Indicates the originally activated application when checking data using Assistant View.

∃ : ToDo list
□ : Phonebook

▶ : Text memo
□ : Schedule

□ : Mail
▶ : During call

□ : i-mode

#### I Ir exchange/External device

Appears during Ir exchange or when communicating with an external device.

Image: Appears when exchanging data with another device using the infrared exchange function. (IPP. 397) Flashes when sending data using infrared remote control. (IPP. 402)

(green): Connected to an external device and transmitting packets.

(red): Connected to an external device and sending/receiving packet data.

⊞: Connected to an external device and transmitting 64K data.

# 20 Voice/Video-phone call

(@P. 52, P. 53, P. 78)

Indicates the status during a voice call or a video-phone call.

:Video-phone call (32K) in progress

:Video-phone call (64K) in progress

(red): Hands-free call (32K videophone) in progress

(red): Hands-free call (64K videophone) in progress

(red): Hands-free call (voice) in progress

### 21 Battery level/Charging

Indicates the status of the battery pack.

(**13** (**13** (**14** (**14** (**15 P**. 46)

# 22 Memory warning indicator ( P. 397)

Indicates the memory status.

(yellow): Appears when available space becomes less than 1.2 MB.

(red) : Appears when available space becomes less than 100 KB.

#### Restriction indicator (PP P. 156, P. 149)

Indicates the status of the restriction settings.

🖫 : Secret mode

: Secret data is being edited

🖫 : Keypad dial lock

: All locked

: PIM is locked

: Keypad dial lock and PIM lock are set

E : Key guard is set

: IC-card is locked

📇 : IC-card lock and Key guard are set

: IC-card lock and Keypad dial lock are set

: IC-card lock and All lock are set
: IC-card lock and PIM lock are set

: IC-card lock, Keypad dial lock and PIM lock are set

: IC-card lock and Secret mode are set

: IC-card is locked and Secret data are being edited

#### 24 SMS received 5 (1 € P. 304)

Indicates the SMS reception status.

(red): Appears when SMS is received.
(black): Appears when SMS on the FOMA

terminal handset is full.

(blue): Appears when the FOMA card SMS is full.

(yellow): Appears when SMS on the FOMA terminal handset and the FOMA card are full.

#### 25 Message R icon and Message F icon ■ F (©F P. 236)

Indicates the reception status of the Message R/F and the storage status of the Message R/F at the center. However, the status may not always be indicated, even if messages are held at center.

i-mode mail received (F P. 267)
Indicates the i-mode mail reception status and the storage status of i-mode mail at the center. However, the status may not always be indicated, even if messages are held at center. The status of the memory to store received mail is also indicated.

#### 77 FOMA card error

Indicates the type of FOMA card error.

: Appears when FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted.

**Q!** : Appears when a card that is not a FOMA card is inserted.

#### 28 Video-phone brightness

Indicates the brightness of the camera during video-phone.

-2 -1 +1 +2 The brightness is not shown when it is  $\pm 0$ .

#### 29 Operation guidance

Indicates the functions that can be used with keys such as (3), (4) and (6).

#### 30 Display navigation

Indicates the directions in which the screen can be scrolled using the Multi-guide key.

 May not apply, depending on how the site was constructed.

#### Other icons

Refer to respective pages for information on icons for the functions shown below.

- Received calls (P. 66)
- Camera mode (@P. 167 to P. 169)
- Mail (@P. 278 to P. 282)
- SMS (© P. 278 to P. 282)
- Phonebook (PP. 97)
- Message R/F (P. 236 to P. 241)
- My picture of Data box (P. 343 and P. 344)

#### Note

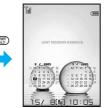
- miniSD Memory Card is referred to as miniSD or SD on the FOMA terminal. (@P. 381)
- Some of the screen shots in this manual have been modified or abbreviated.
- The display for the FOMA terminal is manufactured using high-precision technology, but it may
  occasionally contain dots that fail to light or that remain permanently lit. This is not a malfunction.

### **Switching Between Displays**

When Calendar is set in the stand-by display, press (Calendar is set in the stand-by and the calendar. (Calendar display P. 130)



Stand-by



Calendar (2 months)

- When the calendar is set to 2 months, the current month and the next month appear. When set to 6 months, six months appear in pairs (starting with the current month) with odd number months on the left. If you press 3, the previous and following months appear. If you set the calendar to 6 months, the previous and following two months appear.
- The calendar cannot be shown in the i-αppli stand-by display
- When an animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as the stand-by display, playback stops if switched to Calendar.
- When the calendar is set to 1 month (Large), icons appear to the right of dates with schedule entries.
- In viewer position, the display cannot be switched between stand-by and calendar.

# **Making Menu Selections**

#### Functions are set or registered after a menu appears.

- Menus can be displayed using the following methods.
  - Select a function starting from the Top menu.
  - Retrieve a function by entering a function number (© P. 34).
  - Select a function from the Shortcut menu (PP. 461).
  - Select a frequentry used function displayed in large font (Zoom Menu) (© P. 35).
  - Select an option from the sub menu shown in guidance (© P. 36).
- In the Top menu, the Shortcut menu (☼ P. 461), or the Zoom menu, press ⑤ [Switch] to switch menus.
   To show the menu previously used, press ⑥ in stand-by.

### **Selecting Functions from the Top Menu**

Use or set up functions categorized under nine menus.

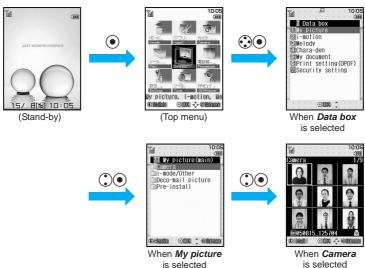
(Refer to P. 562 to P. 568 for details on the Setting menu.)

- Select an icon and then scroll through the functions to display them in guidance.
- Icons can be changed. (Icon settings P. 138)

lcon	Menu	Function
	i-mode	<b>1</b> 8 Menu
IE-K		2 Message
		8 Bookmark
		4 Check new message
		5 Screen memo
		6 Last URL
		URL history
		3 Go to location
		i-mode setting
	i-αppli	■ Software list
עדקו		i-αppli volume
Heppli		Soft description
		4 Auto start
		5 Error display
		Trace info
		Security setting
	Camera	Shoot still pic
カメラ		2 Shoot movie
Camera		Character reader
		Bar code reader
	Mail	1 Inbox
メール		2 Outbox
Mail		Unsent messages
		4 Compose message
		5 Compose SMS
		Chat mail
		Check new message
		Check new SMS
		Receive option
		Mail setting
	Data box	My picture
7-9BDX- Data box		2 i-motion
		Melody
		4 Chara-den
		My document
		Print setting (DPOF)
		Security setting

Icon	Menu	Function
10011		Search phonebook
THE WOLLD	1 Honebook	Search phonebook
Phonebook		
POR DESIGNATION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERT	Settings	■ Sound
	Ŭ	2 Display
		General settings
		4 Services
		Phone settings
		6 Security
		Own number
		★ Initial settings
		⊞ Reset settings
1000	Tools	Voice recorder
		Record video
		Receive Ir data
		4 Schedule
		<b>⋽</b> ToDo list
		6 Alarm
		7 Timer
		Text memo
		Calc
		Money calc
		miniSD manager
		Bar code reader
		Character reader
7-WC1-7 KETTAWiewer	KEITAI	■ BookReader
	Viewer	2 DocumentViewer
		PDF Viewer

In stand-by, press  $\odot$ , select a menu or an icon using  $\odot$  and press  $\odot$ . Select a function using  $\odot$  and press  $\odot$ .



- To access the above function from the Top menu, the following instruction appears in this manual:
   "Alternatively, select □ (Data box) → My picture → Camera from Top menu."
- To reselect a function, press @ car and the previous screen reappears.
- If Zoom menu or Shortcut menu appears when 
  is pressed in the stand-by, press 
  is to switch to Top menu.

  Press 
  in stand-by to show the menu previously used.

## Retrieving a Function by Entering a Function Number

Functions can be retrieved quickly by entering a function number.

The explanations in this manual are based on the entry of function numbers to select menus. The first numbers in the function numbers are 1 through 6 for the setting menus, 7 for the Data box menu, 8 for the Tools menu and 9 for the KEITAIViewer menu.

Refer to P. 562 to P. 568 for details on the function numbers for each function (key operations). In this example, function number **1211** is used to select **Phone ring tone**.

• Functions cannot be retrieved by entering the function numbers from viewer position. Retrieve functions from the Top menu.

Example: When selecting Phone ring tone using function number 1211



## 

• The specified function (Phone ring tone) screen appears.

#### **Note**

• Functions cannot be retrieved by entering function numbers from the Shortcut menu or the Zoom menu.

## Using the In-call menu

Press (•) during a call to display the following functions that can be used during a call.

- Hold Active Call (P. 53)
- Voice memo (During call) (PP. 465)
- Date settings (P. 48)
- Own number (@P. 49)

Press @cr multiple times and the call screen reappears.

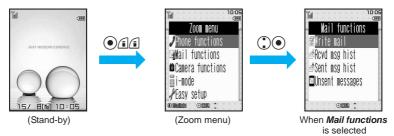
## Selecting a Function from the Zoom Menu <Zoom Menu>

The Zoom menu displays frequently used functions enlarged. Use the Zoom menu to perform basic functions using an enlarged character display.

Menu	Function	Screen	Reference
	View phonebook	Search phonebook	P. 108
	Redial	Display one item	P. 55
Phone functions	Received calls	Display one item	P. 66
	Add to phonebook	Phonebook entry screen	P. 102
	Own phone number	Phone number verification screen	P. 49
	Write mail	Compose message screen	P. 255
Mail functions	Received message history	Inbox	P. 278 to
	Sent message history	Outbox	P. 282
	Unsent messages	Unsent messages	
	Shoot picture	Still picture shooting screen	P. 170
Camera functions	View picture	My picture folder list of Data box (FOMA terminal handset)	P. 342
Carriera functions	Shoot movie	Movie shooting screen	P. 170
	View movie	i-motion folder list of Data box (FOMA terminal handset)	P. 359
	View iMenu	iMenu	P. 208
i-mode	View all bookmarks	Bookmark list	P. 220
	View screen memos	Screen memo list	P. 222
	Ring tone	Ring tone setting screen	P. 118
Easy setup	Stand-by Display	Stand-by display setting screen	P. 128
	Alarm	Alarm setting screen	P. 433

At the time of purchase, press  $\bullet$  in stand-by and press  $oldsymbol{\widehat{s}}$  [Switch] twice to show the Zoom menu. Select a function using  $\diamondsuit$  and press  $\bullet$ .

In viewer position, press ⊕ (shutter) in stand-by and press ⊕ (left guidance). Press ⊕ (left guidance) to switch from Top menu → Shortcut menu → Zoom menu. Select Zoom menu, select a function using ♠ and press ⊕ (shutter).



- ullet Press ullet [Switch] to switch from Top menu ullet Shortcut menu ullet Zoom menu.
- To reselect a function, press @ CLR.
- Press in stand-by to show the menu previously used.

- The phonebook list is displayed in large font.
- Data box image list view can be changed but the list is shown in nine frames when operated from Zoom menu again.
- Refer to P. 172 and onward for Camera operations.

## **Selecting Functions from the Submenu**

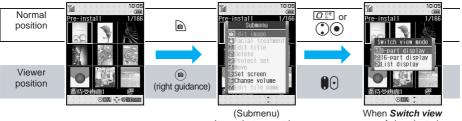
When guidance Summu appears, press a to show the functions (submenu) that can be used in that screen.

This manual explains how to select submenus based on the entry of function numbers.

However, some submenus do not have function numbers. In such cases, select the function using (:) and press (•).

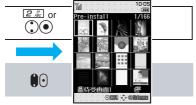
 In viewer position, press ⊚ (right guidance), select a function with and press (shutter). Operations are not available when Key guard is set (PP P. 155).

### Example: When switching the image list to 16-part display



Items that cannot be selected are shown in gray.

mode is selected



When 16-part display is selected

• To reselect a function, press @ and return to the sub menu.

## Supportbook

# Displaying the Supportbook

Supportbook (preset) is a simple operation guide on the FOMA terminal that uses BookReader. Use this function when unsure of operations. ( P. 418) For example, when composing a message with Assistant View, press (() (shutter) for 1+ seconds when in viewer position) to use Supportbook (preset). ( P. 430)

- Useful tips and functions are displayed in the form of a conversation to allow for rapid comprehension.
- When opening from stand-by, the top page of Supportbook is shown. When opening from Assistant View, the top page or page corresponding to function that Assistant View was activated from is shown. (PP P. 430)
- Directly start functions that were looked up in Supportbook. Video-phone set (EFP. 91), Stand-by display (電P. 128), Personalize (電P. 135), Power saver mode (電P. 132) and Security (電P. 149) are available.

1

## In stand-by, press (view 2).



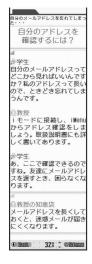
Alternatively, select 
 \( \mathbb{K} \) (KEITAIViewer) → BookReader → Supportbook (preset) from Top menu.

2

Select ロメール (Mail) and press .



3 Select □自分のアドレスを確認するには? (How do you check your own address?) and press (●).



- Under the title, 自分のアドレスを確認するには? (How do you check your own address?), an example in conversation format and 教授の知恵袋 (advice) appears.
- Search the manual easily from the index. In this case, refer to P. 464 for information on checking mail address.

## **Related Operations**

**Start functions from Supportbook** 

In the Supportbook details screen, select the function to start ▶ ● ▶ Yes ▶ ●.

#### Note

• Not available when Supportbook is started from Assistant View.

# **Using a FOMA Card**

A FOMA card is an IC-card that records personal information, such as phone numbers. A FOMA card can also store phonebook data and SMS. By switching FOMA cards, multiple FOMA terminals can be used for different purposes as needed.

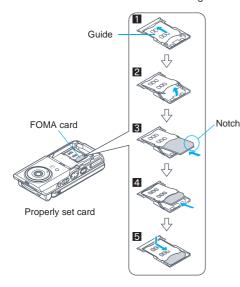
- If a FOMA card is not inserted, voice/video-phone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail and SMS transmissions, Message R/F reception and data transmission cannot be used on the FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the FOMA card user's guide for more information on the FOMA card.
- Do not accidentally touch or damage the IC portion when inserting or removing a FOMA card.

## Inserting and Removing a FOMA Card

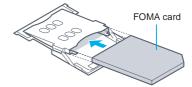
※ Refer to step 1 of "Turning the Power Off" on P. 47 to turn off the power and remove the battery pack. Then insert or remove the FOMA card.

## Inserting

Close the FOMA terminal when inserting the FOMA card.



- Slide the card as shown on the left (1). Hold the card up until the guide clicks (2).
- Hold the FOMA card with the IC facing down and insert (3).



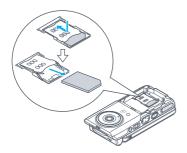
 Card will stay in place once inserted all the way (4).



- Push the top of the guide and slide it to stabilize (5).
  - Make sure the FOMA card is stabilized before using.



Close the FOMA terminal when removing the FOMA card.



Push the top of the guide and slide as shown on the left. Hold the card up until the guide clicks and slowly pull the FOMA card straight out.

 Do not allow the FOMA card to fall when removing it.

#### Note

- Inserting or removing the FOMA card with force may cause damage to the card. Use caution.
- Do not misplace the FOMA card once it is taken out.
- The FOMA terminal power may turn off if the IC area of the FOMA card is dirty. Wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth.

## **FOMA Card Security Codes**

- Set two security codes, PIN code and PIN2 code, on the FOMA card. Both are 0000 at the time of registration but can be changed.
- PIN code is a four to eight digit code that is entered when the FOMA terminal is turned on so that an
  unauthorized third party cannot use the FOMA terminal. Enter PIN code to enable making calls and
  performing various transmissions.
- PIN2 code is a four to eight digit code used for authentication when connecting to sites, Internet and online services. Enter PIN2 code in the FOMA terminal when performing Client certificate operations (issuance of Client certificate when using FirstPass), accessing FirstPass compatible sites, resetting total cost, etc.
   (PFP 2. 241)
- ※ Refer to "Setting PIN Code" on P. 146 for details on PIN and PIN2 codes.

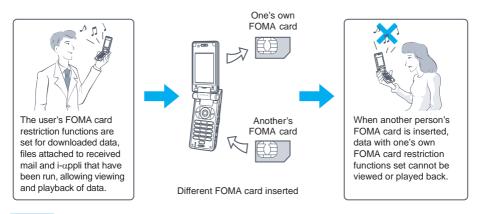
#### Note

 Use previously set PIN and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a newly purchased FOMA terminal. PIN and PIN2 codes are 0000 if unchanged.

## FOMA Card Restriction Functions < FOMA Card Restriction Functions>

The FOMA card has built-in restriction functions as security functions for protecting personal data and files.

- When the FOMA card is inserted into the FOMA terminal and data or files are retrieved using any of the following methods or when an i-αppli is running, FOMA card restriction functions are automatically set in the retrieved data or files.
  - When a file such as an image, melody or PDF file is downloaded from a site or Internet web page
  - When a site or Internet web page is saved as a screen memo (except screen memos that do not include images)
  - When i-mode mail with a file attached is received
  - When an i-appli is running
- Data, files or software with FOMA card restriction functions run only when in use with the FOMA card inserted
  at time of acquisition. Display, play, attach to i-mode mail, run software, send data using Ir function and copy
  to miniSD Memory Card can be executed.
- The above operations cannot be performed if the FOMA card inserted at time of data/file retrieval or i-αppli startup is replaced with a different FOMA card.
- Explanation that follows refers to the FOMA card inserted at time of data/files retrieval as "one's own FOMA card" and other FOMA cards as "another's FOMA card."



#### Note

- When one's own FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card, the data or files for which FOMA card
  restriction functions are set cannot be set as stand-by displays or ring tones.
- When a FOMA card is replaced with a different FOMA card, FOMA card restriction functions are activated
  and if data or file retrieved from a site is set as stand-by display or ring tone, the setting is reset to the
  default. When one's own FOMA card is re-inserted, the setting returns.

<Example: When setting Melody A, for which FOMA card restriction functions are set, as a ring tone>

When one's own FOMA card is taken out or is replaced with another's FOMA card, Select ring tone returns to default setting. When one's own FOMA card is put back, the ring tone returns to *Melody A*.

- FOMA card restrictions cannot be set for data received using Ir exchange or data transmission functions, and still pictures, Continuous mode images, or movies shot with the FOMA terminal.
- It is possible to move or delete data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions are set even when another's FOMA card is inserted.
- Running i-αppli or downloading i-motion by selecting highlighted text in i-mode mail display screen cannot be performed when FOMA card restriction functions are set.
- If the FOMA card is replaced with another person's after an i-αppli is set as the stand-by display, the set i-αppli cannot be activated in stand-by, and the image set in the stand-by display settings appears.

## Types of FOMA Cards and Differences in Functions

Note the following differences between *FOMA card (blue)* and *FOMA card (green)* used on the FOMA terminal.

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)	Reference
Number of phone number digits available in the FOMA card phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P. 103
Client certificate operations for FirstPass	Not available	Available	P. 241
Use of WORLD WING	Not available	Available	-
Service Number	Not available	Available	Refer to "For General Inquiries" or "For Repair Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

### **About WORLD WING**

WORLD WING is a DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that makes it possible to use the mobile
phone number registered in Japan while abroad by replacing the FOMA card (green) to a DoCoMo
compatible international mobile phone (GSM format). This service requires registration. For further details,
contact number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

# **Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack**

Use the battery pack SH05 exclusive to the FOMA terminal.

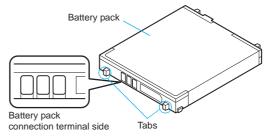
Always turn the power off before inserting or removing the battery pack.

## Inserting the battery pack



- Lightly press rear cover in the direction of the arrow (11) and slide approximately 2 mm (22).
- Lift the rear cover in the direction of the arrow (**3**) and remove it.
- Character side
  (with the product name
  (SH05) facing up)
- ? Insert the battery pack (4).

 The battery pack has tabs that make it easy to insert. Insert the battery pack with the product name (SH05) facing up.







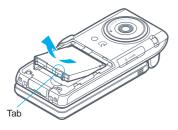
## Reattach the rear cover (5).

 Position the handset and the rear cover as shown in the illustration and then press the rear cover and slide into place.

- Using unnecessary force when inserting or removing the battery pack may damage the battery pack and connection terminal (charger terminal) on the FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the battery pack SH05 user's guide for details.
- Firmly close the rear cover. If not closed firmly, the rear cover may come off and the battery pack may fall
  out due to vibration.
- Avoid inserting and removing the battery pack in viewer position. Display may be damaged.
- If the battery pack connection terminal side or FOMA terminal battery pack (charger terminal) is dirty, the FOMA terminal power may turn off. Additionally, the battery may not be sufficiently recharged. Wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth or cotton swab.

## Removing the battery pack

Always turn the power off before removing.



Follow steps 1 and 2 on P. 41 to remove the rear cover.

Remove the battery pack.

 The battery pack has a tab that makes it easy to remove. Press the tab with your fingers without placing too much force. Lift the battery pack to remove.

#### Note

• When the battery pack is removed, the following registrations and settings are changed.

Registrations and settings that return to the default settings or are erased when the battery pack is removed

■ Data being edited

Registrations and settings that return to the default settings or are erased when the FOMA is left with no battery or an empty battery

- Date settings Host settings
- Settings returned to default using Reset i-mode (© P. 234)
- Message that appears in stand-by (voice mail)
- When using the battery pack for the first time or after replacing it, battery pack must be charged. Battery
  pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase.
- To protect the environment, please dispose of used batteries at a DoCoMo dealer or retailer, or a
  participating recycling center.



## **Charging the Mobile Phone**

## **Cautions when Charging**

The battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase. Be sure to charge the battery using the exclusive AC or DC adapter (sold separately) before use.

## Estimated charge times and LED display

The following figures are estimated times for charging an empty battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned off.

Charger name	Charge time
FOMA AC Adapter 01	120 minutes
FOMA DC Adapter 01	120 minutes

- Charging LED and picture light illuminate in red when charging and turns off when charging is completed.
- Check that the battery pack has been properly inserted when charging LED flashes red. The LED also flashes
  red when the battery pack has reached the end of its service life.

## Estimated times of use when fully charged

Criteria	Battery pack SH05
Continuous stand-by time	420 hours (at rest)/350 hours (when mobile)
Continuous talk (transmission) time	130 minutes (voice call)/80 minutes (video-phone call)

- Continuous talk time is estimated as the usage time at normal transmission signal strength, and continuous stand-by time is estimated as the usage time while moving with the FOMA terminal closed at normal signal strength. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, stand-by display and Power saver mode settings, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. Even if you do not make calls or use i-mode, if you shoot and edit images, compose i-mode mail, use a downloaded i-αppli, set a downloaded i-αppli as the stand-by display or input/output AV, talk (transmission) and stand-by times will be reduced. Some i-αppli software may continue transmission even after downloading. To avoid this, set not to connect in advance.
- The actual usage time is a combination of stand-by time and talk time, and the longer the call duration, the shorter the stand-by time becomes.

## Battery pack service life

- When the usage time of the battery pack is reduced to about half that of a new battery pack, consider this to be the end of the service life.
- The estimated service life for a battery pack is about one year. However, the service life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.

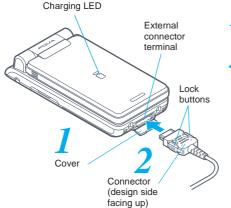
## Cautions when charging

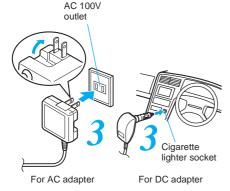
- Do not charge for long periods of time with the power left on. If the FOMA terminal is left on after charging is complete, the battery pack charge decreases.
  - In such cases, the AC or DC adapter charges the battery again. However, depending on when the FOMA terminal is disconnected from the AC or DC adapter, the battery charge level may be low, the battery alert tone may sound, or the battery may only be usable for a short time.
- When the battery is empty and terminal is recharging, charging LED and Picture light may not illuminate immediately.
- If the alert tone sounds and the power cannot be turned on, charge the battery for a while.
- If the battery empty alert is displayed and charging begins within 60 seconds of the alert tone, the status returns to normal.
- While charging, terminal may not turn on even when charging LED is illuminated in red. Charge longer and try
  turning power on again.
- Frequently recharging the battery when power is still remaining enough may shorten the life of the battery pack. It is recommended to use the battery to a certain level before recharging.

## **Charging Using the AC Adapter/DC Adapter**

# [Read "FOMA AC adapter 01 (sold separately)/FOMA DC adapter 01 (sold separately) user's guide" carefully.]

• Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open or in viewer position.

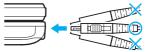




Open the external connector terminal cover.

Check the direction (see diagram) of the AC or DC adapter connector and insert horizontally into the external connector terminal.

 Check the direction of the connector, keep it parallel with the FOMA terminal and firmly push all the way in until it clicks.



For an AC adapter, lift the plug and insert into an AC 100V outlet. For a DC adapter, plug into a car cigarette lighter socket.

 Charge start sound is heard and charging LED and picture light illuminate in red.

# When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

 When removing the connector, hold the lock buttons on both sides (①) and unplug it by pulling out horizontally (②). Close the external connector terminal cover.



 Pull the adapter out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if it will not be used for a long time

- The battery pack cannot be charged by itself.
- Check the direction and angle (see diagram) of connector, such as an AC adapter, and connect carefully
  without using unnecessary force. Do not forcibly insert or remove. May cause damage to the external
  connector terminal.
- Do not forcefully pull the rubber covers on the AV input/output and earphone/microphone terminal or the external connector terminal. May damage cover.
- Do not place objects near the FOMA terminal when charging. The FOMA terminal may be damaged.
   Display may be damaged when charged in viewer position.
- When the battery level is zero and the terminal is recharging, charging LED and Picture light may not illuminate immediately.

#### **Note**

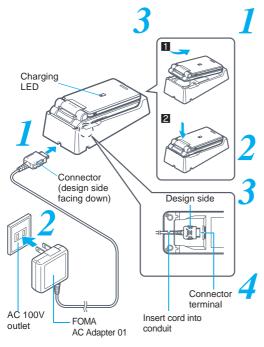
#### When using a DC adapter

- Do not use with the car engine shut off. May drain the car battery.
- The DC adapter and in-car adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. (DC 12V and 24V)
- The DC adapter power is interlocked with the car ignition switch, but the interlock may not work with some vehicles. Make sure that the power is turned off before leaving the car.
- Note that even if the FOMA terminal is turned on, turning off the ignition or pulling the DC adapter out of
  the cigarette lighter socket will turn the FOMA off. To make a call or stay in stand-by, first disconnect the
  connector from the FOMA terminal.
- The glass tube fuse (2A) is a consumable. For replacement, purchase a new fuse at a local automobile supply shop.

## **Charging Using the Desktop Holder**

## [Read "Desktop holder SH04 (sold separately) user's guide" carefully.]

• Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open or in viewer position.



Face the design side of the AC adapter connector down and insert it into the connector terminal of the desktop holder.

- Keeping the connector parallel with the desktop holder, firmly push it all the way in until it clicks
- The connection port for the desktop holder is on the back.

Lift the AC adapter plug and insert into an AC 100V outlet.

# Place the FOMA terminal into the desktop holder.

- Place the FOMA terminal as shown in 1 on the left, and push in the direction of the arrow shown in 2 until it clicks.
- Charge start sound is heard and charging LED and picture light illuminate in red.

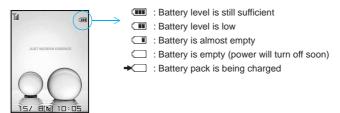
# When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

- Hold the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal out.
- Pull the AC adapter out of the outlet when left unused for a long period of time.

- The battery pack cannot be charged by itself.
- When Charge start sound is not heard (except when Charge start sound is set to Silent, Manner mode is set or when terminal is turned off) or when charging LED and Picture light do not illuminate, check that the FOMA terminal is placed securely in the desktop holder.
- When the battery level is zero and the terminal is recharging, charging LED and Picture light may not illuminate immediately.
- When placing the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder, be careful that the strap is not caught in between the handset and the desktop holder.

# **How to Check the Battery Level**

Check the approximate battery level in the display.



## **Checking the Battery Level with Sound and Display**

1

## In stand-by, press ( ) 3 th | 2 th |

- Alternatively, select  $\mathcal{X}_{\bullet}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **General settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Battery level** from Top menu.
- Graphic for battery level appears. (A different sound is heard for each battery level.)
- The battery level sounds are heard at the volume set in Keypad sound. (@P. 122)
- Wait three seconds or press @ and the General settings menu reappears.

Graphic	32 Battery level	32 Battery level	22 Battery level
Sound	Three beeps	Two beeps	One beep
Status	Battery is sufficiently full	Battery is running low	Battery is almost empty

## If the Battery Runs Out

The screen on the right appears on the display, the alert tone sounds and the power turns off after about 60 seconds.



- During a voice/video-phone call, the alert tone sounds, and the call is disconnected after about 20 seconds. At
  the same time, the display on the right appears and after about 60 seconds, the power turns off.
- When Exp is pressed during a call, the call is disconnected. Turn off the power and recharge the battery.

#### Note

• Alert tone does not sound when Manner mode (PP P. 126) or Drive mode (PP P. 70) is set.

# **Turning the Power On and Off**

## **Turning the Power On**

When the power is turned on, the display backlight illuminates and it is possible to make and receive calls (stand-by status).

1

## Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.



- The wakeup screen appears followed by the initial settings screen. Proceed to the initial settings on P. 48.
- If initial settings are not yet completed, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.
- If initial settings have been completed, the screen shown on the right appears when power is turned on. This screen is called the stand-by display.
- When Enter PIN code appears, enter the PIN code (PP P. 146).



## **Turning the Power Off**



## Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.

- The power turns off.
- It may take some time for the power to turn off. (The end screen appears on the display until the power turns off.)

#### **Note**

 Before connecting to an external device, make sure that all transmissions are complete and then turn off the FOMA terminal.

## Select Language

# **Switching Display to English**

Default setting

日本語

Switch display language between Japanese and English for functions, messages, and menu items.



In stand-by, press • 3 and select display method.

Alternatively, select (Settings) → General settings → Select language from Top menu.

Japanese display	Press T.A.
English display	Press 2 de.

• Display language is switched.

#### **Note**

• Depending on the FOMA card settings, language setting may change.

# **Making the Initial Settings**

The initial settings screen appears automatically when the power is turned on for the first time, and the following items can be set. (When the initial settings are complete, the stand-by display appears.)

Setting item	Details	Reference
Date settings	Sets the date and time on the FOMA terminal.	P. 48
Change security code	Registers the terminal security code required to use various functions on the FOMA terminal.	P. 145
Keypad sound	Sets whether or not to emit a sound when a key is pressed.	P. 122
Software update	Sets whether or not to initiate software update operations.	P. 598

• When items that have not been set remain, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.

1

## In stand-by, press (•) \*\* and set the date and time.



- Alternatively, select  $\frac{1}{2}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  *Initial settings* from Top menu.
- Use 24-hour format. When entering month, day and time, add *0* before numbers 1 through 9 (example: 01, 02, 03, etc.).

# Register a terminal security code (four to eight digits). (© P. 145)

The default setting is 0000.

# Set the keypad sound.

To sound the keypad	Press 1.4.
To make the keypad silent	Press 2 4.

Software update confirmation screen appears.



## Select Yes and press .

• Software update starts and checks to see if Software update is necessary. (@P. 597)

#### Note

• Set date and time from 00:00 January 1, 2000 to 23:59 December 31, 2099.

#### Canceling the initial settings

• Press while setting. The date and time are set even if canceled.

## **Date Settings**

## **Setting the Date and Time**

Set the date and time on the FOMA terminal. The date and time can be set during a call.

1

## In stand-by, press ● 3 ﷺ B 📆 .



- Alternatively, select \( \frac{\chi}{\chi} \) (Settings) → General settings → Date settings from Top menu.
- To set during a call, press ●3.

# Enter date/time and press .

- The date and time are set.
- Press and stand-by reappears.
- Use 24-hour format. When entering month, day and time, add 0 before numbers 1 through 9 (example: 01, 02, 03, etc.).
- If you make a mistake, move the cursor using and re-enter.

#### **Note**

- Times appear in 24-hour format.
- The date and time that are set are saved even if the battery pack is removed, but if the battery pack remains removed for approximately two weeks or the battery remains empty, the settings may be reset.
   When this happens, set again after charging the battery.
- If the date and time are not set correctly, dates are not correctly recorded for Redial, Received calls, Record message (voice/video-phone calls), and camera image titles/shooting date. In addition, functions that use the clock, such as Auto power ON/OFF, Alarm, Schedule, Reserve TV Prog, SSL (authentication), i-αppli Auto start or starting i-αppliDX cannot be used properly.
- When date and time settings are reset, Auto disable for Manner mode is canceled.
- When Limit settings (PP P. 471) is set to Enable, security code is required to set date and time.
- When setting reset notification for Limit settings and the date is set to the following month or later, Reset time passed appears in stand-by.

### **Notify Caller ID**

# **Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party**

Default setting

Do not notify

Display your number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice/video-phone call.

• Handset number is important personal information. Be very careful about your caller ID setting.

Set whether or not to send your caller ID using the methods below.

	Method	Notify caller ID	Do not notify caller ID
To set up in advance	Notify caller ID (@P. 491).	Set Yes.	Set No.
To set up when making a call	Add <b>186</b> , <b>¥31#</b> , <b>184</b> , or <b>#31#</b> before a phone number.	Add 186 or ¥31#.	Add <b>184</b> or <b>#31#</b> .
	Enter the phone number and select a sub menu (PP P. 56).	Press (Send own no.).	Press 2 [No caller ID].

Specifications made when making a call take priority over the Notify caller ID setting. If no specifications are
made when a call is made, the Notify caller ID setting is followed.

#### **Note**

- If you hear guidance requesting to send the caller ID, first make the Notify caller ID setting and then call again.
- The Notify caller ID function appears only on compatible phone devices.

### **Own Number**

# **Checking Your Phone Number**

It is possible to check your own phone number (Own number).



In stand-by, press • Ore.



- Alternatively, select  $\{i \in Settings\} \rightarrow Own \ number \ from Top \ menu.$
- Your phone number appears.
- If phonebook PIM is locked, Security code? appears. Enter the terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (•).
- To check personal information other than your phone number, press (
   [Details], enter current terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (
- Refer to P. 464 for details on saving or changing owner information.



# **Calling/Receiving**

■ Making Calls	
Making Calls	52
Switching from Voice Call to Video-phone	
Redialing Previously Called Numbers	<redial>55</redial>
• Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call	Add 186/184>56
• Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations	< Pause Dial>57
Making International Calls	<world call="">58</world>
Making Calls with Sub Address Set	<sub address="">60</sub>
• Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically	<reconnect control="">61</reconnect>
Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly	<noise reduction="">61</noise>
Using Handset in a Car	< Hands-free > 61
■ Answering Calls	
• Answering Calls	62
Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key	<any answer="" key="">64</any>
Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls	<close operation="">65</close>
Using Received Calls	<received calls="">66</received>
Adjusting the Volume During a Call	<earpiece volume="">68</earpiece>
■When Calls Cannot Be Answered/Could Not Be Answered	ered
Placing Calls on Hold	On Hold>68
Setting On Hold Tone	<on hold="" tone="">69</on>
Setting Hold Tone	<hold tone="">69</hold>
Not Receiving Calls While Driving	
Checking Missed Calls	
<ul><li>Recording Messages when Calls Cannot be Answered</li></ul>	<record message="">72</record>
<ul> <li>Recording Messages when Incoming Calls Cannot be Answer</li> </ul>	red <quick message="">75</quick>
<ul> <li>Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos</li> </ul>	
	Messages or Voice Memos>75

# **Making Calls**

Check that there are sufficient battery and signal levels.



## In stand-by, dial the phone number starting with the area code.



- Always dial the area code, even when the number is in the same area.
  Dial up to 80 digits. When the number exceeds 13 digits, it appears on two lines.
  When the number exceeds 26 digits, the last 26 digits appear in two lines.
- Press  $\bigcirc$  (for 1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow$  enter other party's number. International (+) When + is entered, the phone number after + is called. Mobile phone Enter other party's number (090-XXXX-XXXX. 080-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits). PHS Enter other party's number (070-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits). When a mistake Press @ clr to erase the last digit. • Press @ cr 1+ seconds to erase all digits. is made while dialing (Stand-by reappears.) If is pressed and then the number is dialed, pressing @cr does not erase the digits. Press ... (Stand-by reappears.)

2

# n Press 🗐



When name and still picture are saved in the phonebook

- Unlike ordinary telephones, mobile phones send call tones in short beeps before the standard ring tone.
- Pappears during a voice call.
- Phone number and name appear if saved in phonebook. Image also appears if set in advance.
- When the other party is busy, there is a busy signal. Press to disconnect and try again later.
- When short beeps sound during the call, the battery level is low. The call
  disconnects in approximately 20 seconds. End the call and recharge the battery.
- When a guidance message plays requesting caller ID, the other party has Caller ID Request Service set to Activate. Set caller ID and call again.
   (P. 49, P. 56)

# 3

#### Press after call.

When Assistant View is active during a call (☼ P. 430), press 
 and to end Assistant View and press
 again to end call.

## Checking the signal status

Approximate signal status appears.



- The call may be interrupted even when i appears and the signal is strong.
- When I appears, the handset is in Self mode (IFP. 152). While
  in Self mode, the handset cannot make/receive calls, send/receive
  i-mode mail or SMS, receive Message R/F, use i-mode functions or
  use Ir exchange/remote control.

- Calls can be made even when steps 1 and 2 are reversed. If no operations are performed for five seconds
  after dialing, the call is made. When a mistake is made while dialing, press to disconnect and call
  again.
- If the Close operation (P P. 65) is set to Finish call, calls can be disconnected by closing the handset.

#### **Note**

- Enter 80 digits or more when sending a message using touch-tone signals (©FP. 57). (Deletes entered
  digits from the beginning.)
- During a call, approximate call duration appears on the screen.
   When the call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the display resets to 0:00.
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after continuous use. This is not a malfunction.
- Calls cannot be made if no FOMA card is inserted.
- Do not cover the internal antenna area when making a call.

## **Related Operations**

#### Make calls from viewer position

- 1 To use Received calls, press 2.
  - To use Redial: Press
  - To use phonebook: Press (•) (shutter) 

     ↓ (phonebook) 

     ♠ (shutter).
- 2 Select phone number and press ⊙ (shutter) ▶ ⊙ (shutter) [Phone].
- 3 To disconnect, press (cis) for 1+ seconds.

#### Use hands-free <Hands-free>

During a voice call, press for 1+ seconds.

- In viewer position: During a voice call, press (i) (left guidance).
- To adjust the earpiece volume: Press (\*) or (.).
- To disable: Press for 1+ seconds.

## Place calls on hold <Hold active call>

- 1 During a voice call, press 1.3.
  - In viewer position: During a voice call, press ⊙ (shutter) ▶ Hold Active Call ▶ ⊙ (shutter).
- 2 To resume call, press [a] [Release].

## Make another call during a voice call <3-way calling>

- 1 During a voice call, dial new party's phone number ▶ **Gard**.
  - During a call, press 🖹 to access the phonebook.
  - To switch calls: Press 2 3.
- 2 To disconnect current call, press .
  - To switch to the other call: After ring tone sounds, press .

#### Note

#### **Using Hands-free**

- pears during hands-free operation.
- Speak from between 20 and 40 cm away. When the surroundings are noisy, the voice may cut in and out and the call may not be satisfactory.
- When using hands-free outdoors or in a location where surroundings are noisy, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (PP P. 478).
- Cannot be operated when receiving a call.
- Increasing earpiece volume may make conversation difficult. In such cases, press (,) and lower the volume.
- Hands-free is disabled when call ends.

#### Hold

- The hold tone (PP. 69) plays through the speaker.
- Hold tone does not play on the caller's side when Manner mode is set.
- The other party hears the hold tone (PP. 69), and the call is placed on hold.
- If the Close operation (PP P. 65) is set to Hold, calls are put on hold when the FOMA terminal is closed.
- Calls stay on hold even when the FOMA terminal is closed.

## **Related Operations**

#### **Note**

#### **Call Waiting Service**

 Subscribe to Call Waiting Service and set to Activate to answer voice calls received during a voice call. Refer to P. 487 for details.

## Switching from Voice Call to Video-phone

#### Switch between voice call and video-phone for placed calls.

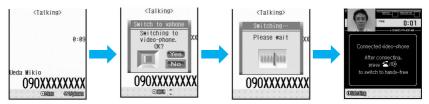
- Indicate V-phone (PP. 94) must be activated for the other party's FOMA terminal.
- Received calls cannot be switched. Have the other party switch.
- If the other party is using a terminal that supports switching calls, V-phone appears on the lower right of the display and call can be switched. (As of May 2005, switching is only available for 901iS series models.)



## Press [a] [V-phone] during a voice call, select Yes and press (•).



- While switching, Please wait appears and a guidance message is played.
- Call switches to Video-phone and your image is sent to the other party.
- Select **No** and the voice call screen reappears.
- Switch between voice call and Video-phone is possible as many times as necessary during a call. When switched, call duration resets to 0 seconds.
- The other party's camera image does not appear if the other party selects to not show image.



- Voice call in progress cannot be switched to a video-phone call while another screen is displayed from the In-call menu or Assistant View, or the call is on hold.
- Switching takes approximately five seconds. Switching may take more time depending on signal status.
- Charges are not assessed when Switching... appears.
- When performing packet transmissions, disconnect packet transmission before switching to Video-phone.
- When the other party is performing packet transmission, Unable to switch appears and voice call continues.
- Call may not be switched to Video-phone and may be disconnected depending on signal status.
- When Hands-free call in progress is switched to a video-phone call, the call remains hands-free.
- Hands-free is not available while switching a call. Set Hands-free after the call is switched to video-phone. (EPP. 81)
- Refer to P. 82 for details about switching from Video-phone to voice call.
- Calls received with Call waiting cannot be switched from voice call to video-phone call.
- When Camera image sending (PP P. 89) is set to OFF and the caller switches the voice call to a videophone call, set image or Chara-den is sent to the other party.

# **Redialing Previously Called Numbers**

The FOMA terminal keeps a record of the 30 most recent calls made (Redial). Retrieve these phone numbers to make calls.

- When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.
- If the same number was called multiple times, only the most recent is recorded.



## In stand-by, press (→) (□).



Redial list

Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent.

 Name appears if saved in phonebook. If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.

#### **Redial types**

- 3: Video-phone call
- (2): International call

No display: Voice call

To show the redial details screen	Enter phone number $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ .
To switch to the received calls list	Press €.



## Select phone number and dial.

To make voice calls	Press 🐠.
To make video-phone calls	Press $\bullet \to \widehat{\bullet}$ [V-phone].

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.
- Phone numbers called with 184 and 186 are recorded as separate calls.

#### **Note**

- If call is switched from voice call to Video-phone, the type of Redial is decided by the original call type.
- When the redial display for Show call/received (PP. 155) is set to OFF, the history is saved but Redial
  does not appear.
- Record date does not appear properly if date on FOMA terminal is not set properly.

#### Operations from the sub menu

- When is pressed from the redial list or details screen, a sub menu appears with the following operations.
- Items that cannot be accessed appear in gray.

#### Redial sub menu

Items in the redial list screen	Items in the redial details screen	Function
Add to phonebook	Add to phonebook	Saves phone number in the phonebook.
2 Delete	2 Delete one	Deletes a saved phone number. (PP P. 56)
_	No caller ID	Does not send caller ID when calling.
_	4 Send own no.	Sends caller ID when calling.
_	5 Select prefix	Adds a prefix number. (© P. 58)
_	Delete added #	Deletes prefix number.
_	7 Int'l call	Adds an international prefix set in IDD prefix setting. (@P. 59)
_	3 Sel Multi number	Selects when using Multi number. (PP P. 496)
_	9 V-phone image	Selects image to send when making video-phone call. (貸 P. 88)
① Compose message	Compose message	Composes a message. If the mail address is not saved in the phonebook, the outgoing number is entered for the address.
Create schedule		Saves phone number and redial date in the schedule.
_	# Dialing speed	Switches between 32K and 64K transmission speed for video-phone calls. (126 P. 93)

## **Related Operations**

#### Delete redials < Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press () (□) > select phone number > (□) 2 ₪ (1.3.).
  - To delete all redials: Press 2 2 2.
- 2 Select Yes ▶ (•).

#### Note

#### **Deleting redials**

- Redials are not erased when the handset is turned off. Delete redials so other people cannot see them.
- Redials are reset when the following operations are performed.
  - Keypad dial lock (②P. 154) Phonebook PIM lock (②P. 153) Delete user data (③P. 481)

#### Add 186/184

# Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call

Select to send or to not send your phone number to the other party.

## To not send caller ID

Enter phone number, press 2 and press 4 [Phone] or 1 [V-phone].

## To send caller ID

Enter phone number, press and press [Phone] or [V-phone].

#### **Note**

- Make calls by setting caller ID from sub menus in the phonebook, Redial or received calls history details screen.
- Enter 186 before the phone number and press 2 to not send caller ID.
- If 186 is selected from prefix selection after entering phone number, caller ID is sent.
- Enter 184 before the phone number and press a 3 to send caller ID.
- If 184 is selected from prefix selection after entering phone number, caller ID is not sent.
- Phone numbers called with 184 and 186 are recorded as separate calls.

#### When a call is received

 Refer to "Answering Calls" on P. 62 for details on when receiving calls from callers with caller ID and without caller ID.

## **Related Operations**

### Add 186 or \( \text{31#} \) (Notify caller ID)

Press 14 8 4 6 5 or ★ 2 3 5 1 4 # 7 ▶ phone number ▶ € [Phone] or € [V-phone].

#### Add 184 or #31# (To not notify caller ID)

Press 1. B. 4. or # 3. 1. ## > phone number > @ [Phone] or [V-phone].

#### **Note**

#### Sending caller ID for a single call

• This function is available regardless of the network service's caller ID setting.

# **Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations**

Use pagers\* and services such as ticket reservations and bank balance inquiries, with simple operations by saving the combinations of phone numbers and messages (numbers) in the phonebook.

## Saving Touch-tone Data to the Phonebook

- I Enter phone number in phonebook (PPP P. 98), press ( and enter the number to send.
  - Press (\*) to enter a pause P.
  - Enter the number and press (\*) to add more numbers.
- Press and enter the other phonebook items.

   Refer to P. 98 and P. 99 for details.

## **Sending Messages Using Touch-tone Signals**

- Make a call from the phonebook with a touch-tone signal.
  - Refer to P. 108 to P. 111 for details.
    When the call is connected, the numbers after *P* appear on the screen.
- Press (i) [PB send] at the appropriate time to send.
  - The numbers after **P** are sent with touch-tone signals.
  - When multiple numbers separated by **P** are saved, press (\*) [PB send] for each number.
  - Some equipment may not be able to receive signals properly.

## Sending Numbers Using the Dial Keys During a Call

Send touch-tone signals one at a time during a call by pressing the dial keys.

Make a call and when the call is connected, press the corresponding numbers on the keypad.

• The number is sent as a touch-tone signal.

<sup>\*</sup> As of January 2001, DoCoMo paging service is named "QUICKCAST".

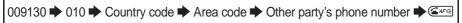
# **Making International Calls**

## "WORLD CALL" is DoCoMo's International Calling Service

WORLD CALL is an international calling service available from DoCoMo mobile phones.

\* "WORLD CALL" is registered when FOMA services are registered. (Registration for "WORLD CALL" is optional.)

## **Calling Method**



- \* The calling method shown above can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
- ※ For area codes that start with a 0, omit the 0 when dialing. (However, include the 0 when calling Italy.)
- Call to about 220 countries and regions worldwide.
- "WORLD CALL" charges are billed with the monthly mobile phone charges.
- Check an estimate of the most recent call duration on the display. (PP P. 470)
- When using phonebook, Received calls or Redial, 009130010 is automatically added to make calls.

When calling specific overseas 3G mobile phone customers, use International video-phone by making the call in video-phone mode after the dialing method above.

- Refer to the DoCoMo web page for information on available countries and providers.
- Depending on the other party's video-phone terminal, the image that appears on the FOMA terminal may be distorted, or connection may not be possible.

#### The change in procedures for making international calls

Because "MY LINE" service is not available for mobile communications, WORLD CALL also cannot be used with "MY LINE". With the offering of the "MY LINE" service, the dialing procedures for international calls have changed. The former dialing procedure (procedure listed above without "010") cannot be used.

- ※ For further details on WORLD CALL, contact number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- ※ To make an international call through a company other than DoCoMo, contact the representative companies directly for instructions.

# Making International Calls with Simple Operations <Select Prefix>

Default setting
World call
[009130-010]

Enter only the country code, area code and the phone number to make international calls.



• Prefix selection screen appears.



## Press 1.5 [009130-010] and 4.5.

- To make an international call through a company other than DoCoMo, select a saved prefix.
- Call is placed to phone number entered.

## Setting International prefix

Save up to five prefixes for international calling. The number is added when making calls from phonebook, Received calls or Redial.

In stand-by, press ( ) 5 ( ) ( ) select ------ to save a new number and press ( ).



 Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Phone settings → Int'l prefix → number from Top menu.

To change a saved number	Enter number $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To delete a saved number	Enter number $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

# Enter prefix and press .

- Press Of for 1+ seconds to enter +.
- Up to 16 digits can be entered.
- Numbers cannot be added, changed or deleted while Keypad dial lock is set (FP P. 154).

#### Note

• When Reset settings (P. 480) is performed, the only available prefix is 009130-010.

## **Related Operations**

Make a call from the phonebook or Received calls

# Setting Numbers Other than WORLD CALL <IDD Prefix Setting>

Default setting
World call
[009130-010]

Save up to three names and numbers for the international prefix other than WORLD CALL.

In stand-by, press ● 5 毫 全國 , select ------ to save a new number and press ●.



Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Phone settings → Int'l calling → IDD prefix setting → number from Top menu.

To change a saved number	Enter number $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To delete a saved number	Enter number $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \nearrow \bigcirc \nearrow \bigcirc \nearrow \bigcirc$ .
To set Auto prefix	Enter number $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \stackrel{\bigcirc}{\mathscr{B}}$ .
	appears to the right of the name.
	<ul> <li>Repeat the operations to disable Auto prefix.</li> </ul>

# Tenter name and press .

• Enter up to 14 single-byte characters.

# Enter prefix and press .

- Press Of for 1+ seconds to enter +.
- Up to 16 digits can be entered.
- Numbers cannot be saved, changed or deleted while Keypad dial lock is set (127 P. 154).

#### Note

• When Reset settings (P. 480) is performed, the only available prefix is 009130-010.

## Adding international prefix and making an international call <Int'l call>

In stand-by, enter the country code, area code, other party's phone number and press 6.

• International calls screen appears.

# Select prefix and press •.

• To delete prefix number, press <u>\$\begin{array}{c} 5 \\ \tilde{\tilde{\tilde{L}}} \end{array}.</u>

# Adding International Prefix Automatically <a href="#">Auto Assist Set></a>

Default setting
Auto prefix

Set to automatically add prefixes set in IDD prefix setting to phone numbers when making international calls.

1

In stand-by, press • 5 % (\*\*\*) and 1. [Auto prefix].

- Alternatively, select \(\infty\) (Settings) → Phone settings → Int'l calling → Auto assist set from Top menu.
- Auto prefix is set.

## Setting Auto prefix

Enter + to automatically add international prefix for international calls.

• Press Of 1+ seconds to enter +.

phone num

In stand-by, enter +, the country code, area code, other party's phone number and press .

2

Select Yes and press •.

International call is made.

#### **Sub Address**

# Making Calls with Sub Address Set

Default setting

ON

Make calls with sub address set. Using sub address allows calls to be made to specific terminals when calling an ISDN terminal.

 A sub address is a number assigned to a terminal when there are multiple ISDN terminals for a single ISDN line. It is used in selecting contents for M-Stage V-Live.

1

In stand-by, press ( 5 % 0 % and 1.% [ON].

- Alternatively, select \(\frac{\chi}{\chi}\) (Settings) → Phone settings → Sub address from Top menu.
- Specify sub address.

## Making calls with sub address set

• Ask the other party for their phone number and sub address.

In stand-by, enter phone number, \*\*\*, sub address and press \*\*\*.

#### Note

If X is entered at the beginning of the phone number or after 184, 186, X31#, #31# or a prefix, the numbers
after X are recognized as the phone number.

## **Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically**

Default setting
Alarm on (high)

Calls may be disconnected in areas with weak signals such as inside tunnels or areas surrounded by buildings. If signal strength immediately becomes better, the call is automatically reconnected. An alarm sounds when reconnecting.

- Alarm settings are Alarm on (high), Alarm on (low) and No alarm.
- Reconnect control is also available for video-phone calls.

1

## In stand-by, press ( ) 5 % 2 % (1.%) and select an alarm tone.

Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → Phone settings → Alarm during call → Reconnect from Top menu.

To set alarm to high	Press 1.4.
To set alarm to low	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
To set alarm to off	Press 3.

#### Note

- Amount of time that can elapse to reconnect varies depending on signal strength. The estimated time is approximately ten seconds.
- The other party hears no sound until the call is reconnected (up to ten seconds). The call is charged during this time.

#### **Noise Reduction**

# **Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly**

Default setting ON

Reduce the surrounding noise to make conversations clearer.

Noise reduction is also available for video-phone calls.



## In stand-by, press • 5 % 1.% and 1.% [ON].

- Alternatively, select  $\mathcal{X}_{\mathbf{i}}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  *Phone settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Noise reduction* from Top menu.
- Noise reduction is set.

#### **Note**

- It is recommended that this function be kept set to ON.
- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

#### Hands-free

## **Using Handset in a Car**

Use the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) to connect hands-free devices such as car navigation to the FOMA terminal, and make/receive voice/video-phone calls from the device. This is an optional function that will be available when compatible equipment is released.

- As of May 2005, compatible equipment has not been released.
- Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details.

- Functions such as display settings and ring tones follow FOMA terminal settings for incoming calls.
- If hands-free device has sound enabled, device plays ring tone even when FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or Silent.
- While in Drive mode, functions follow FOMA terminal settings for incoming calls.
- When a video-phone call is made from the phonebook or Redial, transmission speed follows device settings. When speed is not set, video-phone calls are made at 64K.
- When video-phone calls are made or received from a hands-free device, substitute image is sent to the other party.

#### Note

- When FOMA terminal sound is enabled while connected to a device, Close operation is followed if handset
  is closed during a call. If device sound is enabled, call continues when FOMA terminal is closed regardless
  of Close operation.
- Record message settings are followed even when handset is connected to the device.
- Some handset functions may not be available depending on device characteristics and specifications.

## **Answering Calls**

When receiving a voice call, verify using ring tone, picture light/called LED, vibrator, etc.

When a voice call is received, the ring tone sounds and the picture light/called LED flashes.



When name and still picture are saved in the phonebook

- When caller ID is received, the phone number appears. If the other party's name and phone number are saved in the phonebook, they appear on the screen.
- When Picture call (still picture or movie/i-motion) is saved in the phonebook (EP. 100), the name, phone number and image appear on the screen.
   However, they do not appear if the caller does not send caller ID.
- When the caller does not send caller ID, one of the following messages appear.

User unset : When the caller wishes to withhold caller ID Payphone : When the call is made from a payphone

**Not support**: When the call is received from abroad or from a landline phone

via various transfer service that does not support caller ID (Depending on the phone company, caller ID may appear.)

To stop the ring tone	Normal position	Press ## or • for 1+ seconds.
(Quick silent)	Viewer position	Press        (shutter) for 1+ seconds.

2

## Press AFG.

- Speak to the caller.
- If (a) is pressed while receiving a call, the incoming call menu appears. Select from Reject calls, Record message, Forward calls and Auto forward.
- When Any key answer is set to ON, answer the call by pressing any key other than ●□, #□ or ●.
   (☼) P. 64)

3

Press 🖭 after call.

### In viewer position

## Receiving calls in viewer position



- 1 When receiving a call, press (i) (left guidance) [€].
  - Guide notices differ in viewer position.
- 2 When disconnecting, press (c) for 1+ seconds.

#### Note

- Calls to the FOMA terminal cannot be made from phones with no direct outside line, such as an internal building phone.
- Set mute seconds (@P. 161) to delay ring tone sounding until set number of seconds pass when received from an unregistered number or a number without caller ID. Set Reject unknown (@P. 161) to prevent callers not registered in Phonebook from being connected.
- Save specified phonebook in a list and set Reject/Accept calls. (PP. 157 to P. 160)
- Receive notification of missed calls with Voice mail notification (PP 486) when the handset is turned off
  or outside the service area. An SMS is received after returning to the service area or when power is turned
  on

#### When the handset beeps during a call indicating an incoming call

- When any of services such as Voice Mail, Call Forwarding or Call Waiting is subscribed to and set to
   Activate, the following operations can be performed when the handset beeps during a call.
  - Voice Mail Service . . . . . . Press ( ) 🕮 to forward the call to the Voice Mail Service center. ( 🕼 P. 484)
  - Call Forwarding Service. . Press ( ) 3 to forward the call to the set forward number. ( Press ( ) 3 to forward the call to the set forward number.
  - Call Waiting Service. . . . . Put current call on hold and answer the incoming call. (©FP. 487)

#### Key operations when receiving a call

Style	On Hold (@P. 68)	Quick silent	Record message (© P. 72)	Reject calls/ Record message/ Forward calls/ Auto forward	Manner mode (ぽ P. 126)
Normal position	<b>≅</b> PMR nt.0	# # or • (for 1+ seconds)	(for 1+ seconds)	•	## (for 1+ seconds)
Viewer position	(right guidance)	(for 1+ seconds)	(for 1+ seconds)	(shutter)	_

 If a video-phone call is received during a voice call, Rcv v-phone call? (Current call will be disconnected) appears. Select Yes and press (1) to answer.

#### When a call is received during editing

- If a call is received while editing phonebook or reply messages, editing is temporarily suspended. When
  this happens, edited data is automatically saved. When the conversation is finished, the screen before the
  call was received reappears and editing can be resumed. However, characters that are in the process of
  being converted and not confirmed may not be saved.
- If spressed when returned to editing screen, Your changes will be lost. End anyway? appears.
   Select Yes and press to return to stand-by. Data being edited is deleted.

## Switching from Voice Call to Video-Phone and Receiving Calls

Caller (other party) selects to switch from voice call to Video-phone.

- Recipient cannot switch the call. (As of May 2005, switching is only available for calls between 901iS series models.)
- Indicate V-phone (PP. 94) must be activated for the recipient's FOMA terminal.

# 1

## Caller switches to Video-phone during voice call.



- After message is played, Show own image to other person? appears.
- When the caller switches to voice call during Video-phone call, a message is played before switching.

# 7

## Select Yes and press .



- While switching, a guidance message is played.
- Your image is sent to the other party.
- Select *No* to not send own image. *Camera Off* appears on the other party's screen.

#### Note

- Switching takes approximately five seconds. While switching, the screen on the right appears. Switching may take more time depending on signal status.
- When performing packet transmissions, disconnect packet transmission before switching to Video-phone.



 Refer to P. 86 for details about switching from video-phone to voice call and receiving calls.



## **Any Key Answer**

# **Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key**

Default setting ON

Set to enable answering calls with  $O^{\infty}$ , \* and 1.3 to 9.3.

- Other than the dial keys, incoming calls can also be received with (a), (a), (b), (c), (c) or (acr).
- Video-phone can be answered only with and or a.



## In stand-by, press • 5 % 6 % and 1.% [ON].

- ullet Alternatively, select  $\fill\ (Settings) o extit{Phone settings} o extit{Any key answer} ext{ from Top menu.}$
- Any key answer is set.

## Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting Finish call

Set FOMA terminal operations for when closed during a call.
Select *Hold sound* (hold tone sounds), *Finish call* (call ends) or *Silent* (call is put on hold without hold tone).



## In stand-by, press (a) 5 ½ 5 ½ and select a close operation.

• Alternatively, select  $\{ \}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Phone settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Close operation** from Top menu.

To set to Hold sound	Press 1.4.
To set to Finish Call	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
To set to Silent	Press 3

Close operation is set.

- When set to *Hold sound*, hold tone plays. Hold tone can be changed (PP. 69). For video-phone calls, the image set in Hold image (PP. 90) is sent to the other party.
- When set to *Silent*, hold tone (@P. 69) does not play. For video-phone calls, if the Substitute image
   (@P. 90) is a still picture, the still picture is sent to the other party. Chara-den is sent to the other party if set.
- Open the FOMA terminal to resume the call.
- If a device such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected, the call can
  continue while the handset is closed, regardless of Hold sound, Silent, or Finish call settings.
  - For video-phone calls, the set substitute image (②F. 90) is sent to the other party. Open the FOMA terminal to send camera image to the other party. (②F. 88)
- If the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call is mute when set
  to Silent and Finish call, and put on hold when set to Hold sound. The call resumes when the earphone/
  microphone is reconnected or the handset is opened.

# **Using Received Calls**

The FOMA terminal keeps a record (Received calls) of the 30 most recent calls received. Retrieve these phone numbers to make calls.

When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.

## **Making Calls from Received Calls**

## In stand-by, press (→□).



Received calls list

- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent.
- Name appears if saved in phonebook. If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.

#### Types of history

- 2: Calls that were answered or put on hold
- : Calls that left a recorded message
- a: Calls that were not answered or were forwarded to a forwarding number or Voice Mail Service center, calls that were rejected because of Reject calls (P. 158), Accept calls (P. 157), Reject unknown (P. 161), Reject by reason of non-disclosure (PP. 160) and Drive mode (PP. 70).

#### Types of calls

: Video-phone B: 64K data communications

International call No icon: Voice call

When <i>Missed call</i> appears in stand-by	In stand-by, press ●.  The most recent Received calls appear. (灣 P. 71)
To display received calls details screen	Select phone number $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ .
To switch to redial list screen	Press O.

## Select phone number and dial.

To make voice calls	Press 🖛.
To make video-phone calls	Press $\bullet \rightarrow \bigcirc$ [V-phone].

• Call is placed to phone number displayed.

- Even if a call is switched from voice call to Video-phone, received call type depends on the way the call was answered.
- When phonebook PIM is locked (PP. 153) or Delete user data (PP. 481) is performed, Redial, Received calls and Received/Sent mail histories are cleared. However, calls made and received after setting are saved in Redial and Received calls and can be used to make calls. Calls cannot be made from Received calls while Keypad dial lock is set (PP. 154).
- When phonebook PIM is locked, only the phone number appears. When phonebook PIM is not locked, the name registered in the phonebook appears.
- When Set mute seconds (PP P. 161) is set to ON and Missed call history is set to OFF and a call is received, if the call is disconnected during mute seconds duration or is disconnected due to weak signal strength, the number does not appear in Received calls. Press (## ###) in the Received calls list and perform Show all to display such calls.
- When the call could not be answered, press in the Received calls details screen, select Ringing time and press (•) to view the call ring time. A ring time of 0:00 is displayed when a call is rejected due to Accept/Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject by reason of non-disclosure and Drive mode settings. Ring time does not appear for items with **J** (a call that has been answered or disconnected while on hold).
- When a call is received from a caller using Dial-in, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may appear.
- When Show received calls (P. 155) is set to OFF, received calls do not appear.

#### Note

- Press in Received calls list to show Received messages list.
   Refer to P. 287 for screen layout and using the Received messages history.
- Received date will not appear properly if date on FOMA terminal is not set properly.

### Operations from the sub menu

- When in is pressed from the Received calls list or details screen, a sub menu appears with the following operations.
- Items that cannot be accessed appear in gray.

#### Received calls sub menu

Items from Received calls list	Items from Received calls details screen	Function
Add to phonebook	Add to phonebook	Saves phone number in the phonebook.
2 Delete	2 Delete one	Deletes a saved phone number.
_	No caller ID	Does not send caller ID when calling.
_	4 Send own no.	Sends caller ID when calling.
_	Select prefix	Adds a prefix number. (@P. 58)
_	1 Delete added #	Deletes prefix number.
_	7 Int'l call	Adds an international prefix set in IDD prefix setting. (© P. 59)
_	3 Sel Multi number	Selects when using Multi number. (127 P. 496)
_	9 V-phone image	Selects image to send when making video-phone call. (啶 P. 88)
① Compose message	① Compose message	Composes a message. If the mail address is not saved in the phonebook, the incoming number is entered for the address.
★ Create schedule	★ Create schedule	Saves phone number and received call date in the schedule.
Display all	<b>⊞</b> Display all	When Set mute seconds is set to <b>ON</b> and Show received calls is set to <b>OFF</b> , switch to view all calls or only certain calls when received calls are cut off during mute seconds duration. (Appears gray if no received calls that apply are present.)
_	Ringing time	Displays ring time for a missed call.
_	■ Dialing speed	Switches between 32K or 64K transmission speed for video-phone calls. (12 P. 93)

## **Related Operations**

## Delete Received calls <Delete>

- - To delete all Received calls: Press @ 2 2 2.
- 2 Select Yes ▶ .

#### Note

## **Deleting Received calls**

- Received calls are not erased when the handset is turned off. Delete Received calls so that other people
  cannot see them.
- Received calls are reset when following operations are performed.
  - Keypad dial lock (ੴ P. 154) Phonebook PIM lock (ੴ P. 153) Delete user data (ੴ P. 481)

# Adjusting the Volume During a Call

Volume 3

Adjust the earpiece volume to five different levels.

- Volume cannot be adjusted when receiving a call.
- Refer to P. 122 for details on adjusting earpiece volume when in stand-by.



# During a call, press • or •.



• During a video-phone call, press • 2 &.

Earpiece volume

2

Press (\*) (louder) or (\*) (softer) to adjust and press (\*).

### Note

• Volume remains at adjusted level even when handset is turned off or battery pack is removed.

#### On Hold

# **Placing Calls on Hold**

Place calls on hold which cannot be answered immediately.

• The other party is charged for the call while on hold.



## While ring tone is sounding, press .



- In viewer position, press (a) (right guidance) [ a) or (a) for 1+ seconds.
- A series of beeps sound and the call is placed on hold.
- The other party hears the hold tone (PP. 69), and the call is placed on hold.
- When the other party disconnects the call while on hold, the call is saved in Received calls.

7

Press 🖛 to answer.

#### Note

Beeps do not sound while in Manner mode.

# **Setting On Hold Tone**

Set the on hold guidance that the other party hears. Select On hold tone 1 (Japanese), On hold tone 2 (English) or recorded voice memo.

On hold tone 1 ... ただいま電話に出ることができません。そのままお待ちになるか、 しばらくたってからおかけ直しください。

On hold tone 2 ... I can't take your call now. Please hold the line for a moment or call me back later, thank you.



## In stand-by, press (a) 1. B B A and select an on hold tone.



Alternatively, select \(\infty\) (Settings) → Sound → Hold/On hold tone → On hold tone from Top menu.

To set the guidance to Japanese	Press 1.4.
To set the guidance to English	Press 2 de la company.
To set recorded voice memo	Press $3 \stackrel{?}{\Rightarrow} 2 \stackrel{?}{\Rightarrow} \rightarrow \text{memo} \rightarrow \stackrel{\bullet}{\Rightarrow} [OK].$
To set after recording voice memo	Press $3 \frac{1}{2} $ → record →
To set Security to voice memos	$ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$

 Select On hold tone 1 or On hold tone 2 and press (a) [Play]. Press (a) [Stop] to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

#### **Note**

 When a recorded voice memo is set as On hold tone, setting returns to default if the voice memo is deleted.

#### **Hold Tone**

# **Setting Hold Tone**

Default setting
Hold melody 1

Set the hold tone to *Hold melody 1*, *Hold melody 2* or recorded voice memo for when the other party is on hold.

• The hold tone plays at the same volume as the earpiece volume.



## In stand-by, press (1.4) B (2.4) and select a hold tone.



Alternatively, select \(\int\_i^1\) (Settings) → Sound → Hold/On hold tone → Hold tone from Top menu.

To set Hold melody 1	Press 1.3.
To set Hold melody 2	Press 2 de la companya della company
To set recorded voice memo	Press $3 \stackrel{?}{=} 2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow \text{memo} \rightarrow \stackrel{?}{=} [OK].$
To set after recording voice memo	Press $3 \stackrel{?}{\cancel{\&}} 1 \stackrel{?}{\cancel{\&}} \rightarrow \text{record} \rightarrow \bigcirc \text{[Stop]} \rightarrow \text{[2 \stackrel{?}{\cancel{\&}}]} \rightarrow \text{memo} \rightarrow \bigcirc \text{[i]} \text{[OK]}.$
To set Security to voice memos	Press $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ (for 1+ seconds) $\rightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc $

 Select Hold melody 1 or Hold melody 2 and press (1) [Play]. Press (1) [Stop] to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

#### Note

If a recorded voice memo is set as Hold tone, setting returns to default if the voice memo is deleted.

# **Not Receiving Calls While Driving**

Drive mode (guidance for when driving) is an automatic answering service used to ensure driving safety. When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that Drive mode is enabled and the call is disconnected. When a video-phone call is received, *Driving mode* appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected.

- Drive mode can be enabled/disabled only in stand-by. Drive mode can also be enabled/disabled when outside
  the service area.
- Calls can be made normally while in Drive mode.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.



# In stand-by, press \*\* for 1+ seconds.

• Set appears and Drive mode is set ( appears).

# **Disabling Drive Mode**



In stand-by, press 🖅 for 1+ seconds when Drive mode is enabled.

• Disabled appears and Drive mode is disabled.

#### When Drive mode is set

Ring tone does not sound when a voice/video-phone call is received. *Missed call* appears and the call is saved in Received calls. (126 P. 66)

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that Drive mode is enabled and the call is
  disconnected. When a video-phone call is received, *Driving mode* appears on the caller's screen and the call is
  disconnected. If the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal, the guidance for outside service area plays.
- FOMA terminal will not vibrate when i-mode mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received even if Vibration mode is set. Although ring tone does not sound, message is received automatically, and received mail icon appears.
- When data transmission is received, vibrator, ring tone and called LED do not activate.

### When Voice Mail Service is set to Activate while Drive mode is set

When a voice call is received, ring tone does not sound and caller is connected to Voice Mail Service center. The call is saved in Received calls. ((27) P. 66)

- A message indicating that the caller will be connected to the Voice Mail Service center is played and is
  automatically connected to the center. (Message is not heard when Voice Mail Service ring time is set to 0
  seconds and the call is immediately connected to the center. Call is not saved in Received calls.)
- When a video-phone call is received, the caller is not connected to the Voice Mail Service center and the call
  is disconnected.

# When Call Forwarding Service is set to Activate while Drive mode is set

Call is automatically forwarded to the set destination. The call is saved in Received calls. (1267 P. 66)

- A message indicating that the caller will be forwarded is played and is automatically forwarded to the set
  destination. (Message is not heard when Call Forwarding Service ring time is set to 0 seconds and the call is
  immediately connected to the destination. Call is not saved in Received calls.)
- When a video-phone call is received, call is forwarded immediately. However, if the forwarding number is not
  a 3G-324M compliant video-phone (PP 78), the call ends.

# When Call Waiting Service is set to Activate while Drive mode is set

Ring tone does not sound when a voice/video-phone call is received during a call. The call is saved in Received calls. (

P. 66)

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that Drive mode is enabled and the call is disconnected.
- When a video-phone call is received, *Driving mode* appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected

# When Caller ID Request Service is set to Activate while Drive mode is set

When a voice call or video-phone call that is User unset is received, the call is not connected and is not saved in Received calls. When a voice call or a video-phone call that is not User unset is received, the ring tone does not sound but the call is saved in Received calls.

- Callers with no caller ID hear a message indicating that Caller ID Request is enabled and the voice call is disconnected. Callers with caller ID hear a message indicating that Drive mode is enabled and the voice call is disconnected.
- When a video-phone call that is User unset is received, *Failed to connect* appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected. When video-phone call that is not User unset is received, *Driving mode* appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected.

# When a call is received from a number registered in Nuisance Call Barring Service while Drive mode is set

When a voice/video-phone call is received, the call does not connect and the number is not saved in Received calls.

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that the call is rejected and the call is disconnected.
- When a video-phone call is received, Failed to connect appears on the caller's screen and the call is disconnected

#### Note

- This function cannot be used during data transmissions.
- Refer to P. 484 for Voice Mail Service, P. 488 for Call Forwarding Service, P. 487 for Call Waiting Service, P. 492 for Caller ID Request Service and P. 490 for Nuisance Call Barring Service.
- Remote lock all is available even while in Drive mode. Disconnect after Drive mode message starts. When set, beeping tone indicating All lock is heard instead of Drive mode guidance.
- If animated GIF or Flash movie is set as stand-by display, 😂 does not appear until animation is finished.
- Drive mode takes priority over Manner mode.
- If alarm time arrives while in Drive mode, alarm does not sound. Picture light and vibrator also do not activate.

#### Missed Calls

# **Checking Missed Calls**

If incoming call is not answered, Missed call and number of missed calls appear in stand-by (Missed calls display).

• When missed calls are checked, or @cull is pressed for 1+ seconds, Missed call disappears.



# When *Missed call* appears in stand-by, press (•).

- Received calls appears.
- appears next to missed calls.
- Press ( ) (→□) to also check Received calls. (② P. 66)

# Select phone number and press (•).

- Missed call details appear.
- Use the same operations as Received calls to make calls and check other entries in Received calls.

- When a call is received from a caller using Dial-in, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may appear.
- Calls cannot be checked while All lock (PP. 149) is enabled.

#### Checking missed calls with the vibrator

• In stand-by, press • (shutter) with the FOMA terminal closed to use the vibrator as an alert for missed calls, Record message, new mail, unread mail, mail held at the i-mode center and voice mail messages. If there are any, *Pattern 1* will activate twice. If there are none, *Pattern 2* will activate twice. (Refer to P. 123 for details on the vibrator. Not available in viewer position.)

#### **Record Message**

# Recording Messages when Calls Cannot be Answered

Set Record message to record messages when a call cannot be answered. When a voice call is received, a reply message is played and the caller's message is recorded. When a video-phone call is received, a reply image is sent and the caller's message and image are recorded.

- Record message is not available when FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area. This function is convenient when used in conjunction with Network Voice Mail Service.
- Record up to three Record messages for voice calls (about 15 seconds each). Voice memos recorded during
  a voice call or in stand-by are also included in these three Record messages for voice calls.
- Record up to two Record messages for video-phone calls (about 15 seconds each).
- The number of recorded messages appearing in stand-by is the total number of Record messages for voice/ video-phone calls.

# **Setting Record Message < Record Message>**

1

# In stand-by, press • 5 5 4 4 4 and 1.7 and 1.7 [ON].

Record message



- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Phone settings → Record message → Record message from Top menu.
- When a message is recorded, icons appear to show the number of messages.
   Example: (for one message), (for two messages), etc. When the fifth message is recorded, automatically disappears.
- When You already have 3 voice memos saved appears, three Record messages (voice call) and less than two Record messages (video-phone) have been recorded.
- When You already have 2 messages saved appears, less than three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (video-phone) have been recorded.
- When Unable to record anymore appears, three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (video-phone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and try again. (PP P. 75)

#### Note

- For Voice Mail Service, record up to 20 messages of three minutes each. (PP. 484)
- Refer to P. 465 for details on Voice memo during calls and in stand-by.
- If animated GIF or Flash movie is set as stand-by display, a does not appear until animation is finished.
- When Record message is not set, press for 1+ seconds when a call is received to record a message for that call. (Quick message) ( P P. 75)

# Disabling Record message

# In stand-by, press • 5 1 4 4 1 1 2 and 2 2 (OFF).

- Record message is disabled. Press 🖭 to return to stand-by and 🖺 disappears.
- When setting/disabling Record message in Manner mode, set in Manner mode settings (FP P. 126).

# **Recording Message**

# When a call is received, Record message is activated after set answering duration (PPP. 74).



Voice call reply message



Video-phone reply message

- A reply message is played when a voice call is received.
- When a video-phone call is received, after Preparing message. Please wait appears, the reply image for Record message (video-phone) appears.
- The caller sees a reply image and hears a message.

To answer a call while the reply message is playing		Press @AFG.
To answer a video- phone call while the	To send own camera image	Press 📵 [V-phone].
reply message is playing	To send substitute image	Press ♠ Press ♠ Press ♠ Press ♠ Press ♠ Press ♠ Press

# Record the caller's message.



- Scale

- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- After message is recorded, the handset returns to stand-by.
- During recording Record message (voice call), the caller's voice can be heard through the earpiece. (When Manner mode is set, caller's voice cannot be heard through the earpiece.) The caller hears a beep when recording starts.
- During recording Record message (video-phone), the other party's image does not appear on the screen but is recorded.

To answer a call while Record message (voice call) is recording		Press 🕪.
To answer a video- phone call while Record	To send own camera image	Press i [V-phone].
message (video-phone) is recording	To send substitute image	Press ♠

• Voice and video-phone messages are recorded until the call is received.

- When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (video-phone), disappears and Record message does not respond when a voice/video-phone call is received. Delete unnecessary messages to reactivate.
- Record messages (voice/video-phone calls) may not be saved if three seconds or less.
- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of contents for Record message (voice/video-phone calls).
- Recording may be cut off depending on signal strength.
- Set the reply image for Record messages for video-phone. (PP P. 85)
- During Record messages (video-phone), the reply image set on the FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with Record message on the image.

#### Note

- Recorded messages will not be deleted when power is turned off.
- During recording, calls from a third party cannot be answered. Third party hears a busy signal.
- If Voice Mail Service (PP P. 484) is set, calls are saved at the Voice Mail Service center even if there are three Record messages (voice calls).
- If Record message is not set, set during incoming call to record message. (PP P. 75, P. 85)
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, Voice mail starting, etc. cannot be recorded.
- Record message is not available when Drive mode (@P. 70) is set.
- Press 22 while \*\* message(s) is displayed in stand-by to view record message playback screen.

### **Related Operations**

### Set the message response time <Answering duration>

In stand-by, press ● 5 ♣ 4 ♣ 2 ♣ ▶ enter answering duration (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) ▶ ●.

• To set response time to start Record message immediately: Enter 000 seconds.

#### Set reply messages <Reply message>

- 1 In stand-by, press 5 ﷺ 4 ﷺ.
- 2 Select type of messages ▶ .

  - To play message: Press (i) [Play].
  - To stop message: Press ( Stop).

#### Note

#### **Answering duration**

- Answering duration applies to Record messages for both voice calls and video-phone calls.
- The default setting is 8 seconds.
- Cannot be set to the same time as Auto answer. (PP. 480)
- When set simultaneously with Voice Mail Service (PP. 484) or Call Forwarding Service (PP. 488), the priority will depend on the set ringing time.

To prioritize Record message, set ringing time shorter than for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

#### Reply message

- The default setting is *Reply message 1* for Reply message and 伝言メモ画像 for video-phone reply image.
- Returns to default setting when original reply message is deleted in "Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos" (PP P. 76).

# **Recording Messages when Incoming Calls Cannot be Answered**

Record a message for an incoming call when Record message is not set.



# During incoming voice call, press (\*) for 1+ seconds.



- Alternatively, press 2 during incoming voice call for Record message.
- Recording starts after reply message is played.
- Refer to P. 85 for recording message during incoming video-phone call.
- When You already have 3 voice memos saved appears, three Record messages (voice call) and less than two Record messages (video-phone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again. (EP P. 76)
- When Unable to record anymore appears, three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (video-phone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again. (P P. 76)

#### Note

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of Record message contents.

# **Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos**

# Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

Play or delete recorded messages and voice memos (during call and in stand-by).

# **Playing Recorded Messages or Voice Memos**

Playback volume follows the Earpiece volume (PP. 68) settings.



In stand-by, press ( ) ( ) and 2 %.



When the calendar appears in the display, playback is not available. Press and switch to the stand-by display before performing operations. In viewer position, turn Calendar display *OFF* before performing operations.

# When \*\* message(s) appears



appears next to memos that have not been played.

### 

: Record message

: Voice memo in stand-by

# Types of calls

Memo list for recorded messages that have not been played

: Video-phoneNo display : Voice calls

# 2

# Select memo and press • [Play].



Record message for voice calls

- Memo is played.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- Name and number do not appear for User unset calls and voice memos in stand-by.

To stop playback	Press   [Stop].
To play from the beginning during playback	$Press\ \textcircled{\bullet}\ [Stop] \to \textcircled{\bullet}\ [Play].$
To play other memos during playback	$Press \ \textcircled{\bullet} \ [Stop] \to select \ memo \to \textcircled{\bullet} \ [Play].$

#### **Note**

• Refer to P. 465 for details on recording voice memos.

#### Playing/Deleting recorded messages or voice memos

- Playback of recorded messages and voice memos automatically stops when a call is received.
- Playback of recorded messages and voice memos automatically stops when alarm sounds at set alarm time.
- When Manner mode is set while Record message (video-phone) is playing, a confirmation screen appears.
   Select Yes to play.
- Record date of recorded messages and voice memos does not appear properly if date on FOMA terminal
  is not set properly.
- When Show received calls (PP. 155) is set to OFF, memo list does not appear and recorded messages
  and voice memos cannot be played or deleted.

#### While Record message/Voice memo PIM is locked (P. 153)

- In step 1, press ( ) ( ) and the terminal security code entry screen appears. When terminal security code (four to eight digits) is entered, PIM is temporarily unlocked and operation is possible.
- PIM lock is re-enabled when handset returns to stand-by.

#### **Checking Recorded messages with vibrator**

• In stand-by, press → (shutter) with the FOMA terminal closed to use the vibrator as an alert for missed calls, Record message, new mail, unread mail, mail held at the i-mode center and voice mail messages. If there are any, Pattern 1 will activate twice. If there are none, Pattern 2 will activate twice. (Refer to P. 123 for details on the vibrator. Not available in viewer position.)

# **Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos**



# In memo list (PP. 75), select memo and select deletion method.

To delete one memo	Press
To delete all memos	Press

Memo is deleted.

# **Related Operations**

#### Lock Recorded message and Voice memo PIM <Security setting>

In stand-by, press (\*) ★ ★ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ (\*) ▶ (1.5).

# Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

Using Video-phone
Making Video-phone Calls
• Receiving Video-phone Calls
• Chara-den
• Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party88
• Setting the Image During Video-phone Calls
• Changing Video-phone Settings
• Setting Voice Call/Video-Phone Notification Options < Indicate V-phone > 94
• Saving Other Party's Image as a Still Picture

# **Using Video-phone**

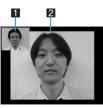
#### Make calls while viewing each other's image.

- Video-phone transmits at 64 kbps or 32 kbps.
- Connection charges for digital transmissions are the same whether transmission speed is 64K or 32K.
- Digital transmission fees are incurred even when a substitute image or Chara-den is sent/received in place of a video of oneself.
- Make international video-phone calls using "WORLD CALL", DoCoMo's international telephone service. (管配 P. 58)
- Video-phone communication is available only between handsets compatible with DoCoMo video-phone.
- DoCoMo video-phones comply with 3G-324M\*2, as defined by the international 3GPP\*1 standard. Connection is not available with video-phones using other standards.
- \*1 3GPP (3rd-Generation Partnership Project): A regional standardization organization to establish the common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).
- '2 3G-324M: International standard for video-phone systems for third-generation mobile video-phones.



# **Viewing the Screen During Video-phone Calls**





Screen size: Full-screen\*

- 1 Sub screen: Your camera image (default)
- 2 Main screen: Other party's camera image (default)
- Brightness:

(Does not appear when brightness is set to  $\pm 0$ .)

4 Send image icon

Shows the format and status of the image being sent.

- Appears while sending camera image.
- 2: Appears while sending substitute image.
- Appears while sending an image from My picture of Data box.
- ☐: Appears while pausing camera image.
- Appears while sending Chara-den in Full action mode.
- Appears while sending Chara-den in Part action mode.
- 5 Appears during video-phone call

Shows the status of video-phone transmission speed or Hands-free mode.

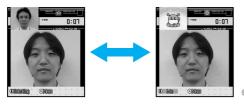
- E: Appears when transmission speed is 64K.
- : Appears when transmission speed is 32K.
- Appears when Hands-free mode is 64K.
- Appears when Hands-free mode is 32K.
- 6 Receive image icon
  - Appears when shooting and saving images of the other party.
- Transmission time: Displays up to 9 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds. If transmission time exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.

<sup>\*</sup> Turn the FOMA terminal sideways to view in full-screen.

<sup>•</sup> The screens shown are only examples. Actual screens may differ.

# Chara-den

During a video-phone call, display a character in place of one's own image. Characters move their mouths in accordance with sounds and are maneuvered with key operations. (© P. 86)



© BVIG

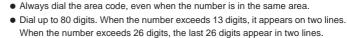
# Making Video-phone Calls

#### Check that there are sufficient battery and signal levels.

- Send a substitute image or Chara-den to the other party instead of one's own image.
- To talk while viewing each other's image during a video-phone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone
  with switch (sold separately) (PP P. 478) or use Hands-free (PP P. 81).
- Video-phone images can be displayed on a TV screen. (@P. 474)



# In stand-by, dial the phone number starting with the area code.





International (enter +)	Press □∑* (for 1+ seconds) → other party's number.  • When + is entered, the phone number after + is called.
Mobile phone	Enter other party's number (090-XXXX-XXXX, 080-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits).
PHS	Enter other party's number (070-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits).
When a mistake is made while dialing	Press @ to erase the last digit.  Press @ for 1+ seconds to erase all digits. (Stand-by reappears.)  If @ is pressed and then the number is dialed, pressing @ does not erase the digits. Press @ (Stand-by reappears.)

# 2

# Press [ [V-phone].



• Phone number and name appear if name is saved in phonebook.

#### Vanity mirror

- Own image is displayed to allow user to check appearance before answering a call. Useful for checking and fixing appearance.
- If Camera image sending is set to OFF and a call is made, the substitute image or Chara-den set in Substitute image (PP P. 90) appears. Chara-den appears for Chara-den call (PP P. 373).

# Talk when the other party answers the phone.







- When the other party answers, Connected video-phone After connecting, press to switch to hands-free appears. Digital transmission fees are incurred from this point.
- The other party's image appears in the main screen and your image taken with the camera appears in the sub screen.

To use Hende free (%)	PD 04)	Press & AFE.	
To use Hands-free (@P. 81)		Piess .	
To send a substitute image during a video- phone call		Press ③ [Subst img].  • To select Chara-den, press ④ [Subst img] for 1+ seconds. (☑P. 86)	
To send touch-tone	While sending image	Enter numbers to send.	
signals <dtmf mode=""> While sending Chara-den</dtmf>		Press $\bullet$ $\bullet$ $\bullet$ $\bullet$ enter numbers to send.	
To view own phone number		Press O D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D	



Press after call.

#### In viewer position

### Making a video-phone call in viewer position

- 1 To use Received calls, press 1.
  - To use redial: Press
  - To use phonebook: Press (•) (shutter) 
     □ (phonebook) (shutter).
- 2 Select phone number and press ⊙ (shutter) ▶ ⓒ (left guidance) [V-phone].
- 3 To disconnect, press @ for 1+ seconds.

- Video-phone calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) from the FOMA terminal.
- Video-phone call is not connected when placed to an unsupported handset. If Redial voicecall is set to ON, the number is automatically redialed as a voice call (PP P. 93). In such cases, voice call charges are incurred. Note that this operation may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN video-phone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (@PP. 78) (as of May 2005), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.
- It is recommended that 64K transmission speed be used when making video-phone calls to compatible FOMA terminals. Use 32K transmission for connecting to devices such as PHS phones that cannot use 64K due to network conditions. If a 64K video-phone call is made to a party in a 32K area, transmission speed is automatically switched to 32K and redialed. The same transmission speed is used when redialing.

Set speed when dialing	Redial voicecall	Dialing order
64K	ON	64K → 32K → Voice call
04N	OFF	64K → 32K
32K	ON	32K → Voice call
32K	OFF	32K

- When sending own image from a location with little light, noise such as white lines increase. Also, direct sunlight or strong light from lamps may darken or distort images. Use video-phone under suitable lighting conditions.
- When a voice/video-phone call is received during a video-phone call, the number is recorded in Received calls and Missed call appears in stand-by.

#### Note

- During a video-phone call, i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at the i-mode center. After a videophone call, i-mode mail or Message R/F held at the i-mode center can be retrieved by checking for new messages.
- SMS (Short messages) are received automatically during video-phone calls.
- When the sending/receiving of audio or video fails, the video-phone call is not automatically restored. Make the video-phone call again.
- When a video-phone call is started, Redial voicecall is not performed.
- Video-phone calls are counted toward *V-phone talk time*. (©P. 470)
- Voice calls or i-mode operations cannot be performed during a video-phone call.
- If the battery runs out of power during a video-phone call, an alert sounds, the call is disconnected in approximately 20 seconds, and the power turns off in approximately 60 seconds.
- Digital transmission fees are incurred even when a substitute image or Chara-den is displayed during a video-phone call.

#### When the video-phone call does not connect

When the video-phone call does not connect, a message explaining the reason appears. The other party's
actual conditions may vary depending upon the type of phone and their subscribed network services.

Message	Reason
Check the number and retry	You dialed the wrong number.
Busy	The other party is engaged in a call.
Your call is being forwarded	The other party's handset is set to forward video-phone calls.
Disconnected due to outside of service/ power off	The other party is outside the service area, or their mobile phone is turned off.
Select <b>ON</b> for Caller ID Notification	Connected without notifying caller ID. (When calling V-Live or Visual Net.)
Please redial phone call	The other party's handset has Voice Mail Service set or does not support video-phone.
Failed to connect	Appears in cases other than those listed above.

# Talking with Hands-free <Hands-free>

During a video-phone call, hear the other party's voice through the speaker and talk while viewing their image.

• Please use in a place where it will not disturb others.



# During a video-phone call, press .



- The Hands-free icon appears.
  - Appears when Hands-free mode is 64K.
  - : Appears when Hands-free mode is 32K.
- If is pressed again, Hands-free will be disabled.
- When Manner mode is set, In Manner mode. Switch to hands-free? appears.
   Select Yes and press .

- Speak from between 20 and 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, the voice
  may cut in and out and the call may not be satisfactory.
- When using Hands-free outdoors or in a location where surroundings are noisy, use the flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch (sold separately) (EFP. 478).
- If sound breaks up during a Hands-free call, lower earpiece volume.

# Putting a Call on Hold while Talking <Hold Active Call>

Put a call on hold during a video-phone call.



# During a video-phone call, press (●) ① . . . .



- The call is put on hold, and a substitute image appears. (PP. 90)
- The other party hears the hold tone (PP. 69), and a substitute image is sent.

# Press ( [V-phone] when ready to answer.

- Speak to the caller. Your image is sent to the other party.
- Press for to send a substitute image and talk.

#### **Note**

- Substitute image can be set in Hold image (P. 90).
- While a call is on hold, the set substitute image is sent to the other party with Hold active call superimposed.
- Refer to P. 69 for details on setting Hold tone.

# Adjusting the Other Party's Voice Volume During a Video-phone Call < Earpiece Volume>

Default setting

Volume 3

Select from five earpiece volume levels during a video-phone call.

• Volume cannot be adjusted while receiving a call.



# During a video-phone call, press (●) 2 ‰.

Earpiece volume screen appears.

Press ( (louder) or ( (softer) to adjust and press ( ).



#### Note

• If Earpiece volume is raised for a call, noise may occur depending on the surroundings. Use at an appropriate volume.

# **Switching from Video-phone to Voice Call**

Switch between video-phone and voice call for placed calls.

- Indicate V-phone (PP P. 94) must be activated for the other party's FOMA terminal.
- Received calls cannot be switched. Have the other party switch.
- If the other party is using a terminal that supports switching calls, *Phone* appears on the lower right of the display and call can be switched. (As of May 2005, switching is only available for 901iS series models.)



# During a video-phone call, press [a] [Phone].



# Select Yes and press ...

- While switching, Please wait appears and a guidance message is played.
- Select No and the video-phone screen reappears.
- Switch between video-phone and voice call as many times as necessary during a call. When switched, call duration resets to 0 seconds.

#### Note

- Video-phone call in progress cannot be switched to a voice call while another screen is displayed from the In-call menu, while the call is on hold or during AV output.
- Switching takes approximately 5 seconds. Switching may take more time depending on signal status.
- Call may not be switched to voice call and may be disconnected depending on signal status.
- Charges are not assessed when Switching... appears.
- When Hands-free call in progress is switched to a voice call, the call remains hands-free.
- Hands-free cannot be disabled while switching a call.
- A 32K video-phone call cannot be switched to a voice call.
- Refer to P. 54 for details about switching from voice call to video-phone call.

# **Receiving Video-phone Calls**

- When answering video-phone calls, both party's images appear on the display.
- Send a substitute image or Chara-den to the other party instead of one's own image and answer the phone.
- When receiving a video-phone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately)
   (☞ P. 478) or use Hands-free (☞ P. 81) to talk while viewing each other's image.

# When a video-phone call is received, the ring tone sounds and the picture light/called LED flashes.



 Name appears if saved in phonebook. However, name and phone number do not appear if the caller does not send ID.

# Press 🗊 [V-phone].



- The other party's image appears in the main screen and your image taken with the camera appears in the sub screen.
- While receiving a call, press described to send a substitute image and receive the call
- Set Chara-den as substitute image (PP. 90) to receive calls with Chara-den.
- During a call, press end to talk using Hands-free. (PP. 81)

# Press after call.

#### In viewer position

Receiving video-phone calls in viewer position

- 1 While receiving a call, press (i) (left guidance) [V-phone].
- 2 To disconnect, press @ for 1+ seconds.

#### Note

- Substitute image can be set in Substitute image (PP. 90).
- When a video-phone call is received during a voice call, the video-phone call can be received depending
  on the subscription status of network services such as Call Waiting. When the video-phone call is
  answered, the current voice call is disconnected.
- If video-phone call is received from a 901iS series model when Voice Mail Service is set to Activate, after
  the set ringing time passes, Please redial phone call appears and the call is disconnected. When videophone call is received from a pre-901iS series model, Failed to connect appears and the call is
  disconnected. Answer during the set ringing time to connect call.
- Even when Call Forwarding Service is set to Activate, the video-phone call is not forwarded if the set forwarding destination is not set to a device that supports video-phone and conforms to the 3G-324M standard (PP P. 78). Check forwarding destination before setting.
- When a video-phone call is received while in Drive mode, the ring tone does not sound, and the picture light/called LED does not flash. The call will be recorded as unavailable in Received calls.
- When images are not received from the other party, a black screen appears.
- When a video-phone call is received from a number registered to the Nuisance Call Barring Service, the call is rejected and a guidance message is played.

#### Key operations while receiving a call

Style	Me	Substitute image	On Hold (© P. 68)	Quick silent	Record message for video-phone (© P. 85)	Reject calls/ Record message (video-phone)/ Forward calls	Manner mode (ੴ P. 126)
Normal position	Ü	<b>€</b> AF©	<b>≅</b> ₩	## or (for 1+ seconds)	(for 1+ seconds)	(Menu)	## (for 1+ seconds)
Viewer position	(left guidance)	_	(right guidance) or (ii) (for 1+ seconds)	(shutter) (for 1+ seconds)	(for 1+ seconds)	(shutter) [Menu]	_

 For video-phone calls, all key operations except those listed above are not available even when Any key answer (P. 64) is set to ON.

#### When using the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately)

- When a video-phone call is received while the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, pressing the switch for 2+ seconds will answer the call with the set substitute image. Switch between substitute image and camera image during a call. (\*\*\*P P. 88)
- When the Auto answer set (PP . 480) is set to ON and the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, after the specified ring time, the substitute image is automatically sent. Switch between substitute image and camera image during a call. (PP . 88)

# Placing Calls on Hold <On Hold>

Put a call on hold when unable to answer the call right away.

• Digital transmission fees are charged to the caller even while on hold.



# While ring tone is sounding, press .



- In viewer position, press (a) (right guidance) [22] or (a) for 1+ seconds.
- A series of beeps sound and the call is placed on hold.
- When Connected video-phone appears, the substitute image for on hold appears. (PP P. 90)
- When the phone is connected, On hold tone (TP P. 69) sounds for the caller, and a substitute image is sent.
- To disconnect a call while on hold, press <a>®</a>
   When in viewer position, press <a>®</a>
   for 1+ seconds. (The call is saved in Received calls.)
- When the other party disconnects the call while on hold, the call is disconnected.
   (The call is saved in Received calls.)

# 2

# Press ( [V-phone] when ready to answer.

- Speak to the caller. Your image is sent to the other party.
- Press for to send a substitute image and talk.

#### Note

- Substitute image can be set in On hold image (P. 90).
- While a call is on hold, the On hold image is sent to the other party with On hold superimposed.
- Refer to P. 69 for details on the On hold tone settings.
- · Beeps do not sound while in Manner mode.

# Recording Messages When Unable to Answer < Record Message>

When Record message is not set, record a message for a single incoming call.

- Record message (video-phone) is not available when FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area.
- Record up to two messages (15 seconds per message).
- Refer to P. 72 for details on the Record message settings.



# While receiving a video-phone call, press • 2 km.



- Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds while receiving a video-phone call for Record message.
- After Preparing message. Please wait appears, the reply image for Record message (video-phone) appears.
- Substitute image can be set in Video-phone reply image.
- You already have two messages saved or Unable to record (when three Record messages for voice calls are already recorded) appears and Record message is not activated.
- The other party hears Record message guidance (PP. 72), and Record message (video-phone) reply image is sent.

# 2

# Record the message.

- During recording, the other party's image does not appear on the screen but is recorded.
- When recording is finished, stand-by reappears.
- When sending a camera image and speaking, press (IV-phone), and for a substitute image press

#### **Note**

- Refer to P. 75 for details on playing and deleting Record messages (video-phone).
- When Record message is set by Record message settings (P. 72) or Manner mode settings (P. 126), Record message will automatically answer.
- Recordings may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of Record message contents.
- Reply images for Record messages (video-phone) can be set in Video-phone reply image.
- While Record message (video-phone) is replying, the reply image is sent to the other party with Record message superimposed.

# **Related Operations**

To check the still picture: Select still picture ▶ (●) [Agree].

85

#### **Note**

#### Video-phone reply image

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to QCIF: 176×144 (W×H).
   (Animated GIF is not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- The default setting is 伝言メモ画像.

# Switching from Video-Phone to Voice Call and Receiving Calls

Other party (caller) selects to switch between voice call and video-phone call.

- Call recipient cannot switch.
- Indicate V-phone (PP. 94) must be set to Activate on the recipient's FOMA terminal.



# Caller switches to voice call during a video-phone call.



• While switching, Please wait appears and a guidance message is played.

#### **Note**

- Switching takes approximately five seconds. Switching may take more time depending on signal status.
- Call may not be switched to voice call and may be disconnected depending on signal status.
- Refer to P. 64 for details about switching from voice call to video-phone and receiving calls.

# Chara-den

Refer to P 371 for details on Chara-den

# Sending Chara-den as Substitute Image <Send Substitute Image>

Default setting

ブンブン (Dimo)

During a video-phone call, send a character to the other party in place of a camera image.



# During a video-phone call, press (i) [Subst img] for 1+ seconds, select Chara-den and press (i) [OK].

Chara-den is sent as the substitute image.

- If Chara-den is already set as substitute image (P. 90), press (Subst img) during a video-phone call to send. When a video-phone call is received, press em to answer the call with the Chara-den.
- When DTMF mode (PP. 80) is set to ON, Chara-den key operations become unavailable because of touch-tone signals sent with the dial keys.
- 通話中画像1 is set as the substitute image when Reset settings (ピア P. 480) is performed after deleting ブンブン *(Dimo)*.

### **Preset Chara-den**

The following Chara-den are preset.

# ■ ブンブン (Dimo)

Dimo is capable of showing emotions such as happiness and anger, and can perform various body actions.

#### Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	
1./2	喜ぶ (Happy)
2 ABC	怒る (Angry)
3 🕏	悲しむ (Sad)
(4 th	ありがとう (Thanks)
5 #L	ラブラブ (In love)

Number (key operation)	Action
6 #c	ごめんなさい (I'm sorry)
(7 **)	ノーリアクション (No reaction)
8 m	バイバイ (Bye bye)
9 6	びっくり (Surprised)



© BAIC

• ブンブン (Dimo) does not support Part-action mode.

#### Komomo

Komomo resembles Momo the teddy bear but they are not related. Although she usually lives in the forest, she decided to deliver mail on a whim. Although she's small, she's actually quite precocious.



© SCN

#### Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
1./3	わーい! (Yee!)
2 /BC	暴れる (Angry)
3 🍰	ひぇぇ~ (Crying)
4 25 and	嬉しいな (Happy)
5 #L	ごめんなさい (Apology)
6 it	座る (Sit down)
7 iš	寝る (Sleep)
8 m	るんるん気分 (Excited)
9 6 METZ	拍手!! (Clap)

#### Part-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action	
1.2 1.2	うん (Yep)	
(1.1½ 2 ½	イヤ (Nope)	
1.4 3 \$	おいでおいで (Beckon)	
(1.1.2 (4 2 dec)	ふらふら (Wobbly)	
(1.1 5 ±	うんうん (連続) (Nod (continuous))	
(1./.a 6 in)	イヤイヤ(連続)(Shake head sideways (continuous))	
1./m 7 /m	バタバタ(連続) (Stamp feet (continuous))	
(1./.æ 8 💬	肩ならし(連続)(Roll head around (continuous))	
(1,8 9 m)	攻撃上段(連続) (Punch attack (continuous))	

#### **Note**

• In Part-action mode, Komomo's actions may be delayed.

# Changing Chara-den During a Call < Change Chara-den>

Switch to send a different Chara-den during a video-phone call.

While sending a Chara-den as a substitute image, press (a) (3 ) (3 ) (5), select a Chara-den and press (a) [OK].



• Switches to the new Chara-den.

# Switching Between Full-action and Part-action <Change Action>

Switch between full-action and part-action while displaying a Chara-den.



Press or or 6 2 while sending a Chara-den as a substitute image.

Switch between modes.

# **Making a Chara-den Perform Actions**

Make the Chara-den perform an action.

- In Full-action mode, express emotions such as happy and angry.
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts, jump and dance.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Depending on the Chara-den, movement of the mouth may synchronize with sound from a microphone.
- Types of actions vary for each Chara-den.



# Press ( ) or ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) while sending a Chara-den as a substitute image.



To perform action	Select an action → ●.  Performs the selected action. Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing  Jab to 9.5, or #50 to have the character perform an action. For preset Chara-den actions, refer to P. 87.
To abort action	Press $\mathcal{O}_{\kappa}^{ce}$ .
To show action details	Press 👔 [Details].

#### **Note**

• Depending on the Chara-den, some actions are performed automatically.

# Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party

# Changing Image to Send During Call < Change Send Image>

Send a preset substitute image instead of a camera image.



# During a video-phone call, press 📵 [Subst img].



The set substitute image is sent.

To return to camera image	Press 📵 [Me].
	Press (a) (for 1+ seconds) → Chara-den → (a) [OK].  When the video-phone call is finished, the Chara-
	den is disabled.

© BVIG

#### Zoom in and zoom out <Zoom in/Zoom out>

- 1 During a video-phone call, press or •.
- 2 Press ( ) (zoom in) or ( ) (zoom out).
  - Maximum zoom: Press 🖗.
  - Minimum zoom: Press @.

#### Switch between main camera and sub camera <Main/sub camera>

### During a video-phone call, press (\*) # 372.

To change to sub camera: Press ● # → again.

#### Send a still picture from Data box <Play file>

During a video-phone call, press ( ) ( ) folder ( ) still picture ( ) [OK].

To return to camera image: Press (■ [Me] or (●) (3 ♣) (1.♣).

#### Adjust brightness < Brightness>

During a video-phone call, press (brighter) or (darker).

#### Note

#### Zoom in/Zoom out

- Set up to 18 zoom levels for the main camera and 2 zoom levels for the sub camera.
- Zoom is not available while sending Chara-den or substitute images.
- Zoom is not available in full screen display (sub camera).
- Zoom is not available for the other party's image.
- When camera is switched or video-phone call ends, zoom is disabled.

#### Main/Sub camera

- Returns to sub camera after video-phone call ends.
- While using main camera, if the camera area gets hotter or if the battery level is or less, Unable to
  use the main camera at the moment appears and the camera image switches to substitute image.
  The main camera is unavailable.
- When DTMF mode (PP. 80) is set to OFF, press ## to switch.
- During a video-phone call, Auto focus is not available even when using the main camera.

#### File playback

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to QCIF: 176×144 (W×H).
   (Animated GIF is not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available. Images shot with the FOMA terminal are available regardless of File restriction. (Images shot with picture memo are not available.)
- Still pictures saved onto a miniSD Memory Card are not available directly. Copy to the *Camera* folder or *i-mode/Other* folder in My picture of FOMA terminal handset.
- Files do not appear when multimedia PIM is locked. When the terminal security code (four to eight digits) is entered, the PIM is temporarily unlocked. The file appears.

#### **Brightness**

- $\square$ ,  $\square$ , or  $\square$  appears on the upper part of the display. Does not appear for  $\pm 0$ .
- Brightness is reset after video-phone call ends.

# Setting Image for Calling < Camera Image Sending>

Default setting ON

Set whether to send own image or substitute image to the other party.



# In stand-by, press • 5 % 3 % 2 % 2 % to set image for calling.

Alternatively, select ∬ (Settings) → Phone settings → Video-phone set → Set sending image →
 Camera image sending from Top menu.

To send own camera image	Press 1.3.
To not send own camera image	Press 2 2.
	Send the set substitute image.

# Changing Substitute Image When Making a Call < Video-phone Image>



# Enter phone number, press @ B and select image to send.

• To call from redial details/received calls/phonebook details screen, press [a] 9.5.

To send own camera image	Press 1.2.
To send Chara-den	Press $2 \frac{2}{4} \rightarrow \text{Chara-den} \rightarrow        \text$

# **Setting a Substitute Image < Substitute Image>**

Default setting ブンブン (Dimo)

Set a still picture or Chara-den (PP. 371) as the substitute image during a video-phone call.

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to QCIF: 176×144 (W×H). (Animated GIF is not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.

1

# In stand-by, press ( ) 5 % 3 % 2 % ( ) and select a substitute image.



Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Phone settings → Video-phone set →
Set sending image → Subst img set from Top menu.

To set still pictures	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ folder $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ still picture $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ [OK].
To set Chara-den	Press $2  \rightarrow$ Chara-den $\rightarrow  \bigcirc$ [OK].

#### Note

- Press (a) [Subst img] during a video-phone call to send the set substitute image.
- While sending substitute image, the still picture is sent to the other party with Camera Off superimposed. If setting Chara-den, Camera Off does not appear.
- 通話中画像1 is set as the substitute image when Reset settings (ですP. 480) is performed after deleting ブンブン (Dimo).

# **Related Operations**

# Change On hold and Hold images <On hold image/Hold image>

- 1 In stand-by, press 5 毫 3 毫 2 毫.
- 2 For On hold image settings, press 3.
  - To set On hold substitute image: Press 45.
- 3 Select a folder ▶ (•) ▶ image ▶ ⓐ.

#### Note

- The default settings are 応答保留画像 (On hold image) and 保留画像 (Hold image).
- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to QCIF: 176×144 (W×H).
   (Animated GIF is not available.)
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.

# **Setting Outgoing Image Quality < Image Quality>**

Default setting

Normal

Set the quality of the image sent during a video-phone call.

1

# In stand-by, press (•) 5 km 3 km 6 km and select image quality.



- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Phone settings → Video-phone set → Set sending image from Top menu.
- To set while sending Chara-den during a video-phone call, press (•) 7 4 4.

Priority: image	1./-@	To place emphasis on shape and color	
Normal	2 #sc	To create a balance of clarity and movement	
Priority: motion	3 🔅	To place emphasis on movement	

#### **Note**

- The image quality setting during a video-phone call is only temporary. When a video-phone call is ended, image quality returns to the quality set in stand-by with (● 5 毫 3 毫 6 毫).
- Image quality settings for the sender and receiver during a video-phone call differ.

# Video-phone Set

# **Setting the Image During Video-phone Calls**

#### Change the image displayed during video-phone calls.

• Set the following items. Refer to P. 89 and P. 92 for setting details.

Item	Setting details	Default value
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the main display in five levels.	±0
Screen size	Magnifies the main screen size.	Large
Display settings	Changes both party's display method.	Show me small
Subscreen display	Sets the location of the subscreen.	Upper left
Lighting	Sets the light duration for the display for a video-phone call.	Always ON
Self-portrait	Sets self-portrait to Reverse off, Reverse on, or Pause.	Reverse on

### Screen size







Normal Full-screen\*

\* Turn the FOMA terminal sideways to view in full-screen.

# Display settings

• Select from the following four settings.

Item	Setting details
Show me small	The other party's image is large and mine is small.
Other	Only the other party's image appears.
Show me big	The other party's image is small and mine is large.
Me	Only my image appears.



Show me small



Other



Show me big



Me

# Subscreen display





Upper left

Lower right

### **Related Operations**

#### Set screen size <Screen size>

- - In stand-by: Press 5 毫 3 毫 3 毫 .
- 2 For Normal size, press 2 #c.
  - For Full-screen: Press 3...
    - To return to Large size: Press 7.3.

#### Set display method <Display setting>

- 1 During a video-phone call, press (•) [5 1/16].
  - In stand-by: Press (●) 5 # 3 # 4 #.
- 2 Select display method ▶ ●.

#### Set the location of the subscreen <Subscreen display>

- 1 During a video-phone call, press 🍑 🗗 🛣 🗀 .
  - In stand-by: Press 5 巻 3 巻 5 巻.
- 2 Select location ▶ ●.

### Set light <Lighting>

- 1 During a video-phone call, press 5 5.
  - In stand-by: Press 2 巻 5 巻 3 巻 1 巻 3 巻 . (② P. 133)
- 2 Press 2 for Always ON.
  - Same as normal: Press 1.3.

### Send own image as still picture <Pause>

During a video-phone call, press ( ) 7 to 1. To 2.

• To undo: Press • [End].

### Set own image as normal image <Reverse>

- 1 During a video-phone call, press (•) 7 to 2 to 2.
- 2 For Reverse off, press 1.3.
  - For Reverse on: Press 22.

#### Note

The related operations listed above apply while sending own image or substitute image (still picture).
 While sending Chara-den, the numbers in Submenu differ.

#### Screen size

- Subscreen size cannot be changed.
- Large is 1.3 times larger than Normal.
- Screen size settings remain even after video-phone call ends.

#### Display setting

• Video-phone display settings remain even after video-phone call ends.

# Subscreen display

- If subscreen is set to Lower right, call duration and sent/received image icons appear on the lower left.
- Subscreen display remains even after video-phone call ends.

#### **Note**

#### Lighting

- If Same as normal is set, the duration is what was set for Display light time (FP. 133).
- Increasing light duration shortens continuous stand-by duration.
- Light setting remains even after video-phone call ends.

#### Self-portrait (Pause, Reverse)

- The image appears in normal orientation to the other party regardless of settings.
- Paused camera image can also be sent.
- Reverse on reverses image orientation as if viewing in a mirror. Reverse off returns image to normal.
- While sending Chara-den or substitute image, Self-portrait is not available.
- While paused, the image is sent to the other party with **Stopped** superimposed.
- Self-portrait is reset after video-phone call ends.

# **Changing Video-phone Settings**

# Switching Transmission Speed to 32K < Dialing Speed>

Default setting

64K

1

# Enter phone number and press @@.



- appears.
- Alternatively, press @ 9 . 2 to switch.
- To return to 64K, press . Press to switch.

#### **Note**

• The setting is only enabled for one time.

# Automatically Redial as Voice Call <Redial Voicecall>

Default setting

OFF



# In stand-by, press (a) 5 % (3 %) (1.% and (1.% [ON].

- Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → Phone settings → Video-phone set → Redial voicecall from Top menu.
- · Redial voicecall is set.

- If a call is redialed as a voice call, voice call charges are incurred.
- If a video-phone communication is started, Redial voicecall is not performed.
- Note that Redial voicecall may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access
  point or an ISDN video-phone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (P. 78) (as of May 2005),
  or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.

# **Setting Voice Call/Video-Phone Notification Options**

Default setting Activate

This setting lets the other party know whether the FOMA terminal can be switched between video-phone and voice call.

- When set to Indication OFF, the other party cannot switch the call.
- Indicate V-phone cannot be changed during voice calls or video-phone calls.
- When outside the service area, Indicate V-phone settings cannot be changed.



# In stand-by, press • 5 1 2 2 7 2 to activate/deactivate Indicate V-phone.

Alternatively, select \(\frac{\text{\colorable}}{\text{\colorable}}\) (Settings) → Phone settings → Video-phone set → Indicate V-phone from Top menu.

To activate	Press $\bigcirc A \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc A$ .
To deactivate	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ .
3.	Press ③⑥. ● Current settings appear.

#### **Picture Memo**

# Saving Other Party's Image as a Still Picture

During a video-phone call, take a still picture of the other party.

• Still pictures will be QCIF: 176×144 (W×H) size.



# During a video-phone call, press • 5 and press • [6].

- While recording, the image is sent to the other party with *Recording* superimposed.
- Shutter sound does not sound.
- The still picture is recorded and *Saving* appears.
- The picture is saved to the *Camera* folder in My picture of Data box.
- The picture can only be sent to a FOMA terminal.

#### Note

• If a video-phone call is received while saving files such as an image, a still picture of the other party cannot be taken and saved.

Operating file. Unable to execute appears. Recording may appear on the other party's screen.

# **Phonebook**

Phonebooks Available on FOIVIA Terminal	
<ul> <li>Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook</li></ul>	<add phonebook="" to="">96</add>
<ul><li>Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook</li></ul>	OMA Card Phonebook>103
Saving from Redials and Received Calls	
Setting Groups	<group settings="">106</group>
Making Calls from Phonebook	<search phonebook="">108</search>
Editing Phonebook Entries	<edit entries="">113</edit>
Deleting Phonebook Entries	< Delete Entries > 114
Hiding Private Numbers	<set secret="">114</set>
Calling with a Few Key Strokes	<2-touch Dialing>115

# Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal

Use FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook. Entry items and capacity differ.

# **FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook and FOMA Card Phonebook**

Save items such as names, phone numbers and mail addresses for both phonebooks.

 Use FOMA card on other FOMA terminals. To use phonebook on other FOMA terminals, save numbers in FOMA card phonebook.

	FOMA terminal handset phonebook	FOMA card phonebook
Number of entries	500	DoCoMo FOMA card: 50
Number of characters for name	Up to 32 single-byte (16 double- byte) characters	Single-byte alphanumerics: up to 21 characters Mixed single-byte/double-byte or single-byte katakana: up to 10 characters
Reading	Single-byte katakana (up to 32 characters)	Double-byte katakana (up to 12 characters)
Group settings	20 groups	11 groups
Icon	Phone number: seven types Mail address: four types	_
Memory numbers	000 to 499	_
Phone number	Three per entry (Up to 1,500 phone numbers can be saved in the phonebook.)	One per entry
Mail address	Three per entry (Up to 1,500 mail addresses can be saved in the phonebook.)	One per entry
Postal code	One per entry	-
Postal address	One per entry	_
Birthday	One per entry	_
Memo	One per entry	_
Select ring tone	One per entry	_
Mail ring tone	One per entry	_
Called LED	One per entry	_
Mail/Message LED	One per entry	_
Image (Picture call set)	One per entry	_
Chara-den settings	One per entry	_

<sup>-:</sup> not available

#### Add to Phonebook

# **Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook**

Register frequently used phone numbers, names, and mail addresses to easily access when calling or sending i-mode mail or SMS.

- Save up to 500 entries in memory slots 000 to 499.
- Save three phone numbers and mail addresses per entry.
- Add still pictures, movies/i-motion, etc. shot with camera to phonebook entries. When a call is received from someone with an image in their phonebook entry, their name, phone number, and image appear.
- Refer to P. 544 for details on text input.

# **Entry Items**

<pre>A(Not registered)</pre>	
R (Not registered)	
28 (Not specified)	
(Not registered)	
**S (Not registered)  **S (Not registered)  **S (Not registered)	
(Not registered)	
(Not registered)	
(Not registered)	
(Not registered)	
₹(Not registered)	
(Not registered) (Not registered)	
(Not registered)	
(Not registered)	
>OFF (Not set)	
Select ring tone	
♪ (Not set)	
♪(Not set) Mail ring tone	
(Not set)	
Called LED	
Called LED (Not set)	
Mail/Message LED	
(Not set)	
Picture call set	
(Not set)	
Chara-den settings	
Chara-den settings (Not set)	
ODK :	

FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry screen

Icon	Item	Details	Reference
2	Name	Enter name. Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters.	P. 98
R	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited. Enter up to 32 single-byte katakana.	P. 98
32	Group	Entries can be sorted in groups. Groups 0 to 19 are available. Edit names.	P. 99
8	Phone number	Save up to three numbers. Select from one of seven icons for each phone number.	P. 98
	Mail address	Save up to three addresses. Select from one of four icons for each address.	P. 98
7	Postal code	Enter postal code.	P. 99
<b>=</b>	Postal address	Enter postal address. Enter up to 100 single- byte (50 double-byte) characters.	P. 100
1	Birthday	Enter a birthday between January 1, 1900 and December 31, 2099.	P. 100
	Memo	Save memos. Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.	P. 100
<b>©</b>	Secret	Keep privacy by hiding phonebook entries. Set to keep phonebook entries private.	P. 114
<b>\$</b>	Secret code	Enter secret code specified by the other party. Use when sending mail.	P. 100
\$	Select ring tone	Differentiate callers using specific ring tones or Chaku-motion.	P. 100
9	Mail ring tone	Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail ring tones.	P. 100
8	Called LED	Differentiate incoming calls using specific LED colors.	P. 100
<b>₽</b>	Mail/Message LED	Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail LED colors.	P. 100
<b>2</b>	Picture call set	Differentiate incoming/outgoing calls using images. Specific image appears in phonebook list. One still picture or movie/i-motion shot with the camera can be saved.	P. 100
<b>©</b>	Chara-den settings	Set Chara-den for when sending a substitute image during a video-phone call.	P. 100

- When upgrading the handset at the DoCoMo retailer, data may not be copied depending on specifications
  of the new model.
- Image set in Call/Receive display (PP. 131) appears during outgoing calls when i-motion is set for Picture call.
- Vanity mirror (@P. 79) is prioritized when calling with Video-phone even when Picture call is set. Note information saved in phonebook separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (@P. 381) or Data Link Software (@P. 584).
- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

# **Basic Saving Operations**

Save name, phone number and mail address.

# 1

# In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds and press .....

- Alternatively, press [2] [2] in stand-by.
- Name entry screen appears.

# 2

# Enter name and press .



FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry screen

- Also enter symbols and pictographs.
- Reading is automatically entered in R. Changes to entered name are not reflected automatically.
- Reading is not automatically entered if symbols and pictographs are entered for name or when using One-touch conversion.
- Select R, press (•) and correct reading.

# Select 3, press •, enter phone number and press •.



- Enter area codes, even for landline phone numbers.
- Dial up to 26 digits.
- i-mode mail and SMS are not sent properly when a number saved to the phonebook with 184, 186, #31# or #31# added is selected as the recipient.

To make international calls (enter +)	Press $\bigcirc_{\mathbb{Z}^{\mathfrak{T}}}^{\mathbb{R}^{\mathfrak{T}}}$ (for 1+ seconds) $\rightarrow$ enter other party's number.
To enter a pause [P]	Press •.
To re-enter phone number	Press @c (The last digit or character at the cursor is deleted.)  • Press @c



# Select phone number type icon.



8	Landline phone	1./2	P5	Office phone	5 £
à	Mobile phone	2 ABC	Ê	Home fax	6 m
囯	Video-phone	3 🏝	唱	Office fax	7 g
Ŷŝ	Home phone	(4 25)			

Repeat steps 3 and 4 to save multiple phone numbers.

# **5**

# Select 🖶, press 💽, enter mail address and press 💽.



- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers or symbols (not all symbols are available).
- Pictographs are not available.

To enter @ and period (.)	Press 🖾 multiple times.
	Press   for 1+ seconds.  ■ Enter part of mail address easily. (© P. 551)



# Select mail address type icon.

<b>≗</b> Ueda	Mikio	
RUeda	Mikio	ľ
	specified)	H
₫ 090XX	XXXXXX	b
	registered)	Į,
	registered)	H
doco	io. taro. ∆∆@doc••	r
Not		1
🖺 (Not		И
〒(Not	registered)	
<b>⊡</b> (Not		
⇔(Not	registered)	

Þ	Mobile phone mail address	1./2	Office mail address	3 🔅
Ĉ	Home mail address	2 /2 ABC	Mail address	(4 E

Repeat steps 5 and 6 to save multiple mail addresses.

# 7

# Press (i) [Complete] and enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 499).

Press without entering memory number to save to the lowest available memory number between 010 and 499. The lowest available number between 000 to 009 is used if the above is not available.

#### Note

- When Set secret (☑P. 114) is set to ON, phonebook entries cannot be overwritten. Set Secret mode (☑P. 156) to ON.
- To save a phone number or mail address when 500 entries are already saved on the FOMA terminal
  handset, select a memory number to overwrite an already existing phonebook entry. (Entries in the FOMA
  card phonebook are not overwritten.)

#### When Complete does not appear in guidance

Enter name.

#### **Memory numbers**

• Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers 000 to 099. (FP P. 115)

#### Alternative methods to specifying memory number

- Enter digit in hundreds column and press .
   Entry is saved to the lowest available memory number (100 to 199 if .

#### When i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F is received during editing

• Continue editing without displaying receive results.

### **Copying to FOMA card**

 Copy FOMA terminal handset phonebook to FOMA card (☞ P. 104) or copy FOMA card phonebook to FOMA terminal handset (☞ P. 105).

#### miniSD Memory Card

- Copy phonebook saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (P. 385) or view phonebook entries saved on miniSD Memory Cards (P. 387).
- Copy phonebook saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (FP P. 388).
- Entries are in alphabetical order if all phonebook entries are copied collectively to a miniSD Memory Card.
   However, entries are in memory number order if memory number is selected as the search method.
   Entries copied individually are sorted from the oldest copied date.

#### Ir exchange

• Send and receive phonebook saved in FOMA terminal handset using Ir exchange. (© P. 400)

#### Symbols and pictographs

Enter symbols and pictographs for Name, Memo and Address in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
 Symbols and pictographs may not appear properly when sent to PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode using Ir exchange.

# **Related Operations**

#### Set groups <Select group>

In the phonebook entry screen (PP. 98), select 12 of group of o.

#### Save postal code

In the phonebook entry screen ((2) P. 98), select ₹ ▶ (•) ▶ enter postal code ▶ (•).

#### Save postal address

In the phonebook entry screen (☞ P. 98), select 🖭 🕨 🌒 ▶ enter postal address ▶ 🎱.

#### Save birthday

In the phonebook entry screen (♥ P. 98), select ♠ ▶ ● ▶ enter birthday ▶ ●.

#### Save memo

In the phonebook entry screen (♥ P. 98), select ♠ ♦ ● enter memo ▶ ●.

### Save entries as secret <Set Secret>

In the phonebook entry screen (PP P. 98), select ∞ • • • 1.3.

#### Set Secret code to mail address <Secret code>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen (இ P. 98), select இ ▶ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
- 2 Press (1./3).

  - To disable Secret code: Press 33.
- 3 Select i-mode mail address ▶ ▶ enter secret code (four digits) ▶ Yes ▶ ●.

#### Set ring tone and Chaku-motion <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen (PP. 98), select Select ring tone  $\rightarrow$  •.
  - To personalize mail ring tone: Select *Mail ring tone* \$\int\$ .
- 2 Press 1.3.
  - To set Chaku-motion: Press 2 &.
  - To disable: Press 33.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ring tone ▶ ⓒ [OK].

### Set called LED color <Called LED and Mail/Message LED>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen (♥ P. 98), select Called LED & ▶ •.
  - To personalize mail/message LED: Select Mail/Message LED → .
- 2 Select color ▶ ●.
  - To disable: Select Not set ▶ ⊙.

#### Set image <Picture call set>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen (☞ P. 98), select Picture call set 🗷 🕨 .
- 2 Press 1.3.
  - To set movie/i-motion: Press 22.

  - To disable image: Press 4.5.
- 3 Select folder ▶ image ▶ ⓐ [OK].

#### Set Chara-den < Chara-den settings>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen (PP P. 98), select Chara-den settings ( ).
- 2 Press 1.3.
  - To disable Chara-den: Press 2 &.
- 3 Select Chara-den ▶ (i [OK].

#### **Note**

#### Select ring tone and Mail ring tone

- Select ring tone from Melody of Data box and Chaku-motion from i-motion.
- Ring tones are prioritized in the following order when multiple ring tones are set.

	Priority (high $ ightarrow$ low)
Ring tone	Phonebook ring tone $\rightarrow$ group ring tone $\rightarrow$ regular ring tone
Mail ring tone	Specified mail ring tone $ ightarrow$ group mail ring tone $ ightarrow$ regular mail ring tone

- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion with images and voice set for Chaku-motion are automatically set as Picture call.
- Movies/i-motion with Ring tone set to *unavailable* cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion copied from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chakumotion. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with User unset ring tone set in Select ring tone (P. 118). When Select
  ring tone is not set, regular ring tone sounds.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use Select ring tone/Mail
  ring tone settings, set Secret mode (127 P. 156) to ON.
- Calls and mail received while phonebook PIM is locked are notified with regular ring tone.
- Save entire mail address to use Mail ring tone.
  - If mail address is *phone number@docomo.ne.jp*, set only phone number.
- When a movie/i-motion with voice and image is set as Mail ring tone, only the voice may be played except when in stand-by.
- When voice only movies or i-motion (melodies with no video) are set as Chaku-motion, the Receive display is prioritized as follows: phonebook Picture call settings → group Picture call settings → Call/ Receive display settings. When none of these are set, the 電話着信1 image appears.

#### Called LED and Mail/Message LED

• Called LED and Mail/Message LED are prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high $ o$ low)	
Called LED	Phonebook called LED $ ightarrow$ group called LED $ ightarrow$ regular called LED	
Mail/Message LED	Phonebook mail LED $\rightarrow$ group mail LED $\rightarrow$ regular mail LED	

- Anonymous calls are notified with regular called LED color.
- LED lights randomly based on other party's caller ID and date for Random.
- Colors are gradated for Rainbow. Each color is repeated for Mixed colors. Colors illuminate with the speed becoming faster and faster for Cyclone.
- Random is not available for mail/message LED.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular LED color. To use Called LED and Mail/Message LED settings, set Secret mode (FFP. 156) to ON.
- Calls and mail received while phonebook PIM is locked are notified with regular LED color.
- Save entire mail address to use mail/message LED. If mail address is phone number@docomo.ne.jp, set only phone number.

#### Set secret

• Refer to P. 114 for details on Set secret.

#### **Note**

#### Secret code

- Only when mail address is phone number@docomo.ne.jp, Secret code is available. Refer to P. 250 for details on Secret code.
- Secret code cannot be set as 0000.
- Set Secret code for one mail address per each phonebook entry.
- Even if Secret code is set for mail address, Secret code does not appear in the recipient field of compose message screen (☼ P. 255).
- For details on setting Secret code, refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual".
- Mail may not be sent if phone number + Secret code@docomo.ne.jp is saved in phonebook. Change
  entry to phone number@docomo.ne.jp before saving Secret code.

#### Picture call

• Images are prioritized in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Phonebook Picture call $ ightarrow$ group Picture call $ ightarrow$ Call/Receive display

- i-motion that are voice only (melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Depending on data size, still picture set to Picture call may take more time to display.
- When movies or i-motion are set to Picture call, the first frame is displayed if the images are displayed in the phonebook list.
- When Picture call set (1287 P. 132) is set to OFF, no image is displayed when receiving a call.
- Movies/i-motion copied from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset or transferred using Ir
  exchange or Data Link Software are not available. To use shot movies for Picture call, record them on
  the FOMA terminal handset.
- Not available still pictures and movies/i-motion are crossed out. Appears in gray in lists.
- To delete image set for Picture call from Data box, select Delete one. Select Yes in the confirmation screen to delete.
- Press (1.2) in preview screen to set shot image for Picture call.
- When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Select ring tone, setting a still picture as Picture
  call disables Select ring tone setting. When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Picture
  call, Select ring tone is also set the same.

#### Chara-den settings

Substitute images are sent in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Phonebook Chara-den settings → substitute image for video-phone

# Registering from Zoom menu

Add entries to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook from Zoom menu.

- Add the following items.
  - Name Reading One phon
    - One phone number
       One mail address
- View registered entries by selecting View phonebook in Zoom menu or edit all phonebook items (© P. 113) from the submenu.

# In stand-by, press ●, select *Phone functions* and press ●.

• Press 📵 [Switch] to switch from Top menu or Shortcut menu.

# Select Add to phonebook and press .

• Name entry screen appears.

# Enter name, press •, check the reading and press •.

- Reading is entered automatically. Edit reading if incorrect.
- Phone number entry screen appears.



# Enter phone number and press .

5

Select  $\square$ , press  $\odot$ , enter mail address and press  $\odot$ .



# Press ( [Complete].

- The entry is saved in the phonebook.
- The entry is saved to the lowest available memory number between 010 and 499. The lowest available number between 000 to 009 is used if the above is not available.
- ★ for phone number type icon and ☐ for mail address type icon are automatically set.

#### Add to FOMA Card Phonebook

# Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook

Save entries to FOMA card phonebook. Entry items differ slightly from FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- Save up to 50 entries to the FOMA card phonebook.
- Save one phone number and mail address per entry.

# Entry Items

Icon	Item	Details
2	Name	Enter name. Enter up to 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters. Enter up to 10 characters for mixed single-byte/double-byte characters or only single-byte katakana.
R	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited. Enter up to 12 characters for only double-byte katakana or 25 characters for only single-byte alphanumerics. Enter up to 12 characters if single-byte/double-byte characters are mixed. When 12 characters are already entered and double-byte katakana are entered, the entered double-byte characters are not saved.
32	Group	Entries can be sorted in groups. Groups 00 to 10 are available. Group names can be changed.
•	Phone number	Save one phone number.
₹a.	Mail address	Save one mail address.

# **Basic Saving Operations**



# In stand-by, press of for 1+ seconds and press 2 kg.

- Alternatively, press 
   □ 
   □ 

   2 
   ଢ 

   2 
   ଢ 

   2 
   ଢ
- Name entry screen appears.

# 2

# Enter name and press .



- Also enter symbols and pictographs.
- Reading is automatically entered in R. Changes to entered name are not reflected automatically.
- Reading is not automatically entered if symbols and pictographs are entered for name or when using One-touch conversion.
- Select R, press and correct reading.

# Select 22, press •, select group and press •.



# Select , press , enter phone number and press .

- Enter up to 26 digits for FOMA card (green) and 20 digits for FOMA card (blue).
- When phone number is entered incorrectly, press @an to erase the last digit or character at the cursor.
   Press @an for 1+ seconds to delete entirely. Enter correct phone number.



# Select , press , enter mail address and press .

- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers or symbols (not all symbols are available).
- · Pictographs are not available.

To enter @ and period (.)	Press 🕮 multiple times.
To enter an Internet-related phrase	
	● Enter part of mail address easily. (☞ P. 551)



# Press (a) [Complete].

#### Note

#### Copying to FOMA terminal handset

 Reading is saved as single-byte katakana when FOMA card phonebook is copied to FOMA terminal handset (PP - 105).

# Copying FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook to FOMA Card

Share phonebook entries between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card.

Outgoing voice/video-phone calls, sending messages and i-mode connection are not available while copying.
 Assistant View is also not available to activate other functions. Incoming voice/video-phone calls and receiving mail are available.



# In stand-by, press , select name and press Five.

# 2

# Select copy method.

To copy one	Press $\bigcirc A \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc A$ .
To copy selected	Press $ ewline \emptyseta \in \text{name} \leftrightarrow \emptyseta \infty \text{(repeatable)} \rightarrow \emptyseta \infty \text{[Complete]} \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \emptyseta.  Select up to 50 entries.$
To check contents before copying	Select name in step 1, press $\bullet \to \mathbb{A}$ $\mathbb{F}^{\mathbb{Z}} \to \mathbb{Y}es \to \bullet$ .

Phonebook is copied.

- This function is not available if FOMA card is not inserted.
- Since capacity of FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook differ, only the first
  phone number/mail address is copied to FOMA card. Characters and character limits also differ. If some
  data cannot be copied, Some data will be deleted OK? appears. Select Yes to copy the first phone
  number/mail address.
- Set Secret mode (PP P. 156) to ON to copy secret phonebook entries.

#### **Note**

- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA card.
  - Portions of name exceeding 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are discarded.
  - Reading is saved as double-byte katakana. Portions exceeding 12 characters are discarded. Reading for entries copied from FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset is saved as single-byte katakana.
  - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to (*Not specified*). Single- and double-byte symbols are differentiated.
- Not all characters are compatible between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Unsupported characters are converted to spaces.
- Source data is not deleted.
- If maximum number of entries is exceeded during copying, Memory is full. Unable to save anymore
  appears. Delete unnecessary data and copy data again.

# Copying FOMA Card Phonebook to FOMA Terminal Handset

1

In stand-by, press , select name and press 7.5.

2

# Select copy method.

To copy one	Press $\bigcirc A \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc A$ .
To copy selected	Press
To check contents before copying	Select name in step 1, press $\bullet \to \mathbb{A}$ $\mathscr{E}$ $\to Yes \to \bullet$ .

Phonebook is copied.

#### **Note**

- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA terminal handset.
  - Reading is saved as single-byte katakana.
  - Phone number and mail address from FOMA card are saved as first phone number and mail address in FOMA terminal handset.
  - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to (*Not specified*).
  - Open memory numbers are allocated from 010 to 499, then 000 to 009.
- Latin and Greek characters and some symbols not included in the standard single-byte alphanumerics/ symbols set, and double-byte characters not included in kuten code list appear as spaces.

# Saving from Redials and Received Calls

Save phonebook entries from functions such as Redial, Received calls, Bar code reader, Character reader and mail.

**Example: When saving from Received calls** 



In stand-by, press (\*\(\frac{1}{2}\), select phone number and press (\(\frac{1}{2}\).



# Select save method.

To add to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	Press 1.6.
To save to FOMA card phonebook	Press 2 &.
To add/overwrite	Press 3

 Selected phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (PP P. 98)

#### **Group Settings**

# **Setting Groups**

Set groups in phonebook to set group names, ring tones, called LED and image shown when calls are received from a member of a group.

• Only group name editing is available for FOMA card phonebook.

### Changing Group Name < Edit Group Name >

Default setting See below

Edit group name.

• (Not specified) cannot be renamed.

The default setting is (Mot specified), terminal handset phonebook and **(Not specified)**, **(**クリントプロ (Group 1) to ログループロ (Group 10) for FOMA card phonebook.

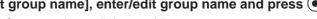
### In stand-by, press 🖹 and select a group.



To search by reading or memory number	Press $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc$ group $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To search by group	Select group → 🍙 🗷 🗓.
FOMA card phonebook	Press $\bigcirc \mathcal{B} \longrightarrow \operatorname{group} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

Group settings

# Press [Edit group name], enter/edit group name and press (•).



TEdit group name Select ring tone Mail ring tone Mail/Message LED Picture call set

- Group name character limits are as follows.
  - FOMA terminal handset phonebook: Up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters
  - FOMA card phonebook: Up to 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters

Enter up to 10 characters for mixed single-byte/ double-byte characters or only single-byte

katakana.

To restore default group name, press @ GER for 1+ seconds and press .

# Press ( [Complete].

# **Related Operations**

Set ring tone and Chaku-motion for group <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

- 1 In the group setting screen, press 2 2....
  - To set mail ring tone for group: Press 33.
- 2 Press (1.4).
  - To set Chaku-motion: Press 22.
  - To disable: Press 33.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ring tone ▶ ② [OK] ▶ ③ [Complete].

#### **Related Operations**

#### Set called LED color for group <Called LED and Mail/Message LED>

- 1 In the group setting screen (PP. 106), press 45.
  - To set mail/message LED color for group: press 5 %.
- 2 Select called LED color.
  - For each color selected, picture light/called LED color changes and turns off after a while.
- 3 Press ▶ (a) [Complete].

#### Set image for group <Picture call set>

- 1 In the group setting screen (P. 106), press 5.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To set movie/i-motion: Press 22.

  - To disable image: Press 45.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ▶ image ▶ ② [OK] ▶ ② [Complete].

#### **Note**

#### Select ring tone/Mail ring tone

- Refer to P. 101 for details on Ring tone and Mail ring tone priority.
- Not available for FOMA card phonebook.
- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion with Ring tone set to unavailable cannot be set as Chaku-motion. (@P. 394)
- Movies/i-motion copied from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chakumotion. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular ring tone.
- Calls and mail from members in groups set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use group
  ring tone and group mail ring tone settings, set Secret mode (☼) P. 156) to ON.
- Save entire mail address to use group mail ring tone. If mail address is phone number@docomo.ne.jp, set only phone number.
- If movie/i-motion with image and voice is set as Chaku-motion, the same movie/i-motion is automatically set for group Picture call settings.
- When voice only movies or i-motion (melodies with no video) are set as Chaku-motion, the Receive
  display is prioritized as follows: phonebook Picture call settings → group Picture call settings → Call/
  Receive display settings. When none of these are set, the 電話着信1 image appears.

#### Called LED and Mail/Message LED

- Refer to P. 101 for details on Called LED and Mail/Message LED priority.
- Not available for FOMA card phonebook.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular Called LED color.
- Calls and mail from members in groups set as Secret are notified with regular LED color. To use group
  called LED and group mail LED settings, set Secret mode (PP P. 156) to ON.
- Save entire address to use group mail/message LED. If mail address is phone number@docomo.ne.jp, set only phone number.
- Random is not available for mail/message LED.

#### **Related Operations**

#### **Note**

#### Picture call

- When group Picture call is set, **a** appears on group selection screen.
- Refer to P. 102 for image priority.
- Not available for FOMA card phonebook.
- i-motion that are voice only (melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Movies/i-motion copied from miniSD to FOMA terminal handset are not available. To use shot movies for Picture call, record them on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular incoming screen.
- Calls from members in groups set as Secret are notified by regular incoming screen. To use group
  Picture call settings, set Secret mode (PFP. 156) to ON.
- Not available images are crossed out. Appears gray in lists.

#### Search Phonebook

# **Making Calls from Phonebook**

Retrieve phone numbers from phonebook to make calls and send mail. Additionally, set Secret mode ( P. 156) to ON to search for phonebook entries saved as secret data.

• When phonebook PIM is locked, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to make calls from phonebook.

### Selecting Phonebook Search Method <Search By>

Search phonebook by reading, group, or memory number.

- Memory numbers do not exist on FOMA card phonebook. Searching by memory number is not available.
- In stand-by, press 🗓 to show by the last method used.



## In stand-by, press in and in to select search method.

-reading?	1./-@	FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks are sorted by reading.
Group?	2 #sc	FOMA terminal handset entries appear first.
Memory no.?		Only FOMA terminal handset entries appear. FOMA card phonebook does not have memory numbers and cannot be sorted.

• Phonebook appears sorted by selected search method.

### **Related Operations**

#### Open phonebook during voice call

During a voice call, press (phonebook) ▶ . (phonebook) ▶ .

Alternatively, press

## View miniSD Memory Card phonebook <View miniSD data>

In stand-by, press 🖗 🕨 📵 # 💬 .

#### Lock Phonebook PIM <Security setting>

#### **Note**

#### View miniSD Data

Search method for miniSD Memory Card phonebook cannot be selected.

#### In viewer position

#### Making Calls from viewer position

- 1 In stand-by, press ⊙ (shutter) ▶ ◯ (phonebook) ▶ ⊙ (shutter).
- 2 Enter name ▶ (•) (shutter) ▶ (•) (shutter).
  - To search by group: Select group ▶ ① (shutter) ▶ name ▶ ② (shutter) ▶ ② (shutter).
  - To scroll up a page: Press (i) (left guidance) for 1+ seconds.
  - To scroll down a page: Press (a) (right guidance) for 1+ seconds.

### Searching by Name <-reading?>

7

# In stand-by, press 💆.



- Alternatively, select 🖾 (Phonebook) from Top menu.
- If search by reading phonebook list does not appear, press (1.2) (1.2).

Phonebook list (Other column)

2

### Select name.

To show previous/next page	Press ⊕.
To select one	Press 🗘.
To enter reading (Quick search)	Closest entry appears after each character is entered.

? Press •.



Phonebook details screen

•	Sele	ct	con	with	n 😷	) and	l pre	ess (	•) t	o pe	rforn	the	foll	owin	g.
	-	ê	-4	A	HH .	A FFF		11		11 4 -		ملید ام			1-

2 8 6 8 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6	Place call to saved phone number.
	Compose message screen addressed to saved mail
	address appears.
<b>=</b>	View saved postal address.
•	View saved memo.
<b>♪</b> 🔊	Play set ring tone or Chaku-motion.
₽ 🖼	Set called LED flashes.
2	Set still picture or movie/i-motion appears.
•	Play set Chara-den.



#### Make a call.

To make voice calls	Press <sup>←</sup> or • [≰].
To make video-phone calls	Press 📵 [V-phone].

• Call is placed to phone number displayed.

- In phonebook list, press <sup>™</sup> to scroll up one page and <sup>™</sup> to scroll down one page. Scrolls within group in group search screen.
- Appears in following order for reading search.
   Katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/handakuten) → alphabet → numbers → space → symbols → no reading (Appears after numbers and before symbols if space is at beginning.)

### Searching by Group <Group?>

# 7

# In stand-by, press 🗐.



- Alternatively, select (Phonebook) from Top menu.
- If group selection screen does not appear, press (1.4) [2.4].

Group selection screen

2

# Select a group and press (•).



- Phonebook list for specified group appears.
- Entries appear in order of reading (katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/ handakuten) → alphabet → numbers → spaces → symbols → no reading).
- Phonebook entries with no group settings are grouped in Not specified.

Phonebook list (グループ1)

3

### Select name.

To show previous/next group	Press €.
To select one	Press 🗘.
To enter reading (Quick search)	Closest entry appears after each character is entered.



# Press •.

- Phonebook entry details screen appears.
- Refer to step 3 of "Searching by Name" on P. 109 for operations when each icon is selected.

# 5

#### Make a call.

To make voice calls	Press
To make video-phone calls	Press 📵 [V-phone].

Call is placed to phone number displayed.

# Searching by Memory Number < Memory No?>

• Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers 000 to 099. (PP P. 115)

1

## In stand-by, press 🗐.



- Alternatively, select (Phonebook) from Top menu.
- If search by memory number phonebook list does not appear, press (33).

FOMA terminal handset phonebook list screen (Memory numbers 010 to 019)

# 2

## Select memory number.

To show previous/next page	Press ⊙.  The previous/next ten entries appear.
To select one	Press 🗘.
To enter memory number (Quick search)	<ul> <li>After each digit is entered, corresponding entries appear. Enter three digits for memory numbers. For example, when 085 is entered, the following appear.</li> <li>■ Enter 0 for first digit: entry numbers 000 to 009 appear.</li> <li>■ Enter 8 for second digit: entry number 080 to 089 appear.</li> <li>■ Enter 5 for third digit: entry number 085 appears.</li> <li>If entered memory number is not saved in phonebook, entry for next largest memory number appears. However if larger memory number does not exist, then smallest memory number closest to 000 appears.</li> </ul>

# 3

### Press (•).

- Phonebook entry details screen appears.
- Refer to step 3 of "Searching by Name" on P. 109 for operations when each icon is selected.



#### Make a call.

To make voice calls	Press <b>@</b> or <b>()</b> [ <b>⊈</b> ].
To make video-phone calls	Press (i) [V-phone].

• Call is placed to phone number displayed.

### **Related Operations**

### Select calling method and make call

- 2 Press [ [V-phone] for video-phone.
  - To make voice call: Press or .

  - To add prefix: Press 
     □ □ □ □ prefix 
     □ □ □ or □ □.

  - To send ID: Press 
     5 €
     F
     or 
     .

#### Specify image and make video-phone call <V-phone image>

- 2 Press ⓐ 9♣ 2♣ ▶ Chara-den ▶ € [OK] ▶ € [V-phone].

#### Set transmission speed and make video-phone call <Dialing speed>

- 1 In stand-by, press **→** name **→ ○**.
- 2 Press 

  Dialing speed \* ▶ ●.
- 3 Press 1.4 [64K] or 2.4 [32K] ▶ ( [V-phone].
- \* **Dialing speed** appears when a FOMA card phonebook entry is selected.

#### Note

#### Video-phone image setting

- Still pictures cannot be set.
- Video-phone image setting is reset after video-phone ends.

#### **Related Operations**

#### **Note**

#### **Dialing speed**

- The default setting is 64K.
- Transmission speed is reset after video-phone ends.
- It is recommended that 64K transmission speed be used when making video-phone calls to compatible FOMA terminals. Use 32K transmission for connecting to devices such as PHS phones that cannot use 64K due to network conditions.

If a 64K video-phone call is made to a 32K area, transmission speed is automatically switched to 32K and redialed.

### Changing Phonebook List Appearance <Switch View Mode>

Show images set in Picture call for entries in phonebook list.

details screen

1

In stand-by, press 🖹 and 🔊 5 🛣.



Not available when showing miniSD Memory Card data.						
	Press $\stackrel{\text{\tiny le}}{\to}$ $\rightarrow$ group $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$					
To switch phonebook	Press $\stackrel{\circ}{\mathbb{D}} \to \text{name} \to \bigcirc \to \bigcirc \bigcirc \stackrel{\circ}{\mathbb{D}}$ .					

#### Note

- Only first phone number and mail address can be displayed or selected when showing still pictures in phonebook list. Select other phone numbers and mail addresses from phonebook details screen.
- Image set for group Picture call is shown for all members of group. Individually set images are prioritized.
- If another FOMA card is inserted, FOMA card restrictions (P. 39) are activated. Substitute image
  appears if image downloaded from site is set for Picture call (P. 100). Settings return when original
  FOMA card is inserted.

# Restricting Still Picture Transfer to miniSD Memory Card <a href="mailto:lmage-transfer">lmage Transfer</a>>

Set to not transfer images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are copied to a miniSD Memory Card.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (127 P. 381)

- When Image transfer is set to Yes, more time may be taken when copying phonebook entries to a miniSD Memory Card.
- Even if Image transfer is set to Yes, images that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- The default setting is Yes.



## In stand-by, press 🖲 and 🖻.

Sub menu appears.



# Select Image transfer, press o and [2.48] [No].

- Images are not transferred.
- When entry on FOMA card is selected, Image transfer does not appear.

# **Editing Phonebook Entries**

#### Edit items saved in phonebook entries.

- Editing is not available when All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- Editing is not available for phonebook entries set to accept/reject calls, and phonebook entries set with Remote lock all License number.



# In stand-by, press , select name and press [a] 3 ...



When editing from phonebook details screen, press <a>a</a> <a>1.3</a>

FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry screen



# Select item and press to edit.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving.
- Even if a name is edited, the reading does not automatically change.
- When multiple phone numbers are saved, (Not registered) appears if the first phone number saved is
  deleted. However, other phone numbers remain unchanged.

# 3

# Press [ [Complete] and save.

FOMA terminal	To overwrite	Press $\bullet \to \mathbf{Yes} \to \bullet$ .
	To save to a different memory number	Enter memory number.  ● Press ② □ for 1+ seconds, delete memory number and press ③ to save to an available memory number.  ( □ P. 99)
FOMA card phonebook		Select $Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

### **Related Operations**

### Copy saved details <Copy item>

In stand-by, press 🗒 ▶ name ▶ • ▶ item ▶ • 3♣.

#### Note

#### Copying saved details

- The following items can be copied: FOMA terminal handset phonebook names, phone numbers one
  through three, mail addresses one through three, Memo, postal addresses, and FOMA card phonebook
  names, phone numbers, and mail addresses.
- Refer to "Pasting Text" on P. 555 for information on pasting text copied from the phonebook.

# **Deleting Phonebook Entries**

#### Delete data saved in phonebook.

- Deleting is not available when All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- Deleting is not available for phonebook entries set to accept/reject calls, and phonebook entries set with Remote lock all License number. (All in group and Delete all are available.)

1

In stand-by, press , select name and press (a) 4 5.



7

# Select deletion method.

To delete one phonebook data	Press $\bigcirc A \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc A$ .
To delete all entries in a group	Press $\square \implies$ group $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To delete all entries on FOMA terminal handset	Press $3 \ 3 \ 3 \ 4 \ 3$ $\rightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ .
To delete all entries on FOMA card phonebook	Press $3 - 2 - 2 = 3$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow \bigcirc 3 - 3 = 3 - 3 = 3 = 3 = 3 = 3 = 3 = 3 =$
To delete selected entries collectively	Press $\textcircled{4} \Rightarrow$ name $\Leftrightarrow$ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{f}$ [Complete] $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{Yes} \rightarrow$ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ . $\bullet$ Select up to 50 entries.

Phonebook data is deleted.

#### **Related Operations**

Delete from phonebook details screen <Delete one>

In the phonebook details screen, press (a) 2 2 > Yes (a).

#### **Set Secret**

# **Hiding Private Numbers**

Secret phonebook entries are hidden and access is restricted unless Secret mode is set to ON.

• Set secret is not available for FOMA card phonebook entries.

# Setting Entries as Secret Data <Set Secret>

1

In the phonebook entry screen (PP. 98), select , press and [M] [ON].

2

# Press ( [Complete] to save.

To save a new entry	Enter memory number.	
(© P. 99)		
To overwrite	Press $\bullet \to \mathbf{Yes} \to \bullet$ .	

- Set Secret mode (PP P. 156) to ON to use 2-touch dialing for secret phonebook entries saved in memory numbers 000 to 099.
- Mail addresses saved in secret phonebook entries are also restricted unless Secret mode is set to ON.

#### Note

#### **Opening secret data**

- Set Secret mode (PPP. 156) to **ON** and perform the same steps as when viewing normal entries. (Ell flashes when secret data is selected in phonebook list.)
- Same operations as normal phonebook are available.

#### Redials, Received calls, Received/Sent messages history and Schedule

- Phone number and mail address set as Secret appear instead of name. Set Secret mode to ON to show name.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use Select ring tone/Mail
  ring tone and group ring tone/group mail ring tone settings, set Secret mode to ON.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular LED color. To use Called LED, Mail/ Message LED and group called LED, group mail/message LED, set Secret mode to ON.

#### 2-touch Dialing

# Calling with a Few Key Strokes

Easily call parties saved in memory numbers 000 to 099 in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

• First phone number is called when multiple are saved.



### In stand-by, enter last or last two digits.



- Memory number 000 to 009: Enter 💇 to 📆.

# 2

### Make a call.

Ī	To make voice calls	Press @AFFQ.
ſ	To make video-phone calls	Press (i [V-phone].

• Call is placed to entry saved for entered memory number.

- 2-touch dialing is not available when phonebook PIM is locked. (PP P. 153)
- Set Secret mode (PP. 156) to ON to use 2-touch dialing for secret phonebook entries saved in memory numbers 000 to 099.



# Sound/Screen/ Light Settings

### ■ Sound Settings

Changing Mobile Phone Sounds	Sound Settings>118
Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume	<adjust volume="">121</adjust>
Vibrating for Calls and Alarms	
Sounding Alarm when the Signal is Weak	< Quality Alarm>124
Setting Mail Ring Tone Duration	< Mail Ring Duration > 125
Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only	<ring output="">125</ring>
Silencing Handset	Manner Mode>126
Changing Manner Mode	< Original Manner Mode>127
■Screen/Light Settings	
Changing Stand-by Display Settings	<stand-by display="">128</stand-by>
Changing Call/Receive Image	<call display="" receive="">131</call>
<ul><li>Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages</li></ul>	<send display="" receive="">131</send>
<ul> <li>Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image for Incoming C</li> </ul>	alls <picture call="" set="">132</picture>
Saving Battery Power	<power saver="" set="">132</power>
Setting Original Power Saver Mode	Vser Set>133
Arranging the Display	<personalize>135</personalize>
Changing Top Menu Design	
Setting the Illumination Color	Called LED>141
Changing Font Width	Font Style>1/2

# **Changing Mobile Phone Sounds**

Change the ring tone and Chaku-motion and set stereo effects ( P. 123). Select preset melodies, melodies from miniSD Memory Cards, melodies received via i-mode mail or melodies downloaded from i-mode. Also change i-mode mail, SMS, Chat mail and Message R/F ring tone.

• Set i-motion downloaded from i-mode or audio/video data recorded with FOMA terminal.

### Changing Ring Tone and Chaku-motion <Select Ring Tone>

Default setting See below

The default setting is 着信音 1 for Phone ring tone, *Phone ring tone* for Video-phone ring tone/Payphone ring tone/User unset/Not support, 着信音 2 for Mail ring tone, 着信音 2 for Chat mail tone and *Mail ring tone* for Message R/F and SMS ring tone.

# 1

### In stand-by, press ( ) 1.2 2 2 and select an item.



 Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Sound → Select sound → Select ring tone from Top menu.

To change phone ring tone	Press 1.2.
To change Video-phone ring tone	Press 2
To change Payphone ring tone	Press 3
To change User unset	Press 45.
To change Not support	Press 5 %.

# 7

### Select ring tone.

To set melodies	Press ♠ of older → ♠ → ring tone → ♠ [OK].  To check ring tone, select a ring tone and press ♠ [Agree]. To stop, press ♠ [Stop]. A confirmation screen appears when Manner mode is set. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ♠.
To set i-motion	Press ②③ → folder → ⑥ → Chaku-motion → ② [OK].  Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions are not available.  i-motion with Ring tone set to <i>unavailable</i> cannot be set as Chaku-motion. (②P. 394)  i-motion copied from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset are not available. To use shot movies for Chaku-motion, record them on the FOMA terminal.  Refer to P. 332 for details on setting i-motion as the ring tone.
To silence ring tone	Press 3 .
To make Video-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset and Not support identical to Phone ring tone	Press (4 👼).

Ring tone is set.

- If the ring tone is changed, receive display may also be changed. (PP. 332)
- Ring tone does not sound while Drive mode is set.
- When checking ring tone in step 2, ring tones play back at set volume but volume can be adjusted by pressing (a) When volume is set to Silent or Step, ring tones play at Volume 1.
- Ring tones are prioritized as follows when multiple ring tones are set.

	Priority (high $ ightarrow$ low)	
Ring tone	Phonebook ring tone $ o$ Group ring tone $ o$ Video-phone ring tone $ o$ regular ring tone	

- *V-phone ring tone* is prioritized for video-phone calls with no caller ID.
- When a call is received during data transmission, the tone saved as Phone ring tone sounds. The
  animation for data transmission is used for the incoming image. 着信音1 is used if a movie/i-motion is set.
- If another FOMA card is inserted, FOMA card restriction functions (TP 2.39) are activated and the ring
  tone is reset to the default. The set ring tone returns when original FOMA card is inserted.

### **Related Operations**

#### Change i-mode mail and Chat mail ring tone <Select mail tone/Chat mail tone>

- 1 In stand-by, press (a) 1. 2 2 2 2 2 2 1. 3 for i-mode mail.
  - For Chat mail: In stand-by, press (•) 1.2 2 3 3.
- 2 Press (1./2)
  - To set movie/i-motion: Press 22.
  - To silence ring tone: Press 3.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ring tone ▶ i [OK].

#### Change SMS and Message R/F ring tone <Select mail tone>

- 1 In stand-by, press ( ) 1. Za 2 Za 2 Za 4 Za for SMS.

  - For Message F: In stand-by, press 1.2 2 2 2 3 3 3.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To set movie/i-motion: Press ②♣.
  - To silence ring tone: Press 3.
  - To conform to Mail ring tone: Press 45.
- 3 Select folder ▶ ring tone ▶ € [OK].

### Preset ring tones

Song title	Artist	3D data	Song title	Artist	3D data
ラグタイムダンス	SCOTT JOPLIN	Yes	Twilight	_	_
ワルキューレの騎行	RICHARD WAGNER	Yes	OP(標準音)	_	Yes
Festival Night	_	Yes	OP (ロボット)	_	_
Get A Hustle	_	Yes	OP (HipHop)	_	_
My Journey	_	Yes	OP(電子音)	_	_
Simple Life	_	Yes	OP (OPEN)	_	_
ジュピター	GUSTAV HOLST	Yes	CL(標準音)	_	Yes
夏	ANTONIO LUCIO VIVALDI	Yes	CL(ロボット)	_	_
Ave Maria	GIULIO CACCINI	Yes	CL (HipHop)	_	_
Alternate	_	Yes	CL(電子音)	_	_
着信音 1	_	_	CL (CLOSE)	_	_
着信音 2	_	_	TU(標準音)	_	_
黒電話	_	_	TU(ロボット)	_	_
Full Throttle	_	Yes	TU (HipHop)	_	_
Smily Tap	_	Yes	TU(電子音)	_	_
Afro Cruise	_	Yes	TU (TURN)	_	_
Sunrise	_	_	標準音	_	_
Sunset	_	_	時間です	_	_
Stardust	_	_	It's time	_	_

#### **Note**

- Numbers in phonebook can be set to play selected ring tone. In addition, mail addresses in phonebook can
  be set to play selected mail ring tone.
- For calls without caller ID, the User unset ring tone sounds.

Transfer saved i-melody data to a PC using miniSD Memory Card (127 P. 381). (Melodies with file restrictions cannot be transferred.)

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- Refer to "Melody icon layout" on P. 380 for details on the icons for each melody.

## Changing the Open/Close/Rotation Sound and Timer Sound <Open Sound/Close Sound/Rotation Sound/Timer Sound>

See below

Change the sound played when opening and closing or rotating the handset, and the timer sound.

- Open sound and Rotation sound do not sound if i-motion is set as the stand-by display. In addition, the sound omitted when changed to viewer position is also silenced.
- Select from melodies in Data box.

The default setting is OP (標準音) for Open sound, CL (標準音) for Close sound, TU (標準音) for Rotation sound, 3 seconds for Ring duration (for Open sound, Close sound, and Rotation sound), 標準音 for Timer sound, and 15 seconds for Ring duration (for Timer sound).

## In stand-by, press ( ) 1. 2 2 2 4 4 4 and select an item.

Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → Sound → Select sound → Setting sounds from Top menu.

To change Open sound	Press 1.4.
To change Close sound	Press 2 de la company.
To change Rotation sound	Press 3
To change Timer sound	Press 5 m.

#### Select tone.

To select Default tone	Press 1.a.
To set Melodies	Press ②③ → folder → ⑥ → melody → ⑥ [OK].  • To check ring tone, select a ring tone and press ⑥ [Agree]. To stop, press ⑥ [Stop]. A confirmation screen appears when Manner mode is set. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ⑥.
To silence ring tone	Press 3

- When ring duration setting screen appears, enter a ring duration (00 to 99 seconds).
- Tone is set.

- Movies/i-motion are not available for Open sound, Close sound, Rotation sound, Shutter sound and Timer
- Refer to P. 190 for Shutter sound settings.
- When checking melody in step 2, melodies play back at set volume but volume can be adjusted by pressing (a) 1.2. When volume is set to **Silent**, melodies play at **Volume 1**.
- Ring duration cannot be set for Open sound, Close sound, or Rotation sound when Default tone or a sound effect from the Pre-install folder is selected.

# **Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume**

Change voice/video-phone, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F ring tone volume. Volume can also be changed for Keypad sound, FOMA terminal Open/Close sound, Rotation sound, Timer sound and Charge start/end sound.

### Adjusting Ring Tone Volume < Phone Ring Volume>

Default setting
All at Volume 3

Change the ring tone volume for voice calls and video-phone calls. Also change i-mode mail, SMS, Chat mail and Message R/F ring tone volume.

• Adjust the volume to silent (Silent) or set it to gradually get louder (Step).



# In stand-by, press • 1.2 1.2 and select an item.



 Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Sound → Select volume → Phone ring vol from Top menu.

To adjust ring volume for voice call	Press 🕼.
To adjust ring volume for Video-phone	Press 2 &.
To adjust ring volume for Payphone	Press 3
To adjust ring volume for User unset	Press 4
To adjust ring volume for Not support	Press 5 &.

# 2

# Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust and press (...

- Volume 1 is the lowest and Volume 5 is the highest.
- To set to Step, press when volume is set to Volume 5. When Step is set, the volume increases in three second increments from Volume 1 to Volume 4 and rings at Volume 5 thereafter.
   Chaku-motion is also played back in Step when set.

#### Note

- Volume remains at adjusted level even when handset is turned off or battery pack is removed.
- Phone ring volume and Vibration mode settings (P. 123) are not linked. Set ring volume to Silent to silence ring tones when Vibrator is enabled.
- If animated GIF or Flash movie is set as stand-by, 🖓 does not appear until animation is finished.
- The ring volume for a call received during data transmission is the volume setting for Phone ring tone.

### **Related Operations**

### Adjust i-mode mail, Message R/F, SMS ring volume <Mail ring tone>

- 1 In stand-by, press 1.4 1.4 for i-mode mail.

  - For Message F: In stand-by, press 1.2 2 3 3.
  - For SMS: In stand-by, press (•) 1.4 1.4 2 4 4 4.
- 2 Press <sup>(\*)</sup> (louder) or (₃ (softer) ) (•).

#### Adjust Chat mail ring volume <Chat ring tone>

## Adjusting Earpiece Volume < Earpiece Volume>

Volume 3

Select from five earpiece volume levels.



In stand-by, press (\*) or (•) for 1+ seconds.

- Earpiece volume screen appears.
- If a calendar is shown, press 🕿 to disable the calendar before continuing with operations.

(louder) or (,) (softer) to adjust and press (●).

# Adjusting Keypad Sound Volume < Keypad Sound>

Default setting

Volume 3

Adjust the volume of the sounds emitted when keys are pressed (Keypad sound). Also adjust the volume for Open/Close sound, Rotation sound, Timer sound and Charge start/end sound.

- Set to Silent to silence the Battery level sound, Keypad sound, Open/Close sound, Rotation sound, Timer sound. Charge start/end sound and error tone.
- Sounds are disabled in Manner mode.

In stand-by, press ( ) 1.½ (1.½ (4 ﷺ ) 1.½.

- Alternatively, select  $\chi_{i}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Sound**  $\rightarrow$  **Select volume**  $\rightarrow$  **Setting sound vol**  $\rightarrow$ Keypad sound from Top menu.
- Keypad sound screen appears.

Press (\*) (louder) or (.) (softer) to adjust and press (\*).

#### Note

• Keypad sound is not active when operating character during Chara-den call (PP P. 373), while playing Chara-den (PP. 372) or while shooting Chara-den (PP. 374).

### **Related Operations**

Adjust Open/Close and Rotation sound volume < Open sound/Close sound/ Rotation sound>

- 1 In stand-by, press ( ) 1. 4 4 4 4 F 2 4 for Open sound.
  - To adjust Close sound volume: In stand-by, press (•) 1.4 4 4 3 3 ...
  - To adjust Rotation sound volume: In stand-by, press 1.4 4 5 4 5.
- 2 Press (\*) (louder) or (.) (softer) ▶ (•).

Adjust Charge start and Charge end sound volume <Charge start sound/Charge end sound>

- 1 In stand-by, press (a) 1.1 (4 in 5 in for Charge start sound.
- 2 Press ( (louder) or ( (softer) ) (o.

Adjust Timer sound volume <Timer sound>

In stand-by, press ● 1.1 (softer) ▶ • (louder) or • (softer) ▶ •.

## Setting 3D Sound/Surround <Stereo Effects>

Default setting

Stereo•3D sound

Set ring tone in the following ways.

	Play realistic 3D sound from stereo speakers. Ring tones without 3D data are played in stereo sound.
	3D data is ignored and ring tone plays in surround sound. Ring tones without 3D data are also played in surround sound.
OFF	Ring tone plays in monaural*2 regardless of type.

- \*1 Playback system that offers rich and vibrant sound.
- \*2 Playback system that does not feature rich sound.
- Rich and vibrant sound is not available when set to OFF.

#### 3D sound

The 3D sound function uses stereo speakers (or Stereo earphone set) to create a spacious ambient sound that moves through the air. Enjoy lively i- $\alpha$ ppli games, ring tones and i-motion with 3D sound (for content supporting 3D sound).

- For the best results, hold the FOMA terminal about 40 cm in front.
- Note that 3D sound is less effective if held slightly off to the side, too close or too far out front.



• Effects vary depending on the person. Set Stereo effects to *OFF* if uncomfortable.



# In stand-by, press • 1.5 9 and select a Stereo effect.



Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → Sound → Stereo effects from Top menu.

3D sound	Press 1.2.
Surround	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
To disable Stereo effects	Press 3

#### **Vibrator**

# **Vibrating for Calls and Alarms**

Default setting

Vibration mode: OFF Mail vibration: OFF

Set Vibrator to notify incoming calls/mail and alarms with a combination of vibration and melody.

- The vibrator pattern for alarms is the same as the pattern set for Vibration mode.
- Vibration mode and volume settings are not linked. Set the volume to Silent to silence ring tones and alarm tones. Set volume separately while Vibrator is set. (PP P. 121, P. 435)
- Also use vibration patterns set to melodies. (With melody)



# In stand-by, press • 1.2 3 and select an item.

Alternatively, select \( \mathbb{\ceil} \) (Settings) → Sound → Vibrator from Top menu.

To set Vibration mode	Press 1.3.
To set Mail vibration	Press 2 #.

# Select vibration pattern.

OFF	1./2	Vibrator does not activate.
Pattern 1	2 #80	Vibrates for approximately 0.8 seconds $\rightarrow$ stops for approximately 0.8 seconds and repeats.
Pattern 2	3 के	Vibrates for approximately 0.3 seconds $\rightarrow$ stops for approximately 0.3 seconds $\rightarrow$ vibrates for approximately 0.3 seconds $\rightarrow$ stops for approximately 1 second and repeats.
Pattern 3	(4 gr	Continuous vibration
With melody	5 <sup>#</sup>	<ul> <li>Vibrator and melody activate (With melody) for melodies created with vibration settings added.</li> <li>Melodies that do not have vibration settings vibrate in <i>Pattern 1</i>.</li> </ul>

- Vibrator is set and the FOMA terminal vibrates. A appears in stand-by. However, icon does not appear if vibrator is set only for mail.
- Select Pattern 1 to 3 with (\*) to sample the vibration pattern. (Picture light/Called LED flashes.)

#### **Note**

- Note that if Vibrator is set and FOMA terminal is left on a table, it may fall when a call is received.
- Vibrator settings are not reflected in Flash movies (FP. 232).
- Even if Vibrator is set to *OFF*, vibrator operates in *Pattern 1* while in Manner mode.
- If animated GIF or Flash movie is set as stand-by, 💥 does not appear until animation is finished.
- Even if With melody is set, vibration is not in conjunction with the main melody.

#### **Quality Alarm**

# Sounding Alarm when the Signal is Weak

Default setting
Alarm on (high)

The alarm sounds if the call is about to disconnect such as when the signal is weak.

- Quality alarm is available only for voice calls.
- Alarm settings are Alarm on (high), Alarm on (low), and No alarm.



# In stand-by, press (•) 5 % 2 % and select an alarm tone.

Alternatively, select \(\int\_{\infty}^{\infty}\) (Settings) → Phone settings → Alarm during call → Quality alarm from Top menu.

Alarm tone (high)	Press 1.2.
Alarm tone (low)	Press 2
To set alarm to off	Press 3 de la companya del companya de la companya della companya

· Quality alarm is set.

- The call may be disconnected without the alarm sounding if the signal suddenly becomes weak.
- Quality alarm does not sound during a video-phone call.

# **Setting Mail Ring Tone Duration**

3 seconds

Set duration of Mail ring tone from 01 to 30 seconds or set to not ring.

In stand-by, press (●) 1.₺ 6₺ and 1.₺ [ON].



- Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{X}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Sound**  $\rightarrow$  **Mail ring duration** from Top
- Ring duration entry screen appears.

Enter duration (two digits: 01 to 30 seconds) and press (•).



Mail ring duration is set.

#### **Note**

Mail ring tone does not sound while call is in progress, running i-αppli or playing i-motion/melodies.

#### **Ring Output**

# **Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only**

Default setting Earphone+speaker

Set ring tone to sound from earphone instead of the FOMA terminal speaker when the flatplug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

• If no flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, the ring tone will sound from the speaker even when set to Earphone only.



In stand-by, press (•) 1.2 5 and select a ring tone output method.

Alternatively, select \(\int\_i\) (Settings) → Sound → Ring output from Top menu.

To sound ring tone from earphone only	Press 1.4.
To sound ring tone from earphone and	Press 2 3.
speaker	

- The phone ring volume in the earphone/microphone is set using Phone ring volume (FP . 121). When the volume is set to Silent, no ring tone sounds from the earphone.
- Never wind the earphone/microphone cord around FOMA terminal. Internal antenna may not work
- Fully insert the earphone/microphone plug. Interrupted sound, static or loud noise may result when partially inserted.
- The following are not malfunctions.
  - Interrupted sound or static when the earphone/microphone is only partially inserted during a call
  - A popping sound upon turning power on

# **Silencing Handset**

Use Manner mode to avoid disturbing others when in public. A single key operation silences the FOMA terminal.

Select from Normal, Silent and Original manner mode.
 Settings vary for each mode as indicated below.

Function	Normal	Silent	Original*
Record message	ON	OFF	ON
Ring tone	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mail ring tone	OFF	OFF	OFF
Vibration mode	ON	OFF	ON
Keypad sound	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mic sensitivity	ON	ON	ON
Low power alarm	OFF	OFF	OFF

- Original manner mode settings can be changed. (PP. 127)
- Camera shutter sound and movie record start/end sound are not silenced. Sound is silenced for Record Chara-den (☞ P. 374).

### **Setting Manner Mode**

1

### Press ## for 1+ seconds in stand-by.



- To set Manner mode during a call or while receiving a call, press #50 for 1+ seconds. The Manner mode selected previously is set.
- If set while receiving, ring tone is silenced and Manner mode is set. This setting remains set until disabled. Caller's message is recorded if incoming call is not answered. Record message is not set if three Record messages (voice calls)/
   Voice memos or two Record messages (video-phone) are already recorded.
   Press end to answer the call.
- To set Manner mode in viewer position, press for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- To select Manner mode type, press (a) (1.3) (4.5) in stand-by. When settings are performed while Manner mode is set, the set Manner mode is changed. When settings are performed while Manner mode is disabled, the settings are applied the next time Manner mode is set.

# 2

# Select Manner mode type and press



- Set appears and Manner mode is set ( appears).
- The Manner mode selected previously is set if no operations are performed for approximately two seconds after step 1.

#### In stand-by or while receiving, with Manner mode set (Normal)

- The following are silenced.
  - Keypad sound, error tones (beeps), warning sounds, melody playback (a confirmation screen appears), i- $\alpha$ ppli melodies/sound effects, open sound, close sound, rotation sound, charge start sound, charge end sound, battery level sound, on hold tone, hold tone during calls, bar code recognition tone, Limit settings alarm, etc.
- The following are changed to vibrations.
   Ring tones, alarm tones, timer sounds, etc.
- Record message is automatically set. Record message cannot be set or disabled (TP P. 72) using menu operations.

### **Disabling Manner Mode**



# Press $\# \Rightarrow$ for 1+ seconds in stand-by, during a call or while receiving.

- Disabled appears and Manner mode is disabled.
- When in viewer position, press for 1+ seconds in stand-by.

#### Note

#### Mic sensitivity

 If Manner mode is set during a call, the microphone becomes more sensitive. Microphone sensitivity does not change if Mic sensitivity is set during a Hands-free call.

### **Related Operations**

#### Disable Manner mode automatically at a specified time <Auto disable>

In stand-by, enter disabling time (four digits: 24-hour format) ▶ ## (for 1+ seconds) or ● 5 ♣.

#### Silence ring tone when Manner mode is not set <Quick silent>

Press #= or (for 1+ seconds) while receiving.

#### Note

#### **Automatically disabling Manner mode**

- Disabling time is within 24 hours of the time of setting.
- When a screen other than stand-by is shown at the disabling time, or when turned off, Manner mode is disabled upon returning to stand-by.
- Repeat the operations to change disabling time.

#### **Quick silent**

- Quick silent silences the current incoming call.
- When in viewer position, press (•) (shutter) for 1+ seconds.

#### **Original Manner Mode**

# **Changing Manner Mode**

Default setting See below

Change the *ON/OFF* settings of the various functions that are activated when Original manner mode is set.

The default setting is **ON** for Record message, **OFF** for Ring tone, **OFF** for Mail ring tone, **ON** for Vibration mode, **OFF** for Keypad sound, **ON** for Mic sensitivity and **OFF** for Low power alarm.



# In stand-by, press • 1.1 4 4 4 3 3 2 ...



 Alternatively, select \(\infty\) (Settings) → Sound → Manner mode → Original from Top menu.

# Select function and ON or OFF.

To set Record message	Press $\underbrace{1.2}$ $\rightarrow \underbrace{1.2}$ [ON] or $\underbrace{2.4}$ [OFF].
To set Ring tone	Press $2 \ \longrightarrow 1 \ \bigcirc$ [ON] or $2 \ \bigcirc$ [OFF].
To set Mail ring tone	Press ③ → ① [ON] or ② [OFF].
To set Vibration mode	Press 4 → 1. [ON] or 2 [OFF].
To set keypad sound	Press $5 \stackrel{?}{\underset{R}{\cancel{-}}} \rightarrow 1 \stackrel{?}{\underset{R}{\cancel{-}}}$ [ON] or $2 \stackrel{?}{\underset{R}{\cancel{-}}}$ [OFF].
To set Mic sensitivity	Press $6 \stackrel{\text{\tiny{16}}}{\text{\tiny{16}}} \rightarrow 1 \stackrel{\text{\tiny{16}}}{\text{\tiny{16}}}$ [ON] or $2 \stackrel{\text{\tiny{16}}}{\text{\tiny{16}}}$ [OFF].
To set Low power alarm	Press T♣ → T♣ [ON] or T♣ [OFF].

Change Original manner mode settings.

#### Note

- If ring tone for Original manner mode is set to ON and Phone ring tone is set to Silent (TP P. 121), ring tone does not sound.
- Record message activates if set to ON (PP P. 72) even if set to OFF in Original manner mode.
- Change Original manner mode settings even while Manner mode is set.
- If a connected external device is set to sound, it will sound even if Manner mode is set.

#### When Mic sensitivity is set

 If Manner mode is set, microphone becomes more sensitive during calls. Microphone sensitivity does not change if Mic sensitivity is set during a Hands-free call.

#### Stand-by Display

# **Changing Stand-by Display Settings**

### Displaying an Image

Default setting

待受画面 1

Set images saved in Data box, including preset still pictures, shot still pictures and movies, downloaded still pictures and Flash movies, i-motion, images received via i-mode mail, etc., as stand-by.

- Use Data box images such as JPEG/GIF images, animated GIF, Flash movies in My picture and movies/ i-motion in i-motion folder.
- Size of still pictures other than Stand-by: 240×320 can be changed. (PP. 350)
- Movies/i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions are not available. ASF files are also not available.
- Refer to P. 326 for i-αppli settings.

# 1

# In stand-by, press (•) 2 15 (1.72) (1.72).

- Alternatively, select \(\chi\_i\) (Settings) → Display → Stand-by display → Stand-by display from Top menu.
- Stand-by display setting screen appears.

# Select image.

To set still picture	Press ♠ oflder → ♠ → still picture → ▮ [OK] → Yes → ♠.  To check still picture, select a still picture and press ♠ [Agree]. Press ♠ to return.
To set a movie/ i-motion	<ul> <li>Press ② → folder → ● → movie/i-motion → (a) [OK] → Yes → ●.</li> <li>To check movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press ● [Agree]. To stop, press (a) [Stop].</li> <li>Press ● [Pause] during playback to pause. Press ● [Play] to continue playback.</li> <li>For sQCIF: 128×96 and QCIF: 176×144 (W×H) movies/i-motion, select Actual size or Zoom to select display size in stand-by. (Actual size and Zoom are only available for sQCIF and QCIF sizes.)</li> <li>Movie/i-motion volume is set with open sound volume. (Movie/i-motion plays back one time.) In stand-by, press (m) for 1+ seconds during i-motion playback to switch audio on or off.</li> </ul>
To set i-αppli	Press ③  Refer to P. 326 for instructions on setting i-αppli.

• The image is set as the stand-by display.

- Even if Flash movies with audio are set as stand-by, they are played without sound.
- i-motion saved on miniSD Memory Card cannot be directly set as stand-by.
- Downloaded Flash movies may play differently from when on a site.
- The first frame of a Flash movie or animated GIF, movie, or i-motion is set as stand-by. When playback finishes, the last frame is set (for Flash movies and animated GIFs). Press @an during playback to pause Flash movie or animated GIF or stop and rewind movie/i-motion. Press @an to resume playback.
- If an image is set as stand-by and the original image is deleted, the image remains as stand-by until changed. However, the default image returns if i-motion is set.
- If i-αppli stand-by (PF P. 326) is set, i-αppli appears as stand-by. If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, image set
  as stand-by display appears.
- When Flash movies or animated GIFs are set as stand-by and Power saver mode is exited to return to stand-by, the first frame appears.
- Web To function (P. 231) is not available from i-motion stand-by.
- Animated GIF may appear differently (such as frame dropping) from when on a site or Internet web page.
- If animated GIF or Flash movie is set as stand-by display, the following icons do not appear until animation is finished. (Press @ to stop, and icon appears.)
  - Vibrator (© P. 123) Record message (© P. 72)
  - New Voice mail (©FP. 485) Silent (©FP. 121)
  - Schedule/Alarm (@P. 442) Drive mode (@P. 70)
  - Auto answer (when earphone is connected) (© P. 480)
- When a different FOMA card is inserted and a downloaded image is set as stand-by, the FOMA card
  restriction function (PP. 39) activates and the default image appears as stand-by. Settings return when
  original FOMA card is inserted.
- If an image from miniSD Memory Card is set, title does not appear in the setting column.

### Displaying the Calendar <a href="Calendar Display">Calendar Display</a>

Display calendar for the current month, two months or six months on top of stand-by image. Color for day/date follows settings for day color in Schedule. Holidays (126 P. 444) and set vacation days are shown in red.

- Fifteen Japanese national holidays as stipulated in Article 59 of the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly of 2001 (as of May 2005) are set by default.
- Calendar is not available for i-αppli stand-by.
- If animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switching to Calendar.
- Calendar appears in English when display language is set to English.

## In stand-by, press (•) 2 2 (1.72) 3 and select display method.

Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Display → Stand-by display → Calendar display from Top

To display one month (large)	Press Љ.  • An icon appears on days with schedules set.  • Days with schedules set are underlined.
To display one month	Press ②♣ → ⑦♣ [Upper left], ②♣ [Upper right], ③♣ [Lower left] or ④♣ [Lower right].  • Days with schedules set are underlined.
To display two months	Press ③〗.  ■ Current month and next month's calendar appears.  ■ Days with schedules set are underlined.
To display six months	Press (₫.₾).  Six months appear in pairs (starting with the current month) with odd number months on the left.
To not display Calendar	Press 5 ₺.  Calendar is not displayed.



1 month





• Press ①, and the previous and following months appear. When the calendar is set to 6 months, the previous and following two months appear.

• Press 📼 to switch between the stand-by and the calendar when Calendar is set in the stand-by display.

## Displaying the Clock < Clock Display>

Default setting ON

Show date and time on top of stand-by image.

- When Clock display is set to **ON**, time does not appear in the upper part of the stand-by display. (Time appears on other screens.)
- Date and time appear in English when display language is set to English.

# In stand-by, press (•) 2 1/2 2 2/3 and (1.7/2 [ON].

- Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → Display → Stand-by display → Clock display from Top menu.
- · Clock is set.

# **Changing Call/Receive Image**

Outgoing: 電話発信 1 Incoming: 電話着信 1

#### Change the image that appears when making or receiving a call.

- Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. Also set i-motion as receive display (excluding voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)).
- Images larger than 240(W) × 168(H) pixels are reduced.

# 1

# In stand-by, press • 2 # 3 \$ 5 KL.

Alternatively, select (Settings) → Display → Personalize → Call/Rcv display from Top menu.

# 2

### Select item and select image.

To set Outgoing voice calls	Press $\textcircled{1.2} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{0} \rightarrow \text{image} \rightarrow \textcircled{i} [OK].$
To set Incoming voice calls	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow 1 \stackrel{?}{=} [My \ picture] \ or 2 \stackrel{?}{=} [i-motion] \rightarrow folder \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow image \rightarrow 1 [OK].$
To set Incoming video-phone	Press $3 \implies \rightarrow 1 $ [My picture] or $2 $ [i-motion] $\rightarrow$ folder $\rightarrow 0 \rightarrow$ image $\rightarrow 1$ [OK].
To set Payphone	Press $4 \ \rightarrow 1 \ \text{[My picture]}$ or $2 \ \text{[i-motion]} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow \text{image} \rightarrow 1 \ \text{[OK]}.$
To set User unset	Press $5\frac{1}{2} \to 1$ [My picture] or $2$ [i-motion] $\to$ folder $\to 0 \to 0$ image $\to 1$ [OK].
To set Not support	Press $\bigcirc \Longrightarrow \to \circlearrowleft$ [My picture] or $\bigcirc \Longrightarrow$ [i-motion] $\to$ folder $\to \bigodot$ image $\to \bigodot$ [OK].

- Incoming/outgoing calls screen is set.
- For movies/i-motion, press [Pause] to pause playback. Press [Play] to continue playback. To return to the previous screen, press [Stop].
- Refer to P. 332 for details on setting i-motion as the incoming call screen.

#### **Note**

- If the receive display is changed, ring tone may also be changed. (PP P. 332)
- If original still picture set as Incoming/Outgoing calls screen is deleted, the screen returns to default setting.
- Images that cannot be set do not appear.
- *Incoming video phone* is prioritized for video-phone calls with no caller ID.
- Images in miniSD Memory Cards cannot be set for Incoming/Outgoing calls screen. Copy to FOMA terminal before setting.
- Picture call settings (P. 132) are prioritized if set to ON.

### Send/Receive Display

# **Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages**

Default setting

Send:メール送信 1 Rcv: メール受信 1

#### Change the image that appears when sending or receiving mail.

 Use JPEG/GIF images and animated GIFs from My picture of Data box. (Flash movies and movies/i-motion cannot be used.)



# In stand-by, press 2 # 3 EF 6 # MNO.

ullet Alternatively, select  $\chi_i$  (Settings) o **Display** o **Personalize** o **Send/Rcv display** from Top menu.

# Select item and select image.

To set Send display	Press $\textcircled{1.2a} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{image} \rightarrow \textcircled{i} [OK].$
To set Receive display	Press $2 \frac{\pi}{80} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{image} \rightarrow \bigcirc \boxed{i} \text{ [OK]}.$

- Images that cannot be set do not appear.
- Send/Receive display is set.

#### **Note**

- If an image set for Send/Receive display is deleted, the screen returns to default setting.
- Still pictures in miniSD Memory Card cannot be set for Sending/Receiving message screen. Copy to FOMA terminal before setting.

#### **Picture Call Set**

# **Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image for Incoming Calls**

Default setting ON

Set to enable/disable picture call (@P. 100).

 When caller ID is not sent or if picture call images/movies are not set in Phonebook, images are not displayed even if Picture call is set to ON. (反 P. 100)

1

In stand-by, press • 2 1 3 and 1 1 [ON].

- ullet Alternatively, select  $\c T_{ullet}$  (Settings)  $\to$  **Display**  $\to$  **Personalize**  $\to$  **Picture call set** from Top menu.
- · Picture call image is set as shown.

#### **Power Saver Set**

# Saving Battery Power

Default setting Normal mode

Adjust settings such as the screen display time and conserve battery power.

• Select from Normal mode, Power saver mode and User set mode.

Settings for items such as display time vary for each mode as shown below. (Durations are approximations)

	Normal mode	Power saver mode	User set mode
Display light time	15 seconds	5 seconds	15 seconds
Screen display time	2 minutes	30 seconds	2 minutes
Screen Saver	OFF	OFF	OFF
Brightness	12	1	12



In stand-by, press (•) 2 ½ 5 ½ and select Power saver type.

ullet Alternatively, select  $\fill\ (Settings) o extit{Display} o extit{Power saver set} ext{ from Top menu.}$ 

To set Normal mode	Press 1.4.
To set Power saver mode	Press 2 %.
To set User set mode	Press 3
	● Change User set mode settings. (ੴ P. 133)

Power saver is set.

# **Setting Original Power Saver Mode**

Adjust Display light time, Screen display time, Screen Saver and Brightness settings for *User set* of Power saver settings.

# Setting Display and Key Lights < Display Light Time>

Default setting See below

Set the light duration for display and key backlight for the following situations. Light dims when set time passes.

	Set the length of time the display lights when handset is turned on, keys are pressed, handset is opened/closed and a call is received from 1 to 99 seconds.
Charging	Set to Same as normal or Always ON for when handset is connected to AC or DC adapter.
Video-phone	Set to Same as normal or Always ON for when video-phone is in use.
i-mode	Set to Same as normal or Always ON for when i-mode is in use.

The default setting is **15 seconds** for Normal, **Same as normal** for Charging and i-mode and **Always ON** for Video-phone.



# In stand-by, press • 2 to 5 to 3 to 1.to.



Alternatively, select \(\int\_i^1\) (Settings) → Display → Power saver set → User set →
Display light time from Top menu.

# 2

### Select item and set light duration.

Normal	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ enter from 01 to 99 seconds $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
Charging	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow 1 \stackrel{?}{=} [Same as normal] or 2 \stackrel{?}{=} [Always ON].$
Video-phone	Press $3 \ \rightarrow 1 \ $ [Same as normal] or $2 \ $ [Always ON].
i-mode	Press 🍜 → Љ [Same as normal] or 🕮 [Always ON].

• Light duration is set.

- If Normal mode or Power saver mode is set, this setting is disabled.
- Light duration (seconds) can only be set for Normal.
- Increasing light duration shortens continuous stand-by duration.
- When the time set in Screen display time (₱P. 134) elapses, display turns off even if Display light time for charging and i-mode is set to Always ON. The Screen saver (₱P. 134) activates if set.
- Playback light settings apply for Flash movie and movie playback. (PP P. 361)
- When Flash movies or animated GIFs are set as stand-by and Power saver mode is exited to return to stand-by, the first frame appears.
- If Playback light for Image viewer (PP. 343), video player (PP. 361) and Chara-den player (PP. 373) are set to As light setting, Normal in Display light time is applied.
- Light is always lit during slideshow and Camera mode.
- Light duration is prioritized as follows when multiple are set. If Video-phone or i-mode Display light time is set to Always ON and video-phone or i-mode is used while charging, Display light time is set to Always ON regardless of Charging settings.

	Priority (high → low)	
Light duration	Charging $\rightarrow$ Video-phone/i-mode $\rightarrow$ Normal	

### **Setting Image Display Time < Screen Display Time>**

See below

Turn off the display when FOMA terminal is not in use for a period of time to conserve battery power.

 Set the picture light to flash (yellow) when the FOMA terminal is opened or in viewer position to indicate that Power saver mode is active.

The default setting is 2 minutes for Display time and OFF for LED display.

1

# In stand-by, press ( ) [ 2 & ] [ 3 & ] [ 2 & ] and select time before activating Power saver mode.

Alternatively, select \(\int\_i\) (Settings) → Display → Power saver set → User set → Screen dsp time from Top menu.

30 seconds	Press 1.2.	5 minutes	Press 5 1.
1 minute	Press 2 2.	10 minutes	Press 6 to .
2 minutes	Press 3.	15 minutes	Press Z
3 minutes	Press 4 5.	20 minutes	Press 8 %.

LED display setting screen appears.

2

### Select whether to flash picture light.

To flash picture light	Press 1.2.
To not flash picture light	Press 2 de.

Screen display time is set.

#### **Note**

- If Normal mode or Power saver mode is set, this setting is disabled.
- Activating picture light when FOMA terminal is opened in Power saver mode shortens continuous stand-by duration.
- In Power saver mode, the display will turn on when any key is pressed. If a call or mail is received while Screen saver is set, settings according to Screen saver are followed.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, picture light will not flash even if set to LED display on.
- Power saver mode is not activated even when Screen display time passes during voice/video-phone calls, i-mode/mail transmission, i-motion/slideshow playback, data transmission with an external device or while camera is activated.

### **Setting Screen Saver < Screen Saver>**

Default setting

OFF

When Screen display time passes, the screen turns dark and only the date and time appear.

• When a call or mail is received, Calling or Receiving can be displayed even when Screen saver is set.

1

## In stand-by, press • 2 # 5 # 3 # and select Screen saver.

 Alternatively, select X₁ (Settings) → Display → Power saver set → User set → Screen Saver from Top menu.

To set Screen saver	Press 1.2.
To have <i>Calling</i> or <i>Receiving</i> appear on	Press 2 to .
display while Screen saver is set when a call	The messages are not displayed when receiving data
or mail is received	transmission.
To not set Screen saver	Press 3

- Display turns off if Screen saver is active for over approximately two hours, or battery level runs low.
   (Screen saver setting stays ON.) Display does not turn off during charging.
  - Screensaver activates after a call or other phone operations, but the display turns off after approximately two hours or when the battery level becomes low. When ON (Privacy) is selected and a call or mail is received, Missed calls or Mail message appears. After approximately two hours or when the battery level becomes low, the display turns off.
- The screensaver shortens continuous stand-by duration.

## Adjusting Display Contrast < Brightness>

Select from 16 display brightness levels.

Brightness 12

1

# In stand-by, press 2 # 5 # 3 # 4 # .



- Alternatively, select \( \frac{1}{k} \) (Settings) → Display → Power saver set → User set →
  Brightness from Top menu.
- Current brightness appears.

2

Press (\*) (brighter) or (\*) (darker) to adjust and press (\*).

#### Note

- If Normal mode or Power saver mode is set, this setting is disabled.
- Increasing brightness shortens continuous stand-by duration.

#### **Personalize**

# **Arranging the Display**

# Changing the Menu Screen Background Pattern <Background>

Default setting

背景パターン1

Change menu background pattern (image around edge of display).

• Use JPEG/GIF images with a size of 240(W) × 320(H). (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available.)



In stand-by, press (•) 2 # 3 @ 4 # 4 # 1

- Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{X}_{\mathbf{A}}^{\mathbf{A}}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Display**  $\rightarrow$  **Personalize**  $\rightarrow$  **Background** from Top menu.
- My picture of Data box appears.

# 7

# Select folder, press (•), select still picture and press (•) [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set do not appear.
- Background pattern is set.

#### **Note**

 If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as background and the original image is deleted, the image remains as background until changed.

# Changing the Pop-up Window Color and Frame <Pop-up Window>

ポップアップ 1

Change background color and frame for pop-up windows of sub menus, etc.

- Use GIF images in My picture of Data box with a size of 201(W) × 62(H). (Flash movies, animated GIFs and JPEG images are not available.)
- Images shot with the camera are not available.



# In stand-by, press • 2 # 3 \$ 2 # 2 # 2.

- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Display → Personalize → Pop-up window from Top menu.
- My picture of Data box appears.

# 2

# Select folder, press •, select still picture and press [ [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set do not appear.
- Pop-up window is set.

#### Note

 If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as pop-up window and the original image is deleted, the image remains as pop-up window until changed.

### Changing the Notice Window Color and Frame < Notice Window>

Default setting

お知らせ1

Change background color and frame for windows with confirmation/error messages.

- Use GIF images in My picture of Data box with a size of 201(W) × 182(H). (Flash movies, animated GIFs and JPEG images are not available.)
- Images shot with the camera are not available.



## In stand-by, press ( ) 2 # 3 E 3 E 3 E .

- Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{14}\) (Settings) → Display → Personalize → Notice window from Top menu.
- My picture of Data box appears.

# 2

# Select folder, press •, select still picture and press • [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set do not appear.
- Notice window is set.
- When set as notice window, four pictures within an image appear as animation with four frames.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press [Agree]. Press and the previous screen reappears.

#### **Note**

 If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as notice window and the original image is deleted, the image remains as notice window until changed.

# Setting Background for Guidance Key < Guidance Keys>

See below

Set a background image for each of the three guidance keys (PP. 28).

- For the center guidance key, use GIF images with a size of 46(W) × 24(H). For the right and left guidance
  keys, use GIF images with a size of 66(W) × 24(H). Flash movies, animated GIFs and JPEG images are not
  available.
- Images shot with the camera are not available.

The default setting is 操作ガイド左1 for Left key, 操作ガイド中央1 for Center key and 操作ガイド右1 for Right key.



# In stand-by, press • 2 3 5 8 m and select guidance key.

Alternatively, press \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → Display → Personalize → Guidance keys from Top menu.

Left key	Press 1.2.	Right key	Press 3 .
Center key	Press 22.		

My picture of Data box appears.



# Select folder, press •, select still picture and press [ [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set to guidance key do not appear.
- Guidance key background pattern is set.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press [Agree]. Press and the previous screen reappears.

#### **Note**

 If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as a guidance key background and the original image is deleted, the image remains as a guidance key background until changed.

# Changing Color of Title Line and Status Line <Title and Status Color>

Default setting Pattern 1

Change the font color and background color for the title line and status line in menus.



## In stand-by, press • 2 % 3 \$ 7 % and select pattern.

Alternatively, press \(\infty\) (Settings) → Display → Personalize → Title&Status color from Top menu.

Pattern 1	Press 1.2.	Pattern 5	Press 5
Pattern 2	Press 22.	Pattern 6	Press 6 iii).
Pattern 3	Press 3 .	Pattern 7	Press Z
Pattern 4	Press 4 👼.	Pattern 8	Press Br.

- Each time pattern is selected, colors for title line and status line change.
- · A pattern is set.

# **Changing Top Menu Design**

Set icons and their order, background image and whether to show icon names in the Top menu.

## Changing Top Menu Design <Themes>

Default setting Modern

Change the Top menu icon positions and images to a coordinated theme.

- Five themes are preset. Also download icon themes with i-αppli. (<sup>2</sup>P P. 228)
- If preset themes are used, the following settings are changed. Icon, Background, Pop-up window, Notice window, Background pattern, Guidance key, Title & status color, Action focus
- When using icon themes downloaded with i-αppli, icon settings and background settings are changed.

Set to Modern? Yes No

In Top menu (PP. 33), press 6 6 .....

Themes setting screen appears.

Select theme, press (•), select Yes and press (•).

- Opening image appears. Opening the image may take time.
- The theme is set.

#### Note

- Terminal security code (four to eight digits) is required to set theme when Multimedia PIM is locked.
- Terminal security code (four to eight digits) is required to set theme when Folder security is set for folder containing icon themes downloaded with i-appli.

# Setting Top Menu Icons < Icon Settings>

Change Top menu icons.

- Use 76(W) x 76(H) pixel JPEG images, GIF images or animated GIFs. Downloaded images can also be used.
- Set two images per icon, for selected and unselected status.
- Up to three scenes are used for animated GIFs. Image for selected status is not available.

In Top menu (PP. 33), select an icon and press (1.2).



# Select folder, press (•), select still picture for unselected status and press [OK].

- Images that cannot be set for menu icons do not appear.
- Icon settings confirmation screen appears.
- When animated GIF is selected, screen returns to Top menu.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press (•) [Agree]. Press @as and the previous screen reappears.

# Select still picture.

To set a different still picture for selected status	Select $Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{still picture} \rightarrow \textcircled{i} [OK].$
To set the same still picture as for unselected status	Select $No \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

#### Note

 If an image in My picture of Data box is set as a menu icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the menu icon setting is changed.

# Setting Action Focus for Top Menu Icons <Action Focus>

Default setting Twister

Set Action focus for Top menu icons.

- When set, Action focus only applies to icons selected in Top menu.
- Action focus is applied to last image for animated GIFs.

1

# In Top menu (PPP. 33), press @ 3 and select Action focus type.



Twister	1./2	Squares appear from the lower part of the display. The inner area disappears and the remaining frames rotate.
Target	2 /sc	Small square frames appear and disappear.
Windmill	3 🐉	Three lines appear and rotate under the icon.
Globe	4 gr	Circular frames appear and rotate at varying speeds.
Stardust	5 #L	Light sparkles.
Ripple	6 m	Rings move outward.
OFF	7 🔅	Nothing is set.

Action focus is set.

### Setting Top Menu Background <Set Background>

Default setting

メニュー背景1

Set Top menu background image.

 Use JPEG and GIF images. (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available.) Downloaded images can also be used.



In Top menu (PP P. 33), press @ 4 3.

• My picture of Data box appears.



# Select folder, press •, select still picture and press [ [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- Background is set.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press [Agree]. Press and the previous screen reappears.

#### **Note**

 If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as background image and the original image is deleted, the image remains as background image until changed.

## **Enabling/Disabling Icon Names < Display Icon Name>**

Default setting

OFF

Enable/Disable displaying titles under Top menu icons.



In Top menu (PP. 33), press 5 and 1. [ON].

• Display icon name is enabled.

#### Note

For preset icons, since the icon name is included in the image, characters appear doubled when Display
icon name is set to ON.

### Moving Top Menu Icons < Move Icon>

Switch positions of Top menu icons.

In Top menu (PP. 33), select an icon and press 22.



Select destination position and press •.

### Resetting Top Menu to Default Status <Reset Icon>

Reset Top menu icon settings to default status.

In Top menu (PP P. 33), press (Select Yes and press (O).



Settings are reset.

# Confirming Key Operations in Stand-by Screen <Key List>

View a list of key operations in stand-by screen.

In Top menu (PP P. 33), press , select Key list and press .



• In viewer position, press (a) (right guidance) in Top menu, select **Key list** and press (a) (shutter).

Ke	ev		Reference
In normal position	In viewer position	Operation	
•	(shutter)	Menu	P. 33
(shutter) for 1+ seconds	• (shutter) for 1+ seconds	Activate Movie mode	P. 170
0	•	Shortcut menu	P. 461
for 1+ seconds	for 1+ seconds	Earpiece volume	P. 122
_	©® for 1+ seconds	Key Guard	P. 155
@cur for 1+ seconds	-	Erase message	P. 71
for 1+ seconds	_	Compose message	P. 255
هُ هُ	for 1+ seconds	Check new message	P. 237 P. 270
_	for 1+ seconds	Manner mode	P. 126
	_	Add to phonebook	P. 98
for 1+ seconds	(right guidance) for 1+ seconds	My picture	P. 342
_	(left guidance) for 1+ seconds	Start i-αppli menu	P. 314
<b>⊗</b> CLR	œ	Start/Stop i-motion stand-by playback and start i-αppli stand-by	P. 129 P. 326
(view 2	_	Supportbook (preset)	P. 422

# **Setting the Illumination Color**

# **Setting the Called LED Color < Called LED Color>**

Default setting See below

Set the LED (main camera picture light/called LED) color for incoming voice/video-phone calls and mail. If a melody with LED actions is set as the ring tone, link the melody and LED actions (Melody ON). The default setting is *Green* for Voice/Video-phone called LED, *Blue* for Mail LED color, *Without melody* for Called LED ON, and *Without melody* for Mail/Msq LED set.

# 1

## In stand-by, press • 2 # and select an item.

Alternatively, select \(\int\) (Settings) → Display → Called LED from Top menu.

To set called LED color	Press (1.½) (1.½).
To set video-phone called LED color	Press 1.2 2
To set mail LED color	Press 2

# 2

#### Select LED color.

• For each color selected, picture light/called LED color changes.

Rainbow	Lights with a gradation of red, purple, blue, light blue, green and yellow.
Mixed colors	Lights red, yellow, green, light blue, blue and purple in random order.
Cyclone	Lights red, yellow, green, light blue, blue and purple in random order. The colors change faster and faster.
Random	Lights in a gradation of different colors depending on handset number, other party's number and the date. A gradation of shades of red lights when no caller ID is given.  • Mail LED cannot be set to <i>Random</i> .
White	Lights white.
Red	Lights red.
Green	Lights green.
Blue	Lights blue.
Yellow	Lights yellow.
Purple	Lights purple.
Light blue	Lights light blue.

#### **Note**

- When a call is received during data transmission, LED color is the set color for called LED.
- Called LED is prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high $ ightarrow$ low)
Called LED	Phonebook called LED $ ightarrow$ group called LED $ ightarrow$ regular called LED
Mail/Message LED	Phonebook mail LED → group mail LED → regular mail LED

## **Related Operations**

#### Set called LED with Melody <Called LED ON>

- 1 In stand-by, press 2 to 4 to 3 to for called LED.
  - To set mail/message LED: Press 2 4 4 4 4 4 in stand-by.
- 2 Press 1.2.
  - To set to Without melody: Press 22.

#### Note

#### **Melody ON**

• LED does not activate for melodies without called LED settings.

# **Changing Font Width**

Change the font width for the display.

• Choose from three styles.



### In stand-by, press • 2 de and select font width.



Alternatively, select (Settings) → Display → Font style from Top menu.

Normal	Press 1.2.
Bold	Press 24.
Bolder	Press 3

- Select a style to see sample text.
- The font width is changed.

# **Security Settings**

## **FOMA Terminal Security Code**

For convenient use of FOMA terminal functions, some functions require security codes. In addition to the terminal security code used for various handset operations, use security codes, such as network security code and i-mode password, when using network services. Use security codes with various functions to fully utilize the FOMA terminal.

### **Terminal Security Code (For Various Functions)**

Terminal security code is set to 0000 by default but can be changed.

- FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal\*, FOMA card and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to DoCoMo retailer in the case of a forgotten security code.
  - \* Person other than registered owner may not be able to receive security code from DoCoMo retailer.
- The following functions require terminal security code.

### Items that require security codes

Set/Confirm/Disable i-mode secret code in			P. 100	Reset i-mode		P. 234	
phonebook			P. 145	Change certificate host		4	P. 245
Change terminal security code Set PIN code				Reset mail settings		P. 245 P. 295	
	•		P. 146	1	0		P. 295
Change PIN			P. 147			erminal handset to	P. 385
Enable All le			P. 149		miniSD Memory Card		
Disable All I			P. 150	Backup to miniSD Memory Card		P. 385	
Set Remote			P. 150	Access backup data on miniSD Memory Card		P. 386	
Set/Disable			P. 153		•		
	ndset while PIM is locked disable PIM lock)		P. 154	Copy all from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset		P. 388	
Set/Disable	Keypad dial lock		P. 154	Format miniS	D Memo	ry Card	P. 389
Set/Disable	IC-card lock		P. 154	Set/Disable D	ata box l	older security	P. 392
Set/Disable display	Received calls and Redi	al	P. 155	Send/Receive	Send/Receive all Ir data		P. 401
Set/Disable	Mail history display		P. 156	Check Setting	js		P. 428
Set/Disable Secret mode			P. 156	Display/Edit owner information details		P. 464	
			P. 157	Limit settings		P. 471	
Save/Set/Disable Accept calls			and P. 158	Reset Settings		P. 480	
			P. 158 to	Delete User Data		P. 481	
Save/Set/Disable Reject calls			P. 160	Delete secret	Delete secret data collectively		P. 482
Accept/Reject User unset calls			P. 160	Reset total time		P. 471	
			P. 161	Delete all additional service entries		P. 497	
Accept/Reject Unknown caller			and P. 162	Clear Memory Terms		P. 557	
			P. 233			P. 597	
Save/Reset	i-mode host		and	Update software		to	
			P. 234			P. 602	
Delete	Mail		P. 284 P. 390				
folders		miniSD Memory Card		Move all folder data in Data box		P. 395	
		Data box					
	Phonebook	P. 114	Bookma	ırk	P. 221	Screen Memo	P. 224
	Message R/F	P. 241	Mail		P. 285	i-αppli	P. 328
Delete all	Chara-den	P. 377	miniSD Memory Card backup data		P. 387	miniSD Memory Card	P. 389
data	Data box	P. 393, P. 395			P. 425	Shortcuts	P. 461
	ToDo lists	P. 441	Schedul	es	P. 453		
	Money Calculator	P. 470	Text me	mos	P. 474		

### **Network Security Code**

A four-digit code set at time of registration, used for accessing network services and  $F\exists \exists \exists \forall f \in (DoCoMo\ e-site)$ .

Contact number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to retrieve forgotten network security code. Alternatively, bring valid identification (a driver's license, etc.) to any DoCoMo retailer. For those with *User ID* and *Password*, retrieve forgotten code from ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site).
 ※Refer to the back cover for details on ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site).

#### PIN Code/PIN2 Code

Set two security codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, on the FOMA card. These security codes are set to *0000* by default but can be changed. PIN code is a four- to eight-digit number (code) that is entered when FOMA terminal is turned on or when FOMA card is inserted so that an unauthorized third party cannot use FOMA terminal. Enter PIN code to enable making/receiving calls and operating the handset. PIN2 code is four- to eight-digit number that is entered when performing operations such as applying for or using Client certificate, or resetting total cost.

#### i-mode Password

Four-digit "i-mode password" is required to save/delete sites in  $\forall \land \forall \bot \bot \bot$  (My menu), for Message Service and subscription/cancellation of charged i-mode services. i-mode password is set to *0000* by default but can be changed.

(Additionally, information providers may set their own passwords.)

FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to DoCoMo retailer in the
case of a forgotten password.

#### **Note**

- To prevent tampering, change terminal security code, PIN/PIN2 code and i-mode password after registration. Keep a separate memo and note password and codes.
- Avoid using the last four digits of your phone number or other easily deciphered numbers.

### **Change Security Code**

# **Changing Terminal Security Code**

Default setting 0000

Change the terminal security code (four to eight digits).

• Terminal security code should differ from network security code and i-mode password.

In stand-by, press ( ) [ ] ( ), enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ( ).



- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Security → Change sec code from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- The first terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press .
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Enter new terminal security code (four to eight digits) again and press (•).
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
  - Terminal security code is changed.

# **Setting PIN Code**

#### Change the PIN and PIN2 codes on FOMA card.

- PIN code is a four- to eight-digit code that prevents unauthorized use of the FOMA card.
- PIN2 code is a four- to eight-digit code used for authentication when connecting to sites, Internet and online services. Enter when performing Client certificate operations (issuance of Client certificate when using FirstPass) or accessing FirstPass compatible sites (PP P. 241).
- Use previously set PIN and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a newly purchased FOMA terminal. PIN and PIN2 codes are 0000 if unchanged.
- PIN and PIN2 codes are saved to the FOMA card.

# Setting Handset to Require PIN Code Entry when Power is Turned On <PIN Code Input Set>

Default setting

OFF

Set to require PIN code entry when turning on the FOMA terminal to prevent unauthorized use.

1

# In stand-by, press $\bullet$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press $\bigcirc$ .



 $\bullet \ \, \text{Alternatively, select $\center{Y}$ is (Settings)$} \to \textit{Security} \to \textit{UIM settings}$ from Top menu.$ 

Numbers are masked with asterisks.

UIM settings screen

# 7

### Press 1. [PIN code input set] and select ON or OFF.



To set	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ enter PIN code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow$	<ul><li>.</li></ul>
To disable	Press $2  \longrightarrow$ enter PIN code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow$	<ul><li>.</li></ul>

- PIN code may be entered up to three times. Rest \* times appears on PIN code entry screen.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

#### Note

 In PIN code entry screen, PIN code is locked if incorrectly entered three times. Disable PIN lock. When disabling PIN lock, new PIN code must be entered. (PP. 147)

### Entering PIN code when power is turned on

Set PIN code input set to ON and PIN code entry screen appears when the power is turned on.

• Enter PIN code to operate FOMA terminal. Prevents unauthorized use of the handset.

# Press (Power) for 2 + seconds to turn on handset, enter PIN code (four to eight digits) and press (•).

- PIN code can be entered up to three times. **Rest** \* times appears on PIN code entry screen.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Enter correct PIN code to proceed to stand-by.

#### Note

 In PIN code entry screen, PIN code is locked if incorrectly entered three times. Disable PIN lock. When disabling PIN lock, new PIN code must be entered. (PP P. 147)

# Changing PIN/PIN2 Codes < Change PIN Code/PIN2 Code>

Change PIN/PIN2 codes.

# In stand-by, press • 6 6 2 2 2 eight digits) and press •.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- FOMA card (UIM) settings screen appears.
- When PIN code input setting is set to OFF, PIN code cannot be changed.

# 2 Select PIN/PIN2 code, enter current PIN code (four to eight digits) and press •.



To change PIN code	Press 2 &.
To change PIN2 code	Press 3

- PIN code can be entered up to three times. Rest \* times appears on PIN code entry screen.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

# 2 Enter new PIN code (four to eight digits) and press .

Numbers are masked with asterisks.

# Enter new PIN code (four to eight digits) again and press .

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Changed appears.

#### Note

In PIN/PIN2 code entry screen, PIN/PIN2 codes are locked if incorrectly entered three times. Disable PIN lock. When disabling PIN lock, new PIN/PIN2 codes must be entered.

## **Disabling PIN Lock**

In entry screens that require PIN/PIN2 codes, PIN/PIN2 codes are locked if incorrectly entered three times. In such cases, disable PIN/PIN2 lock and new PIN/PIN2 codes must be set.

 Check the "FOMA service registration agreement (customer copy)" for information on PUK (PIN lock disable code).

#### Screens locked with PIN/PIN2



- Rest 10 times appears.
- Enter PUK up to ten times.

### **Disabling PIN Lock**

In the PUK screen with PIN lock set, enter PUK (eight digits) and press .

Entered PUK is masked with asterisks.

# Tenter new PIN code (four to eight digits) and press .

Numbers are masked with asterisks.

# 2 Enter new PIN code (four to eight digits) again and press .

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Changed appears.

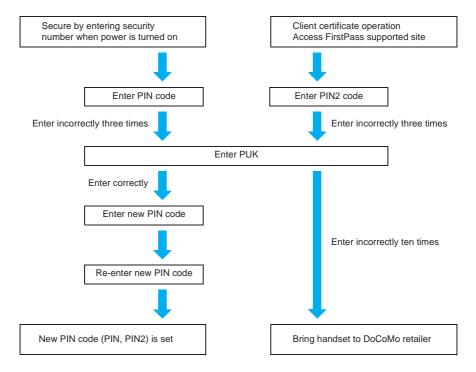
#### **Note**

- Use the same steps to disable PIN2 code lock.
- If three consecutive PIN2 code entry errors are made and the FOMA terminal is locked, the handset
  continues to receive a signal and can make/receive calls and send/receive mail. However, if three
  consecutive PIN code entry errors are made, the FOMA terminal is locked and functions that require a
  signal cannot be used.

### PIN code, PIN2 code and PUK

Default FOMA card PIN and PIN2 codes are *0000*, but both can be changed. Use previously set PIN and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a newly purchased FOMA terminal. PIN/PIN2 codes are automatically locked if incorrectly entered three times. Note new numbers when changing.

- PUK is an eight digit number to disable a PIN/PIN2 code lock. Enter the PUK to unlock.
- If PUK is entered incorrectly ten times, FOMA card is completely locked. Note PUK.
- \* Keep FOMA service registration agreement (customer copy) in a safe place.
- ※ FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal, FOMA card and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to DoCoMo retailer in the case of forgotten PUK or completely locked FOMA card.



### **Lock Functions**

Restrict access to phonebook retrieval, save, delete, and call by dial key functions.

- Terminal security code is necessary for setting/disabling a lock.
- Set the following items.

Lock function	Operation/Restrictions	Reference
All lock	Prevents the FOMA terminal from being used without permission for all operations other than ON/OFF.	
Remote lock all	Remotely set All lock. IC-card lock is also set automatically.	P. 150
Self mode*	Voice calls, video-phone calls, i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F and i-mode functions are not available. Message explaining that the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal is played to callers.	
PIM lock	Display, edit and operation for phonebook, schedule, mail, i-mode, i-αppli, Record messages (voice/video-phone calls), voice memos, multimedia, Money calculator, AV input, Text memo and ToDo list are not available so that private information access is prevented. Set each item individually. Locking multimedia will also lock camera functions.	
Keypad dial lock	Dialing and phonebook editing are not available. Use phonebook or call history to call.	P. 154
IC-card lock	FeliCa IC-card functions are not available.	
Key guard*	guard* Lock side keys such as shutter key and prevent errors.	

<sup>\*</sup> Terminal security code is not required for Self mode and Key guard.

#### All Lock

# **Preventing Use by Others**

Default setting
Disable

Prevent all operations other than ON/OFF.

- Enable All lock remotely from payphones and other phones. (Remote lock all: P. 150)
- Terminal security code is required to disable All lock.

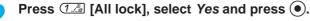
### **Enabling All Lock**





Lock settings screen

- Alternatively, select  $\mathcal{X}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Security**  $\rightarrow$  **Lock settings** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.





• All lock is set. *All lock* appears in the stand-by display. (\mathbb{H} appears.)

### **Disabling All Lock**



### During All lock, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) in stand-by and press (•).

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- All lock and disappear and All lock is disabled.

#### Note

- During All lock, 待受画面1 appears regardless of stand-by display settings.
- Even if All lock is enabled, FeliCa IC-card functions are not locked.
- When a call is received when All lock is enabled, the other party only hears the busy signal. When All lock is disabled, Missed call appears.
- During All lock, voice/video-phone calls are not available. Only emergency numbers such as 110, 119 and 118 may be called. To make a call, enter phone number and press .
- During All lock, alarms do not sound. Notices also do not appear.
- i-mode mail/SMS and Message R/F are received but do not appear. Once All lock is disabled, i-mode mail/ SMS and Message R/F icons appear.
- Turning power off does not disable All lock.
- Failure to disable All lock five times in a row will turn the FOMA terminal off. Turn the handset on again and enter terminal security code (four to eight digits).

### Setting All Lock Remotely < Remote Lock All>

Default setting See below

Set All lock by calling FOMA terminal from payphones or other phones a set number of times within a set period (such as three times in five minutes) and recording missed calls.

• Remote lock all activates only when all three of the following set criteria are met.

The default setting is OFF (disabled) for Remote lock all, 5 times for Number of received calls and 3 minutes for Monitoring.

Item	Registration/Setting
License number	Save up to three phone numbers to use to perform settings. Payphone is also available.
Number of received calls	Number of calls required in the set time (three to ten times).
Monitoring	Amount of time (one to ten minutes) to count the number of times called from License number.

• All lock cannot be disabled remotely. Refer to "Disabling All Lock" to disable.

### **Setting Remote lock all**

### eight digits) and press (•).

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- · Lock settings screen appears.

### Press 5 to [Remote lock all] and select ON or OFF.



	Press 1.3.
	Proceed to step 3.
To disable	Press 2
	<ul> <li>Even if the FOMA terminal is called, guidance is not</li> </ul>
	played.

# Press 🗺 [License number] and save License number.



To save License	To select from phonebook	Select license number $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ name $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
number	To enter phone number directly	Select license number $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ enter phone number $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
	To allow access from payphones	Select license number $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ .
To change License number		Select license number $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ subsequent steps are same as saving License number.
To delete License numbers		Select license number $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$

- To save a new number, select a number that displays ------
- · Save up to three.



### Press @clr.

• Remote lock all setting screen reappears.

## Thess ②Հա [# of roud calls] and select number of received calls.

3 times		Press 1.3.	7 times	Press 5
4 times		Press 2 2 3.	8 times	Press 6 to .
5 times		Press 3.	9 times	Press Z
6 times		Press 4 5.	10 times	Press Briw.

- The number of calls is set.
- Remote lock all setting screen reappears.

## Press 3 [Monitoring] and select time.

1 minute	Press 1.2.	6 minutes	Press 6
2 minutes	Press 2 2 2.	7 minutes	Press 7.4.
3 minutes	Press 3.	8 minutes	Press B
4 minutes	Press 4 5.	9 minutes	Press 9.5.
5 minutes	Press 5 1/2.	10 minutes	Press O.F.

- Time is set.
- · Remote lock all setting screen reappears.

# 7 P

### Press 🗿 [Complete].

Remote lock all is set.

### Operating Remote lock all

Set All lock from other phones while Remote lock all is set.

- Operate from phone number set as License number. Set Notify caller ID to **ON** to perform the operation.
- If multiple calls are received from numbers saved as license numbers, only the call received first is counted as Number of received calls.
- Set from payphones if allowed.
- Same operations are available when All lock is already set.

# Call FOMA terminal from payphones or other phones set as Remote lock all License number.

# 2

### Disconnect after a few rings.

Call is recorded in Received calls.

## Repeat steps 1 and 2 for set number of times in set time.

 When All lock is enabled, a beeping tone is played from the earpiece of the phone being operated notifying that All lock is enabled. (Charges are incurred by caller.)

#### **Note**

- When Remote all lock is set, IC-card lock is automatically set. Even if Remote all lock is disabled, IC-card lock is not disabled. Refer to P. 154 for details on disabling IC-card lock.
- Numbers saved for Reject calls, Accept calls, Reject unknown are available for License number.
- Operations are available while in Drive mode. Disconnect after Drive mode message starts. However, when the set number of received calls being counted is reached and All lock is set, a beeping tone is played instead of Drive mode guidance indicating that All lock is enabled.
- Calls from License number are not counted in the following circumstances.
  - Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to Activate and ring duration is set to 0 seconds
  - Call Waiting Service is enabled and a call is received using the service
  - Two or more License numbers are registered and a call is received from a different License number while setting
- Number of received calls is reset in the following circumstances.
  - Power is turned off
     A call from a License number that is being counted is answered
  - Call is automatically answered with Record message or earphone/microphone
- Edit/Delete are not available for phonebook set with License number.

#### **Self Mode**

## **Disabling Online Activity**

Default setting OFF

Disable functions that require a signal such as voice calls, video-phone calls, i-mode, sending/receiving i-mode mail and SMS, and receiving Message R/F.

- Message stating handset is turned off or in a place with no signal is played to calls received while in Self mode. DoCoMo Voice Mail Service (P. 484) and Call Forwarding Service (P. 488) are available.
- Self mode is retained even if handset is turned off.
- 110, 119 and 118 can be dialed while in Self mode. Calls to emergency numbers disable Self mode.
- Ir exchange and Ir remote control operations are not available.

# 1

### In stand-by, press ( ) 5 % B % and select ON or OFF.

• Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{X}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Phone settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Self mode** from Top menu.

To set	Press $\underbrace{\P.\mathbb{A}}_{\bullet} \to \mathbf{Yes} \to 0$ .
To disable	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de

• When Self mode is set, self appears in the upper part of the display.

#### **Note**

• Self mode is not available when in i-mode stand-by ( flashes).

#### While in Self mode

- View i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F sent and received before setting Self-mode, create or edit and save messages. Sending is not available.
- Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center and SMS are held at SMS center.

# **Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries**

Default setting

Restrict access to mail and phonebook to prevent access to personal information or unauthorized editing.

- Items to lock
  - Phonebook, Schedule, mail, i-mode, i- $\alpha$ ppli, Record message (voice/video-phone calls), Voice memo, Multimedia, Money calculator, AV input, Text memo, ToDo list
- Lock each item separately.
- · Locking multimedia will also lock camera functions.

### 

- Alternatively, select  $\mathcal{X}_{\bullet}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Security**  $\rightarrow$  **Lock settings** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Lock settings screen appears.

## ↑ Press 📆 [PIM lock].



# Select item to lock or disable, press and Complete].

- ■ appears for locked and 
   □ appears for disabled items.
- Press to switch.
- PIM is locked and appears in stand-by.
- If no check boxes contain any checks, press 
  [Set all] to lock all items. If check boxes contain at least one check, press [Disable all] to disable all items.
- Checks appear in check boxes if Security setting is set from each function menu.

#### Note

- PIM is an abbreviation for Personal Information Manager.
- PIM lock is retained even if handset is turned off.
- Locked items cannot be received by Ir exchange while PIM is locked.
- Phonebook PIM lock is not available when Reject unknown is set.
- Redials, Received calls and Sent/Received messages are deleted when phonebook PIM is locked. Redials
  and Received calls are available after setting. Names and images do not appear even if saved in the
  phonebook.
- Following functions are disabled when phonebook PIM is locked.
  - 2-touch dialing
  - Select ring tone, mail ring tone, Called LED, Mail/ Message LED
  - Entering i-mode mail and SMS recipient from phonebook
  - Settings other than *OFF* in Accept calls and Reject calls
- Sent/Received mail address history is deleted when mail PIM is locked. Sent/Received mail address history is retained after PIM lock is disabled.
- While Schedule PIM is locked, Schedule alarm does not sound. Similarly, while ToDo list PIM is locked, ToDo alarm does not sound. (However, regular alarm sounds.)
- While mail PIM is locked, i-mode mail/SMS and Message R/F are received automatically but do not appear. Once PIM is not locked, i-mode mail/SMS and Message R/F icons appear.
- When sending a substitute image such as Chara-den during a video-phone call, the set image (P. 90) is sent even when multimedia PIM is locked.



■ Alarm, Schedule, and ToDo list contact

settings using phonebook

■ Reject Unknown

■ Displaying Schedule by contact

#### Note

- Terminal security code entry screen appears when function under PIM lock is attempted. Enter correct
  terminal security code to temporarily disable PIM lock. Function is locked when operations are finished.
   PIM data (phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, ToDo list, bookmark and mail) on the miniSD Memory Card
  can be accessed with View miniSD data for each function.
- If multimedia PIM is locked, the phonebook ring tone and Mail ring tone are bypassed and user-selected ring tone sounds. Image set for Picture call and attached images 10,001 bytes or more do not appear in mail.
   Additionally, camera cannot be activated.

### **Keypad Dial Lock**

# **Prohibiting Keypad Dialing**

Default setting OFF

Prevent calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding miniSD Memory Card phonebook) and Redial.

- Error tones (beeps) sound, Keypad dial lock appears and stand-by reappears when dial keys are pressed.
   (When Keypad sound is set to Silent, error tone does not sound.)
- 110, 119, and 118 can be called with Keypad dial lock set.
- When Keypad dial lock is set, Redial, Received calls and Received/Sent messages are cleared. Redial for further calls made are saved and can be used to make calls.

### 

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Lock settings screen appears.

## Press [2] [Keypad dial lock] and select ON or OFF.

To set	Press 1.2.
To disable	Press 2 del.

Keypad dial lock is set and 
 appears in stand-by.

#### **Note**

- The following functions are also disabled when Keypad dial lock is set.
  - Sending SMS or i-mode mail through direct address input (address input from the phonebook is possible)
  - Saving/Editing/Deleting phonebook entries
  - Calling from alarms (available if saved in the phonebook)
  - Receiving phonebook data by Ir exchange
  - International prefix (IDD prefix setting)

- Transferring (Copying) phonebook data between FOMA terminal and FOMA card
- Phone To (AV Phone To)
- Mail To
- Calls from Bar code reader and Character reader
- Transferring phonebook data between FOMA terminal and miniSD
- DoCoMo network service Redial is not available while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Keypad dial lock is retained even if handset is turned off.

#### **IC-card Lock**

# **Prohibiting Use of IC-card**

Default setting

Prevent use of FeliCa IC-card functions.

In stand-by, press  $\bullet$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press  $\bigcirc$ .

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Lock settings screen appears.

# Press (4 Em) [IC-card lock] and select ON or OFF.

To set	Press 1.4.
To disable	Press 2 de.

• When IC-card lock is set, 🖺 appears in the upper part of the display.

#### **Note**

 Some Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli may not be downloaded or upgraded while IC-card is locked.

### **Key Guard**

## **Preventing Side Key Errors**

Lock side key when the FOMA terminal is closed or in viewer position to prevent errors.

When FOMA terminal is closed or in viewer position, press side clear key (a) for 1+ seconds.

- When set from stand-by, Power saver mode immediately activates and display turns off or Screen saver activates.
- To disable, press (a) again for 1+ seconds.
- Key guard is disabled when the power is turned off.

#### **Note**

- When Key guard is set and a call is received, the lock is temporarily disabled and the call can be answered. When the call is ended, Key guard reappears.
- Key guard only appears in viewer position.
- When Key guard is set and alarm activates, *Key guard* may disappear. Press a key to show again.
- When battery level is low, *Key guard* does not appear. Does not appear even when a key is pressed.

#### Show Call/Received

## **Setting Redial and Received Calls**

Default setting
ON (Display)

Set to not display Received calls and Redials.

1

In stand-by, press  $\bullet$   $\bullet$   $\bullet$   $\bullet$ , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press  $\bullet$ .

- Alternatively, select (Settings) → Security → Show call/received from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Show call/received screen appears.

# 2

### Select ON or OFF.

To display Received calls	Press 1.4 1.4.
details screen	
To not displaying Received	Press 1.2 2.
calls details screen	
To show redials	Press 2 4 1.4.
To not show redials	Press 2 2 2 2 2 .

#### Note

- Show call/received history settings are retained after restarting.
- Record message (PP. 75) is not played if Show received calls is set to OFF.
- Received calls and Redials are recorded when Show call/received is set to OFF.
   When set to ON, histories recorded while setting was OFF can be viewed.

### Setting Mail History Display <Show Sent/Received>

Default setting
ON (Display)

Set Sent and Received messages history (PP. 286) to not appear.

# In stand-by, press (a) [5 28], enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (a).

- Alternatively, select  $\mathcal{Y}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Security**  $\rightarrow$  **Show sent/rcvd** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Show sent/received screen appears.

# 2

### Select ON or OFF.

To show Sent messages history	Press (1.2a) (1.2a).
To not show Sent messages history	Press (1.2 Z.).
To show Received messages history	Press 2 4 (1.4).
To not show Received messages history	Press 2 2 2 2.

#### **Note**

- Sent messages history and Received messages history are recorded even if Show sent/received is set to OFF. When set to ON, histories recorded while setting was OFF can be viewed.
- Show sent/received settings are retained even if handset is turned off.

#### Secret Mode

## **Viewing Information Set as Secret**

Default setting
OFF (disabled)

Normal and Secret phonebook, Schedule and ToDo list are shown in Secret mode.

- Only normal data is shown when Secret mode is disabled.
- Set to automatically disable Secret mode when Power saver mode activates in stand-by and display turns off, Screen saver activates or FOMA terminal is closed when in stand-by. Secret mode is not automatically disabled when Power saver mode activates due to Key guard settings.
- Secret mode is disabled when the power is turned off.
- For details on entering secret data, refer to P. 114 for phonebook, P. 448 for Schedule and P. 439 for ToDo list.

# 1

# In stand-by, press $\bullet$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ . enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press $\bigcirc$ .

- Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{X}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Security**  $\rightarrow$  **Secret mode** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- · Secret mode setting screen appears.

# 2

### Select ON or OFF.

To set	To not	Press 1.2 1.2.
	automatically	
	disable	
	To automatically	Press 1.1 2 12.
	disable	
To disable		Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de

When Self mode is set, appears in the upper part of the display.

## **Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers**

Only accept calls from specified callers. All other numbers (including those without caller ID) are not connected.

To set Accept calls, save numbers from the phonebook in a list and set those numbers later to be accepted.

- Even if the caller is on the Accept calls list, the call does not connect when the caller ID is not sent. It is recommended to set Caller ID Request Service so guidance requesting caller ID is played.
- Phone numbers set for Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone and Reject unsupported ID cannot be set for Accept calls.
- Callers not on the Accept calls list hear a busy signal. Missed call appears and the caller's name or phone number is recorded in Received calls.
- While phonebook PIM is locked. Accept calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers are not available. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook are available.
- Remote lock all is also available for phone numbers not included in Accept calls setting. Beeps sound after the set number of received calls is reached and Remote lock all is set. (Charges are incurred by caller.)

### Saving Phone Numbers to Accept

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

In stand-by, press ( ) [ 3 & ), enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (•). • Alternatively, select  $(Settings) \rightarrow Security \rightarrow Accept/Reject calls from Top$ 



- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen

# Press 1. [Accept calls].

- · Accept calls screen appears.
- When Disable reject calls appears, phone number is set to be rejected. Disable and try again. (EPP. 159)
- When Disable reject calls appears, phone number is set to be rejected due to Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone or Reject unsupported ID settings. Disable and try again.
- Press 3 [Save list].
  - If others are already saved, their names appear.
  - When PIM is locked appears, phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (EFP. 153)





Save list

- Repeat step 4 to save other phone numbers.
- To use Accept calls, set Accept calls.

#### **Note**

- If entry saved in Accept calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, list contents are also edited/deleted. If Accept
  calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for delete All in group/Delete all).
- Refer to P. 492 for details on Caller ID Request Service.

### **Related Operations**

#### Register from phonebook <Accept calls>

In stand-by, press (a) ▶ name ▶ (a) (a) ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ (a) ▶ list number ▶ (a).

#### Delete phone number in list <Delete>

In saved list, select name • • • Yes • •.

• If all phone numbers saved in list are deleted after Accept calls is set, the setting is disabled.

#### Change phone number in list <Change>

In saved list, select name • • • • name • •.

### **Accepting Calls from Specified Numbers**

Default setting

OFF

1

In stand-by, press • 5 , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press •.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

2

Press 1. [Accept calls] and select ON or OFF.

To set	Press 1.3.
	If phone number is not saved in the list, Save list appears. When Save list is finished, Accept calls is set.
To disable	Press 2 &.

• When PIM is locked appears, phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (PP P. 153)

#### Reject Calls

# **Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers**

Reject voice/video-phone calls from specified callers. All other numbers (including those without caller ID) are connected.

To set Reject calls, save numbers from the phonebook in a list and set those numbers later to be rejected.

- Even if Reject calls is set, if the other party does not send caller ID, the call is connected. It is recommended to set Reject by reason of non-disclosure, or Caller ID Request Service so guidance requesting caller ID is played.
- When Accept calls is set for a phone number, Reject calls cannot be set.
- Rejected callers hear a busy signal. Missed call appears and the caller's name is recorded in Received calls.
- While phonebook PIM is locked, Reject calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers are not available. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook can be set.
- Remote lock all is also available for phone numbers saved in Reject calls. Beeps sound after the set number
  of received calls is reached and Remote lock all is set. (Charges are incurred by caller.)

### Saving Phone Numbers to Reject

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

# 1

# In stand-by, press • 5 , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press •.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

# 2

### Press [Reject calls].

- Reject calls screen appears.
- When Disable accept calls appears, phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again.
   (EP P. 158)

# 3

### Press 🗷 [Save list].

- If another person is saved, name appears.
- When PIM is locked appears, phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (PP. 153)



## Select list number, press ( ), select name and press ( ).



Phone number and name in phonebook are saved. (P. 108)

- Repeat step 4 to save other phone numbers.
- Next, set Reject calls to reject calls from callers specified in the phonebook.

Save list

#### **Note**

- If entry saved in Reject calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, the saved list contents are also edited/ deleted. However, if Reject calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for Delete all in group/Delete all).
- Refer to P. 492 for details on Caller ID Request Service.
- Refer to P. 160 for details on Reject by reason of non-disclosure.

### **Related Operations**

### Register from phonebook <Reject calls>

In stand-by, press 

▶ name ▶ 

● ★ 

● enter terminal security code (four to eight digits)

▶ 

● list number ▶ 

●.

### Delete phone number in list <Delete>

In saved list, select name ▶ ● ▶ 2 ♣ ▶ Yes ▶ ●.

• If all phone numbers saved in list are deleted after Reject calls is set, the setting is disabled.

### Change phone number in list <Change>

In saved list, select name ▶ ● ▶ 1 ▶ name ▶ ●.

### **Rejecting Calls from Specified Numbers**

Default setting OFF

1

### 

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

# Press [2.2] [Reject calls] and select ON or OFF.

To set	Press 1.4.
	<ul> <li>If phone number is not saved in the list, the Save list screen appears.</li> <li>When Save list is finished, Reject calls is set.</li> </ul>
To disable	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de

• When PIM is locked appears, phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (PP P. 153)

### Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure

## Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Default setting
Accept all

When caller ID is not sent, the reason of non-disclosure appears. Set handset to reject calls depending on reason.

- When call is received from caller who is set to be rejected due to a non-disclosure reason, the call is not
  connected. Calls of other non-disclosure reasons will connect. Rejected callers hear a busy signal. *Missed*call appears and the reason of non-disclosure is recorded in Received calls.
- It is recommended to set Caller ID Request Service so guidance requesting caller ID is played.
- When Accept calls is set for a phone number, Reject by reason of non-disclosure cannot be set.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.

### Reason

User unset	When the caller wishes to withhold caller ID.
Payphone	When the call is received from a payphone.
	When the caller cannot send caller ID, such as when the call is received from overseas or ordinary (landline) telephones via various transfer services. However, caller ID may still appear depending on the company.

### 

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

## Select reason and select Accept or Reject.

To set User unset	Press 4♣ → 1♣ [Accept] or 2♣ [Reject].
To set Payphone	Press 5 ♣ → 1.4 [Accept] or 2 ♣ [Reject].
To set Not support	Press 6♣ → 1♣ [Accept] or 2♣ [Reject].

- · Reject by reason of non-disclosure is set.
- When Disable accept calls appears, phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again.
   (☑ P. 158)

#### **Note**

• Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized when set with Drive mode.

## Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in **Phonebook**

Default setting OFF

Set ring tone to delay sounding for set number of seconds when the caller is not registered in the phonebook (including those without caller ID).

- This is one way to avoid nuisance calls.
- When setting mute seconds, set to record calls disconnected during mute seconds duration in Received calls.



### In stand-by, press (●) 1.₺ 7₺ and 1.₺ [ON].



• Alternatively, select  $\{i \mid (Settings) \rightarrow Sound \rightarrow Set mute seconds \text{ from Top} \}$ menu.

### Enter duration (two digits: 01 to 99 seconds) and press (•).



Missed call history screen appears.

### Set Missed call history.

To display Received calls	Press 1.4.
To not display Received	Press 2 de la companya della company
calls	● In Received calls, press 🏿 # 📆 to show all calls. Press 🔊 # 🥶 again to
	return to the previous view.

Mute seconds are set.

#### **Note**

- Set mute seconds shorter than ring duration for Record message or Voice Mail Service to prioritize set mute seconds.
- Set mute seconds activates for calls from callers in phonebook when phonebook PIM is locked.
- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute seconds.
- Drive mode is prioritized when set with Set mute seconds.
- When Set mute seconds and Manner mode are both on and the set time passes, operation is in accordance with Manner mode settings.

### Reject Unknown

# Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook

Default setting

Accept

Set handset to reject calls from callers not in the phonebook.

- Caller hears a busy signal. *Missed call* appears and the call is saved in the Received calls.
- Caller ID Request Service can be set to request other party's phone number.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.



In stand-by, press ( ) [ ] ( ), enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (•).

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Accept/Reject calls setting screen appears.

# Press (Reject unknown) and select Accept or Reject.

To accept	Press 1.4.
To reject	Press 2 2.

- When Disable accept calls appears, phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again.
   (EP. 158)
- When *PIM is locked* appears, phonebook PIM is locked. Disable and try again. (© P. 153)
- When Disable Set mute seconds appears, mute seconds are set. Set to OFF and try again.
   (☼ P. 161)

#### **Note**

Reject unknown is prioritized when set with Drive mode.

# **Other Security Settings**

Use the following settings and functions to secure your FOMA terminal.

Intent	Function/Service name	Reference
Select mail to receive.	Receive option	
Change mail address.	Change mail address	
Reject mail from specified domains.	Reject/Receive mail from selected domains	
Reject mail from specified addresses.	Reject/Receive selected mail	
Reject all unsolicited mail.	Reject 未承諾広告※ (unsolicited ad) mail	
Reject mail from i-mode terminals that send more than 200 i-mode mail per day.	Reject mass i-mode mail senders	"FOMA i-mode User's
Receive/Reject i-mode mail.	Receive/Reject only i-mode mail	Manual"
Reject mail from PCs.		
Temporarily disable mail function.	Suspend mail functions	
Reject all SMS (short messages), or short messages from senders with no caller ID.	Reject SMS/Confirm rejection settings	
Use i-mode to save/check safety information during disasters.	Disaster Message Board Service	
Save specific phone numbers to reject.	Nuisance Call Barring Service (DoCoMo network service)	P. 490
Check to see if software update for FOMA terminal is necessary. Download and update if necessary.	Software update	P. 597
Scan for problems that may arise when importing data and programs from external devices to the FOMA terminal.	Scanning Function	P. 603
Use Client certificate to connect to SSL- enabled sites. (Only for FirstPass sites.)	FirstPass (DoCoMo electronic authentication service)	P. 241

# Camera

Before Using the Camera	
Shooting Still Pictures	<shoot picture="" still="">172</shoot>
• Shooting Movies	Shoot Movie>177
• Changing Settings for Shooting	
Changing Camera Settings	
• Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting	<send message="">194</send>
Using Bar Code Reader	<bar code="" reader="">195</bar>
Reading Text	. <character (ocr)="" reader="">198</character>

## **Before Using the Camera**

### **Camera Operations**

The FOMA terminal has two cameras, a main camera (external) and a sub camera (internal). Use these cameras to shoot still pictures and movies. Use the main camera to shoot pictures of people and the landscape, and use the sub camera to shoot pictures of yourself. When making a videophone call, use the sub camera to send images of yourself to the other party, and switch to the main camera to send images of people and the landscape.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (128 P. 381)

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the cameras may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Shooting other people and landscape

**Normal position** 

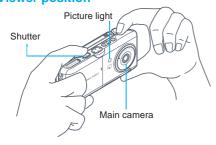


# Shooting a still picture of yourself

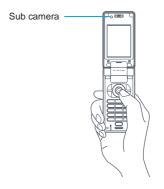
Main camera



### **Viewer position**



#### Sub camera



## Wide Array of Shooting Methods

- Set image quality and size depending on intended use (P. 182)
- Assorted continuous modes (©P. 174)
- Shoot with frames (@P. 185) or with coloring or touch changed (@P. 186)
- Attach shot images to i-mode mail and send (PP. 194)
- Shoot with auto focus (P. 184)
- Shoot with auto timer (PP. 183)

### **Using the Cameras**

- Fingerprints or oil on the lens may cause the image to be out of focus. In addition, images may blur and rays
  of light may appear in images when shot near a strong light source. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth before
  shooting images.
- Images may appear dark and distorted when shot with insufficient battery power. Do not shoot images while
  the handset is charging.
- Do not apply force to the lens when closing the FOMA terminal as this may damage the lens. May cause a malfunction.
- Although the cameras are made with high-precision technology, constantly bright or dark pixels or lines may
  be visible. Further, white lines and other noise may appear in images especially when shooting images in
  dimly lit surroundings.
- The quality of images may deteriorate when shot or saved after the FOMA terminal has been left in a warm location for a long time.
- If the camera lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter may discolor, creating a discoloration of shot images.
- Images shot of the sun, a light or other strong light source may appear dark and distorted.
- Direct images shot of the sun may damage the performance of the CCD (image sensor).
- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select SUPER FINE. The data size will be
  larger, but the image quality will be better. At these image size settings, fewer images can be saved, more
  time is required to send these images by i-mode mail and the images may be reduced when sent. Select the
  image quality according to the application. (PP P. 182)
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after continuous use of the camera. This is not a malfunction.
- If the camera portion becomes hot while using the main camera, Camera function is not available now
  appears and the camera turns off.
- If the battery level is low, images may appear dark or distorted.

### Important notes for shooting images

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the cameras may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Make sure that your fingers, hair and handset strap do not obscure the camera lens when shooting images.
- Because battery power depletes more quickly when shooting images, it is recommended to press to end Camera mode after shooting images.
- If a voice/video-phone call is received or the alarm sounds when viewing the still picture preview screen or
  movie recording screen, the camera function is canceled and the voice/video-phone call or alarm screen
  appears. After that screen ends, the camera screen reappears and the previous still picture or movie data can
  be saved.
- Camera shutter sound volume cannot be changed. The shutter sound is also audible during Manner mode, Drive mode and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.
- Picture light can be turned on while shooting images.
- Images are blurred when FOMA terminal moves while shooting images. Hold firmly to prevent blurring. Use
  the Fix camera shake function to prevent camera shake when shooting movies.
- Because a larger image size requires more data, movement in the image on the FOMA terminal display may
  appear slow.
- Indoor fluorescent lighting may create flickering or streaky shading on the screen. This flickering or shading
  may be reduced by changing the lighting conditions, brightness or adjusting the camera brightness.
- After switching from the main camera to the sub camera, it may take time for the brightness and tone to appear correctly.
- The Auto timer is canceled if a voice/video-phone call is received or alarm sounds when the Auto timer is activated.

### Copyrights and rights of portrait

- Images and audio recorded with the FOMA terminal are for personal use and may not be used without the consent of the rightful person in accordance with copyright laws. Please note that the use of the likeness or name of other individuals without their consent, defacement or a similar act may infringe on an individual's rights of portrait. Please be aware of copyrights and rights of portrait when making public images and audio recorded with the handset on the Internet or similar media.
  - The recording of images or audio may be restricted at concerts, performances and exhibits even when recorded for personal use.
- Do not use this handset to send copyrighted images for uses other than those permitted under copyright laws.



Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.

### **Image Size**

The following are the image sizes of still pictures and movies that can be shot (saved) with the FOMA terminal. # All sizes in this manual are width × height.

Size	Still picture	Movie	Explanation
Icon: 76×76	0	_	This is the size of the icons on the FOMA terminal. This size is useful for shooting a still picture to set as a menu icon.
sQCIF: 128×96	0	0	Smaller than QCIF and ideal for attaching to mail.
QCIF: 176×144	0	0	This is the size of the video-phone main display. This size is useful for shooting a still picture to use as a substitute image. The default setting is <i>QCIF</i> : 176×144.
hQVGA: 240×176	_	0	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
Stand-by: 240×320	0	_	This is the size of the display on the FOMA terminal. This size is useful for shooting a still picture to set as the standby display. Ideal for sending to i-mode terminal. The default setting is <b>Stand-by: 240</b> ×320.
QVGA: 320×240	_	0	This is the maximum movie size that can be shot with the FOMA terminal. Ideal for viewing on a PC.
CIF: 352×288	0	_	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
VGA: 480×640*	0	_	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
1.2M: 960×1280*	0	_	Ideal for viewing on a PC or printing.
UXGA: 1200×1600*	0	_	Ideal for viewing on a PC or printing.
3M: 1536×2048*	0	_	This is the maximum still picture size that can be shot with the FOMA terminal. Ideal for viewing on a PC or printing.

<sup>\*</sup> Not available when shooting with the sub camera.

### **Approximate Number of Recordable Images**

### Still picture mode

This lists the approximate number of images that can be shot with the same image size and quality and saved
in the FOMA terminal handset. The number of still pictures that can be shot are fewer when other images,
i-αppli software, or other types of files are saved to the FOMA terminal handset. Also, the number may be
fewer depending on the shooting conditions and the subject.

The following are the approximate number of images that can be recorded to the FOMA terminal handset according to the image quality. Refer to P. 606 for the approximate number of images that can be saved with a 16 MB/32 MB miniSD Memory Card according to the image quality.

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
Icon: 76×76	_	590 shots	_
sQCIF: 128×96	700 shots	520 shots	360 shots
QCIF: 176×144	670 shots	360 shots	230 shots
Stand-by: 240×320	470 shots	250 shots	100 shots
CIF: 352×288	390 shots	220 shots	100 shots
VGA: 480×640	250 shots	150 shots	110 shots
1.2M: 960×1280	100 shots	50 shots	30 shots
UXGA: 1200×1600	50 shots	30 shots	20 shots
3M: 1536×2048	30 shots	20 shots	10 shots

#### Note

- Use a miniSD Memory Card (PP. 381) to transfer and save still pictures from the FOMA terminal handset to a PC.
   Still picture file names
- The file names of saved still pictures are labeled automatically according to the date and time the still
  pictures were saved.
  - Example: September 16, 2005 at 1:05:07 PM → *050916\_130507*.
- Still pictures that were continuously shot are labeled in series (01, 02, etc.) at the end of the file name. Up to 14 single-byte characters are shown in titles in the image list screen when saved in Data box. Select File property to check the file name. (PP P. 395)

#### Note

• Refer to P. 395 for how to edit the title name of a still picture.

#### Movie mode

• The following are the approximate recording lengths per movie when File size limit is set to For mail (short) and For mail (long). The recordable movie length and number of recordable movies are less when other images, i-αppli software or other types of files are saved to the FOMA terminal handset. Also, the recordable movie length may be shorter depending on the shooting conditions and the subject.

The following are the approximate movie lengths that can be recorded to the FOMA terminal according to the image quality. Refer to P. 606 for the approximate number of images that can be recorded to a 16 MB/32 MB miniSD Memory Card according to the image quality.

		ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128×96	For mail (short)	90 seconds	61 seconds	30 seconds	_
5QCII . 120×90	For mail (long)	152 seconds	103 seconds	51 seconds	_
QCIF: 176×144	For mail (short)	77 seconds	45 seconds	16 seconds	11 seconds
	For mail (long)	131 seconds	77 seconds	28 seconds	19 seconds
hQVGA: 240×176	)*	_	31 seconds	15 seconds	10 seconds
QVGA: 320×240*		_	_	_	10 seconds

<sup>\*</sup> For mail (short) and For mail (long) are not available if image size is hQVGA: 240×176 or QVGA: 320×240. Due to File size limit, movies are automatically set so that size is 500 KB or less.

#### Note

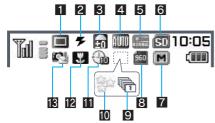
- Refer to P. 182 for the method of setting the image size of movies.
- Use a miniSD Memory Card (PP P. 381) to transfer and save movies from the FOMA terminal to a PC.

### **Shooting Screen Layout**

The following indicators appear on the display in Camera mode.

When in viewer position, icons do not appear if shot size is Stand-by: 240×320, VGA: 480×640, 1.2M: 960×1280, UXGA: 1200×1600 or 3M: 1536×2048.

### Still picture mode



#### 1 Mode indicator (PPP P. 179)

Indicates the Camera mode.

- Still picture mode
- Movie mode

# 2 Picture light indicator (P. 181) Indicates the picture light setting.

indicates the picture light setting

Picture light ON

F: Picture light **AUTO** (still picture mode only)

Image brightness indicator (PP 180) Indicates the image brightness.

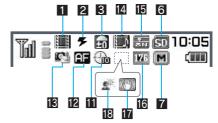
Dark ← Normal → Bright

4 Shoot by scene indicator (P P. 187)

Indicates the Shoot by scene setting.

III : Auto : Sunset

### Movie mode



Portrait
Sports
Sports
Character
Night + Portrait
Into the sun

: Landscape
: Pet

## Image quality indicator ( P. 182)

Indicates the image quality setting.

(red): ECONOMY

(red): NORMAL
(red): SUPER FINE

6 miniSD Memory Card indicator

Indicates when a miniSD Memory Card is inserted.

(gray): Save to handset.

(pink): Save to miniSD Memory Card.

### 7 Memory warning indicator

Appears when there is no available space. These are approximations. Saving may be possible even when the indicator appears.

(yellow): Appears when available space becomes less than 1.2 MB.

(red) : Appears when available space becomes less than 100 KB.

### Still picture size indicator (P. 182)

Indicates the image size setting.

■ : Icon: 76×76
■ : sQCIF: 128×96
■ : QCIF: 176×144
■ : Stand-by: 240×320
■ : CIF: 352×288
■ : VGA: 480×640
■ : 1.2M: 960×1280
■ : UXGA: 1200×1600

3M: 1536×2048

### Ontinuous mode indicator (P P. 174)

Indicates the Continuous mode setting.

: Fast, Standard, Manual (for 25 pictures): Fast, Standard, Manual (for 9 pictures)

Standard, Manual (for 6 pictures)

: Bracket (9 pictures)

国: Fast overlap, Standard overlap, Manual overlap (5 pictures)

4 stills, Manual 4 stills

: Shared Multishot (1 to 25 pictures) to

# 10 Still picture Effect indicator (PP. 186) Indicates the Effect setting.

: Black & white : Ripple

Colored pencilFish-eyeFaded edges

### Auto timer indicator (P. 183)

Indicates the Auto timer setting.

📵: 2 seconds 💮 🖫: 10 seconds

3 : 5 seconds

### AF mode/Focus lock indicator

Indicates the AF mode or Focus lock status.

☐ : Normal ☐ : Landscape ☐ : Spot AF (Still picture mode only)
☐ : Closeup ☐ : Manual focus

### Using zoom

In Still picture mode, press to show the screen shown on the right and enable zooming. The screen is already shown in Movie mode. ( P. 180)

📥 : Portrait

(green): Appears when focus is locked

(red) : Appears when focusing

### Incoming message indicator

Indicates incoming mail during shooting.

Appears when i-mode mail is received

during shooting.

Appears when SMS is received during shooting.
 (green): Appears when i-mode mail is received at center during shooting while

Receive option setting is set to **ON**.

### 14 Switch image/voice indicator (P P. 185)

Indicates the Movie mode setting.

Image only

Indicates the Movie mode setting.

Indicates the Movie mode setting.

: Image + voice

# Is Image quality/File size limit indicator (PP P. 182)

Indicates the image quality setting.

(yellow): ECONOMY For mail (short)

(yellow): NORMAL For mail (short) (yellow): FINE For mail (short)

(yellow): SUPER FINE For mail (short)
(green): ECONOMY For mail (long)

☐ (green): NORMAL For mail (long)
☐ (green): FINE For mail (long)

(green): FINE For mail (long)

☐ (red) : ECONOMY Unrestricted
☐ (red) : NORMAL Unrestricted
☐ (red) : FINE Unrestricted
☐ (red) : SUPER FINE Unrestricted

### 16 Movie size indicator (PP. 182)

Indicates the image size setting.

128 : sQCIF: 128×96 126 : QCIF: 176×144 230 : hQVGA: 240×176 320 : QVGA: 320×240

# **T** Fix camera shake indicator (<a href="#">(で記す</a> P. 187)

### Movie effect indicator (P. 186)

Indicates the Effect setting.

☐ : Black & white
☐ : Sepia
② : Sparkling
④ : Colored pencil
③ : Spectrum

: Ripple: Kaleidoscope: Into the sun

Maximum zoom magnification



Current zoom position

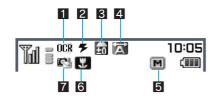
### Using Manual focus

In the shooting screen, press [a][3] and select *Manual focus* in the AF mode switching screen to show the screen shown on the right. Use (a) to adjust the focus. (A) P. 184)

### Using Spot AF

In the shooting screen, press @3., select **Spot AF** in the AF mode switching screen to show the screen shown on the right, select area with 1. to 9. or • and focus. (EP P. 184)

### Character reader mode



1 Mode indicator (PP P. 179)

Indicates the Camera mode.

COUR: Character reader mode

Picture light indicator (PP P. 181)
Indicates the picture light setting.

F: Picture light ON

Image brightness indicator (PP. 180) Indicates the image brightness.

Dark ← Normal → Bright

4 Inverse mode indicators (© P. 198)

Indicates the Inverse mode setting.

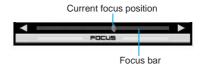
Appears when set to *Automatic*.

Appears when set to *Normal*.

Appears when set to Reverse text.

5 Memory warning indicator

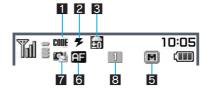
Appears when there is no available space. These are approximations. It is possible to save data even when the indicator appears.





X The screen shown is only an example.

### Bar code reader



(yellow): Appears when available space becomes less than 1.2 MB.

(red) : Appears when available space becomes less than 100 KB.

6 AF mode/Focus lock indicator

Indicates the AF mode or Focus lock status.

Closeup

E: Closeup

Standard

(green): Appears when focus is locked

(red) : Appears when focusing

Incoming message indicator Indicates incoming mail during shooting.

Appears when i-mode mail is received during shooting.

Appears when SMS is received during shooting.

(green): Appears when i-mode mail is received at center during shooting while Receive option setting is set to ON.

### QR code link number indicator (☼ P. 196)

to 16: Indicates the number of linked split data being read.

### **Activating/Deactivating the Camera**

Activate the camera from normal position or viewer position.

### In normal position

### In stand-by, press .

- Picture light flashes once and the still picture shooting screen appears.
- Press 🕿 or 🙉 ar to end.

### In viewer position

### In stand-by, press (a) (right guidance).

- Picture light flashes once and the still picture shooting screen appears.
- Press (IR) to end.

### **Activating movie mode**

### In stand-by, press () (shutter) fully for 1+ seconds.

- Picture light flashes once and the movie shooting screen appears.
- Press or ௷ to end.

#### **Note**

#### Using different shooting modes









Shoot still picture • Switch shooting modes after activating camera: P. 179

Bar code reader

### Checking Key Operation <Key List>

Switch Camera mode to shoot still pictures/movies or read with Character reader and Bar code reader.

Frequently used operations are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

Key	Still picture mode	Movie mode	Character reader mode	Bar code reader mode
$\odot$	Zoom in	Zoom in	-	_
$\odot$	Zoom out	Zoom out	-	_
<b>B</b>	Instant zoom in	Instant zoom in	-	_
â	Instant zoom out	Instant zoom out	-	_
0	Brightness ▲	Brightness ▲	Brightness ▲	Brightness ▲
0	Brightness ▼	Brightness ▼	Brightness ▼	Brightness ▼
# ===	Main/sub camera	Main/sub camera	-	_
view 🖺	Full-screen	-	-	_
<b>€</b> AF®	Focus lock	Focus lock	Focus lock	Focus lock
(1./-2	Switch ommode	Switch node	Switch 🙆 mode	Switch ommode
2 %	Data box	Data box	Select subject	Saved data
3 🐉	Switch AF mode	Switch AF mode	Switch AF mode	Switch AF mode
(4 gr	Auto timer	Auto timer	Inverse mode	_
5 £	Select size	Select size	-	_
6 iii	Image quality	Image quality	-	_
7 158	Shot mode	Fix camera shake	-	_
8 P	Original mode	Effect shot	_	_
9 5 mm2	Camera settings	File size limit	_	_
<b>□</b> %	Focus lock	Switch img/voice	Focus lock	Focus lock



While camera is active, press ⓐ, select ■ Key list and press ⑥.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Change key list allocation <Custom>

- 1 While camera is active, press 

  ► Key list ► ●.
- 2 Select key to allocate (Custom) function to assign (Save) or (Save).

#### Reset key list allocation <Reset>

While camera is active, press **a** ▶ ■ Key list ▶ **a** [Reset] ▶ Yes ▶ **a**.

#### **Note**

• The operations and key list settings are described in this manual with the default settings.

## **Shooting Still Pictures**

#### Shoot still pictures with the FOMA terminal.

The shot still pictures are saved to My picture of Data box or the miniSD Memory Card.

### **Shooting in Viewer Position**

# 1

### Activate the camera. (PP. 170)

- Picture light flashes once.
- The camera activates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera
  appears on the display.
- Hold the FOMA terminal sideways.
- Use the zoom or show the menu. (@P. 180)

# 2

### Shoot.

To shoot with auto focus	Press (shutter).
To shoot with Focus lock (PP. 189	Press $\odot$ (shutter) halfway $\rightarrow$ lock focus $\rightarrow$ press shutter fully.

- The camera shutter sounds and a still picture appears on the preview screen.
- The camera shutter sound and Focus lock sound are audible during Manner mode.
- It is possible to change the type of shutter sound. (PP. 190)
- If Auto save mode is ON, shot still pictures are automatically saved. (Preview screen does not appear.)

# 3

### Save.

To save	Press <b>⊙</b> (shutter).
To delete shot still picture and shoot again	Press @.
To send with i-mode mail (@P. 194)	Press (i) (left guidance).

- Shot still pictures are saved to Camera folder in My picture of Data box, a folder specified with Save to (EP. 192) or the miniSD Memory Card (EP. 191). (Saving still pictures may take time.)
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (PP. 393)
- If available space on the miniSD Memory Card is insufficient, the FOMA terminal handset automatically becomes the save destination even when the miniSD Memory Card is set as the save destination.

### **Shooting in Normal Position**

Shoot still pictures with the FOMA terminal open.

# 1

### Activate the camera. (FP P. 170)

- Picture light flashes once.
- The camera activates and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera
  appears on the display.
- Use the zoom or show the menu. (@P. 180)



To shoot	Press ●.
To shoot with auto focus	Press () (shutter).
To shoot with Focus lock (PP. 189)	
	or press $\odot$ (shutter) halfway $ ightarrow$ lock focus $ ightarrow$ press shutter fully.

- The camera shutter sounds and a still picture appears on the preview screen.
- The camera shutter sound and Focus lock sound are audible during Manner mode.
- It is possible to change the type of shutter sound. (FP P. 190)
- If Auto save mode is ON, shot still pictures are automatically saved. (Preview screen does not appear.)
   (EP P. 193)

### Save.

To save		Press (•) [Save].
		<u> </u>
When shot with the sub camera	To save Images as it appears on the display (correct left- right orientation)	Press   [Save].  Still pictures appear on the display inverted (left-right orientation backwards) but are saved as a normal image (correct left-right orientation).
	To confirm normal image before saving	Press   ②  ②  ②  ③  ②  ③  ②  ③  ③  ②  ③  ③  ③
	To save an inverted image (left-right orientation backwards)	Press   ③③ .  It is not possible to save inverted images when shooting still pictures with a frame (☞ P. 185).
To delete shot stil again	I picture and shoot	Press @ar.
To send with i-mo	de mail (@P. 194)	Press (1) [Mail].
To edit and use a shot still picture before saving		Press .  • It is possible to use a shot still picture in Edit image, Facial treatment, Set screen or switch to full-screen. Refer to P. 348 to P. 359 for details on Edit image, P. 358 for details on Facial treatment, P. 347 for details on Set screen and P. 191 for switching to full-screen.
To end Camera m	node	Press <u>■</u>

- Shot still pictures are saved to *Camera* folder in My picture of Data box, a folder specified with Save to (EP. 192) or the miniSD Memory Card (EP. 191). (Saving still pictures may take time.)
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (PP P. 393)
- If available space on the miniSD Memory Card is insufficient, the FOMA terminal handset automatically becomes the save destination even when the miniSD Memory Card is set as the save destination.

### Shooting a still picture of yourself

Use the main or sub camera to take a picture of yourself.

Open the FOMA terminal in the opposite direction to take a picture of yourself using the main camera.
 (№ P. 164)

# Activate the camera. (PP P. 170)

To shoot with the main camera	Open the FOMA terminal backwards.
To shoot with the sub camera	Press ##.

• The display is the viewfinder.

# 

• Refer to step 2 of "Shooting in Normal Position" on P. 173 for information on shooting.

# Press [Save].

• Refer to step 3 of "Shooting in Normal Position" on P. 173 for information on saving.

#### Note

#### Receiving a voice/video-phone call while saving a still picture

 The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the image confirmation screen appears. Select Yes and the preview screen reappears. Select No to delete the still picture and stand-by reappears.



#### Auto end

 If no operations are made in approximately two minutes in Camera mode, the camera automatically turns off and stand-by reappears. If a still picture is not saved, the save confirmation screen appears.

### Continuous Shooting < Continuous Mode>

Shoot multiple still pictures continuously. There are nine types of continuous modes available. Image sizes available for Continuous mode are as follows.

	Fast, Standard and Manual Continuous Modes	Bracket	Fast overlap, Standard overlap, Manual overlap	4 stills, Manual 4 stills	Combination with Shoot with frame
Icon: 76×76	0	×	×	×	×
sQCIF: 128×96	0	0	0	0	0
QCIF: 176×144	0	0	0	0	0
Stand-by: 240×320	0	0	0	0	0
CIF: 352×288	O*1	×	O*1	0	0
VGA: 480×640	O*1	×	O*1	0	O*2
1.2M: 960×1280	×	×	×	×	×
UXGA: 1200×1600	×	×	×	×	×
3M: 1536×2048	×	×	×	×	×

<sup>1</sup> Fast is not available.

### Fast, Standard and Manual

In Fast continuous mode, automatically shoot still pictures at approximately 0.1 second intervals and at approximately 0.2 second intervals in Normal continuous mode. In Manual continuous mode, shoot multiple still pictures with shutter operations.

• The maximum number of still pictures that can be shot depends on the size.

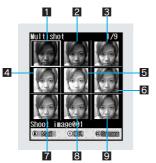
	lcon: 76×76	sQCIF: 128×96	QCIF: 176×144	Stand-by: 240×320	CIF: 352×288	VGA: 480×640
Max. number of continuous shots	25 shots	25 shots	25 shots	9 shots	9 shots	6 shots

<sup>2</sup> Shoot with frame is only available for 4 stills.

<sup>•</sup> Bracket/Overlap continuous mode are not available when using the sub camera.

### Bracket

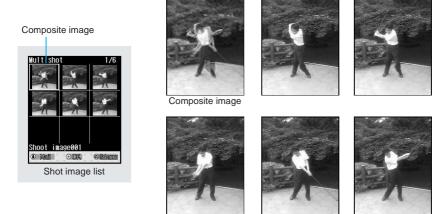
In Bracket continuous mode, continuously shoot nine still pictures with brightness and picture light color settings adjusted automatically.



- 1 Image brightness -2
- 2 Image brightness -1
- 3 Image brightness ±0
- 4 Image brightness +1
- 5 Image brightness +2
- 6 Picture light color White
- 7 Picture light color Yellow
- 8 Picture light color *Red*
- 9 Picture light color Purple

### Fast overlap, Standard overlap, Manual overlap

- In Fast overlap continuous mode, shoot five still pictures at approximately 0.1 second intervals. In Normal overlap continuous mode, a sixth image is automatically created by overlapping five still pictures shot at approximately 0.2 second intervals. In Manual overlap continuous mode, shoot five still pictures with shutter operations. A sixth image is automatically created by overlapping the five still pictures.
- Moving the camera while shooting still pictures in Overlap continuous mode creates an uneven image. Hold
  the FOMA terminal steady with both hands when shooting the still pictures.
- After Overlap shooting is complete, the composite of the five images appears as the first image and the
  original images appear as the second to sixth images.



### 4 stills, Manual 4 stills

In 4 stills, shoot four still pictures at approximately two second intervals. An image is created consisting of the four separate shot still pictures. In Manual 4 stills, shoot four still pictures with shutter operations. An image is created consisting of the four separate shot still pictures.

### Continuous shooting

 Depending on the image size, Continuous mode, Fast, Bracket and Fast overlap may not be available (appears in gray) or number of shots in Continuous mode may be reduced.

# In the still picture shooting screen (PPP P. 170), press (Dec Table 2) and select the type of Continuous mode.

Fast	1./2	Standard overlap	6 m
Standard	2 #	Manual overlap	7.5
Manual	3 🐉	4 stills	8 **
Bracket	4 tr	Manual 4 stills	9 6
Fast overlap	5 ‰	To cancel Continuous mode	O ₽ ₽

### Shoot.

To shoot	Press ● or ● (shutter).  The first still picture is shot and the following still pictures are shot automatically.	
When manual shooting is set	Press   or   (shutter) until the maximum number of shots for the continuous mode.	
To cancel during shooting	Press  ☐ [Cancel].  Shot images appear. Press ☐ [Save all] or ☐ [Save one] to save all or just one image. (Images shot before canceling Fast overlap, Standard overlap, Manual overlap, 4 still or Manual 4 stills cannot be saved. Returns to status prior to shooting.)	
To start over	Slowly open and close the FOMA terminal.  Returns to status prior to shooting.  Press an in Manual continuous mode or Manual overlap continuous mode to cancel the last still picture shot.	

When still picture shooting is complete, the shot image list appears.

## Save.

To save all shot still pictures	Press @ 1.2.	
To select and save one still picture shot with continuous mode	Select still picture → (a) (3 dec).  • To save additional still pictures, select still picture, press (•) and (•) [Save].	
To save 4 stills	Press   [Save].	
To link still pictures shot in Continuous mode and save as one image	Press ⋒5₺.  Linked still pictures cannot be saved individually.	
To delete all shot still pictures	Press @ 2 4.	
To delete selected still picture from list	Select still picture $\rightarrow \boxed{0}$ $\boxed{4 \text{ so}}$ .	

- When Auto save mode ( P. 193) is set to **ON**, still pictures are saved together automatically.
- After saving or deleting a still picture shot in Continuous mode, the still picture shooting screen reappears.

#### Note

- Changing the image size or setting Effect shot while in Continuous mode cancels Continuous mode.
- Even when Save camera settings is set to ON, ending Camera mode cancels Continuous mode.

#### Notes about Continuous mode

- If the battery level is low, images may appear dark or distorted.
- In automatic Continuous mode, cannot be used to operate the zoom and cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- In Overlap continuous mode, the zoom cannot be used even with Manual overlap.
- If an incoming call is received or the alarm activates while shooting in Continuous mode, the still pictures being shot are protected and Continuous mode is canceled. Still pictures shot in Overlap continuous mode and 4 stills are not protected.
- When the battery level is low, the picture light may not illuminate brightly.
- Save linked is only available for QCIF: 176×144 size. After saving still pictures with Save linked, the still
  picture shooting screen reappears and individual still pictures cannot be saved. If an incoming call is received
  or the alarm activates while saving still pictures with Save linked, the saved still pictures may not be protected.

#### **Note**

 Opening/closing the FOMA terminal or rotating the display while shooting in Continuous mode or Auto timer countdown causes shooting to stop.

#### **Shoot Movie**

# **Shooting Movies**

#### Shoot movies with the FOMA terminal.

- Recorded movies are saved in the i-motion folder of Data box or the miniSD Memory Card.
- To save shot movies of image sizes QCIF: 176×144 or sQCIF: 128×96 to the FOMA terminal handset, set File size limit to For mail (short) or For mail (long) before shooting.
- If image size is hQVGA: 240×176 or QVGA: 320×240 and save destination is FOMA terminal handset, File size limit cannot be set.
- Shoot when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- QCIF: 176×144 and sQCIF: 128×96 movies (Mobile MP4) shot with the FOMA terminal can be sent with mail.
   Set File size limit to For mail (short) or For mail (long) before recording. (EFP. 167, P. 183)
- To use shot movies for Chaku-motion (@P. 204), save them on the handset.
- When Camera mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

### **Shooting in Viewer Position**



### Activate movie mode (P. 170).

- Alternatively, select (Camera) → Shoot movie from Top menu.
- Movie shooting screen appears.

# 2

### Shoot.

To shoot with auto focus	Press
To shoot with Focus lock (@P. 189)	Press $\odot$ (shutter) halfway $\rightarrow$ lock focus $\rightarrow$ press $\odot$ (shutter) fully.
To switch between main camera and	Press (a) (right guidance) $\rightarrow$ <i>Main/sub camera</i> $\rightarrow$ (shutter).
sub camera	

- Shooting starts after movie record start sound. (However, recording may not begin immediately.)
- The movie record start sound is also audible during Manner mode.
- The picture light automatically turns on when shooting starts. The picture light automatically turns off when shooting finishes. (Light does not turn off while shooting.)

# 3

### To stop recording, press $\odot$ (shutter).

- A sound indicating that recording has finished is heard.
- Movie shooting confirmation screen appears.
- Shooting stops automatically when the remaining recording time indicator reads 00:00:00 (movie file size reaches limit or miniSD Memory Card has no available space). Proceed to step 4.
- When recording time is short, recording may not stop. Wait and press (•) (shutter).

# 4

### Save.

To save	Select $\blacksquare Save \rightarrow \bigcirc$ (shutter).
To resume shooting	Select <b>②Restart</b> → ① (shutter).  • Not available when the remaining time indicator is <i>00:00:00</i> .
To play shot movies	Select <b>③ Play</b> → <b>⊙</b> (shutter).
To cancel shot movies	Select $lacktriangle$ Cancel $ ightarrow lacktriangle$ (shutter) $ ightarrow  ext{Yes}  ightarrow lacktriangle$ (shutter).
To send with i-motion mail (電子P. 194)	Press <b>③</b> (left guidance) [Mail].  • Movies/i-motion with unsupported file size cannot be sent. ((☑) P. 183)
To end Camera mode	Press @.

 Shot movies are saved to Camera folder in i-motion of Data box, a folder specified with Save to (PP. 192) or the miniSD Memory Card (PP. 191).

#### Note

- Recording cannot be resumed if movie is played back in the movie shooting confirmation screen.
- Recording time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may automatically stop before indicator reads 00:00:00.
- Recording continues even when FOMA terminal is opened while recording in viewer position. If shooting
  time is less than one second, shooting ends and the handset returns to the status before shooting. When
  FOMA terminal is closed during recording, shooting automatically ends and the save confirmation screen
  appears.
- Make sure not to press keys while shooting a movie as keypad sounds may be recorded.

### When voice/video-phone call is received while shooting or save confirmation screen is shown

- The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears. Select Save to save the movie and movie shooting screen reappears. Select Cancel to delete the movie and movie shooting screen reappears. Recording cannot be resumed.
- Set Self mode so incoming calls do not interrupt shooting movies.

### **Auto end**

 If no operations are made within approximately two minutes in the movie shooting screen, the camera automatically turns off and stand-by reappears.

## **Shooting in Normal Position**

Shoot still pictures with the FOMA terminal open.

## Activate movie mode (PP. 170).

- Select (Camera) → **Shoot movie** from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press (24) in the still picture shooting screen (27).
- The camera activates and the movie shooting screen appears.

# 2

## Shoot.

To shoot	Press   .
To shoot with auto focus	Press <b>(</b> (shutter).
	The subject at the center is automatically focused.
To shoot with Focus lock (PP. 189)	Press ♠→ lock focus → ♠ or press ♠ (shutter) halfway → lock focus → press shutter fully. • Focus lock can be activated during shooting.
To switch between main camera and sub camera	Press #==.

- Shooting starts after movie record start sound. (However, recording may not begin immediately.)
- The movie record start sound is also audible during Manner mode.
- The picture light automatically turns on when shooting starts. The picture light automatically turns off when shooting finishes. (Light does not turn off while shooting.)
- To shoot your own image, rotate the FOMA terminal display in the opposite direction and open, face the main camera towards yourself and press (•) (shutter).



- A sound indicating that recording has finished is heard.
- Movie shooting confirmation screen appears.
- Shooting stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads 00:00:00 (movie file size reaches limit or miniSD Memory Card has no available space). Proceed to step 4.
- When recording time is short, recording may not stop. Wait and press or (shutter).



### Save.

To save	Press 1.2.
To resume shooting	Press ②⑥.  Not available when the remaining time indicator is 00:00:00.
To play shot movies	Press 3.
To cancel shot movies	Press $\underbrace{4_{\hat{a}\hat{s}}^{\hat{c}}}$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To send with i-motion mail	Press ⓓ [Mail].  ■ Movies/i-motion with unsupported file size cannot be sent.  (☞ P. 183)
To end Camera mode	Press <sup>™</sup> .

- Shot movies are saved to Camera folder in i-motion of Data box, a folder specified with Save to (P. 192) or the miniSD Memory Card (P. 191).
- When the save destination is the miniSD Memory Card and there is no available space, *Recording failed* appears, Camera mode ends and stand-by reappears. The next time Movie mode is activated, save destination is set to FOMA terminal handset.
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (PP P. 393)

### **Note**

- Recording cannot be resumed if movie is played back in the movie shooting confirmation screen.
- Recording time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may automatically stop before the indicator reads 00:00:00.
- Recording continues even when the display is rotated during shooting. When FOMA terminal is closed
  during recording, shooting automatically ends and the save confirmation screen appears. If shooting time
  is less than one second, shooting ends and the handset returns to the status before shooting.
- Make sure not to press keys while shooting a movie as keypad sounds may be recorded.

### When voice/video-phone call is received while shooting or save confirmation screen is shown

- Incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears. Press 🖾 [Save] to save and return to the movie shooting screen. Press 🐔 [Cancel] to delete and return to the movie shooting screen. Recording cannot be resumed.
- Set Self mode so incoming calls do not interrupt shooting movies.

#### Auto end

 If no operations are made in approximately two minutes in the movie shooting screen, the camera automatically turns off and the stand-by reappears.

## **Changing Settings for Shooting**

## Changing Cameras <Switch Mode>

Switch among Still picture, Movie, Character reader, and Bar code reader modes.

- If battery level is or less when switching to Movie mode, or warning alarm sounds when battery runs out
  and Camera mode is activated immediately after charging is started, Low battery level appears and Camera
  mode does not activate.
- When Camera mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

## 1

## In stand-by, press (1.7) and select a Camera mode.

ſ	Still picture mode	Press 1.2.	Character reader mode	Press 3 .
ſ	Movie mode	Press 22.	Bar code reader mode	Press 4 5.

Camera mode switches.

## Adjusting Brightness < Adjust Brightness>

Select from five brightness levels.

## 1

# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170) or movie shooting screen (P. 170), press (brighter) or (darker) to adjust.

- Also, adjust brightness levels for Bar code reader (PP P. 195) and Character reader (PP P. 198).
- Verify with icon on the display. (PP. 167)
- After ending Camera mode, the setting returns to 🖬 (Default).
- Use the same method to adjust the sub camera.

## Using Digital Zoom < Zoom In and Out>



# In the still picture shooting screen ( $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{P}}$ P. 170), press $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{O}}$ or $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{O}}$ to zoom in or out.

- The Zoom bar appears.
- The Zoom bar already appears in the movie shooting screen (PP. 170).

To zoom in (make the subject bigger)	Press .
To zoom out (make the subject smaller)	Press €.
To zoom in gradually	Hold ().
To zoom out gradually	Hold €.
To zoom in instantly	Press ⑤.  • Goes to the instant zoom mark position. For still pictures, press ⑤ or ⊙ for double magnification (image will be rougher).  • In viewer position, press ⑥ (right guidance) for 1+ seconds.
To return to actual size	Press ⓓ.  ■ In viewer position, press ◉ (left guidance) for 1+ seconds.

Area affected by zoom depends on the image size.

Camera	Image size		Zoom step (maximum magnification)			
mode	Main	Camera	Sub camera	Mai	n Camera	Sub camera
Still	Icon:	76×76		31 steps	(approx. 40×)	
picture	sQCIF:	128×96		26 steps	(approx. 26×)	2 steps (approx. 2×)
	QCIF:	176×144		23 steps	(approx. 17×)	
	Stand-by:	240×320	_	20 steps	(approx. 12×)	_
	CIF:	352×288	_	16 steps	(approx. 8.7×)	_
	VGA:	480×640	_	13 steps	(approx. 6.3×)	_
	1.2M:	960×1280	_	6 steps	(approx. 3.1×)	_
	UXGA:	1200×1600	_	4 steps	(approx. 2.5×)	_
	3M:	1536×2048	_	_	(actual size)	_
Movie	sQCIF:	128×96		25 steps	(approx. 12×)	2 steps (approx. 2×)
	QCIF:	176×144		18 steps	(approx. 5.7×)	2 Steps (approx. 2×)
	hQVGA:	240×176	_	15 steps	(approx. 4.2×)	_
	QVGA:	320×240	_	16 steps	(approx. 4.7×)	_

- When using the sub camera, zoom is not available for Stand-by: 240×320 and CIF: 352×288 sizes.
- Image size returns to normal when camera is switched between main and sub camera or when Camera mode ends.

### Notes about shooting

Make sure camera does not shake. Image is more prone to shaking when image size is large or image
quality is high. Moving the FOMA terminal while shooting images may cause images to become blurred.
Shoot images while holding the handset as still as possible. Use the Fix camera shake function to prevent
camera shake when shooting movies. (PP P. 187)

## **Using Picture Light < Picture Light>**



# In the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170) or movie shooting screen (PP. 170), press [Light].

- Also, use Picture light for Bar code reader (@P. 195) and Character reader (@P. 198).
- Press (a) [Light] to switch the icon to (ON) → (ON) → (AUTO) (only Still picture mode) → OFF.
- Set to **AUTO** to automatically adjust the picture light brightness to the surroundings.
- AUTO is only available in Still picture mode.
- Picture light colors can be set in advance. (@P. 188)
- If Save camera settings is set to OFF (P. 194), picture light color returns to White after Camera mode ends.
- If AF mode is set to Closeup, Picture light does not illuminate brightly in the still picture shooting screen.
- Picture light turns on when camera activates or when opening the preview screen.
- When performing close-up shots of materials that are mostly white under fluorescent light, the color or shadow of the FOMA terminal may appear in the picture, depending on whether the picture light is ON or OFF. This is not a malfunction.

## Switching Between Main Camera and Sub Camera <Main/Sub Camera>



# In the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170) or movie shooting screen (PP. 170), press #=.

 For still pictures, the shooting size is QCIF: 176×144 when switching from main camera to sub camera.

### Note

 When Voice recorder is activated (PP. 403) or Switch image/voice (PP. 185) is set to Voice only, switching from main camera to sub camera is not available.

#### Main Camera

 Useful for shooting pictures of people, animals and landscapes. Also use for Character reader (OCR) or for Bar code reader. Images appear on the display as normal (correct left-right orientation). (Image is shot as it appears.)

### Sub camera

 Use sub camera to shoot picture of yourself. Images appear reversed on the display (left-right orientation backwards). (Image is shot as if reflected in a mirror.)

## **Setting Image Size < Select Size>**

See below

Set still picture and movie image size.

Refer to P. 166 for details on each size.

The default setting is Stand-by (240×320) for still picture and QCIF (176×144) for movie.

1

# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170) or movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 5 and select size.

Shoot still picture		Shoot movie	
Icon (76×76)	Press 1.2.	sQCIF (128×96)	Press 1.2.
sQCIF (128×96)	Press 2 2	QCIF (176×144)	Press 2 2.
QCIF (176×144)	Press 3	hQVGA (240×176)	Press 3
Stand-by (240×320)	Press 4 5.	QVGA (320×240)	Press 4 5.
CIF (352×288)	Press 5 %.		•
VGA (480×640)	Press 6		
1.2M (960×1280)	Press 📶.	7	
UXGA (1200×1600)	Press B n.		
3M (1536×2048)	Press 9		

Icon that indicates size appears. (₱₱ P. 168)

### **Note**

- When shooting still pictures, Shoot with frame, Effect shot and Continuous mode are set to OFF if images
  are resized. When shooting movies, Effect movie settings remain if movies are resized.
- When Fix camera shake is set to ON and image size is changed to a size other than hQVGA: 240×176, Fix camera shake is canceled.
- If Save camera settings (P. 194) is set to OFF, still picture size returns to Stand-by: 240×320 after shooting still pictures and movie size returns to QCIF: 176×144 after shooting movies. Settings are retained when Save camera settings is set to ON.
- When sending images by i-mode mail, transmission charge depends on image size and quality.
- Image size cannot be selected when Voice recorder is activated (P. 403) or if Switch image/voice (P. 185) is set to Voice only.
- For the sub camera, image size cannot be set to VGA: 480×640, 1.2M: 960×1280, UXGA: 1200×1600 or 3M: 1536×2048.

## **Setting Image Quality < Image Quality>**

Default setting See below

Set still picture and movie image quality.

Set still pictures to *ECONOMY*, *NORMAL* or *SUPER FINE*. Set movies to *ECONOMY*, *NORMAL*, *FINE* or *SUPER FINE*.

Image quality increases from  $\textbf{ECONOMY} \rightarrow \textbf{NORMAL} \rightarrow \textbf{FINE}$ , and so on. As quality increases, the number of still pictures and amount of recordable time decrease.

Refer to P. 166 for details on the approximate number of images which can be shot and the recording length.
 The default setting is Normal for still picture and movie.

1

# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170) or movie shooting screen (P. 170), press 6 6 and select image quality.

Shoot still picture		5	Shoot movie	
ECONOMY	Press 1.2.	ECONOMY	Press 1.2.	
NORMAL	Press 2 4.	NORMAL	Press 22.	
SUPER FINE	Press 3.	FINE	Press 3 .	
		SUPER FINE	Press 4 5.	

• Icon that indicates image quality appears. (@P. 167 and P. 168)

### Note

To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select FINE or SUPER FINE.

- When sending an image larger than Stand-by: 240×320 with i-mode mail, image can be reduced to Stand-by: 240×320 size or less. Still picture with file size of over 500 KB will be compressed.
- Image quality cannot be selected when Voice recorder is activated (P. 403) or if Switch image/voice (P. 185) is set to Voice only.
- When Fix camera shake is set to ON and image quality is changed to a quality other than FINE, Fix camera shake is canceled.

## Setting File Size Limit <File Size Limit>

Default setting
For mail (short)

Set File size limit before shooting movies.

- When sending with i-motion mail, select For mail (short) or For mail (long). Record based on allowable size
  of mail attachment.
- If save destination is set to FOMA terminal handset, *Unrestricted* cannot be selected. Set save destination to miniSD Memory Card in advance. (PP. 191)

# In the movie shooting screen (PP. 170), press @ @ and select the file size.

To set restriction to 290 KB [For mail (short)]	Press 1.3.
To set restriction to 490 KB [For mail (long)]	Press 2 4.
To set no restriction	Press 33.

File size limit is set.

### Note

- If image size is hQVGA: 240×176 or QVGA: 320×240 and save destination is miniSD Memory Card, File size limit For mail (short) or For mail (long) are not available.
- If image size is hQVGA: 240×176 or QVGA: 320×240 and save destination is FOMA terminal handset, File size limit is not available.
- When File size limit is set to *Unrestricted*, maximum recording time is approximately one hour (excluding when Switch image/voice is set to *Voice only*).

## **Shooting Images with Auto Timer < Auto Timer>**

Default setting See below

Shoot images with the Auto timer. Use Auto timer to shoot pictures which include yourself. The default setting is *OFF* for Auto timer and *10 seconds* for time.

# In the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170) or movie shooting screen (PP. 170), press (PP. 170) and set Auto timer.

To set [ON]	Press 1.4.
To disable [OFF]	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
To change the time	Press $3 \stackrel{?}{\gg} \rightarrow 1.4$ [2 seconds], $2 \stackrel{?}{\ll}$ [5 seconds] or $3 \stackrel{?}{\gg}$ [10 seconds].
[Set duration]	

♠ ♠ or ♠ appears on the display.

## $oldsymbol{\gamma}$ Press $oldsymbol{ullet}$ or $oldsymbol{ullet}$ (shutter).

- Timer sound is audible and Auto timer activates. After the set time (approximately 2 seconds, 5 seconds or 10 seconds) elapses, picture is automatically shot after the shoot start sound.
   (♣a, ♣a or ♣a and picture light flash.)
- Press @cr to end shooting. Auto timer stays set.
- In Still picture mode, Auto timer is not deactivated after shooting.

### **Note**

Auto timer deactivates when Camera mode ends. Auto timer deactivates even if Save camera settings is set to ON.

 If Save camera settings (IFP. 194) is set to OFF, Auto timer setting returns to ten seconds when Camera mode ends. Settings are retained when Save camera settings is set to ON.

### **Notes about Auto timer**

- While Auto timer is active, press or (shutter) to shoot image immediately.
- If a voice or video-phone call is received or alarm activates, press ( to stop shooting.
- Auto timer, when activated, is interrupted if FOMA terminal is opened and closed, display is rotated or spressed. However, settings are retained.

## Setting AF Mode <Switch AF mode>

Default setting

See below

Set AF (auto focus) mode according to the subject.

- Set AF mode is retained until Camera mode ends.
- AF mode cannot be switched for the sub camera.
- Switch between Closeup and Standard in Character reader and Bar code reader modes.
- Spot AF is available for image sizes Stand-by: 240×320, VGA: 480×640, 1.2M: 960×1280, UXGA: 1200×1600 or 3M: 1536×2048.

The default setting is Standard for still pictures and movies, and Closeup for Character reader and Bar code reader.

Standard	The subject at the center is automatically focused.
Spot AF	Select area to focus in the viewfinder.
Closeup	Recommended mode for shooting close subjects (approximately 10 to 20 cm).
Portrait	Recommended mode for shooting people.
Landscape	Recommended mode for shooting scenery.
Manual focus	Adjust focus manually.

## 1

# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170) or movie shooting screen (P. 170), press and select AF mode.

Standard		Press 1.4.
Spot AF (still picture mode only)		Select focus area with ②♣ → ⑦Æ to ⑨♣ or �.  Switches to full-screen display.  To use auto focus, select the focus area and press ⑥ or ⑥ (shutter).  To use Focus lock, select the Focus area and press ⑥ or ⑥ (shutter) halfway and press ⑥ or ⑥ (shutter).  Zoom and brightness cannot be adjusted during Spot AF. However, zoom and brightness can be adjusted when Focus lock is used.
Closeup	Still picture mode	Press 33.
	Movie mode	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
Portrait	Still picture mode	Press (4 5).
	Movie mode	Press 3
Landscape	Still picture mode	Press 5 d.
	Movie mode	Press 45.
Manual focus	Still picture mode	Press (5.25) → focus bar appears → adjust focus with (••) → (••).  • Select Manual focus again in the Switch AF screen to adjust focus manually.
	Movie mode	Press 5 ♣ → focus bar appears → adjust focus with  → •.  Select Manual focus again in the Switch AF screen to adjust focus manually.

### **Note**

 When Voice recorder (P. 403) is activated or if Switch image/voice (P. 185) is set to Voice only, AF mode cannot be switched.

- Shot settings cannot be changed while focus is locked (while or () (shutter) is pressed halfway).
- When AF mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

## Setting Image and Voice Shooting <Switch Image/Voice>

Default setting Image + voice

When shooting a movie, select Image + voice, Image only or Voice only.



In the movie shooting screen (PP P. 170), press [a] OF and select the image/audio combination.

To record image + voice	Press 1.3.	To record audio only	Press 3 .
To record video only	Press 2 2.		

• Image/audio combination is set.

#### Note

• After shooting, setting returns to Image + voice.

## Shooting Still Pictures with a Frame <Shoot with Frame>

Set and shoot still pictures with frames.

- Frames are also available in Continuous mode. (A frame is added to each still picture.) (EFP. 174)
- Frames can be set for sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320, CIF: 352×288 and VGA: 480×640 sizes.
- If the image size differs from the frame size, the frame is rotated to the left 90°.
- Use frames downloaded from sites and Internet web pages to shoot with frames.

## 1

In the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170), press (PP



For preset frames

To υ	se preset frames	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ frame $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ [OK].
To u	se downloaded frames	Press $2  \longrightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{frame} \rightarrow \bigcirc \boxed{\text{i}} \text{ [OK]}.$
To c	ancel frames	Press 3.

- Combined image with frame and subject appears on the screen.
- To preview, select a frame and press (•) [Agree]. Press (•) return.
- Press @ to preview in full-screen mode. Press @ can to return.

2

## Press (•) or (·) (shutter).

• Still picture is shot with selected frame.

### **Note**

 Changing the image size (P. 182) or switching to the sub camera (P. 181) cancels Shoot with frame.

## Adding Various Effects < Effect Shot>

Set effects for still pictures and movies to change the color tone and touch.

- Effects can be set for sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320 and CIF: 352×288 sizes.
- Effect shot is not available when using the sub camera.

## Adding various effects to still pictures

In the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170), press (22) and select the type of effect.

### **Effect type**

Black & white	(1.2	Image contrast is expressed in monotone.
Sepia	2 ABC	Image contrast is expressed in sepia color.
Sparkling	3 🌦	Bright areas light up.
Colored pencil	(4 m	A colored line is drawn.
Faded edges	5 #	Image edges have a soft, blurred effect.
Ripple	6 HW)	Adds ripple effect.
Kaleidoscope (L)	(7 gg)	Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a large pattern.
Kaleidoscope (S)	B ruv	Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a small pattern.
Fish-eye	9 5	Image is expressed as seen through a fish-eye lens.
OFF	<b>□</b>	To remove effects.

Press ● or • (shutter).

• Still picture with selected effect is shot.

### **Note**

- Changing the image size (PP. 182) or switching to Continuous mode (PP. 176) cancels Effect shot.
- Adding various effects to movies
- In the movie shooting screen (PP. 170), press @ . and select the type of effect.

### **Effect type**

Black & white	1.5	Image contrast is expressed in monotone.
Sepia	2 %c	Image contrast is expressed in sepia color.
Sparkling	3 🌦	Bright areas light up.
Colored pencil	(4 E	A colored line is drawn.
Spectrum	5 #	Spectrum of motions.
Ripple	6 H	Adds ripple effect.
Kaleidoscope	(7 gt	Adds a kaleidoscope effect.
Into the sun	8 °	Brightens faces and other features darkened when shooting into the sun.
OFF	9 8072	To remove effects.

Press • or • (shutter).

Movie with selected effect is shot.

- Image quality (P. 182) cannot be changed when Effect shot is set. Image quality is automatically set to SUPER FINE for QVGA: 320×420 and FINE for other sizes.
- Effect shot is canceled when Fix camera shake is set.

## Shooting Movies While Fixing Camera Shake <Fix Camera Shake>

Set Fix camera shake to fix camera shake while shooting movies.

- When Fix camera shake is set to ON, image size is changed to hQVGA: 240×176 and image quality is changed to FINE.
- Fix camera shake is not available when using the sub camera.



# In the movie shooting screen (PP P. 170), press (2 and 1. [ON].

• Set to hQVGA (240×176), FINE appears and Fix camera shake is set.

### **Note**

- Fix camera shake setting is retained even if power is turned off.
- When Fix camera shake is canceled, image size is set to hQVGA: 240×176 and image quality is set to FINE.
- When Fix camera shake is set to ON and image size (PP. 182) is changed to a size other than hQVGA:240×176, image quality (PP. 182) is set to a setting other than FINE, Effect shot (PP. 186) is set or camera is switched to the sub camera (PP. 181), Fix camera shake is canceled.
- Fix camera shake effects depend on the subject and the shooting conditions.

## Shooting Environment/Subject-specific Images <Shoot by Scene>

Set camera to shoot with natural colors and focus based on surroundings and subject.

• Shoot by scene is not available when using the sub camera.



# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press (3) and select a scene.

Auto	1./-@	Ideal setting for normal shooting
Portrait	2 #	Recommended mode for shooting people
Night scene	3 å	Ideal setting for shooting images at night or in dimly lit surroundings
Night + Portrait	4 & SH	Recommended mode for shooting people with night scene in the background. Picture light is automatically set to <i>ON</i> . Hold the FOMA terminal approximately 50 cm away from the subject
Landscape	5 k	Ideal setting for shooting detailed subjects such as nature and the city
Sunset	6 MNO	Ideal setting for shooting dramatic images at sunset
Sports	7 1000	Ideal setting for shooting moving subjects, such as in outdoor sports
Character	8 ** TUV	Ideal setting for shooting subjects with contrast differences (e.g. black and white)
Into the sun	9 .5 MXYZ	Ideal setting for shooting subjects against the sun
Pet	0 %	Ideal setting for shooting subjects that have defined movements such as pets

Icon that indicates scene appears. (PP. 167)

### **Note**

- After ending Camera mode, setting returns to Auto.
- When shooting at night or in dimly lit surroundings, make sure camera does not shake.

## **Setting Backlight Illumination Time <Set ON Time>**

Default setting
As light setting

Set time backlight illuminates when shooting movies.



In the movie shooting screen (♥ P. 170), press ♠, select Recorder and press ♠.

· Recorder settings screen appears.

Press 5 E [Set ON time] and select time.

Press 1.3.	
● Backlight illuminates based on Display light time. (ੴ P. 133)	
Press 2 780.	
Backlight is constantly lit. (Backlight lit duration is same as Display light time for all screens other than viewfinder.)	

Set ON time is set.

## Setting Picture Light Colors < Picture Light Color>

Default setting White

Set picture light color for when shooting still pictures or movies.

• Refer to P. 181 for details on turning on picture light.

1

# In the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170), press (PP

• In the movie shooting screen (PP P. 170), press , select **Recorder**, press • and •

White	Press 1.2.	Yellow	Press 5 %.
Red	Press 22.	Purple	Press 65.
Green	Press 3	Light blue	Press Z
Blue	Press 4 5.		·

• Picture light turns on with selected color.

### Note

- Picture light setting cannot be set when Voice recorder (PP. 403) is activated, when Switch image/voice
   (P. 185) is set to Voice only or when shooting with the sub camera.
- Picture light is a supplementary light source for surroundings with low light. The amount of light is less than that of an ordinary camera flash.
- Picture light tints may differ. This is not a malfunction. Use as a supplementary light source.

## Minimizing Audio Noise < Noise Reduction>

Default setting

ON

Set Noise reduction to minimize audio noise when shooting movies.

1

In the movie shooting screen (♥ P. 170), press ♠, select Recorder and press ♠.

Recorder settings screen appears.

2

Press 1.2 [Noise reduction] and 1.2 [ON].

• Noise reduction is set.

- Noise reduction is not available if Switch image/voice (P. 185) is set to Image only.
- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

## Shooting with Focus Lock <Focus Lock>

Use Focus lock to keep focus on subject and change composition.

# In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 170) or movie shooting screen (☞ P. 170), adjust focus and press ☞ or change composition while pressing • (shutter) halfway.

- Focus is locked.
  - (red).... Appears when focusing
  - (green).. Appears when focus is locked
  - Focus frame also turns green when used.
- Focus lock sound notifies that focus is locked (excluding when recording movies).
- Focus lock is canceled when the FOMA terminal is opened/closed or display is rotated.

To redo	When was pressed	Press (cancel Focus lock) $\rightarrow$ (Focus lock).
	,	Release ( (shutter) (cancel Focus lock) → press ( (shutter) halfway (Focus lock).

Shoot.

To shoot	When was pressed	Press   .
	When (shutter) was	Press ( (shutter) fully.
	pressed halfway	

• Do not change the distance to the subject.

### Note

Focus lock cannot be set when Voice recorder (PP. 403) is activated, when Switch image/voice (PP. 185) is set to Voice only or when shooting with the sub camera.

### When AF mode is not set to Manual focus

- Auto focus is not available if (•) is pressed when focus is already locked.
- While shooting a movie, press end or (shutter) halfway for 1+ seconds to lock focus again. Use when
  distance to subject changes while shooting. Audio noise may affect shooting when using Focus lock.

## Showing with Focus Frame < Display Focus Lock>

Default setting

ON

Show focus frame while shooting still pictures.

- Focus frame does not appear on the preview screen or saved still picture.
- Focus frame turns green when focus is locked.

1



Focus frame appears.

Focus frame screen

#### Note

 Focus frame appears when Spot AF is selected for Switch AF mode (☼ P. 184) even if Display focus lock is set to OFF.

## **Changing Camera Settings**

# Shooting Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch <Release Settings>

Default setting

OFF

Use switch on flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (PP . 478) in place of (shutter). Press switch for 1+ seconds to enable this function.



In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press [9] 5 % and 1. [ON].

• Shooting using the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is enabled.

### **Note**

- Shooting may not be possible depending on the timing of pressing switch.
- After shooting, press switch again for 1+ seconds to save.

## **Setting Viewfinder for Shooting <Screen Size>**

Default setting

Zoom

Enlarge viewfinder when shooting at Icon: 76×76 or sQCIF: 128×96.

1

In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press (F. 170),

To zoom in	Press 1.2.	To view at actual size	Press 2 2 de .

## **Changing Camera Shutter Sound < Shutter Sound>**

Default setting

標準音

Select from five preset shutter sounds.



In stand-by, press (a) 1. 2 2 2 4 3 4 3 and select a Shutter sound.

Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Sound → Select sound → Setting sounds → Shutter sound from Top menu.

標準音	Press 1.3.	トゥインクル	Press 4 & .
デジタルカメラ	Press 2 2.	人の声	Press 5 #.
ピンポーン	Press 3 3.		

- Shutter sound is set.
- To check shutter sound, select a shutter sound and press (a) [Play]. Press (a) [Stop] to stop playback.
- When Manner mode is set, after the confirmation screen appears select **Yes** and press •.

### **Note**

• Camera shutter sound volume cannot be changed. (Shutter sound activates even when in Manner mode.)

## Showing Images in Full-screen <Full-screen>

All icons can be deleted to view the still picture at full screen in Camera mode.

Show Stand-by: 240×320, VGA: 480×640, 1.2M: 960×1280, UXGA: 1200×1600, 3M: 1536×2048 sized images in full screen.



## In the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170), press .

- Repeat operation to deactivate Full-screen.
- When in viewer position, automatically shows Stand-by: 240×320, VGA: 480×640, 1.2M: 960×1280, UXGA: 1200×1600, 3M: 1536×2048 sized images in full screen. To show icons, press ⊚ (right guidance), select Full-screen and press ⊙ (shutter). Open the FOMA terminal to deactivate full-screen.

### **Note**

Full-screen deactivates when Camera mode ends.

## Saving to miniSD Memory Card <Switch Main⇔SD>

Default setting FOMA terminal

Save shot still pictures and movies to miniSD Memory Card.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (126 P. 381)



# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170) or movie shooting screen (P. 170), press ##.

- Save destination is changed and still picture shooting screen reappears.
   miniSD Memory Card icon color changes depending on settings.
  - (gray)... Save destination is FOMA terminal handset
  - 🗊 (pink) . . . Save destination is miniSD Memory Card
- Length of movies that can be saved depends on the size of the miniSD Memory Card. Maximum length is approximately one hour for movies with video.

- In Still picture mode, images are saved to FOMA terminal handset even when save destination is set to the miniSD Memory Card if there is no available space.
- Refer to P. 387 for details on checking still pictures saved on miniSD Memory Card.
- When the save destination folder exceeds 400 still pictures, a still picture is saved in a new folder that is automatically created.
- When save destination is the miniSD Memory Card, shot images are saved in Camera folder xxx (xxx is the largest number when multiple folders exist).
- When saving to miniSD Memory Card, images are saved in DCF1.0 (ExifVer.2.2, JPEG) format.
- DCF (Design rule for Camera File system) is a standard created mainly by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for images from digital cameras and other devices to be shared with related devices. However DCF standard may not be compatible with all devices.
- Exif is a file format established by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for adding supplementary information to the still picture.

## **Specifying Destination Folder <Save To>**

See below

Specify folder when saving still pictures and movies to FOMA terminal handset.

• Create folder before specifying. (PP. 392)

The default setting is **Data box - My picture - Camera** for still pictures and Multishot, and **Data box - i-motion - Camera** for movies.



## In the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170), press 9 9 2 2 2.



In the movie shooting screen (♥₱ P. 170), press ♠, select ■ Recorder, press
 ♠ and ②♣.

When Save to is selected on the still picture shooting screen

## Select a folder to save to.

To specify a save destination for shot still pictures	Press $\bigcirc A \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \bigcirc A$ .
To specify a save destination for continuous mode still pictures	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} 1 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \bullet$ .
To automatically create a save destination folder for continuous mode still pictures	Press ②♣□②♣□.  ■ Each time continuous images are shot, a new folder is created and images are saved there. When 20 folders already exist, images are saved to <i>Camera</i> folder.
To specify a save destination for movies	Select folder $\rightarrow \bullet$ .

Save destination folder is set.

### **Note**

• Folders cannot be specified when saving shot images to miniSD Memory Cards.

## Saving Original Mode < Original Mode>

Save up to two types of settings when shooting still pictures. Switch to preferred settings when loading Original mode.

Set the following items in Original mode.
 Image size, Image quality, Switch AF mode, Continuous mode, Effect shot, Shoot by scene, Release settings ON/OFF, Display focus lock ON/OFF, Auto timer duration/OFF, Picture light ON/Auto/OFF, picture light color, save destination (including saving to FOMA terminal handset), and Full-screen display

## 1

# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press B. and save Original mode after each setting.

To save to setting 1	Press 3.
To save to setting 2	Press 4 de la
To recall setting 1	Press 1.4.
To recall setting 2	Press 22.
To check saved details	Press 5 th.
	<ul> <li>To switch between setting 1 and 2, press (€) [Switch].</li> </ul>

• Default settings are as follows.

	Setting 1	Setting 2	
Select size	3M: 1536×2048	Stand-by: 240×320	
Image quality	SUPER FINE	NORMAL	
AF mode	Standard	Portrait	
Picture light	OFF	OFF	
Picture light color	White	White	
Save destination	miniSD Memory Card	Handset Still pictures: Camera folder Continuous mode: Camera folder	
Release settings	OFF	OFF	
Full-screen	ON	OFF	
Display focus lock	ON	ON	

## **Setting Auto Save Mode < Auto Save Mode>**

Default setting OFF

Set to save shot still picture automatically.

- Shot still pictures are automatically saved on the miniSD Memory Card or in the folder set in Save to (PP P. 192).
- Change the save destination before shooting to save to miniSD Memory Cards. (126 P. 191)



# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press (9. 1.2) and 1.3 [ON].

Auto save mode is set.

- If Save camera settings is set to OFF, Auto save mode returns to OFF after Camera mode ends. Settings
  are retained when Save camera settings is set to ON.
- If Auto save mode is set to ON, the preview screen after shooting does not appear. Additionally, editing
  and other functions are not available before saving.

# Preventing Still Picture Settings from Returning to Default Settings <Save Camera Set>

Save camera settings to retain various settings after Camera mode ends and use those same settings later.

• The following items are retained.

Image size, Image quality, Auto timer duration, picture light color, Switch main⇔SD, Auto save mode, specifying save destination on FOMA terminal handset, Release settings, Display size

1

# In the still picture shooting screen (P. 170), press @ 9 and 1. [ON].

• Camera settings are saved.

### **Note**

• Use Original mode (PP. 193) to use more than one setting.

# Preventing Movie Settings from Returning to Default Settings <Retain Settings>

Default setting

ON

Save camera settings to retain various settings after Camera mode ends and use those same settings later.

The following items are retained.

Image size, Image quality, File size limit, Set ON time, Noise reduction, Switch main⇔SD, Auto timer duration, specifying save destination on FOMA terminal handset, picture light color and Fix camera shake

1

In the movie shooting screen (இP. 170), press ⓐ, select ■ Recorder and press ④.

• Recorder settings screen appears.

2

Press [Retain settings] and [ON].

· Retain settings is set.

### **Send Message**

## **Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting**

After shooting still picture or movie, send images as i-mode mail attachments from the preview screen.

- Movies are sent as i-motion mail.
- Movies that exceed the File size limit (500 KB) cannot be sent as mail.
- When save destination is set to miniSD Memory Card, shot images are saved to the My picture folder of Data box (for still
  pictures) or the i-motion folder of Data box (for movies). After images are saved, the compose message screen appears.
- When File size limit is set to Unrestricted, file cannot be attached to i-mode mail.
- When save destination is set to miniSD Memory Card and the memory space is low on the handset, a confirmation message may appear. Delete data before saving.

## /

# In the still picture preview screen ( step 2 on P. 173) or after shooting a movie ( step 3 on P. 179), press [ [Mail].

When **Reduce** To reduce Select **Yes**  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bullet$ ).



to standby (240×320)? appears	<ul> <li>Reduce still picture to Stand-by: 240×320 or smaller with aspect ratio preserved and attach to mail.</li> </ul>	
	Select No → ●.  • Adjust still picture size to 500 KB or less (image size does not change) and attach to mail.	

For still pictures

## Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 255 for details.

### Bar Code Reader

## **Using Bar Code Reader**

Use camera to scan bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, register bookmark, add to phonebook, display text and i-αppli To. Copy and paste text, play and save melodies and view and save images.

- Scan results cannot be saved on miniSD Memory Cards.
- Camera cannot scan bar codes/two-dimensional codes other than JAN codes and QR codes.
- Scan split QR codes.



## **Using Text from Bar Codes (JAN/QR Codes)**

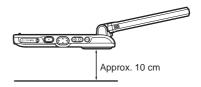
Use scanned text from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for functions such as connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/video-phone calls and running i-αppli.

- AF mode is set to Closeup when using Bar code reader. (PP. 184)
   Focal distance is approximately 10 cm.
- When viewing sites, use Bar code reader to enter JAN/QR code information into text boxes. (PP. 213)
- Some bar codes cannot be scanned depending on types or sizes.
- Bar codes may not be scanned due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or QR code version.
- When Camera mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

## 1

## In stand-by, press ● 🗷 # 💬 .

- Alternatively, select (Tools) or (Camera) → Bar code reader from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press (13 4 in the still picture shooting screen (17 P. 170).
- Bar code reader mode is activated.
- Maintain a focal distance of approximately 10 cm between FOMA terminal and bar code (JAN/QR code). Keep aligned and do not move handset or code while scanning.



## 2

# Display bar code (JAN/QR code) to be read in the center of the screen.



- FOMA terminal automatically distinguishes between JAN code and QR code.
- Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.

To use Picture light	Press 📵 [Light].	
To lock focus	Press 🖾 🚝 .	
	<ul> <li>Hard-to-scan codes may be recognized.</li> </ul>	
	A beep sounds when focused.	
To view saved data	Press @ 2 2	
	<ul> <li>If there is no saved data, There is no saved</li> </ul>	
	<i>data</i> appears.	

? Press .



- Focus lock is automatically set if not already set when scanning.
- Bar code reader starts scanning code (JAN/QR code). When scanning is complete, an end tone is heard and scan results appear.
- If one minute passes after scanning starts and nothing is scanned, a series of beeps sound, *Could not scan* appears and the screen of step 2 reappears.
   (When Keypad sound is set to *Silent*, error tone does not sound.)
- To cancel scanning, press (€) [Break] or (Bound.) Scanning is interrupted and the screen of step 2 reappears.



## Select scanned text and press (•).

- Scanned characters and numbers are selectable if shown in blue.
- Based on the type of scanned text, confirmation screens for i-mode connection (for URLs), compose message (for mail addresses) or outgoing call (for phone numbers) appears.
- Applicable screens appear for scanned data. Add to phonebook screen for phonebook data, compose
  message screen for mail data, register bookmark screen for bookmark data, and run i-αppli screen for
  i-αppli data.
- If scanned characters and numbers are not blue, display does not change even if (•) is pressed.

To copy all scanned text	Press (i) [Copy all].  • When scanned text is 1,999 bytes or more, Copy all is not available.
To copy a part of scanned text	Press
To save scanned text	Press (♣) (₫♣) → save destination → (♣).  • Save up to five entries.

### Note

- Alternatively, press in the i-mode menu (PPP. 208) to activate Bar code reader.
- Press m while viewing a site (r steps 1 to 3 on P. 208) to activate Bar code reader. Connect to scanned URL without disconnecting. In this case, only URL scan recognition result can be used.
- Saving phonebook entries is not available when phonebook PIM is locked. Enter terminal security code
  (four to eight digits) to unlock temporarily and save scanned text to phonebook. PIM lock is enabled again
  after saving.
- During Manner mode, Focus lock sound, scan complete tone and error tone do not sound.

### JAN code

- JAN code is a type of bar code using vertical bars of varying width to express numbers.
- The code on the right is read as 4942857119022.



### QR code

- QR code is a type of two-dimensional code expressing data vertically and horizontally. Data includes alphanumeric characters and character strings (kanji, kana, pictographs).
- The code on the right is read as FOMA SH901iS.



### Split data

QR code may be split into a multiple set of codes (maximum 16) which can be
compiled into one set of data. If split data is scanned, the screen on the right
appears after step 3. The parentheses show remaining codes/total codes. Select
Yes to proceed to the next QR code scanning screen. When the next QR code
appears in the center of the screen, scanning starts automatically. Repeat until all
split data is scanned. Scan results appear.



## Scanning and Playing Images or Melodies from QR Codes

1

## Read QR code. ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 195)

 In scan results screen, Image appears (in blue) when scanned data is an image and Melody appears (in blue) when scanned data is a melody.

2

## Press and open/play.

To show image	Press T. [Display].		
	Image appears.		
	Some file formats cannot be viewed.		
To play back melodies	Press 1.4 [Play].		
	Some file formats cannot be played.		
	For melodies which have music position information set, press		
	[Play portion] or [2] [Play all]. To stop playback, press • or [3]		
To save melody or image	Press 2 de la Pr		
	<ul> <li>Image is saved to the i-mode/Other folder in My picture of Data</li> </ul>		
	box.		
	<ul> <li>Melodies are saved in <i>Melody</i> folder of Data box.</li> </ul>		
To not save melody or image	Press 3 de la companya del companya de la companya della companya		

## **Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks**

- Add scanned mail addresses, phone, and URL numbers to phonebook.
- URLs can also be saved as bookmarks.
- Up to five memos of scanned text (60 KB or less) can be saved.

## 1

# In scan results screen after scanning bar code ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 195) and press .

• Sub menu appears.

# 2

## Use scanned results.

To add to Phone book	To save to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	Press ⚠ ⚠ → Yes → ●.  Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations. (☞ P. 98)  Phone numbers set as video-phone numbers in advance are saved as video-phone numbers.
	To save to FOMA card phonebook	Press ⚠️☑≟ → Yes → ⑥.  Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations. (ﷺ 103)
phonebook • Overwrite and save a sca		Press ⚠️③③ → Yes → ⑥ → name → ⑥.  Overwrite and save a scanned URL in the memo item (☞ P. 97).  Continue phonebook saving operations. (☞ P. 103)
To add boo (@P. 219	kmark (URL only)	Press $2 \longrightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bullet$ .

## Using saved data

- Press 2 in the scanning screen ( step 2 on P. 195), select data and press .
- Proceed to steps 1 and 2 above.

### **Note**

• Saved data cannot be saved again.

## **Reading Text**

Shoot printed data such as URLs, mail addresses and phone numbers, and convert into text to be used by FOMA terminal.

Use read text to connect to sites or web pages, or send i-mode mail. Use read text to also make voice/video-phone calls or search for words in a dictionary. Can also be saved in phonebook entries and bookmarks.

Text which can be read is shown below. Such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers, English words, etc.
are automatically distinguished based on the text. Double-byte characters such as kanji and hiragana cannot
be read.

URL	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [ : / ~]		
Mail address	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [. @ :]		
Phone number	Single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- + P # *]		
English word	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- / ? ! @ + * ' ( ) , . &]		

- Scan results cannot be saved on miniSD Memory Cards.
- Text may not be read correctly due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or text size.

## **Using Read Text**

Data type (URL, mail address, phone number, English word) is automatically distinguished. Use functions such as reading text, connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/video-phone calls, searching in dictionaries using KEITAIViewer, adding to phonebook.

- AF mode is set to *Closeup* when using Character reader.
- When Camera mode is switched, sounds may be heard from the camera lens. This is not a malfunction.

## In stand-by, press (B. S., select (Character reader and press ().

- Alternatively, press (P. 170).
- Character reader mode is activated.

## Display text to be scanned in the center of the screen.



- Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.
- Adjust image so that it appears in the center of the frame [ ]. Text near the sides of the frame may be difficult to scan.
- For optimal scan, point the camera straight while maintaining a focal distance of approximately 10 cm. Keep both the text and FOMA terminal level without moving them. Viewed text may become small and hard to read. Adjust distance so the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue.
- Scan up to approximately 60 characters at one time.

To use Picture light	Press i [Light].
To lock focus	Press 🖛.
To select data type for scanning	Press <u>⋒</u> [2≟] → category → <b>⑥</b> .  • The default setting is <i>Auto</i> .
To scan with auto focus	Press (a) (3.23) → Standard.  • Use to scan large text.  • Keep at Closeup when scanning small text such as business cards.
To scan inverted text (white text on black background)	Press (♣) (♣ ♣ → type inverse mode → (♣).  The default setting is Automatic. When text is difficult to scan, set to Normal or Reverse text.

## ? Press .

- Text is shot as a still picture and appears on the display.
- Press (\*) to specify the line to scan. (Text is scanned one line at a time.)



## Press [Scan].

- Character reader starts.
- When scanning is complete, candidates screen appears with read text.

To edit scan results	<ul> <li>Edit text with  → select candidate with  </li> <li>Letter by letter correction candidates appear on the bottom of the screen. When there are no correction candidates, enter text using dial keys.</li> <li>Press  a to delete letters one at a time.</li> </ul>
To delete text on screen and scan again	Press $\bullet$ [Retry] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ .



## Press .

Scanned character results appear.

	••	
To delete text on screen and scan again	Press $\widehat{\mathbf{a}}$ [Retry] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\mathbf{e}}$ .	
To scan additional text	Press ① 1	
To add text	Press 22.  The character reader screen appears.  Scan text in up to three sessions and link scanned text into one group. Perform functions such as scanning items for phonebook entries and adding scanned data to phonebook. Scan up to 508 characters total in the three sessions.	
To edit scanned text	Press @ 6 to	
To copy all scanned text	Press ( ♥ ♥ Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø Ø	
To delete scanned text	Press $\widehat{\mathbb{D}}_{\overline{n}} \xrightarrow{\mathcal{B}_{\overline{n}}} \to \mathbf{Yes} \to \widehat{\mathbf{O}}$ .	
To change the type of scanned text	Press .  Change the data type when scanned data is URL, mail address or English word.	



## Press •, select Yes and press •.

Based on the type of scanned data, confirmation screens for i-mode connection (for URL), compose
message (for mail address), outgoing call (for phone number) and search in dictionary (for English
word) appear.

- Saving phonebook entries is not available when phonebook PIM is locked. Enter terminal security code
  (four to eight digits) to unlock temporarily and save phone number, URL, mail address or English word to
  phonebook. PIM is locked again after saving.
- When scanned data is a phone number, parentheses () become a hyphen (-).
   Hyphen is erased when adding to phonebook or making a call.
- When read data is URL, http://is added to read results even if it is missing.

## **Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks**

Based on the type of data, read data is added as phonebook entry items or saved as bookmarks.

• Scanned data is added to various phonebook items by data type.

Data type	Phonebook entry item	Data type	Phonebook entry item
URL	Memo	Phone number	Phone number
Mail address	Mail address	English word	Surname, reading

In the screen after scanning text ( step 5 on P. 199), press .

Sub menu appears.

### Use scanned results.

To add to Phone book	To save new entry to FOMA terminal phonebook	Press ③②①③ → Yes → ⑥.  Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas in the phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (ੴ P. 98)
	To save new entry to FOMA card phonebook	Press ③動 ② → Yes → ⑥.  Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas in the phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (❤ P. 103)
	To add/overwrite phonebook	Press ③逾③逾 → name → ⑥. • Overwrite and save a scanned URL in the memo item (☞ P. 97).
To add URL to bookmarks (© P. 219)		Press $(4.5)$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $(\bullet)$ .
To copy all		Press Z
To delete		Press 8 no.

## **Searching for Scanned Text in Dictionary**

Search for scanned text in the dictionary.

• Insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.

In the screen after scanning text ( step 5 on P. 199), press 5 5 %, select Yes and press (●).

- BookReader list appears. Refer to P. 424 for details on search methods for dictionary.
- After searching, press or press twice to return to the screen after reading text.

# i-mode

• What is i-mode?	<i-mode>202</i-mode>
■ Viewing Sites	
Viewing Sites	<view sites="">208</view>
Site Layout and Operation	212
● Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)	<マイメニュー (My Menu)>216
Changing the i-mode Password	< Change i-mode Password>217
Viewing Web Pages	<internet access="">217</internet>
• Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks	Bookmark>219
Saving Site Contents	Screen Memo>222
■ Downloading Data from Sites	
<ul><li>Downloading Images from Sites and Messages</li></ul>	<save image="">225</save>
Downloading i-melody from Sites	<i-melody>226</i-melody>
Downloading PDF Files from Sites	
<ul> <li>Downloading Icons from Sites Collectively</li> </ul>	<download collectively="" icons="">228</download>
<ul><li>Downloading Dictionaries from Sites</li></ul>	-
Downloading Chara-den from Sites	< Chara-den Download>229
■Useful i-mode Functions	
<ul><li>Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To</li></ul>	
	AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To>230
■ Setting i-mode	
• Setting i-mode	
■ Using the Message Service	
Message R/F	< Message R/F>235
• Receiving Message R/F	· ·
• Checking for New Message R/F	_
• Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box	
■ Certificates	
<ul><li>Using Certificates</li></ul>	

## What is i-mode?

i-mode is an online service that connects i-mode compatible FOMA terminals (i-mode terminals) to sites (programs) and the Internet and enables i-mode mail exchange.

### Site (program) access

Select  $mathcal{Y} = 2 - \mu \times \mathbb{N}$  (Menu List) from i-mode menu to use online services, such as weather reports and news, provided by IPs (Information Providers). Additionally, download and enjoy games and stand-by images.

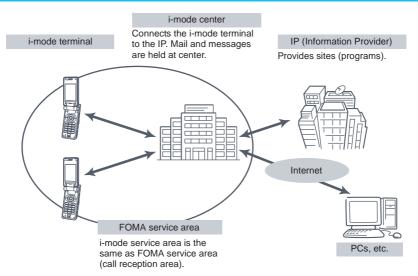
### Internet access

Enter an Internet web page address (URL) to view various i-mode compatible web pages.

### i-mode mail

Exchange e-mail of up to 5,000 double-byte characters with i-mode users and other users with Internet mail addresses. Additionally, send and receive Deco-mail, still pictures and movies to make exchanging mail more enjoyable.

### **About the Service**



i-mode is a paid service that requires subscription. For inquiries about subscription, refer to the back cover of this manual.

- All FOMA services are available from date of subscription.
- When changing from mova service (with i-mode subscription) to FOMA service, most registered sites on マイメニュー (My menu) transfer. Some sites may not transfer. In such cases, re-register those sites. Refer to お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help) in iMenu for more details.
- Users are charged based on the amount of information (packets) sent and received. This manual does not contain information related to charges. Refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details on i-mode charges.
- Refer to the latest "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details on changes to i-mode service contents.

## Site (Program) Access

Using simple key operations, access various online services provided by IPs.

Online services include bank transfers/balance inquiries, ticket reservations, news, search in dictionaries and downloading ring tones.

### Viewing sites

iMenu appears after connecting to i-mode center. Access services such as sites (programs) and 週刊 i ガイド (Weekly i Guide).

Viewing sites P. 208



①マイメニュー (My Menu)	Register frequently used sites for easy access (FFP. 216). Charged sites, such as those from iMenu, are registered automatically. Register up to 45 sites.
② 週刊 i ガイド (Weekly i Guide)	Access information on new and recommended sites. Updated daily Monday through Friday.
③メニューリスト (Menu List)	Access sites by genre/location. Select site to access.
④とくするメニュー (Tokusuru Menu)	Access information on exciting campaigns, presents and coupons. Updated weekly. (Provider: D2 Communications)
⑤ i エリア (i area)	Access information such as weather, maps and town information about specific areas.
⑥かんたん検索 (Easy search)	Easily search for sites performing keyword searches in categories such as "Games" and "Stand-by display".
⑥ i アプリサーチ (i-αppli Search)	Search for i-αppli by category, such as those with no information charge and games.
⑥ 便利サイトサーチ (Useful Site Search)	Access useful and practical sites listed from メニューリスト (Menu List) based on usage scenes.
②マイボックス (My Box)	Members service to register stores and sites for easy access.
®オプション設定 (Options)	Access to adjust i-mode settings, change i-mode password, etc.
⑨お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)	Contains i-mode related information and functions such as DoCoMo news, i-mode usage and rules.
□料金&お申込 (Charges & Subscription)	Check charges, make payments, change payment plans or subscribe to various services.
ENGLISH	Switch to English for iMenu.

X The screen shown is only an example. Actual screen may differ depending on settings.

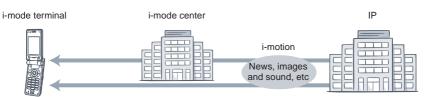
- Some sites require an information fee to access (i-mode paid sites).
- Some services provided by IPs require a separate subscription to access.
- Even if the i-mode icon flashes, packet charges are not incurred except when connecting to i-mode center.
- Some iMenu items differ when subscribed to Dual Network Service.

## Other features

### i-motion

Download images and sound from i-mode sites to play on the handset or set as stand-by. **摩P. 332** 

- To play i-motion P. 333 • To play i-motion automatically P. 335



### Chaku-motion / 着うた®

Download i-motion from i-mode sites to the i-mode terminal and use as ring tone/receive display. Use not only melodies but also songs as the ring tone.

(Some unsupported i-motion cannot be set as Chaku-motion.)

- To set Chaku-motion @P. 100, P. 118
- 着うた is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

### i-αppli

Download i-αppli software from sites for more convenient use of your i-mode terminal. Download various games to your i-mode terminal. Also, download market information i-αppli and periodically receive automatic updates of the stock market. With mapping i-αppli, only necessary data is downloaded, enabling smoother scrolling.

- To run i-αppli 🖾 P. 313



### i-αppli stand-by

Set i-αppli as stand-by and enjoy receiving mail or making calls while running. In addition, use the stand-by conveniently by displaying up-to-date news, weather and other information or have your favorite character inform you of incoming mail and alarm times.

To set i-αppli stand-by 
 P. 326

### i-αppliDX

Link i-αppliDX with various information on the i-mode terminal (mail, call/received history, phonebook data, etc.) and have animated characters compose messages and inform who incoming callers are. Also use to receive real time information such as stock quotes and game progress.

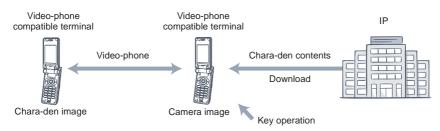
### 3D sound

On the 3D sound compatible i-mode terminals, stereo speakers (or stereo headphones) create a spacious ambient sound. Enjoy lively i-αppli games, ring tones and i-motion. (For contents supporting 3D sound.)

### Chara-den

Use Chara-den during a video-phone call to send an animated character's image to the other party. The character moves its mouth to the conversation and performs actions when keys are pressed. After downloading a character, set it in still pictures/movies in stand-by or send as a mail attachment. (Images/movies with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.)

- To download Chara-den 
   <sup>™</sup> P. 229
- To set Chara-den 
   <sup>™</sup> P. 373
- To shoot a picture/movie of Chara-den @P. 374
- To verify Chara-den 
   <sup>™</sup> P. 376
- To use Chara-den 
   <sup>™</sup> P. 374

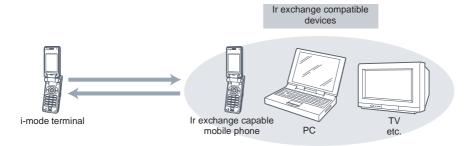


### Infrared exchange (Ir exchange)

Send data such as phonebook entries, mail and bookmarks to other mobile phones or PCs with Ir exchange capability\*.

Use with i- $\alpha$ ppli to link handset with other Ir exchange compatible devices and expand functionality. The handset can be used as a TV remote control or membership card.

- \* Some data may not be able to be transmitted depending on the Ir exchange function of the other device.
- To set to Ir exchange mode @P. 399

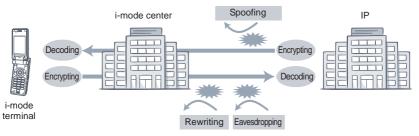


### SSL session

SSL uses authentication/encryption technology to protect privacy and send data securely. Use SSL-encrypted pages to send personal data, such as credit card numbers and postal addresses, more securely so data cannot be eavesdropped or spoofed or altered.

To view an SSL-enabled site (SSL page), use CA certificate in the terminal without requiring additional key operation or Client certificate downloaded from the FirstPass center. Certificate used depends on the site. \*\* P. 241

- To use CA certificate in the i-mode terminal P. 241
- To use FirstPass Client certificate 
   <sup>™</sup> P. 241



Spoofing: When a person sets up a fake website to illegally obtain customer information.

### **FOMA** card restriction

Insert a FOMA card which contains customer information (phone numbers, some phonebook entries, etc.) into the i-mode terminal and restrict access to downloaded melody/still picture/movie files. Files cannot be played/viewed when a different FOMA card is inserted or handset is turned on with no card inserted.

- \* Still pictures/movies shot with the camera or files saved from external memory cannot be restricted.
- \* If file is set as ring tone, stand-by, etc., this function resets settings.

### i-melody

Download latest and favorite songs to use as ring tone. P. 226

### i-animation

Download favorite animation from sites and set as stand-by display or receive display. 
P. 128, P. 131

### Flash™

Flash technology combines pictures and sound into animation. Use Flash to view animated or expressive sites. Additionally, download Flash movies to i-mode terminal and set as stand-by display. P. 128

Information on the i-mode terminal can be viewed with some Flash movies. The following are available. © P. 234

Battery level

Signal level

Time information

- Ring tone volume setting
- Language setting
- Model information

## **Message service**

Message Service is a service to automatically receive information (messages). Message Service uses Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

0	Service to automatically receive message from a site which provides Message Service by subscription.
Message F (Message Free)	Message is received with no packet charge.

- To receive Message Service P. 236
- Default setting for Message F (Free) is 受信する (Receive) for users who subscribed to i-mode together with FOMA purchase after October 1, 2004. To reject Message F, set to 受信しない (Not receive) after purchase.
  - ※ All other users must change Receive option setting to receive Message F. The default setting is 受信しない (Not receive).
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center while the handset is turned off or outside the service area.

Number and duration of messages held at i-mode center is shown below. When maximum number or duration
is exceeded, messages are deleted starting with the oldest.

	Maximum number	Maximum duration
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

• Check new messages to retrieve Message R/F held at i-mode center. (PP. 237)

### News delivery service (Tokudane News Bin)

News delivery service is a service to automatically receive information from DoCoMo, such as news and weather, using Message R (Request).

News delivery service is a paid service that requires subscription. After subscribing, the site is automatically added to  $\forall 1 \neq 1 \pmod{2}$  (My menu) and can be accessed to view the same information.

Message R screen layout P. 238

### i-mode password

i-mode password is required when subscribing to paid sites, registering/deleting sites in  $\nabla 1 \times \Delta = 1$  (My Menu), adjusting i-mode mail settings, etc. The default setting is **0000**. It is recommended to change the password. **P** P. 217 Keep i-mode password private.

### Internet Access

Enter Internet web page addresses (URLs) to view i-mode compatible web pages.

● To view @P. 217

### **Note**

- Non-i-mode compatible web pages may not appear correctly.
   i-mode compatible web pages are created with i-mode compatible tags.
   For details FP P. 217
- Web pages may appear differently on a PC.
- Internet web pages may not be displayed if URL exceeds 512 characters.

### Using i-mode

- Sites (programs) and Internet web pages are generally protected by copyright law. Using downloaded text, images or other data from sites (programs) and web pages for non-personal use without the author's permission such as changing, selling or redistributing data is prohibited.
- Saved contents (mail, messages, screen memos, i-αppli, i-motion) and registered data such as bookmarks in the i-mode terminal may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or handling of the i-mode terminal. It is recommended that important data be backed up. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- If the i-mode terminal is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode, i-αppli, or i-motion is not transferred (excluding some cases) to a new phone due to copyright law. Additionally, some models may not allow data such as downloaded images/movies/melodies, files sent/received by mail (images/movies/melodies), screen memos or Message R/F to be viewed/played if a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card.
- If files with access restrictions by a FOMA card are set in stand-by or as the ring tone, etc. and a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card, settings are reset to default.

## **Viewing Sites**

Use the various services provided by IPs (Information Providers).

Use the FOMA terminal for functions such as ticket reservations or bank balance inquiries. (Available services vary depending on sites. Separate subscription may be required.)

1

## In stand-by, press 🗈.



- Alternatively, select (i-mode) from Top menu.
- i-mode menu appears.

### Icons used during i-mode

: i-mode is in standby. (flashes)
 : i-mode is in use. (flashes)
 SSL : SSL page is being viewed.

: Loading images or Image display is set to OFF.

: An error occurs while loading an image or the image format is unsupported.

The image cannot be loaded because the URL is not correct.

: Downloading i-αppli.

2

## Press 1. [iMenu].



- iMenu appears.
- To cancel, press (☐ [Cancel] while connecting (☐ flashes).

3

## Select item and press .

Repeat this operation to view site.

To scroll up/down	Down: Press . Up: Press .
To scroll one screen at a time	Down: Press 🖲. Up: Press 🖲.
To use Auto scroll	Down: Press #₹ for 1+ seconds. Up: Press ₹₹ for 1+ seconds.  • To stop Auto scroll, press ₹₹ or a dial key. (If dial keys are pressed in some sites and Internet web pages, a linked page may appear.)



## To end, press , select Yes and press .

• Handset disconnects and stand-by reappears.

- Press 
   in the i-mode menu to start Bar code reader. (♥ P. 195)
- Set handset to not load images when browsing sites. (PP. 234)
- Some sites may appear different from actual ones, depending on the site. If characters do not appear properly, change character code. (PP 2.218)
- Some downloaded images may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display.
- Press (a) while showing a site. i-mode end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to go to i-mode menu.
- When Accept/Reject calls, Reject by reason of non-disclosure or Reject unknown is set, ring tone does not sound for callers without permission even during i-mode or i-mode stand-by. The caller's number is saved in Received calls as well as the name saved in phonebook. The caller hears a busy signal.

### **Related Operations**

Change Character code < Character code>

While browsing, press 

▶ ■ Character code ▶ ●.

View a site's server certificate < View certificate>

While browsing, press @##.

Replay Flash movies or animated GIFs <Retry>

While browsing, press 

▶ ■ Retry ▶ ●.

Lock i-mode PIM <Security setting>

In stand-by, press (a) ▶ (3...) ▶ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ (a) ▶ (7...)

### Sending terminal ID and UIM ID

When browsing, some sites or Internet web pages may ask for terminal ID. When **Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested. Send?** appears, select **Yes** and press ① to send. To not send, select **No** and press ②. To not send and return to the previous screen, press ② or select **Back** and press ②.

### **Note**

- The notification confirmation screen always appears before sending terminal ID and UIM ID. Terminal ID
  and UIM ID are not sent automatically.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine which contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may
  obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP with this
  operation.

## Viewing images

View images on sites/web pages, image mail, and Message R/F.



- The FOMA terminal is compatible with images in GIF/JPEG format and Flash movies.
   (Some JPEG images may not appear.)
- appears while receiving an image and the image is shown when receiving is complete.
- Set image display (P. 234) to show or not show images. If set to OFF,
   appears in the place of images.

- Downloaded Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or web page.
- When browsing, also view GIF/JPEG images and Flash movies. i-mode mail with URL for GIF/JPEG images or Flash movies do not appear as image mail. Click URL and use Web To function (PP. 231) to view the image or Flash movie.
- When no image is received, 📓 appears. Reload to try to receive image again.
- When images are received that are not GIF/JPEG format or Flash movies, appears in place of the image.

### Viewing SSL Pages



View SSL sites or web pages that start with https://(SSL page). The screen on the left appears when trying to view an SSL page.

Press (•) to not connect.

Use one of the certificates below to view SSL pages. (PP P. 241)

- CA certificate ■ DoCoMo CA certificate
- Client certificate
- When viewing an SSL page, [SSL] appears.



A message prompting to end the SSL connection appears when moving from an SSL page to a normal page.

### Note

• If This certificate has expired. Do you connect?, This site is not certified. Do you connect? or Root certificate has expired. Do you connect? appears, the web page certificate has expired or uses a different certificate from the FOMA terminal's certificate.

When those messages appear, the page is not secure to send credit card numbers, postal addresses or other personal information.

To continue viewing the page, select **Yes**. To not view the page, select **No**.

## Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>

When i-mode is disconnected, the last viewed page is recorded as Last URL. Use Last URL to guickly connect to the last viewed page.

 Pages may not be displayed if URL exceeds 512 single-byte characters. Additionally, some pages, such as completed melody download screens, may not be saved as Last URL.

## In stand-by, press (1) 5 15.



- Alternatively, select (i-mode) → Last URL from Top menu.
- The last viewed URL appears.
- When Last URL is not stored, No last URL appears.

## Press (•) [Connect].

The last viewed page appears.

### **Related Operations**

### Delete Last URL < Delete>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>", press 

Save Last URL as a bookmark < Register bookmarks>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>", press 2 # 1./a.

### Copy Last URL <Copy>

In the screen in step 1 of "Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>", press a 3 3.

## **Related Operations**

### **Note**

### Saving as a bookmark

• Refer to steps 1 and 2 on P. 219 for details on saving bookmarks.

#### Copying

 Up to 512 single-byte characters can be copied. (Web pages with URLs that exceed 512 single-byte characters do not appear.)

## Change Font Size <Font Size>

Default setting

Standard

Set font size of sites, web pages and screen memos.



## In stand-by, press (19 5) 3 cs 2 # and select font size.

 $\bullet \ \, \text{Alternatively, select} \; \stackrel{\bullet}{\bullet} \; \text{(i-mode)} \to \textit{i-mode setting} \to \textit{Internet} \to \textit{Font size} \; \text{from Top menu.}$ 

Large font	Press 1.4.
Standard	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
Small font	Press 3 â.

### Font sizes







Large font

Standard

Small font

### Note

• Some sites may not appear correctly when Font size is changed.

## Setting Playback Volume for Melody <Sound Fx Setting>

Default setting

Volume 3

Set playback volume for melodies from sites, web pages and screen memos.



In stand-by, press (1 9 MXY) 3 to 7 FE.



Alternatively, select (i-mode) → i-mode setting → Internet → Sound fx setting from Top menu.



Press ( (louder) or ( (softer) to adjust and press ( ).

## **Site Layout and Operation**

When browsing, use links to view other screens from the current screen and reload data. Perform operations such as verifying URLs and registering phone numbers.

## Viewing Flash Movies < View Flash Movies>

View Flash movies using the FOMA terminal. Flash technology combines pictures and sound into animation. Sites that use Flash movies are more expressive.

Save in My picture of Data box and set as stand-by. (PP P. 128, P. 347)



View site, web page or saved screen memo with a Flash movie. ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217, or steps 1 and 2 on P. 222)

• Flash movie plays automatically.

	Press ♠, ♠, ♠, ◐◑ to ▣◑, ❤️ or #☞ to select link set in Flash movie.  • Operate the page even if ‡ does not appear.
To set Flash movie sound effect volume (© P. 232)	When viewing Flash movie, press
To play Flash movies again	When viewing Flash movie, press

- Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine which contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may
  obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP with this
  operation.
- When Set image display is set to OFF, Flash movies cannot be viewed.
- Vibrator will not operate with Flash movie sound effects even if Vibration mode is set.
- Playback is not available for melodies from Flash movies set as stand-by or incoming/outgoing call screen.
- Depending on the Flash movie, even when saved as a Screen memo, the Flash movie may play differently from when on a site.
- If a Flash movie has an error during playback, it cannot be saved.
- Some Flash movies may cause the handset to vibrate during playback. Even if the vibrator is set to OFF, handset will vibrate.
- Some Flash movies use saved data. To use saved data, set *Use* in Saved Data setting. The default setting is *Use*. (PF P. 234)
- The following saved data is used.
  - Battery level
- Signal level
- Time information
- Ring tone volume setting
- Language setting
   Model information
   Some Flash movies may not play properly even when viewed.
- Refer to steps 1 to 3 on P. 225 for details on saving Flash movies.

## **Selecting Links and Items**

When browsing, view other screens from the current screen. This is called a "link". Links usually appear blue. A selected link is highlighted.

• Some links may be images. When selected, the image is outlined.

## Selecting a link and moving to a new screen



• Press 🕠 to highlight the next link and (\*) to highlight the previous link.

## Moving to a new screen by using dial keys

In front of links,  $\boxed{1}$ ,  $\boxed{2}$ ,  $\boxed{3}$  etc. may appear. Move by pressing the corresponding dial key ( $\boxed{\mathcal{D}_{2}^{\infty}}$ ) to  $\boxed{\mathcal{B}_{2}^{\infty}}$ ,  $\cancel{\mathcal{E}_{2}^{\infty}}$  or  $\boxed{\mathcal{B}_{2}^{\infty}}$ ).



X Some sites and Internet web pages may not be viewed.

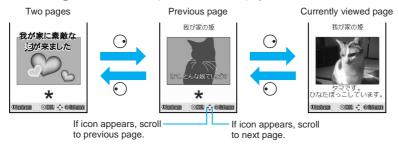
## ■ Entering text and selecting items in sites/web pages

Use the following method to select items and enter text.

Name	Item	Details
Radio button	O : Unselected  ● : Selected	Used to select items. Select only one entry.
Check box	☐: Unselected ☑: Selected	Used to select items. Select one entry or multiple entries.
Pull-down menu	東京 足立区 北区	Used to select items. Select pull-down menu to see a list of possible choices.
Text box	ID 「バスワード	Used to enter text. In text input screen, select <i>Barcode</i> reader from sub menu and enter text information into text box using JAN/QR codes. (Melodies and images are not available and are saved as text. Characters that cannot be displayed in the text box do not appear.)

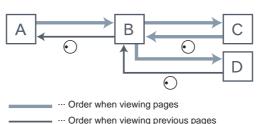
## Moving to Previous/Next Page (Cache, History)

The FOMA terminal stores up to ten viewed sites or Internet web pages. This memory is called the "cache". Press ⊕ to scroll between previous and next pages.



- Press for the previous page and for the next page.
- Previously entered characters and settings are not restored for pages saved in the cache.
- Up to ten pages are stored in history. When a new page is viewed, the oldest page in history is deleted.
- When pressing to scroll through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the cache size is exceeded or
  the page is set (created) to always download up-to-date information, the handset reloads the page from the
  site.
- When switching to a screen saved in the cache, it may take time to view the page.
- The history and cache are reset when i-mode ends.
- Press or repeatedly to scroll through previous pages. When using or to scroll through previous pages (C to B) and another page (D) is viewed, pressing or twice at D will not return to C. Page will scroll from B to A.

(When scrolling  $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow B \rightarrow D$ )



## Reloading Information <Reload>

Reload information from a site or web page when information was not received properly (when lappears).

• Perform this operation after information has finished loading.



When browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), press ( ).

- Reloading starts.
- To cancel, press (☐) [Cancel] while reloading ( ☐) flashes).

#### Note

- Some site and web page information may not be downloaded properly even after reloading.
- Screen memos (PP. 222) cannot be reloaded.
- Use bookmarks (P. 219) to access sites and Internet web pages easily.

## Viewing the URL <URL>

Verify the URL of the current site or web page.

A URL is an address written in formats like http://www.xxx. .jp.

Up to 512 single-byte characters (including http://) can be shown in the display.

• URLs cannot be edited.



When browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), press Jan.

- Site or web page URL appears.
- To view URL of screen memos (PP. 222), press 4 in the screen memo list.
- To view URL of bookmarks (♥ P. 219), press 🔊 🐼 in the bookmark list.

To copy URLs	Press 🖻 [Copy].
To scroll up/down	Down: Press 🕠 Up: Press 🖜.

# Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>

Add highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses from web pages to phonebook.



When browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), select phone number or mail address, press and select saving method.

To save to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	Press 1.4.
To save to FOMA card phonebook	Press 2
To add/overwrite phonebook	Press 3 .

 Selected phone number or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (PP P. 98)

#### **Note**

- Highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses on a screen memo can also be saved. ( P. 223)
- Some highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses cannot be saved.

### In viewer position

#### Viewing sites in viewer position

In stand-by, press (i) (left guidance) ▶ iMenu ▶ () (shutter) ▶ item ▶ () (shutter).

- To use submenu: Press (a) (right guidance).
- To cancel: Press ( (left guidance) while connecting ( flashes).

#### **Entering text in viewer position**

While browsing, select text box ▶ ⓒ (shutter) ▶ ⓒ (left guidance) [Input] ▶ text ▶ ⓒ (shutter).

- To change the type of text: Press (i) (left guidance).
- To end text input: Press @.

#### Note

#### **Entering text**

- Press i (left guidance) to switch from Numbers → Katakana → English → Halfpitch symbol.
   (When single-byte symbols cannot be entered for passwords, Halfpitch symbol cannot be selected.)
- Double-byte characters cannot be entered.

# Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

Register frequently visited sites from iMenu and Menu list to マイメニュー (My Menu) for convenient access.

- Register up to 45 sites. Some sites cannot be registered.
- Internet web pages cannot be registered. Use bookmarks for easy access. (PP P. 219)

## Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

【 View site (で steps 1 to 3 on P. 208), select マイメニュー (My menu) registration menu (example: ①マイメニュー登録 (My Menu Registration)) and press ●.



- **2** Select i モードパスワード入力 (Input password) field, press ●, enter i-mode password (four digits) and press ●.
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Select 決定 (OK) and press ①.
  - マイメニュー (My menu) registration is finished.

#### **Note**

- Page set-up may differ depending on the site.
- Upon subscribing to a paid site, the site is automatically registered to マイメニュー (My menu).
- Refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

## Viewing Sites in マイメニュー (My Menu)

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗊 🗔 and press 🗺 in iMenu.
  - List of sites in マイメニュー (My menu) appears.
- Select site and press .
  - The site appears.

#### Note

 For Dual Network Service (でア・492), マイメニュー (My menu) that was registered on a mova terminal may not be available on a FOMA terminal, and マイメニュー (My menu) that was registered on a FOMA terminal may not be available on a mova terminal.

## 0000

## **Changing the i-mode Password**

i-mode password (four digits) is required for マイメニュー (My Menu) registration/deletion, Message R/F and i-mode paid site subscription/cancellation and mail settings.

- i-mode password can be changed after subscribing to i-mode. Keep i-mode password private.
- In the case of a forgotten password, bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to any DoCoMo retailer.
   Password is reset to 0000.



In stand-by, press (1.2) and press (2.3) in iMenu.



- **2** Select 現在のパスワード (Current password), press **⑤**, enter i-mode password (four digits) and press **⑥**.
  - The screen to input the current password appears.
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- 3 Select 新パスワード (New password), press ◉, enter new i-mode password (four digits) and press ◉.
  - The screen to input the new password appears.
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- **Select** 新パスワード確認 (Confirm new password), press ●, re-enter new i-mode password (four digits) and press ●.
  - The screen to confirm the new password appears.
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- 5 Sele

Select 課還 (OK) and press ●.

• i-mode password is changed.

#### **Internet Access**

# **Viewing Web Pages**

Enter web page address (URL: addresses that start with http://, etc.) to connect.

• Web pages that are not i-mode compatible or have excess data may not appear properly.

1

In stand-by, press (1) B 70 ...

- Alternatively, select (i-mode) → Go to location from Top menu.
- The URL entry screen appears. (http://is already entered.)
- If a URL has been entered previously, that URL appears.
- To connect to another web page when viewing sites or Internet web pages, press \$\tilde{\pm}\$\$.
- To activate Bar code reader (PP. 195), press (a) in stand-by.

# Tenter URL and press .

- Enter up to 512 single-byte characters. (including http://)
- Web page appears.
- Steps when viewing are the same as for sites.

When the URL is incorrect	In the URL entry screen, press @c  The character the cursor is on or the last character is erased.  Press @c for 1+ seconds when the cursor is on the first character or after the last character to erase all the characters.
To cancel	Press 👔 [Cancel] while connecting (🦴 flashes).
To end connection	Press $ \stackrel{\frown}{\blacksquare} \stackrel{\frown}{\longrightarrow} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

#### Note

- Press @ car without entering characters to return to i-mode menu.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum size for a page, Size of this page is not supported appears, data transmission stops and only received data appears.

## Viewing Web Pages with Correct Characters < Character Code>

If the characters on a web page do not appear properly, convert them to proper characters and view again.



When browsing (♥ steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), press ♠, select Character code and press ♠.

- Web page with correct characters appears.
- If characters do not appear properly, repeat the above step.

#### **Note**

- Changing character code when properly shown may render site unreadable.
- Some pages may not appear properly even after changing character code.
- After character code changes four times, web page is shown with original code.
- Code returns to the original code after reloading page or scrolling to the next/previous page.

## Viewing Pages from URL History < URL History>

The FOMA terminal records up to ten web pages accessed from *Go to location* of i-mode menu. Use the history to reconnect to those web pages.



## In stand-by, press (1) 7.5.

- Alternatively, select (i-mode) → URL history from Top menu.
- The URL history list appears.

# 2

## Select URL and press .

After the connection screen, the web page appears.

#### **Note**

- When ten pages are exceeded, the oldest page in history is overwritten.
- When URL history is not stored, No URL history appears.

Connecting to another site when viewing sites or web pages

• Press @ O to view the URL history list. Subsequent operations are the same as step 2.

## **Related Operations**

### Delete URL history < Delete one>

- 2 Select Yes ▶ (●).
  - To not delete: Select No (•).

### Show all URLs in URL history <URL>

In URL history list in step 1 of "Viewing Pages from URL History <URL History>", press (a) 3 a.

To copy URL: Press

#### **Bookmark**

## Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks

Save frequently visited sites and web pages as bookmarks for convenient access.

- Add folders and sort bookmarks into types and manage them. (PP P. 220)
- Sites or web pages with images or melodies may not appear correctly when accessed from a bookmark.

## **Saving Bookmarks**

Save up to 100 bookmarks in total.

• Each bookmarked URL can have up to 256 characters. URLs which exceed 256 characters cannot be saved.



# When browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), press 22.

- Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters from beginning of the title or URL are saved. If the
  title exceeds 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters, the extra characters are deleted. If there is no
  title, the first 24 characters from the URL are saved.
- Bookmark saving screen appears.

	Bookmark data is full. Overwrite bookmark? $\rightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ $\rightarrow$ folder $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ $\rightarrow$ bookmark to overwrite $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ .
When the same URL is already saved	The same URL is saved. Overwrite? → Yes → .  Select No and the site or web page reappears.
When the URL is too long	URL is incorrect appears and bookmark is not saved.

# 2

## Save bookmark.

To save bookmark	Press T.A.
To change the title and	Press $2 \frac{2}{4} \rightarrow \text{edit title} \rightarrow \bullet$ .
save	Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

Bookmark is saved in the Bookmark folder.

#### **Note**

- In sites or web pages, even if a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text is
  entered in text boxes, the selected or entered contents are not saved in bookmarks.
- Some bookmarks may not be saved depending on the site or web page.

#### miniSD Memory Card

- Copy bookmarks saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (P. 385) or view bookmarks saved on miniSD Memory Cards (P. 387).
- Copy bookmarks saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (27 P. 388).

#### **Note**

#### Ir exchange

- Send and receive bookmarks registered in FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange. (@P. 400) Note that information saved in bookmarks separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (@P. 381) or Data Link Software (@P. 584).
- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

## Viewing Sites and Web Pages from Bookmarks

## In stand-by, press (1) 3 %.



- Alternatively, select (i-mode) → Bookmark from Top menu.
- Bookmark folder list appears.
- To use a bookmark when viewing sites or Internet web pages, press [a] 3 a.

To view all saved bookmarks	Press (4) (4) (5)
	Press ⋒#55.  To use bookmarks on FOMA terminal handset again, press @   twice.

Bookmark folder list

## Select folder, press (•), select bookmark and press (•).



- The page appears.
- To check URL of bookmark, select bookmark and press [a] 3 &.
- To copy URL of bookmark, select bookmark and press @ 4 ......
- To disconnect, press ( [Cancel] while connected ( flashes).

#### Note

- Bookmarks are listed in the order of use.
- Paste the copied URL into text areas like mail or text memo. Refer to P. 554 for details on pasting.
- When Bookmark is not saved, No bookmarks appears.

## **Managing Bookmarks**

Manage bookmarks in up to ten folders (including **Bookmark** folder).

Edit folder names or delete folders. (The preset **Bookmark** folder cannot be edited or deleted.)

- Create/Delete folders and edit folder names in the bookmark folder list.
- Use one of the following to delete bookmarks.

Delete one	Deletes bookmarks individually.
All in folder	Deletes all bookmarks in a folder.
Delete selected	Deletes selected bookmarks collectively.
Delete all	Deletes all bookmarks.
Delete folder	Deletes entries by folder.

## **Related Operations**

#### Create folders < New folder>

- 1 In bookmark folder list (P. 220), press (L. 2.)
- 2 Enter folder name ▶ .
  - To delete New folder name : Press @ CAR for 1+ seconds.

#### Edit folder names <Edit folder name>

- 1 In bookmark folder list (♥ P. 220), select folder ▶ @ 2 €.
- 2 Edit folder name ▶ .
  - To erase folder name: Press @ ar for 1+ seconds.

### Move bookmark to a new folder <Move>

- 1 In bookmark folder list (@P. 220), select folder • bookmark a 5 3.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To move all bookmarks in the folder: Press 22.
  - To move selected bookmarks collectively: Press 3 → bookmark (nepeat)
     (repeat)
     (a | Complete]
- 3 Select folder ▶ ●.

### Change bookmark titles <Edit title>

- 1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 220), select folder ▶ ▶ bookmark ▶ 🗈 🝱.
- 2 Enter title ▶ ●.
  - To delete title: Press @ccr for 1+ seconds.

#### Delete bookmarks < Delete>

- 1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 220), select folder ▶ bookmark ▶ № 2-2.
- 2 Press 1.3.
  - To delete all bookmarks in the folder: Press 24 enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) •.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (•).
  - To not delete: Select No ▶ .

#### Delete folders < Delete all folders>

- 1 In bookmark folder list (♥ P. 220), select folder ▶ @ 3₺.
- 2 Press 22 henter terminal security code (four to eight digits) (•).
  - To delete all bookmarks in a folder: Press ① → enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) → ●.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (•).
  - To not delete: Select No (•).

### Note

#### Folder names

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- Bookmark folder name cannot be changed.

#### Changing bookmark titles

• Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

#### Deleting entries by folder

- Bookmark folder cannot be deleted.
- When selecting Delete all in the bookmark folder list, all bookmarks are deleted but the folders remain.

## **Saving Site Contents**

Use screen memo to save screens from sites and web pages.

- Save screen memo images in My picture of Data box and set as stand-by. (☞ P. 225)
- Save up to 400 screen memos. Amount varies depending on size of the data. When screen memo data is large, fewer can be saved.
- Protect up to half of the total data (200 entries maximum). Protected screen memos are not overwritten.

## **Saving Screen Memos**



# When browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), press ( 4 5).

- Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters from the title are shown. When title is not entered,
   Untitled appears.
- Add screen memo screen appears.
- When screen memo memory is full No more space. Overwrite? appears.
  Select Yes and select a screen memo to overwrite. Proceed to the save confirmation screen. If the screen memo is larger than the available memory, Space is not enough. Continue to overwrite? appears. Select Yes and select a screen memo to overwrite.

Select No and the site or web page reappears.

# 2

## Save.

To save	Press 1.2.
To change the title and save	Press $2 \frac{2}{8} \rightarrow \text{edit title} \rightarrow \bullet$ .
	Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

• The site or web page reappears.

#### **Note**

- When Set image display is set to OFF, images are not saved in screen memos.
- In sites or Internet web pages, even if a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text is entered in text boxes, the selected or entered contents are not saved in screen memo.
- Depending on the size, some downloaded pictures may not fully appear when set as stand-by, etc.

## **Viewing Screen Memos**



## In stand-by, press (15 %).



● Alternatively, select **(i-mode)** → **Screen memo** from Top menu.

Screen memo list appears.

(screen memo)	Standard screen memo
(screen memo)	Protected screen memo
(screen memo)	FOMA card restriction (PP. 39) is set.

Screen memo list

# Select screen memo and press (•).

Selected screen memo appears.

To scroll up/down	Down: Press . Up: Press .
To scroll one screen at a time	Down: Press 🖲. Up: Press 🗐.
To use Auto scroll	Down: Press #₹ for 1+ seconds. Up: Press ₹₹ for 1+ seconds.  • To stop Auto scroll, press ₹₹ or a dial key. (If dial keys are pressed in some sites and Internet web pages, a linked page may appear.)
To view other screen memos	Next: Press ⊙. Previous: Press ⊙.

#### Note

- Screen memo is data from the time of saving. Screen memo may differ from the latest site or web page
- When Screen memo is not saved, No screen memo appears.

## **Related Operations**

#### Check screen memo URLs <URL>

In the screen in step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press [a] 9 ......

- To copy URLs: When viewing the URL, press .

### Check screen memo details <File property>

In the screen in step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press (a) 45.

Save screen memo still pictures in My picture of Data box

In the screen in step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press 5 5....

Create i-mode mail with screen memo URL <Compose message>

In the screen in step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press 6 5.....

Create i-mode mail with still picture from screen memo <New mail w/image>

In the screen in step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press 2 1 1 1 Insert URL or [2 # [Attach image].

Add phone numbers and mail addresses from screen memo to Phonebook <Add to phonebook>

In the screen in step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press @ B....

Adjust Flash movie sound effect volume in screen memo <Sound fx setting> In the screen in step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press (♠ 🎏 ) (\*) (louder) or (.) (softer) ▶ (•).

Replay Flash movies in screen memo <Retry>

In the screen in step 2 of "Viewing Screen Memos", press \( \bar{\rightarrow} \) \( \bar{\rightarrow} \) Retry \( \bar{\rightarrow} \) (\( \bar{\rightarrow} \).

#### Note

#### Saving still pictures

Refer to P 225

#### Composing new mail with image

- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- Refer to P. 231 for details.

#### Adding to the phonebook

• Refer to "Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook" on P. 215.

## **Managing Screen Memos**

Protect or delete screen memos and edit titles. View screen memo details and sort screen memos.

## Deleting

Use one of the following to delete screen memos.

Delete one	Deletes screen memos individually.
Delete all	Deletes all screen memos.
Delete selected	Deletes selected screen memos collectively.

## Sorting

Use one of the following sort orders.

Date (new $\rightarrow$ old)	Screen memos are sorted with latest save date first.
By title	Screen memos are sorted by title in the following order: Single-byte (symbols → numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case → katakana) → double-byte (symbols → numbers → alphabet upper case → alphabet lower case → hiragana → katakana → symbols/special characters → kanji → pictographs).  ※ Characters are sorted according to their character code.
By size	Screen memos are sorted with the largest files first.
Protected first	Protected (by date) → normal (by date) (Screen memos are sorted by <b>Date (new</b> → <b>old)</b> .)

• Screen memos are not automatically sorted after titles are edited. Sort again.

## **Related Operations**

### Change screen memo titles <Edit title>

In screen memo list (♥ P. 222), select screen memo • a 🖾 • enter title • •.

- From the screen memo screen: Press 22.
- To erase current title: Press @ar for 1+ seconds.

### Protect screen memos < Protect set>

- 1 In screen memo list (♥ P. 222), select screen memo ▶ ᠗ ③ ...
  - From the screen memo screen: Press @33.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To disable: Press 22.

#### Delete screen memos < Delete>

- 1 In screen memo list (௴P. 222), select screen memo ▶ @ 🍱.
  - From the screen memo screen: Press (17.3).
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To delete all screen memos: Press 2≥ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ •.
  - To delete selected screen memos collectively: Press 33 > screen memo (•) (repeat) / [Complete].
- 3 Select Yes ▶ .

#### View screen memo details <File property>

In screen memo list (௴P. 222), select screen memo ▶ ⋒ 5 €.

• To end viewing: Press •.

#### Sort screen memos <Sort>

In screen memo list (♥ P. 222), press ● ⑤ ▶ sort method ▶ ⑥.

#### Note

#### Screen memo titles

• Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.

#### **Protecting screen memos**

 = appears for protected screen memos.

#### **Deleting screen memos**

• Use **Delete all** to delete unprotected entries.

## **Related Operations**

#### **Note**

#### Sorting screen memos

- The default setting is Date (new → old).
- Sort order is set until changed.

### Save Image

## **Downloading Images from Sites and Messages**

Save images, Flash movies, frames and stamps downloaded from sites, web pages, and Message R/F. Set saved images as stand-by and for other functions (PF P. 128). Also, download Deco-mail templates to use when composing messages.

- Save the image in a new folder or in the *i-mode/Other* or *Deco-mail picture* folder in My picture of Data box.
   Deco-mail templates are saved in the *Deco-mail picture* folder. (PP P. 173, P. 262)
- Save up to 700 images on FOMA terminal handset. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
- Available file sizes and types are GIF images (100 KB), JPEG images (100 KB), and SWF images (Flash) (100 KB).

## **Example: When saving from sites and Internet web pages**

When browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), press 5.

Select image, press ●, select folder and press ●.



The screen on the left appears after Saving and Saved to xxx appear.

Select Yes, press •, select screen to set and press •.



- Available screens depend on the file format. Unavailable screens appear in gray.
- Set to stand-by screen? appears when setting the image as the stand-by display. Select Yes and press (•).

#### Note

- Downloaded Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or web page.
- When saving images from sites, web pages, Message R/F or i-mode mail, check for a memory icon. If a memory icon appears, saved images may be overwritten.

It is recommended to delete unnecessary images in Data box so that the memory icon disappears. (Screen memo can be saved.)

	Appears when available memory is less than 1.2 MB.
(red)	Appears when available memory is less than 100 KB.

## **Related Operations**

### **Download Deco-mail templates and compose Deco-mail**

- 1 When browsing, select Deco-mail template (•).
- - To preview: Press 1.3.
  - To save: Press <sup>2</sup> <del>ℤ</del> <sup>ℤ</sup>.
  - To not save: Press 45.

#### Note

- Templates are saved in the Deco-mail picture folder.
- If templates are not saved, Compose message cannot be selected.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is insufficient.

## i-melody

# **Downloading i-melody from Sites**

Save i-melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages. Save up to 200 i-melodies. (Capacity varies depending on size of melody.)

Set the saved melody as the ring tone or attach to i-mode mail.

• Available file formats and sizes are SMF (100 KB) and MFi (100 KB).

# 1

# When browsing (♥ steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), select melody and press ●.

- When download is complete, Completed appears.
- Animation may not be viewed during download.
- The save confirmation screen appears.
- During download, press ( [Cancel] or press ( to stop downloading.

# 2

## Save.

To save melodies	Press ②ଛି.  • For melodies which have music position information set, press ①ৣ [Play all] or ②ৣ [Play portion].  • When melody is saved as <i>Play all</i> , the entire melody is played.  • When saved as <i>Play portion</i> , the set portion is played.
To play back melodies	Press 1
To not save	Press 3
When 200 melody files are already saved	Select melody icon for melody to overwrite $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

### **Note**

#### Forward and store saved i-melody data on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (PP. 381).

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. (Melodies with restrictions for mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.)

## **Downloading PDF Files from Sites**

#### Display and save PDF files downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Download is available for PDF files up to 2 MB. Files larger than 2 MB cannot be downloaded. Also, some downloaded PDF files may not be displayed.
- When downloading PDF files that are larger than 500 KB, a confirmation screen asking Content length exceeds 500KB. Download? appears.
- Save up to 50 PDF files on the FOMA terminal handset. (Capacity varies depending on size of PDF file.)
- PDF files with unknown file size cannot be downloaded.
- Downloaded PDF files are saved to the \(\mathbb{PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx\) folder when saved to miniSD Memory Card. ("xxx" in the folder name is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999) (\(\mathbb{P}\mathbb{P}\). 384)



# When browsing (☐ steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), select PDF file and press ●.



Split download PDF files	<ul> <li>When the first page is downloaded, PDF viewer is activated and the PDF file appears. Download continues for remaining pages.</li> <li>Use links to move to other pages. If Download next page? or Cannot display without downloading all remaining data. Download? appears, select Yes and press ●.</li> <li>If file size exceeds 500 KB, Content length exceeds 500KB. Download? appears. Select Yes and press ●.</li> </ul>
PDF files that must be	Download and save? → Yes → ●
saved first	<ul> <li>Download the entire PDF file to view.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Proceed to step 3.</li> </ul>

- Unable to download appears for a PDF file not available for split download.
   The file cannot be downloaded.
- When the number of My bookmarks or marks in FOMA terminal and downloaded PDF bookmarks or marks exceed 10, 10 bookmarks exceeded. Delete? or 10 marks exceeded. Delete? appears. After deleting bookmarks or marks, the PDF file is downloaded.
- e appears for PDF downloaded in its entirety, appears for portions such as pages and appears for files that failed to download.
- If download fails, download PDF file again to view. Some files may not be displayed even when downloaded again.
- Downloaded PDF files are saved to \PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx
  folder when saved to miniSD Memory Card. ("xxx" in the folder name is a singlebyte number between 001 and 999)
- Downloaded PDF files that are incomplete or individual pages cannot be saved to miniSD Memory Card.

2

## Press [Save] when download is completed.

PDF viewer folder list appears.

Save.

To save to FOMA terminal handset	Select folder $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To save to miniSD	Press
Memory Card	Insert miniSD Memory Card in advance.
	PDF files with File restriction cannot be saved to miniSD Memory Card.

- When saving is completed, PDF file appears.
- When password is set, enter password and press to view PDF file.
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save.

## **Download Icons Collectively**

## **Downloading Icons from Sites Collectively**

Download nine Top menu icons and one background image collectively from sites and save as a theme while i-αppli is running. Apply saved images to Themes (🍲 P. 138).

- Save up to six.
- Software compatible with collectively downloaded icons and background themes must be downloaded. *iMenu* → 国メニューリスト (Menu List) → 旨ケータイ電話メーカー(Mobile phone manufacturer) → *SH-MODE*
- While i-αppli compatible with collectively downloaded icons is running, select a set of icons and press (•).
  - When download is complete, the save screen appears.

Save.

To save	Press ⚠ [Yes] → folder → •. • Themes setting screen appears.
To not save	Press ②
To check image	Press ③

Select theme number and save.

Press •. • Set to <i>User set 1</i> through <i>6</i> . • After saving to a folder, the selected theme number is set. • Theme numbers already used are overwritten.
Press  ☐ [Preview].  To return to the previous screen, press (○) [OK].

#### **Note**

• Images saved as themes cannot be deleted directly from Data box.

## **Related Operations**

#### Delete downloaded themes

In Top menu (♥ P. 33), press 🏻 🗗 🕨 theme 🕨 🗊 [Delete] 🕨 Yes 🕨 🖜.

#### Note

- Preset themes cannot be deleted.
- When multimedia PIM is locked, terminal security code is required to delete themes.
- Images that were set in a deleted theme are also deleted from the Data box.

## **Downloading Dictionaries from Sites**

Download dictionaries from sites or web pages to register in the FOMA terminal.

- Save up to five Download dictionary files. (Up to two can be used.)
- Save downloaded dictionaries of up to 6 KB.
- Download dictionaries from the SH-MODE site in iMenu.

*iMenu* → ③メニューリスト (Menu List) → 旨ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → *SH-MODE* 

1

While browsing (♥ steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), select Download dictionary and press ●.



• When download is complete, Completed appears.

2

## Save.



To display Download dictionary	Press 1.4.
To save Download dictionary	Press ②♣ → slot → ⑥.  • When slot selected is already in use, a confirmation message to overwrite slot appears. Select <i>Yes</i> and press ⑥.
To not save	Press 3

3

## Set dictionary.

To use Download dictionary	Select <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ .
To not use Download dictionary	Select $No \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

 When two dictionaries are already in use, the confirmation screen does not appear. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again. Refer to steps 1 and 2 of "Setting/Clearing a Dictionary" on P. 557 for details.

#### Chara-den Download

# **Downloading Chara-den from Sites**

Download and save Chara-den from sites or Internet web pages.

- Download Chara-den up to 100 KB.
- Save up to 50 Chara-den files. (The amount depends on available memory.)
- Files are saved to the Chara-den folder of Data box.
- Default Chara-den can be downloaded from the SH-MODE site in iMenu.

*iMenu* → ③メニューリスト (Menu List) → ਊケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → *SH-MODE* 

# When browsing (Fractions 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), select Chara-den and press (•).

- When download is complete, Completed appears.
- Chara-den save confirmation screen appears.

2

### Save.

To display data	Press 12
To save data	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
To not save data	Press 3 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de

## Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

Use highlighted data (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, etc.) in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail and conveniently make a voice/video-phone call, send mail, or access a web page.

• Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To may not be used with decorated mail.

## **Using Phone To (AV Phone To)**

Make voice/video-phone calls to phone numbers in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Phone To (AV Phone To) is not available when Keypad dial lock is set.

# 1

# Select phone number from site, web page, Message R/F or mail, press (•), select Yes and press (•).

- The phone number appears on the screen.
- When phone number is saved in the phonebook, the name and phone number appear.

# 2

## Make a call.

To make a voice call	Press 🖛 or 💿 [Phone].
To make a video-phone call	Press (i) [V-phone].

• Call is placed to phone number.

#### Note

- Some sites and web pages show highlighted text linked to the phone number in place of a phone number.
- Add phone numbers in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail to phonebook. (FP P. 215, P. 239, P. 274)
- When a number string fulfilling the following conditions appears in a mail message, the string is recognized
  as a phone number.
  - 10 to 26 digit numbers that start with 0 or + (single-byte).
  - 5 to 26 digit numbers that start with asterisks or #.
  - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with *tel*: or *TEL*:
  - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with tel-av: or TEL-AV: (video-phone)
  - ※ Even if the above numbers contain a hyphen (-) or parenthesis, string is recognized as a phone number.
    (Strings are not recognized as phone numbers if these symbols repeat continuously.)

## **Using Mail To**

Send i-mode mail to mail addresses in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail.

- Not usable with some sites and web pages.
- Mail To may not be available if two or more mail addresses appear together.
- Up to 50 character mail addresses are valid. Addresses that are 51 characters or more are not recognized as mail addresses and are not highlighted.



# Select mail address from site, web page, Message R/F or mail and press (•).

- Compose message screen appears. The selected mail address is entered.
- Subject and message may be entered if mail address is from a site or web page.

# 2

## Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 256 for details.

#### Note

- Some sites and web pages show highlighted text linked to the mail address in place of a mail address.
- Add mail addresses in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail to phonebook. (@P P. 215, P. 239, P. 274)

## **Creating Image Mail**

Create i-mode mail with URLs of images in sites and web pages.

Additionally, create i-mode mail with image attachments.



While browsing (Fractions 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), press (Table 2).

2

Select image, press • and select a mail creation method.



• For multiple images, select image and press •.

To create i-mode mail with URL	Press 1.2.
To create i-mode mail with image attachment	Press 2 → • [Agree].

3

## Create and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 255 for details.

### Note

- Send GIF or JPEG images. Flash movies cannot be sent.
- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.

## Using i-αppli To

Start i-appli from URLs in sites, web pages, mail or screen memos.

- Start i-αppli when i-αppli To settings are set to YES.
- i-αppli does not start with URLs which exceed 512 characters.



While viewing site, web page, mail or screen memo, select i- $\alpha$ ppli address (URL), press  $\odot$ , select Yes and press  $\odot$ .

i-αppli starts.

## **Using Web To**

View web pages from URLs in sites, web pages, Message R/F or mail.

- Save still picture when still picture URL is included in mail message.
- Download i-motion when URL is included in mail message.
- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Web pages with URLs which exceed 512 characters cannot be viewed.

1

# Select URL from sites, web pages, Message R/F or i-mode mail and press (•).

- After selecting URL in mail message, press [a] [Yes].
- Connection starts and specified web page appears.
- Subsequent steps are the same as for i-mode Internet access. (PP. 208)

#### Note

- Some sites and web pages show the highlighted web page name in place of a URL.
- Web To function is not available from i-motion stand-by (PP. 128).

## **Related Operations**

Save a still picture from URL in mail message <Save image>

Select URL ▶ ● ▶ 

[Yes] ▶ 

5 

Folder ▶ ●.

#### **Note**

• The still picture is saved in the *i-mode/Other* or *Deco-mail picture* folder in My picture of Data box.

## **Setting i-mode**

Set various functions relating to i-mode access.

# Adjusting Flash Movie Sound Effects Volume <Sound Fx Setting>

Default setting Volume 3

Adjust volume of Flash movie sound effects.

While browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), press , select Sound fx setting and press .

Sound fx setting screen appears.

Press ( (louder) or ( (softer) to adjust and press ( ).

• To silence sound effects, select **Silent** and press •.

#### **Note**

- Sound effects are not active in Manner mode.
- Some Flash movies do not have sound effects.

## **Setting Connection Timeout < Connection Timeout>**

Default setting

60 seconds

When sites or web pages are congested, set the duration for the terminal to automatically stop attempting to send/receive data. Select among *60 seconds*, *90 seconds* and *Unlimited*.

In stand-by, press (19.11) 1.31 and select connection timeout period.

Alternatively, select (i-mode) → i-mode setting → Shared → Connection timeout from Top menu.

60 seconds	Press (1./2).
90 seconds	Press 2 2.
Unlimited	Press ③⑥.  ■ Disconnection time with i-mode center is not set. (Disconnection may occur due to signal status.)

Connection timeout is set.

#### Note

• When connection times out, *Time out* appears and the previous screen reappears.

# Changing Hosts from i-mode (ISP Connection Transmission) <i-mode Host Selection>

X Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.

#### ISP connection transmission

When changing FOMA terminal host, connect to various providers (ISP). Registration for Packet Transmission Service is required when using ISP connection transmission. Packet transmission charges apply for ISP connection transmission.

- ※ Registration is not required for i-mode subscribers.
- Pake-Houdai does not apply to packet transmissions incurred for hosts other than DoCoMo.

## Provider agreements

- Registration to another provider is required for ISP connection transmission. Contact providers for details
  regarding service contents (site/Internet access, mail, etc.) and registration procedures.
- Some services may require a separate fee.
- Phone number and location information may be sent to the provider depending on the site.
- Save up to ten hosts in the FOMA terminal (excluding *i-mode*).
- i-mode is not available when using other hosts.

## Saving hosts

Save up to ten hosts (excluding i-mode).



- Alternatively, select (i-mode) → i-mode setting → Shared → Host selection from Top menu.
- Host selection screen appears.
- → Select the host number to register to, press 
  → and 
  → [Edit].
  - Terminal security code entry screen appears.
- **2** Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press .
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Enter host name and press .
  - Host appears when saving a new host. (The host number selected in step 2 appears for the ○.)
  - Press @cr for 1+ seconds to erase host name.
  - Enter up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters.
- Enter host and press .
  - Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.
- Enter host address and press .
  - Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

## Changing hosts

Save hosts in advance in order to access.

In stand-by, press (1.7) (1.7) (2.7).

Host selection screen appears.

# Select the host number, press • and 🝱 [Set].

- The host is changed.
- When *i-mode* is selected and is pressed, *i-mode (UIM) selected* appears and the host is changed.

#### Note

- Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.
- i-mode, which appears on host selection screen, is one of the following (depends on area in which i-mode is registered).
  - DoCoMo Hokkaido, DoCoMo Tohoku, DoCoMo, DoCoMo Tokai, DoCoMo Hokuriku, DoCoMo Kansai, DoCoMo Chugoku, DoCoMo Shikoku, DoCoMo Kyushu
- Default connection information cannot be changed.

## **Related Operations**

### Reset saved contents <Reset>

In the screen in step 1 of "Saving hosts", select host number ▶ ● ▶ ③ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.

#### Note

• When hosts are reset, host is set to i-mode.

# Setting to Use Terminal Data During Flash Playback <Saved data>

Default setting Use

1

ullet Alternatively, select ullet (i-mode) o **i-mode setting** o **Internet** o **Save data** from Top menu.

## Not Viewing Images <Set Image Display>

Default setting

ON (display)

Set handset to not show still pictures from screen memo or images from sites, web pages or Message R/F.



In stand-by, press ( 3 ) 3 ) 1. and 2 % [OFF].

• Alternatively, select  $\hat{i}$  (i-mode)  $\rightarrow$  *i-mode setting*  $\rightarrow$  *Internet*  $\rightarrow$  *Set image display* from Top menu.

#### Note

- When set to OFF, D appears in the place of still pictures.
   Still picture is not saved even when registered in the screen memo. (P P. 222)
- When set to OFF, Flash movies are not shown.
- Even when set to *OFF*, images in i-mode mail and Message R/F are shown.

## Resetting i-mode Settings <Reset i-mode>

Reset i-mode settings to default values.

Default values are as follows.

Setting item		Default value
Shared	Connection timeout	60 seconds
Snared	Host selection	i-mode

Setting item		Default value	
	Set image display		ON
	Font size		Standard
	Certificates		Valid: DoCoMo Certificates 1and 2 and all CA certificates
Internet	i-motion setting	Automatic replay	Yes
		i-motion Type	Normal type
	Secure setting	Docomo CA Host	DoCoMo
	Saved data		Use
	Sound fx setting		Volume 3

# 1

# In stand-by, press (19 1/10) (4 3/10), enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (10).

- Alternatively, select  $\stackrel{\bullet}{\bullet}$  (i-mode)  $\rightarrow$  *i-mode setting*  $\rightarrow$  *Reset i-mode* from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Reset i-mode confirmation screen appears.

# 2

## Select Yes and press .

· Settings are reset.

## Message R/F

## Message R/F

Subscribe to sites which provide Message Service to automatically receive information (messages). Message Service uses Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

Message R (Message Request)	Service to automatically receive message from a site which provides Message Service.
Message F (Message Free)	Message is received with no packet charge.

- Refer to "Receiving Message R/F" for details on receiving Message R/F.
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.

## **Setting Message F (Message Free)**

Select *iMenu* → ⑧オプション設定 (Options) → ③メッセージF設定 (Message F) → 受信する (Receive), enter i-mode password (four digits) and press [表定] (OK).

#### **Note**

 Number and duration of Message R/F held at i-mode center are shown below. When maximum number or duration is exceeded, messages are deleted starting with the oldest.

Туре	Maximum number	Maximum duration
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

• Perform Check new message (P. 237) to retrieve Message R/F held at i-mode center.

## Receiving Message R/F

Message R/F is automatically received from the i-mode center when the FOMA terminal is in the service area.

- Save up to 20 to 50 messages each. (Capacity varies depending on size of message.)
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center when one of the following occurs.

  - Handset is turned off
- While in Self mode Outside the service area
  - Using video-phone
- Ir exchange
- When there is no available space due to protected or unread Message R/F

#### Note

#### Meaning of icons

Icon	Meaning
R/F	Unread Message R/F. Refer to P. 238 for details on checking Message R/F.
R/E	FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full.  View unread messages (您P. 238), disable Message R/F protection (您P. 241) or delete unnecessary Message R/F (您P. 241).
R/F	Message R/F is held at center. Perform Check new message (© P. 237) to receive Message R/F.
R/F	Center is full. Perform Check new message (喹P. 237).

RRR: Request, FFFF: Free

- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected Message R/F is overwritten. Protect Message R/F to prevent overwriting. (PP. 241)
- R/F or R/F may not appear when mail is held at the i-mode center.
- Message R/F at i-mode center may be overwritten when R/E appears.
- Message ring tone does not sound while call is in progress, running i-αppli or playing i-motion/melodies.

## **Opening New Message R/F**

When Message R/F is received, the newest one appears.

Messages do not appear when Auto message display is set to No auto display.

• Set types of messages for Auto message display or priority of received messages.

## Message R/F is automatically received.

- RI flashes when receiving Message R, and F flashes when receiving Message F.
- After reception, receive results appear and message ring tone sounds (RI/F appears).

	In received results screen, select <b>MessageR</b> or <b>MessageF</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ Message R/F $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To stop ring tone	Press @cr or m.
	Ring tone stops and receive results screen disappears. Press other keys
	to keep screen but stop ring tone.

## Message R/F appears for approximately 15 seconds and screen returns to stand-by (when set to automatically display).

To keep viewing the message, press (\*) and scroll while viewing Message R/F.

#### Note

#### Receiving when not in stand-by

• RI/F appears on the display. Received results screen does not appear.

## Automatically Viewing Message R/F <Auto Message Display>

Set priority and message types.



## In stand-by, press @ Off and select display method.

Message R	1./2	When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously,
preferred		Message R appears.
Message F	2 /2c	When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously,
preferred		Message F appears.
Message R only	3 ፟ቇ	Only unread Message R appears.
Message F only	4 m	Only unread Message F appears.
No auto display	5 £	No messages appear automatically.

Auto message display appears.

#### **Note**

- When Auto display is set, new messages appear for 15 seconds in the following situation.
  - Returning to stand-by from receive results screen
- Message does not automatically appear in the following situation.
  - All locked
  - Mail PIM is locked

## **Check New Message**

# Checking for New Message R/F

Received Message R/F are held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off (PP. 236).

Check i-mode center for Message R/F and receive held messages.

- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F). (PP P. 292)
- When Receive option setting is set to ON, i-mode mail and Message R/F are received.
- All types are enabled as default setting.
- Refer to P. 305 for details on checking for SMS.



## In stand-by, press (a) 4 de or (a) 7 de or (b) 7 de or (c) 7 de or

- Alternatively, select (i-mode) or (Mail) → Check new message from Top menu.
- Also check by pressing distwice.
- To check new messages in viewer position, in stand-by press for 1+ seconds. Alternatively, press (left guidance) [i-mode] → (I) Check new message in stand-by.
- New messages are checked for.
- Check new message (☼ P. 292) is performed in accordance with settings from i-mode mail → MessageR → MessageF.

(Icons  $(\boxtimes, \mathbb{R})$ , and  $\mathbb{F}$ ) appear for each type checked.)

- To abort receiving mail, press while receiving.
- Aborted Message R/F may be held at i-mode center (R/F appears).
- Message R/F may be received depending on timing.

## Message R/F ring tone sounds when new messages are received.

- Check finishes.
- 0 appears when no Message R/F are held at center.
- When i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, ring tone set for the last mail or Message R/F received sounds.
- To stop, press @ CEP. Other keys also stop ring tone. ( P. 269)

# In the receive results screen, select *MessageR* or *MessageF* and press .

- Message R or Message F list appears.
- To not view immediately, perform no operations in receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds, and i-mode menu reappears.
- Message R/F does not automatically appear when checking new messages.



## Select Message R/F to view and press .

### View Message R/F

# Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box

1

In stand-by, press (12 2 and select Message R/F.

ullet Alternatively, select ullet (i-mode) o **Message** from Top menu.

To view Message R	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ Message R $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To view Message F	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow Message F \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

Message details screen appears.

#### **Note**

- Reload messages with images which do not load properly. (PP P. 239)
- For images inserted in mail text, set handset to not reload the images. (PP. 234)

## Messages List/Details Screen Layout

## Messages list layout



- 1 Unread/Protected message icon
  - ☑/厘: Unread Message R/F ៅ: Protected Message R/F
  - n / P: Unprotected Message R/F
- 2 Message R/F number/total
- 3 Melody/Image
  - When melody/image is attached to message, 2 or 2 appears.
- 4 Subject

Message R/F subject appears.

5 Received date and time

Time appears for current day, and date appears for other days.

## Message details screen layout



- 1 Message type
- Protected message icon Appears when protected.
- (name appears for Message F.)

  3 Message number
- 4 Received date and time
- 5 Subject
- 6 Message
- END appears at the end of the message.
- 7 Screen operation

To scroll up/down	Down: Press . Up: Press .
To scroll one screen at a time	Down: Press 🖹. Up: Press 🗐.
To use Auto scroll	Down: Press ∰ for 1+ seconds. Up: Press ∰ for 1+ seconds.  ■ To stop Auto scroll, press ∰ or a dial key.
To view other messages	Next: Press . Previous: Press .

- When a melody is attached, 2 and melody title appear below message.
- Melody plays automatically if Melody Auto replay is set to ON.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message.

## **Related Operations**

Add phone numbers and mail addresses from Message R/F to Phonebook <Add to phonebook>

With the message open, press 6.

#### Note

 Refer to "Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>" on P. 215 for subsequent steps.

## Reloading Message R/F Image

Reconnect to i-mode center and reload Message R/F image when not received properly (when **late** appears).



In Messages list (PP P. 238), select Message R/F, press • and

- Reloading starts.
- To cancel, press (☐) [Cancel] while reloading ( ☐) flashes).

#### Note

• Some images may not be downloaded properly even after reloading.

## Checking/Saving Attachments < Check File>

Check or save images and melodies attached to Message R/F. Images are saved to *i-mode/Other* folder in My picture and melodies are saved to *Melody* folder in Melody of Data box.



In Messages list (௴ P. 238), select Message R/F, press ● and ⓐ ③ ...

Attached file list appears.

# Select attachment to check.

To check attachments	Press   [Agree].
To save attachments	Press $\widehat{\mathbf{a}}$ [Save] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\bullet}$ .

## **Checking/Saving Inserted Images < Check Message Image>**

View or save GIF and JPEG images inserted in Message R/F message.

• Image is saved to the i-mode/Other folder in My picture of Data box.

1

In Messages list (PP P. 238), select Message R/F, press • and

• Message image list appears.

2

## Select image to check.

To check image	Press   [Agree].
To save image	Press $\widehat{\mathbf{a}}$ [Save] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\bullet}$ .

#### Note

• For attached images, check and save with Check file.

## **Managing Message R/F**

Protect, sort and delete Message R/F to prevent overwriting.

## Protecting

Message R/F can be protected, or protection can be canceled. Protected messages cannot be overwritten.

- When there is no available memory, same types of read messages are deleted starting with the oldest.
- Protect up to 25 of each type of message. (The number of protected messages depends on size.)

## Sorting

The order that messages are listed can be changed as follows.

Date (new $\rightarrow$ old)	Messages are sorted with the latest received date first.
Date (old $\rightarrow$ new)	Messages are sorted with the latest received date last.
By subject	Messages are sorted by title in the following order: Single-byte (symbols $\rightarrow$ numbers $\rightarrow$ alphabet upper case $\rightarrow$ alphabet lower case $\rightarrow$ katakana) $\rightarrow$ double-byte (symbols $\rightarrow$ numbers $\rightarrow$ alphabet upper case $\rightarrow$ alphabet lower case $\rightarrow$ hiragana $\rightarrow$ katakana $\rightarrow$ kanji $\rightarrow$ pictographs). (Messages are sorted by character code.)
Unread/Protected/Read	Unread Message R/F $\to$ protected Message R/F $\to$ read Message R/F. (Messages are sorted by <i>Date (new</i> $\to$ <i>old)</i> .)

- The default setting is Date (new → old).
- When screen other than Messages list is viewed, display method returns to the default setting, Date (new → old). When Messages list is viewed after pressing @aa from message details screen, listed order remains unchanged.

## Deleting

Use one of the following to delete messages.

Delete one	Deletes messages individually.
Delete all	Deletes all unprotected read messages.
Delete selected	Deletes selected messages collectively.

## **Related Operations**

### Protect Message R/F < Protect set>

- 1 In Messages list (♥ P. 238), select Message R/F ▶ ▶ @ 🖾.
- 2 Press 1.2.
  - To disable: Press 24.

## Delete Message R/F < Delete>

- 1 In Messages list (௴P. 238), select Message R/F ▶ [Delete].
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To delete from message details screen: Press 5 5.
  - To delete all Message R/F: Press ②♣ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
  - To delete selected Message R/F collectively: Press ③ ▶ Message R/F ( (repeat) ▶ (a) [Complete].
- 3 Select Yes ▶ .

### Sort Message R/F <Sort>

In Messages list (IFP. 238), press (☐ [Sort] > sort method > (●).

## **Using Certificates**

## Enabling/Disabling CA Certificates < CA Certificate>

Default setting

Enable all

The following certificates are required to view SSL pages.

- CA certificate......Certificate issued by a certification company that is registered in the FOMA terminal
  by default.
- DoCoMo certificate........Certificate registered in FOMA card (green) required to connect to FirstPass center
  or FirstPass compatible sites.
- Client certificate.............Certificate downloaded from FirstPass center via menu (☞ P. 242) and registered in FOMA card (green).

Detailed information of each certificate can be viewed. Disable CA certificate that develops security problems.

• SSL pages using a disabled CA certificate cannot be viewed.

# 1

# In stand-by, press (19 1/10) (3 1/20), select a certificate and press (10) [Enable/Disable].

- Alternatively, select (i-mode) → i-mode setting → Internet → Certificates from Top menu.
- ■ appears for enabled certificates. 
   □ appears for disabled ones.
- Enabled/Disabled switch.
- To show certificate details, select certificate and press (•) [Show].

## Setting FirstPass < Cert Operation>

Client certificates are required to access FirstPass compatible sites and web pages. Certification is a proof of FOMA contract. Request and download from FirstPass center. Register Client certificates in FOMA card (green) to access certificate compatible sites and web pages.

- FOMA card (blue) is not available.
- Not available with FOMA Data Plan. (Available with ISP connection regardless of payment plan.)
- Set date and time to access FirstPass center. (PP. 48)
- Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.
- When accessing FirstPass center, sending/receiving mail and Message R/F are unavailable.

#### Note

#### Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then validated for client authentication.
- After reading and agreeing with "FirstPassご利用規則" (The usage regulation), request Client certificate.
- PIN2 code is required to use Client certificate. (PP P. 146)
   After entering PIN2 code, all actions performed are presumed to be the user. Keep FOMA card and PIN2 code private.
- If FOMA card is lost or stolen, contact DoCoMo retailer to cancel Client certificate.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for sites or information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. All problems
  must be resolved between user and site.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certification company guarantee security when using FirstPass or SSL. Use at own
  discretion
- Packet transmission charges incurred from accessing a FirstPass compatible site with i-mode are included with Pake-Houdai.

#### Client authentication

- Server and client authentication allow for safer data transfer. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then authenticated. Client authentication allows for safer data transmission
- Client authentication for Client certificates are not available for FOMA card (blue).

## Accessing sites with certification

Access FirstPass compatible sites and web pages using Client certificate.

# Access site or web page and view SSL-enabled site. (© steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217)

- Sites and web pages requiring Client certificate to be sent show a confirmation screen.
- To view server certificate while viewing site, press [a] ##.

# Select Yes and press , enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press .

- When authentication succeeds, SSL-enabled site or web page appears.
- Refer to P. 146 for details on PIN2.

#### Note

- When access to a FirstPass compatible site or web page is attempted without Client certificate, You have no certificate. Do you connect? appears. Select No to end SSL transmission. Try again after downloading certificate from FirstPass center.
- When Client certificate expires, Your certificate has expired. Do you connect? appears. Select No to return to the original screen. Try again after renewing certificate from FirstPass center.

## Accessing FirstPass center

Perform Client certificate operations from FirstPass center.

Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.

## In stand-by, press (1 9 why) 3 to 5 th (1.28).



- Alternatively, select (i-mode) → i-mode setting → Internet → Secure setting → Cert Operation from Top menu.
- FirstPass center web page appears.

## Select 次へ (Next) and press (●).



FirstPass center menu screen appears.

#### **Note**

- Read "ご利用規則" (The usage regulation) in the screen of step 2 carefully before using FirstPass.
- Packet charges are not incurred when connecting to the FirstPass center.
- The following functions are not available when accessing FirstPass center.
  - Video-phone (voice call is available)
  - Sending/Receiving i-mode mail (SMS can be received) ■ Check new message (Check new SMS) ■ Receiving Message R/F
  - Downloading i-motion

## Applying for Client certificate and downloading

Apply for Client certificate before downloading.

Access FirstPass center ( steps 1 and 2 of " Accessing FirstPass center" on P. 242), select 証明書発行 (Issue certificate) and press (•).



Select 実行 (Execute) and press ①.

Enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press (●).



- Refer to P. 146 for details on PIN2 code.
- Certificate issuance screen appears.

4

## Select ダウンロード (Download) and press .

Select 実行 (Execute) and press ①.



- Completed download screen appears.
- To end, press 🖘, select **Yes** and press •.

#### **Note**

 Always apply for Client certificate when renewing or attempting to get new certificate. Certificate cannot be downloaded without application.

## Canceling Client certificates

Invalidate downloaded Client certificates.

- 【 Access FirstPass center (で steps 1 and 2 of " Accessing FirstPass center" on P. 242), select その他 (Other), press and [証明書失効] (Invalidate certificate).
- Select Yes, press , enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) and press .
  - Refer to P. 146 for details on PIN2 code.
- Select 実行 (Execute), press ①, select 次本 (Next) and press ②.
  - Cancel confirmation screen appears.
- Select 実行 (Execute) and press ①.
  - 証明書の失効申請が完了しました。(Certificate invalidation complete.) appears.
  - To end, press **E**, select **Yes** and press •.

#### **Note**

- FirstPass compatible sites cannot be viewed after cancellation.
- To reactivate a Client certificate, apply and download again.
- Refer to P. 241 for details on viewing Client certificates.

## **Changing Certificate Issuer**

Set host when downloading Client certificate.

\* Setting does not normally need to be changed.

1

## In stand-by, press (19 5 3 E) 5 A L 2 ABC.



Alternatively, select (i-mode) → i-mode setting → Internet → Secure setting → Docomo CA Host from Top menu.

- Press [Edit], enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press •.
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
  - Host entry screen appears.
  - To reset, press ②♣, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press ⑥. Default settings are restored.
- 3 Ent

## Enter host information and press •.



• Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.



## Enter host address and press (•).

• Enter up to 100 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

#### **Note**

• When the currently set host is reset, \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\* appears.



# Mail

The FOMA Terminal Mail Function
• i-mode Mail
• Displaying Mail Menu
■ Creating i-mode Mail/Deco-mail
• Creating and Sending i-mode Mail
• Creating and Sending Deco-mail
• Using and Sending a Template
• Attaching a File
• Saving and Sending i-mode Mail Later < Save i-mode Mail>266
■ Receiving and Using i-mode Mail
• Receiving i-mode Mail
• Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail < Receive Option>269
• Checking for i-mode Mail
• Replying to i-mode Mail < Reply i-mode Mail>271
• Forwarding to Another Address < Forward i-mode Mail>273
• Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook
• Opening Image Mail Images < Receive Image Mail>274
• Playing/Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail < Receive i-motion Mail>275
• Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File
• Checking and Saving Deco-mail Images < Check Message Image>276
• Saving Deco-mail as Templates
■Using the Mailbox
• Displaying Messages in Outbox and Inbox
■Mail History
• Using Mail History < Received/Sent Messages History>286
■Mail Settings
• Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions
■Using Chat Mail
• Creating and Sending Chat Mail
■Using SMS (Short Messages)
• Creating and Sending SMS (Short Messages) < Create/Send SMS>301
• Receiving SMS (Short Messages)
• Making SMS (Short Messages) Settings
• Saving SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Card
• Deleting SMS (Short Messages)

## The FOMA Terminal Mail Function

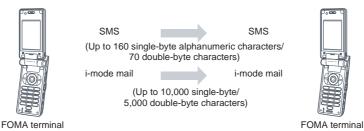
- The FOMA terminal can send and receive i-mode mail and SMS (Short messages). Subscription is required to
  use i-mode mail.
  - Refer to P. 255 and P. 267 for details on sending/receiving i-mode mail.
- SMS messaging (text message) is available between FOMA terminals without i-mode subscription. Refer to P. 301 and P. 304 for details on sending/receiving SMS.

## **Sending/Receiving Mail**

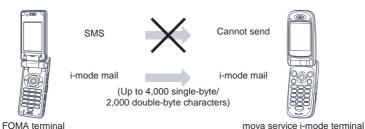
The following are the three possible mail transfer combinations.

SMS cannot be sent from a FOMA terminal to a mova terminal.

FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal
 SMS can only be exchanged with FOMA terminals.

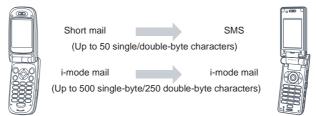


 FOMA terminal → i-mode terminal with mova service i-mode mail is used when a message is sent from FOMA terminal to i-mode terminal with mova service.



i-mode terminal with mova service → FOMA terminal

Short mail\* sent by an i-mode terminal with mova service is received as SMS by a FOMA terminal.



mova service i-mode terminal

FOMA terminal

\* Short mail is a text message transfer service for DoCoMo mobile phones. Short mail cannot be sent from the FOMA terminal.

#### **Note**

 Note information in i-mode mail and SMS separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (P. 381) or Data Link Software (P. 584).

## i-mode Mail

Subscribe to i-mode service to exchange e-mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova), non-DoCoMo terminals and PCs via the Internet.

The mail address upon subscription is as follows.

#### New i-mode subscription

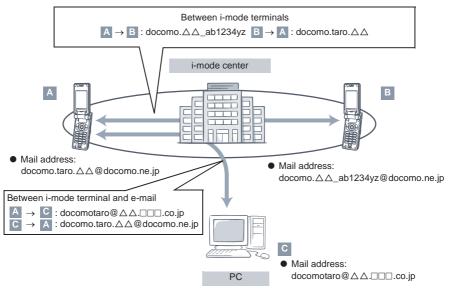
The portion before @ is a random combination of numbers and alphabets. Customize after subscribing to i-mode.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

#### **Checking Mail Address**

iMenu → ③オプション設定 (Options) → ①メール設定 (Mail Setting) → アドレス確認 (Confirm Address)

- Only the portion before @ is necessary to exchange mail between i-mode terminals (including mova).
- Include @docomo.ne.jp for e-mail from PCs and other devices.



● Sending mail @P. 255

• Receiving mail P. 267

### **Receive option**

When mail is held at i-mode center, view subject and choose to receive mail or delete mail before receiving. © P. 269

## Mail settings

Perform the following to set.

#### Setting details

*iMenu* → ⑧オプション設定 (Options) → ①メール設定(Mail Setting) → Various settings

• Refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

#### Changing the mail address (アドレス変更)

Customize mail address by changing the portion preceding @, such as docomo.taro\_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp.

# Registering a secret code (メールアドレス設定 <その他設定> → シークレットコード登録)

Add a four-digit Secret code when using phone number as address. Avoid unwanted mail by rejecting those without Secret codes.

## Resetting mail address (メールアドレス設定 <その他設定> ▶ アドレスリセット)

Mail address can be reset to phone number@docomo.ne.jp.

### Confirming mail address (アドレス確認)

Confirm the current mail address used.

### Receiving/Rejecting mail

Restrict incoming mail by using one of the following Receive/Reject mail settings.

- ①Set Receive Mail from Selected Domains (メール受信設定 <受信/拒否設定> ➡ ドメイン指定受信)
- Receive mail from au, Vodafone, TU-KA, and WILLCOM.
- Also receive mail from other selected domains.
- ※ Receive all mail from NTT DoCoMo i-mode, i-shot, Call Charge Notice Service, eBilling and M-stage Visual net.
- 2 Receive/Reject Selected Mail
  - (メール受信設定 <受信/拒否設定> ▶ アドレス指定受信、アドレス指定拒否)
- Receive/Reject mail from specified mail addresses.
- 3 Receive/Reject only i-mode mail
  - (メール受信設定<受信/拒否設定> ▶ i モードメールのみ受信、iモードメールのみ拒否)
- Receive (reject mail via Internet) /Reject all i-mode mail.
- 4 Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders
  - (メール受信設定<その他設定> ▶ i モードメール大量送信者からのメール受信制限)
- Reject mail from i-mode terminals (including mova) that send more than 200 i-mode mail per day. The default setting is Reject.
- ⑤ Reject 未承諾広告※ (Unsolicited Ad) Mail (メール受信設定 <その他設定> ➡ 未承諾広告※メール拒否)
- Reject mail sent for advertisement purposes with 未承諾広告※ (unsolicited ad) in the subject, and without the
  consent of the receiving party. The default setting is *Reject*. (Sender is required by law to add 未承諾広告※
  (six double-byte characters) at beginning of subject.)
- ※ Receive Mail from Selected Domains, Receive Selected Mail, Reject Selected Mail, Receive only i-mode mail and Reject only i-mode mail cannot be set simultaneously.
- ⑥ Reject SMS (メール受信設定<その他設定> ◆ SMS拒否設定/確認)
- Set to reject all SMS or only user unset SMS, and check setting status.

### Check mail settings (設定状況確認)

Confirm current mail reception/rejection settings.

### Limit mail size (メールサイズ制限)

Limit i-mode mail by the number of characters set in advance.

### Suspend mail functions (メール機能停止)

Suspend mail functions at the i-mode center if not in use.

### Number of transferable characters

Character limits for i-mode mail are as follows.

Item	Double-byte (kanji, hiragana, pictographs)	Single-byte (alphabet, numbers, katakana)
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
Mail address	_	50 characters
Message	5,000 characters	10,000 characters

#### Note

- Message text is limited to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters but may be less depending on size of attachments.
- When limit is exceeded, "/" or "//" is entered at the end of the message and exceeding portions are automatically deleted.
- Character limit when sending to mova service is 2,000 double-byte characters. i-shot and i-motion are sent
  as a mail with URL and other attachments are deleted.
- Exceeding characters in subject are automatically deleted.
- Avoid single-byte katakana and pictographs when sending to mobile phones not supporting i-mode (including mova). Such characters may not be displayed properly when sent.

### When mail cannot be received

Mail received at i-mode center is sent to i-mode terminal immediately. However, if a video-phone call is in progress, or the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, turned off, or the Receive option setting is set to ON, mail is held at the i-mode center.

Mail held at the i-mode center is resent up to three times. Use その他設定 (Other settings) to select i-mode mail at i-mode center and receive.

#### **Note**

Number and duration of time mail is held at i-mode center are as follows.

	Maximum number	Maximum period	
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000	720 hours	
I-mode maii	(approximately up to 2 MB)	720 110015	

- Mail is automatically deleted after the saving period expires.
- Maximum number of mail differs according to data size. If i-mode center is full, message is rejected and
  error message is sent to sender. appears on i-mode terminal. (PP 267)
   When Receive option setting is set to ON added to one appear even if i-mode center is full.
- Retrieve mail held at i-mode center with Check new message (☞P. 270) and Receive option (☞P. 269). Retrieve new mail along with stored mail and messages.
- Mail is deleted from i-mode center when retrieved on i-mode terminal. Retrieved mail is saved on i-mode terminal. (27 P. 267)
- Extremely large mail is rejected by i-mode center.

### Other features

### File attachments

### Melody

Send and receive melody files downloaded from sites or Internet web pages. (Melodies with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.)

● To send © P. 263

● To receive © P. 275

### Image

Send and receive still pictures retrieved from sites, Internet web pages and external memory devices. (Still pictures with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.)

● To send @ P. 263

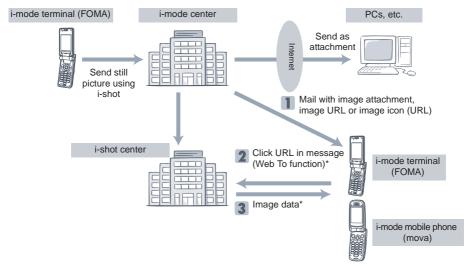
● To receive © P. 275

#### i-shot

Send and receive still pictures shot with terminal as an attachment file. Exchange file with i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs, and other manufacturers' mobile phones. Recipient receives file as an attachment, or as a mail with an expiration date and a URL (or icon) which can be clicked to download image.

Send up to 184 double-byte characters (369 bytes) to mova terminals. Only mail message is sent when multiple files are attached.

● To send @P. 263



- \* When a mail with an image URL is received
- Images are saved for up to ten days at i-shot center and are deleted automatically after saving period expires.
- i-mode terminal can send still pictures of up to 500 KB. If an image larger than 20 KB is attached and sent to an i-mode terminal, the image is automatically compressed for the recipient.

### i-motion mail

Send and receive movies shot on i-motion mail supported terminals and movies downloaded from sites to i-motion mail supported terminals, PCs and other manufacturers' mobile phones. (Movies with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.)

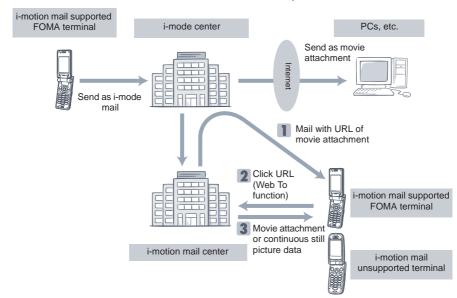
● To send 12 P. 263

#### About the service

Movies attached to i-motion mail are sent to i-motion mail center and saved. (Movies are sent as attachments when sent to PCs.)

When received with an i-motion supported terminal, click the URL in the mail message to retrieve movie.

When sent to unsupported terminals, i-motion is converted to continuous still pictures and a mail with a URL is sent. Select the URL to retrieve continuous still pictures.



- Data at i-motion mail center is saved for up to ten days, and is automatically deleted after saving period
  expires.
- i-motion mail supported terminal can receive movies of up to 500 KB. Downloaded movie is converted to fit
  the size of the i-mode terminal display.

### **Deco-mail**

Create original i-mode mail by changing character size and background color or paste images in message. Send and receive fun, decorated mail. (Some decorations added using PCs are not supported on i-mode terminals and may not appear correctly.)

When Deco-mail is sent to unsupported terminals, mail with a URL is received. The recipient must click the URL to view Deco-mail.

- To create @P. 258
- To send @P. 258
- Supported models: 90xi series, 70xi series and F880iES\*
- \* F880iES supports receiving Deco-mail only

### **Broadcast mail**

Send i-mode mail to up to five addresses at once. @P. 257

 Charges are the same as when sending one mail. (Network charges stemming from added users are incurred.)

### Cc and Bcc

Set i-mode mail address to To, Cc or Bcc. Mail is not sent if To is empty. P P. 255

### **Chat mail**

Have a conversation by exchanging mail with multiple members.

• Charges for sending to multiple recipients are the same as when sending Broadcast mail.

### SMS (Short Messages)

SMS messaging (text message exchange) is available between FOMA terminals without i-mode subscription.

- SMS is held for up to 72 hours at SMS center.
- SMS is deleted when saving period expires.
- Retrieve SMS held at SMS center with Check new SMS (P. 305).
- SMS is deleted from SMS center when retrieved by FOMA terminal. Retrieved SMS is saved on FOMA terminal. (底 P. 304) Copy retrieved SMS to FOMA card. (底 P. 307)
- Set to reject all SMS or reject user unset SMS. (PP. 250)

### **SMS** address

2 Outbox 3 Unsent messages

4 Compose message 5 Compose SMS 6 Chat mail
7 Check new message
8 Check new SMS 9 Receive option OMail setting Nation Ouk : 6 (8)

SMS address is your registered phone number.

### Mail Menu

# **Displaying Mail Menu**

Create, receive, send, and view i-mode mail from Mail menu.

## In stand-by, press 🟝.



- Alternatively, select (Mail) from Top menu.
- Mail menu appears.

Menu	Function	Reference
1 Inbox	Open, reply to, and forward received mail.	P. 267, P. 277
2Outbox	Open and resend sent mail.	P. 266, P. 277
3Unsent messages	Edit or send unsent messages.	P. 267, P. 277
4 Compose message	Create and send or save mail.	P. 255
5Compose SMS	Create and send or save SMS.	P. 301, P. 302
6Chat mail	Set and send Chat mail.	P. 296
7Check new message	Check the i-mode center for new mail and Message R/F.	P. 270
■ Check new SMS	Check SMS center for stored SMS.	P. 305
Receive option	Select mail to receive from i-mode center.	P. 269
Mail setting	Perform various i-mode mail and SMS related settings.	P. 289

# **Creating and Sending i-mode Mail**

### Create and send i-mode mail.

- Avoid pictographs and single-byte katakana for subject and message when sending to mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Such characters may not appear properly.
- Send up to 4,000 single-byte (2,000 double-byte) characters to mova service i-mode terminals.
- Use To. Cc. and Bcc to address mail. The To field must be filled in.

# 1

### In stand-by, press (\$\frac{1}{4} \) [3].

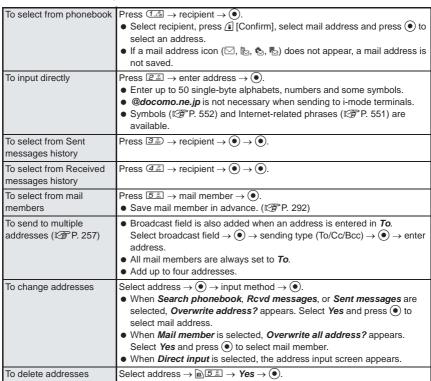


- When Too many unsent mail or Too many unsent/ protected mail appears, i-mode mail cannot be composed.

Make sent mail unprotected or delete unsent mail. (@P. 284)

Compose message screen

# Select To, press • and enter address.



# Select Sub or Msg, press •, enter text and press •.



- In mail message entry screen, confirm a character in character entry area in middle of display, press and move to location to insert. (This is not inline entry.)
- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters for Subject and 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters for message. Send up to 4,000 single-byte (2,000 double-byte) characters to mova service i-mode terminals.
- Size becomes 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters and remaining bytes become negative under the conditions below. Edit to fit within 10,000 bytes (remaining bytes is 0 or more).
  - When specified font size in character entry line and mail content total size is 10,000 bytes or more
  - When pasted characters and mail content total size is 10,000 bytes or more
  - When i-mode mail is decorated after entering
- Line break (4) is counted as one double-byte character. Single- and double-byte spaces (blanks) are counted as single- and double-byte characters respectively. (Line breaks (4) are not available for Subject.)
- Press → at end of message entry screen to enter line break (↓). Press ⊕ at to delete ↓.
- Press @ax without entering message and the compose message screen reappears.

To use phrases	In message entry screen, press $\bigcirc 5$ $\longrightarrow$ type of phrase $\longrightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\longrightarrow$ phrase $\longrightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ Refer to P. 575 for details on phrases.
To add signature	In message entry screen, press  → ■ Add signature → ●.  Save signature in advance. (②P. 291)  Signature is automatically added when Auto signature is set to ON. Signature is also added automatically when replying. Auto signature is not available for Quick reply, Reply with quote or mail to be forwarded.  Signature is included in character count. If character limit is exceeded, Signature space is not available appears and signature is not added.
To compose Decomail (PP P. 258)	In message entry screen, press   .



# Press (i [Send].



- While sending, press 

   [Cancel] to cancel.

   Alternatively, press 

   = □ or 

   = □ to stop.

   i-mode mail may be sent depending on timing.

   Canceled i-mode mail is saved as unsent mail.

#### Note

- Number of characters that can be entered decreases when image or melody is attached.
- Add address from mail member (P. 292) while To or Broadcast field is already entered. Click Yes to
  overwrite.
- When setting mail members as recipients, the first address is entered for the first To. Further addresses
  are entered for subsequent To fields. (Can be changed to Cc or Bcc.)
- Depending on the signal status, messages may not be sent. i-mode mail that failed to send is saved as unsent mail.
- Message is sent but *Transmission failed* appears depending on signal status.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.

#### Note

- Save up to 101 unsent and sent mail. Oldest unprotected sent mail is automatically overwritten when i-mode mail is sent while 100 sent mail or 101 or more sent and unsent mail are saved. (Confirmation message does not appear.) Protect important i-mode mail.
- Sent messages and Rcvd messages are not available when entering address if Show sent/received is set to OFF. (P. 156)
- i-mode mail cannot be sent to addresses not in phonebook while Keypad dial lock (@P. 154) is set.
- i-mode mail is not available while All lock or Self mode is set.
- When mail PIM is locked, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to send i-mode mail.
- Mail addresses entered in To and Cc appear on the recipient's screen. However, some terminals, devices, or mail software may not show mail addresses.

#### When called during editing

• Previous screen reappears after the call is disconnected. Continue editing.

### When other party has set Secret code

- Enter other party's Secret code (four digits) before @. This is unnecessary if Secret code is entered in phonebook entry. (☞ P. 100)
- If address is phone number or phone number@docomo.ne.jp, phonebook is automatically checked for Secret code. If saved, Secret code is added. (Part P. 100)
- i-mode mail may not be sent or replied to if mail address is saved as phone number+Secret
  code@docomo.ne.jp in phonebook. Change entry to phone number@docomo.ne.jp before saving
  Secret code.
- Error messages such as delivery reports are sometimes not received when sent to a non-DoCoMo mail address.

### **Broadcast**

Send same i-mode mail to multiple addresses simultaneously from FOMA terminal. Send to up to five people at once.

- Select sending type (To/Cc/Bcc) in Broadcast input field.
  - Cc : Used to send carbon copy to a third party.
  - Bcc: Used to send carbon copy to a third party. Unlike Cc, addresses are invisible to other recipients.
- Save up to five people in mail members to easily select multiple addresses. (PP. 292)
- Non-Bcc addresses are shown to other recipients. Other addresses may not appear on some models.
- Sent mail is saved as one mail. All successful recipients are shown in sent messages screen.
- If mail is not sent to all the recipients, one copy is saved as sent mail and unsent mail. Unsuccessful recipients
  are shown in unsent mail.
- Same address set appears and cannot be sent when same address is set more than once. Delete duplicated
  addresses and send.

### Changing sending type

Change sending type for address and Broadcast.

When composing i-mode mail (\*\*) steps 1 to 3 on P. 255), select address input field other than the first entry, press • • • and select sending type.

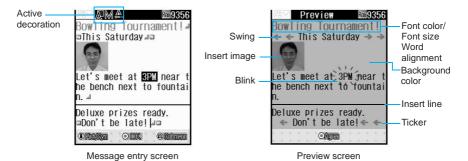
То	Press 1.4.
Cc	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
Bcc	Press 3 3.

Sending type is changed.

Change color or font size of message text, insert image or change background color when creating i-mode mail.

### Decorations and effects

- Create Deco-mail of up to 10,000 bytes including attachments. When the remaining bytes becomes negative, decorations do not appear in message.
- Decorated mail sent from PCs may not appear properly.



### Palette numbers and decorations

• The following may be used for palette number: 1. to 9., 0., 42 and 4.







Palette number	Decoration	Description	Post-insertion adjustments
(1./ <sub>.</sub> / <sub>.</sub> 8	Font color 50588 Sowling Tournament! 2 Sowling Tournament! 2 Sowling Tournament! 2	Color fonts. Font colors set for pictographs are reflected. To return to default color, select <b>Default</b> .	Select color $\rightarrow$ $\odot$ .
2 <sup>77</sup> / <sub>ABC</sub>	Font size	Change font size to <i>Large</i> , <i>Standard</i> or <i>Small</i> .	Large: Press (12a). Standard: Press (2a). Small: Press (3a).
3 to	Blink SSSSS	Set text to blink. Blinking automatically stops after a while.	To set: Press (22). To reset: Press (22).
(4 & den	Ticker Sassa	Stream text (Show ticker). Text stops flowing after a while.	To set: Press (2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2

Wai

Palette number	Decoration	Description	Post-insertion adjustments
5 g	Swing Sagara	Wobble (swing) text sideways. Text stops moving after a while.	To set: Press T.d To reset: Press Z.d
<i>6</i> ₩	Word alignment  Bowling Tournament!  Bowling Tournament!  Bowling Tournament!  Right	Change placement of characters.	Left: Press A. Center: Press A. Right: Press A.
(7 g)	Insert line Significant at 3PM near the bench next to fountain.  Deluxe prizes ready. John t be late!	Add line (horizontal rule) to text. (One-line worth is inserted. Font color is reflected for inserted line. Change line color (font color).) Line insertion is not available while changing decoration.	At the location to insert, press  [Insert].
<b>8</b> ° nu	Insert image  Camera image  GIF image	Insert image in message. Animated images such as animated GIFs stop after a while. (Character location is reflected on image. Change location of image (word alignment).) Image insertion is not available while changing decoration.	At the location to insert, press $\bullet$ [Insert] $\rightarrow$ image $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ .
9 s	Background color September 1985   Septem	Change mail background color. Background color cannot be changed while changing decoration.	Select background color $\rightarrow$ $lacktriangle$ .
<b>○</b>	Edit decoration 🖳 🖼	Specify range and decorate or change decorations.	At start point, press ● → at end point, press ● → set decoration palette number.  • 乙誌 [Insert line], ⑧誌 [Insert image] and ⑨₺ [Background color] are not available.
## ##	Undo P 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	Undo the last operation.  Enter undecorated characters. Inserted images and lines are not canceled.	

Key operation	Decoration	Description
Press   →   Reset	"	Cancel all decorations. Inserted images are deleted and mail
settings.		returns to text mail.
Press 📵.	Text	Press to enter characters.

### Note

### Insert image

- Insert up to 10,000 bytes of images in message entry screen. For different images, insert up to ten images. If the same image is inserted, insert ten or more. Images are only deemed the same when copied and pasted if returned to compose message screen and character entry screen is re-entered.
- The URL may not be visible due to image or i-motion URL characters having the same color as the background color of Deco-mail.
- Background color cannot be selected after other decorations are selected. Select background color first.

Models that support sending/receiving Deco-mail ··· 90xi series, 70xi series Models that only support receiving Deco-mail ··· F880iES

### Inserting text while decorating

Enter text with decorations after specifying decoration method. Or, decorate already entered characters with specified decoration method.

# Create i-mode mail and enter address and subject. ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 255)



# Select *Message* and press (•).

Message entry screen appears.

# Press [a] [Decorate mail], enter palette number and specify decoration.



Palette screen

- Alternatively, select palette with ...
- · Cursor does not move while palette is open. After selecting an item and decorating, press (1) [Complete] to move the cursor and select a location to enter characters.
- Refer to "Palette numbers and decorations" table on P. 258 and P. 259 for details on using each decoration.
- Specify different decorations in succession. Pressing @@ is unnecessary if palette is open.
- When Palette is set to *OFF*, press a, select decoration type from sub menu, press ( ) and specify decoration.

To specify blink	Press $3 \frac{1}{2} \cdot 1 \cdot \frac{1}{2} \rightarrow 1 \cdot 1$ [Complete] $\rightarrow$ enter text $\rightarrow$ $1 \cdot 1 \cdot 1 \cdot 1$ $\rightarrow$ $1 \cdot 1 $
To specify ticker	Press $\overbrace{4$\overset{?}{=}$}$ $\underbrace{4$\overset{?}{=}$}$ [Complete] $\rightarrow$ enter text $\rightarrow$ $\underbrace{6$\overset{?}{=}$}$ $\underbrace{4$\overset{?}{=}$}$ $\underbrace{2$\overset{?}{=}$}$ .
To specify swing	Press $5 \frac{1.3}{2.4} \rightarrow \text{(i)}$ [Complete] $\rightarrow$ enter text $\rightarrow$ $\text{(iii)}$ $\Rightarrow 5 \frac{1.3}{2.4} \frac{2.4}{2.4}$ .
To display preview screen	Press ♠ → ལ <i>Preview</i> → ♠. • Press ♠ [Agree] and the previous screen reappears.

# After specifying, press (i) [Complete].

Message entry screen appears.

# Enter text.



- Alternatively, press (a) [Text] and enter text.
- Decorations are reflected when text is entered.
- If mail size exceeds 10,000 bytes, bytes appear as negative.
- Even after deleting text with decorations, decoration data may remain causing available character number to decrease. Delete decorations before deleting text.
   Press @aan for 1+ seconds to delete text and decoration data together.

•	Press 🗘.
entered characters	Select a start point with $\bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ [Origin] $\rightarrow$ select a finish point with $\bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ [Last].  • Press $\bigcirc$ [All] to select all.



# Press , select Preview and press .



- Use to scroll.
- View mail that appears to other party in preview screen.
- Repeat steps 3 to 5 to continue decorating.
- When message alone exceeds 10,000 bytes, Message exceeds size limit. Unable to display whole message. appears. Excess data is temporarily deleted and preview appears. (Depending on mail content (characters, images, etc.), excess data may not be deleted.) Press ( [Agree] and return to message entry screen. Message entry screen returns to size from before preview. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.
- To disable all decorations, press 
   \( \begin{align\*}
   \text{\text} \\ \text{Reset settings} \) and press 
   \( \begin{align\*}
   \text{Inserted image is also deleted.} \)
- To show details for inserted image, move the cursor in front of image, press , select select File property and press .



## Press • [Agree].

Message entry screen reappears.



## Press and Feeling [Send].

- i-mode mail is sent.
- When message alone exceeds 10,000 bytes, Capacity exceeded. Some data may be lost. End editing? appears. Select Yes and press to open compose message screen. Excess data is deleted and A appears. Depending on mail content (characters, images, etc.) excess data may not be deleted. To re-edit, select No, press and the message entry screen reappears. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.

### **Note**

- Decorations and inserted images are quoted when replying with quote or forwarding Deco-mail.
- Decorated mail sent from Deco-mail non-compliant FOMA terminals may not appear correctly.
- Text is not decorated if decorated text is copied in editing screen and pasted after re-entering editing screen.
- When decorated text is inserted, status icon changes to ₩∑.

### **Related Operations**

### Hide palette <Palette>

- 1 After performing step 2 on P. 260, press Palette .
- 2 Select OFF ▶ (•).
  - To show palette: Select ON ①.

### Setting range and decorating

Specify portion of message and decorate or change specified decoration.

1

### Press Of in palette screen (PP. 260).

- Message entry screen appears.

2

# Move cursor to location to start decorating and press ( ) [Start].

- To select all text, press [a] [All].
- To cancel selection, press (a) [Cancel].

3

Move cursor to location to end decorating and press • [End].



# Press palette number (1.2 to 5.3 and \*2) and specify decoration.

- Specified range is decorated.
- To undo one step, press \*\*.
- Only decorations ① to ⑤ and ※ are available.
- Repeat step 4 to add decorations to the same range.



## After specifying, press (i) [Text].

• Refer to steps 6 to 8 on P. 261 for subsequent steps.

### **Note**

• \* [Undo] is not available if area is specified after decorations are added in continuation.

# **Using and Sending a Template**

Use a template to create a Deco-mail. Templates are Deco-mail models with set layout and decorations. Use templates to quickly create and send Deco-mail.

Also, save created Deco-mail as a template and download templates from sites.

- The template is saved in *Deco-mail picture* folder in My picture of Data box.
- Refer to P. 225 for details on downloading templates.

### Using a Template to Create a Deco-mail < Open Template>



# In compose message screen (PPP P. 255), select Message, press oand a.



- Template is opened even if <a>□</a> <a>□</a
- When message contains text, message that contents being edited will be lost appears. Select Yes and press to delete contents.

# Select template and press 🗊 [OK].



- Template is reflected on message entry screen.
- Editing is the same as for normal Deco-mail. Refer to P. 258 for details.
- To check template, select template and press [Agree]. Press and the previous screen reappears. Press [OK] to insert message.

**©BVIG** 

#### Note

- If an image with file restrictions is inserted into a template, message appears and image is deleted.
- Oversized templates are not opened.

### Saving Mail as Template <Save Template>



Press (a) 45 in compose message screen after finishing Deco-mail (127 steps 1 to 5 on P. 260), select Yes and press (a).

• Saves as a template.

#### **Note**

- Attachments are not saved with Deco-mail.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary files and increase
  memory space to save. (PP P. 393)

### **Attachments**

# Attaching a File

Attach and send still pictures and movies shot with FOMA terminal, images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages, i-motion and melodies.

• Attach standard files and large files to the same mail.

### Number and size of attachments per mail

Туре		Standard attachment		Large attachment	
Data type		Melody	Still picture	Still picture	Movie/i-motion
File format		SMF GIF image, JPEG image		JPEG image*1	Mobile MP4
File size 1 to 10,000 bytes*2		s*2	10,001 to 500 K (512,000) bytes*3	1 to 500 K (512,000) bytes*3	
Maximum		Up to ten files*4		One still picture or movie/i-motion	
	FOMA terminal	0	0	○*5	O*6
Setting by destination	mova service i-mode terminal	×	O*7, *8	O*5, *8	○*6
	e-mail	0	0	0	0

- \*1 GIF images over 10,000 bytes cannot be attached to mail.
- \*2 Total of attachment and message. Large files reduce number of characters for message text. When large files are attached, total for attachment and message is up to 9,800 bytes for standard mail (up to 9,600 for Deco-mail).
- \*3 This is the size when only a large file is attached.
- \*4 Number decreases with large attachments.
- \*5 When sending to i-mode terminal, the size is changed to a suitable size at the i-shot center.
- \*6 Sent as i-motion mail (URL and save period automatically added) when movie/i-motion is sent to i-mode terminal. Depending on the other party's i-mode terminal, image quality may deteriorate or images may be changed to continuous still pictures.
- \*7 GIF images cannot be attached.
- \*8 Automatically sent as i-shot (image URL and save period automatically added) to mova service i-mode terminals. One attachment of up to 184 double-byte characters is allowed. Attachments are deleted and only message is sent if other files or multiple files are attached.

# Create i-mode mail ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 255), select the attachment input field with ( and press ).



### Select file to attach.



To attach a still picture	Press ♠ → folder → ♠ → still picture → ੵ [OK].  • To check still picture, select a still picture and press ♠ [Agree].
To attach a melody	Press ②♣ → folder → ● → Melody → ♠ [OK].  • To play melody, select melody and press ● [Agree].  Press ④ [Stop] to stop playback.
To attach a movie/ i-motion	Press ③③ → folder → ● → movie/i-motion → ④ [OK].  • Select a movie/i-motion and press ● [Agree] to play movie/i-motion. Press ④ [Stop] to stop playback.
To attach shot still pictures	Press (4.5a).  • Shot still pictures are compressed and saved in the <i>Camera</i> folder.

- Compose message screen reappears. File name and size appear in the attachment field.
- Remaining bytes shown above message input field has attachment size subtracted.
- When a JPEG larger than Stand-by: 240×320 is selected, Reduce to Standby? appears. Select Yes and press (a) to reduce and attach. Select No and press (b) to compress to 500 KB or less and attach.
- Stand-by: 240×320 is the suitable size to send to i-mode terminals.

# ? Press 🗊 [Send].

i-mode mail is sent.

#### **Note**

- Still pictures larger than 10,000 bytes are automatically compressed before being attached. Compressed files are saved to the i-mode/Other folder in My picture with \_M added to the original file name.
- When the compressed image saved in My picture of Data box or the i-mode/Other folder of i-motion is deleted, images attached to mail saved in Unsent messages may also be deleted.
- Images and melodies that cannot be attached appear in gray.
- Flash movies, frames and stamps cannot be attached.
- Melody may not be played properly if other party is not using a FOMA SH900i, SH901iC, SH700i or
- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- Images shot with FOMA terminal that have file restrictions are sent but cannot be forwarded by other party.
- Some i-motion are not available. Image quality may deteriorate or continuous still pictures may appear for recipient depending on handset model. Preset melodies cannot be attached.
- Melodies that would cause total data amount to exceed limit when added to message text are also included in the list of melodies attachable to mail.

### Melodies and still pictures are not attached in the following

- Message data exceeds 10,000 bytes when melody or still picture is attached.
- Ten melodies or still pictures are already attached.

### Still pictures and i-motion that exceed 10,000 bytes are not attached in the following

- i-motion data exceeds 500 KB (512,000 bytes).
- Remaining message data (including melody and images) is less than 200 bytes and less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail.
- Still picture or i-motion exceeding 10,000 bytes is already attached.

### **Checking attachments**

• In compose message screen, select attachment field with a file attached and press (Check file). Pasted data

• Pasted melody (MFi) is not quoted when replying or forwarding. Forwarding with Ir exchange is also not available.

### **Related Operations**

### Disable attachments < Release attach>

In the compose message screen of step 2, select file in attachment field • • • 5 5.

### Attach an image shot while composing message <Activate camera>

In the compose message screen of step 2, select attachment field • • • • • • • or (•) (shutter) ▶ (•).

• To erase shot still picture and redo: Press @ CLR.

#### Note

#### Attaching shot images

- If Auto save mode (P. 193) is set to **ON**, preview screen after shooting does not appear.
- Camera does not activate if maximum amount of files are already attached.

# Saving and Sending i-mode Mail Later

Save i-mode mail being composed to FOMA terminal and continue composing at a later time. Edit saved i-mode mail and send.

• Refer to P. 255 and P. 256 for details on creating i-mode mail.

### Saving i-mode Mail

## Press while creating i-mode mail ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 255).



- · i-mode mail being created is saved as unsent mail.
- Save up to 10,000 bytes with attachment for standard i-mode mail.
- Save up to 521,800 bytes of large attachments (still pictures and i-motion) and mail message. Save up to 521,600 bytes for Deco-mail with large attachment

### **Note**

 Press with address, subject or message entered. End confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.

## **Editing/Sending Sent/Saved i-mode Mail**

Editing/Resending sent i-mode mail

### In stand-by, press 🖻 🗷 🎎 .

- Outbox list appears.

# Select folder, press (●), select i-mode mail and press (●).

• Message details screen appears.

Total Canal Ook : Cana

- Press to show previous or next mail.
- Press (1) [List] and the sent messages list reappears.
- When a melody is attached, the melody plays. Melody is not played if Melody Auto replay (EFP. 293) is set to Auto replay off. To stop melody, press . Melody also stops when another screen is
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message. (底) P. 280)

# Edit/Resend mail.

inColleague 2 Coterie ③Friend 適ケータイ本。ストヘ。ットSH

	Press ♠2♣ → edit mail → ♠ [Send].  • Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 255 for details.
To resend	Press a. T.Za.

## Editing/Sending saved i-mode mail

1 In stand-by, press @ এঞ, select i-mode mail and press 🗨.

• Compose message screen appears.

# Select item, press , edit and press [ [Send].

- Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 255 for details.
- i-mode mail is sent.
- Sent mail is saved in *Outbox*. Mail is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (EP P. 290).

### **Auto Receive**

# Receiving i-mode Mail

Set Receive option setting (126 P. 269) to OFF to receive i-mode mail automatically.

- Save up to 100 to 1,000 received mail. (Capacity varies depending on size of received mail.)
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected mail is overwritten. Protect important i-mode mail. (Confirmation message does not appear.)
- i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center in the following circumstances.
  - Handset is turned offUsing video-phone
- While in Self mode
- Outside the service area
- During Ir exchange Receive option setting is set to *ON*
- Memory is full due to a large number of protected or unread mail

#### Note

 "/"or "//" is inserted at the end of messages exceeding 10,000 single-byte characters (5,000 double-byte characters) and exceeding portions are deleted.

### **Meaning of icons**

Icon	Status	
	Unread mail. (译 P. 268)	
$\sim$	FOMA terminal received mail is full.  View unread messages (電 P. 268), disable i-mode mail protection (電 P. 284) or delete unnecessary mail (電 P. 283).	
(blue)	Mail is held at center. (When Receive option setting is set to <i>OFF</i> .) Perform Check new message (© P. 270) to receive i-mode mail.	
(green)	Mail is held at center. (When Receive option setting is set to <b>ON</b> .) Perform Receive option ( P. 269) to receive i-mode mail.	
	Center is full. Perform Check new message (侄子P. 270).	
PIM O	PIM is locked.When mail PIM is locked, terminal security code is required to check i-mode mail. (©F P. 153)	

- 🖾 (blue) does not always appear when mail is held at the i-mode center.
- 🖾 (blue) and 🖻 do not appear when Receive option setting is set to ON. (🖙 P. 269)
- Mail ring tone does not sound while call is in progress, running i-αppli or playing i-motion/melodies.
- Copy mail from FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Card or copy mail from miniSD to FOMA terminal handset.
- Number of characters shown on screen differs depending on font size setting.

## i-mode mail is automatically received (☐ flashes).



- Mail is not automatically received if Receive option setting is set to ON.
- To abort receiving mail, press (•) while receiving.
- Aborted mail is held at i-mode center.
   ( blue) appears)
- · Mail is received depending on timing.

# After reception, receive results appear and mail ring tone sounds (□ appears).



- Received mail is saved in *Inbox*. Mail is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (P. 290).
- When i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, ring tone set for the last message/mail received sounds.

# Select Mail in receive results screen and press .



- Inbox list appears.
- Folders holding unread mail are pink.
- SMS are also saved in Inbox.
- If no operations are performed in receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen from before reception automatically reappears and xx mail message(s) appears.
- Received Message R/F are automatically shown according to Auto message display (P P. 237) setting.

# Select folder, press , select i-mode mail and press .

• Refer to P. 282 for details on viewing received mail.

#### Note

- Send/Receive melodies, movies and still pictures as i-mode mail attachments. Unsupported files are
  deleted at the i-mode center. Attachment deleted is added to the message in such cases.
- Melody plays if Melody Auto replay is set to ON. Press (•) or move to another screen to stop.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message.
- 管画像あり (image) appears in message text when JPEG images over 10,000 bytes are attached to i-mode mail.
- Melody and i-αppli To are invalidated if both are attached.
- If data from received mail (message + attachments or pasted data) exceeds character limit (data amount) set in メールサイズ制限 (Limit mail size) of オプション設定 (Options), attachments and pasted data are deleted at i-mode center. Attachments and pasted data cannot be received once deleted.
- For Deco-mail (電子 P. 258) with image pasted, 國 (image retrieval failed) appears if Receive attached file (電子 P. 294) is off.
- Check if i-mode mail received from FOMA terminal and PCs were received as To, Cc or Bcc. (EFP. 282)
- While mail PIM is locked, mail receive results and Message R/F automatic display are not available even if i-mode mail or Message R/F is received. Mail ring tone does not sound.
- If i-mode mail is received when there is no available space in memory and no unprotected read mail,
   Folder is full. appears. 0 appears for the number of messages in receive results screen.

Wal

#### Note

#### Checking for new mail with vibrator

• In stand-by, press () (shutter) with the FOMA terminal closed to use the vibrator as an alert for missed calls, Record message, new mail, unread mail, mail held at the i-mode center and voice mail messages. If there are any, *Pattern 1* will activate twice. If there are none, *Pattern 2* will activate twice. (Refer to P. 123 for details on the vibrator. Not available in viewer position.)

### Stopping ring tone

- · Press the following.

  - Other keys ...... Ring tone stops and receive results screen remains.

### Receiving when not in stand-by

■ appears. Received results screen does not appear.

### **Receive Option**

# Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail

### Select and receive i-mode mail held at the i-mode center.

- Set Receive option setting to ON in advance.
- When Receive option setting is ON, i-mode mail is not automatically received.

### When i-mode Mail is Received

When Receive option setting is set to **ON** and mail is received, the screen on the right appears in stand-by. (Receive option notice)



Press any key to clear display. To select and receive i-mode mail, clear display first.

- When the screen on the right appears and a call is received, after the call, the screen reappears even if and are pressed.
- When the screen on the right appears, the mail ring tone and vibrator do not activate.

### Selectively Receiving i-mode Mail <Receive Option>



## In stand-by, press 🗐 🗐 📆 .



- Connects to i-mode center and held mail appears.
- When Receive option setting is set to OFF, Please make sure "receive option" in "mail setting" is turned ON appears. Press 

   and Receive option setting screen appears. Press
   to turn setting ON and then press

# **2** Select 受信 (Receive), 削除 (Delete), or 保留 (Hold) for each i-mode mail and press ●.



- Press (\*) to check sections not shown.
- The following marks appear to the right of attached file size.

in : Image attached.

: Melody attached.

: i-motion attached. (Does not appear when pasted.)

 3 Select 受信/削除 (Receive/Delete), press ⊙, select 決定 (OK) and press ⊙.

4

Open received i-mode mail. ( steps 3 and 4 on P. 268)

### **Related Operations**

Selectively receive mail from i-mode menu list <Receive option>

In stand-by, press **③** ▶ *iMenu* ▶ **③** ▶ **③**メニューリスト (Menu List) ▶ ◆メール選択受信 (Receive option) ▶ **⑥**.

### **Check New Message**

# **Checking for i-mode Mail**

Received i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. ( P. 267) Retrieve mail from i-mode center.

- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F). (PP P. 292)
- All i-mode mail is retrieved when checking new message even if Receive option setting is set to ON.
- After checking new messages, if checked again while \( \begin{align\*} \begin{align\*} \text{is flashing, messages are not checked. } \( \mathbf{0} \) appears for all types of mail.
- All types are enabled as default setting. (PP. 292)
- Refer to P. 305 for details on checking for SMS.

# In stand-by, press জি 🗷 জ or 👔 🕰 🖽 .

- Alternatively, select 

   (Mail) or 

   (i-mode) → Check new message from Top menu.
- Or, perform Check new message by pressing twice in stand-by.
- New messages are checked.
- Check new message (№ P. 292) is performed in accordance with settings from i-mode mail → MessageR → MessageF.
- (Icons ( $\square$ ,  $\blacksquare$ ,  $\blacksquare$ ) appear for each type checked.)
- To abort receiving mail, press while receiving.
- Aborted mail is held at i-mode center ( (do (blue) appears).
- Mail is received depending on timing.

# Results appear, and the mail ring tone sounds when i-mode mail are received.

- · Check finishes.
- 0 appears when no i-mode mail are held at center.
- When i-mode mail and Message R/F are received, ring tone set for the last message/mail received sounds
- To stop, press @ ... Other keys also stop ring tone. (PP. 269)

# In the receive results screen, select *Mail* and press **①**.



- Inbox list appears.
- Folders holding unread mail are pink.
- If no operations are performed in the receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception reappears.
- Stays in i-mode stand-by ( flashes).
- i-mode mail received after checking for new messages does not automatically open.



# Select folder, press •, select i-mode mail and press •.

• Refer to P. 282 for details on viewing received mail.

#### Note

- Refer to P. 267 for icon meanings for Check new message results.
- Depending on signal strength, error message may appear and connection may be interrupted.
- If Check new message is used to receive i-mode mail when there is no available space in memory and no unprotected read mail, Folder is full. appears. 0 appears for the number of messages in receive results screen.

### In viewer position

### Checking new message in viewer position

In stand-by, press of for 1+ seconds.

### Reply i-mode Mail

# Replying to i-mode Mail

Reply to i-mode mail by quoting message or not quoting message.

- Not available when sent mail memory is full.
- Refer to P. 306 for details on replying to SMS.

# 1

# Open i-mode mail ( steps 1 to 4 on P. 268), press and select reply method.



To reply	Press 2 2.	
	Re: is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.	
T	,	
To quote from message	Press 3 .	
and reply	<ul> <li>&gt; is inserted in message and received mail content is quoted.</li> </ul>	
	For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are quoted.	

- When selected i-mode mail cannot be replied to, Wrong reply dest appears.

# Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Edit subject and message.
- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 255 for details.
- Press as in compose message screen to save as unsent mail.

#### Note

- Press while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If  $\blacksquare$  is pressed in unedited reply screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.
- Subject for reply mail is the received mail Subject with Re: entered at the beginning. If subject (including Re:) exceeds 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters, exceeding portion is deleted.
- If message (including >) exceeds 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters, exceeding portion is deleted.
- Cannot reply to sender with mail address over 50 characters, or if sender using フレンドメール12 (Friend mail 12) of 音モードメールplus (i-mode mail plus). When mail cannot be replied to, 

  appears in received messages screen.
- Images are not attached when using Reply with quote to reply to i-mode mail with images.
- For i-mode mail using Reply with quote, signature is not added even when auto signature is set.
- Adding Secret code to mail is necessary for recipients with Secret code registered. (@P. 257)
- If i-αppli To is pasted in message, i-αppli To is not quoted even with Reply with quote. Additionally, i-αppli
  To data cannot be sent with Data Link Software or Ir exchange.
- When Keypad dial lock (FP P. 154) is set, replies cannot be sent to addresses not in phonebook.

### Replying Quickly <Quick Reply>

Send reply quickly from received messages screen.

• Register message as Quick reply mail (@P. 294) in advance. Save up to ten messages.

Quick reply
1 法上後でかけ直します
2 ○ Kです
3 N Gです
4 ありがとうございます
5 ごめんなさい
6 よろしくお願い致しま
7 キャンセルです
8 今忙しい

○ちょっと待ってくださ

Select message and press .

- Compose message screen appears.
  - Check address, subject and message.
  - To check message, select *Message* and press (•) [OK].

Press ( [Send].

Mail is sent.

### In viewer position

### Using Quick reply in viewer position

- 1 Open i-mode mail (ﷺ steps 1 to 4 on P. 268) ▶ (right guidance) ▶ ¶ Quick reply ▶ (shutter).
- 2 Compose message ▶ (•) (shutter) ▶ (•) (left guidance) [Send].

# **Forwarding to Another Address**

### Forward received i-mode mail to other parties.

- Not available when sent mail memory is full.
- SMS cannot be forwarded.

# 1

## Open i-mode mail ( steps 1 to 4 on P. 268) and press ( and press (

- Compose message screen appears.
- Fw: is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.
- The received message is entered as is.
- For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are forwarded.

# 2

### Create and send i-mode mail.

- Edit subject and message.
- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 255 for details.
- Press 3 in compose message screen to save as unsent mail.

### Note

- If 🖅 is pressed in unedited forward screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.
- Subject for forwarded mail is the received mail Subject with Fw: entered at the beginning. If subject (including Fw:) exceeds 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters, exceeding portion is deleted.
- If message exceeds 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters after editing, exceeding portion is deleted.
- For i-mode mail to be forwarded, signature is not added even when Auto signature is set.
- If i-mode mail is received while viewing phonebook, close phonebook before forwarding mail.

### When melody or image is attached

- Melodies and images are forwarded. However, if sending to handset other than FOMA SH900i, SH901iC, SH700i or SH901iS, melody may not play correctly.
- i-αppli To, i-mode mail attachment and files with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal are deleted.
- Up to ten melodies can be attached depending on file size.

# Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook

Save sender, mail address or phone number in the phonebook. Also save mail addresses contained in messages.

- Save as New or Add/overwrite.
- For SMS, the sender's/recipient's phone number is saved in the phone number field of phonebook.
- Mail addresses that exceed 50 single-byte characters cannot be saved.
- Cannot save while Keypad dial lock is set.
- New phonebook entries cannot be saved if there are 500 entries in FOMA terminal handset phonebook or 50 entries in FOMA card phonebook already saved.
- フレンドメール12 (Friend mail 12) of 音モードメールplus (i-mode mail plus) addresses are not saved.

### Saving Sender/Mail Address to Phonebook < Register Address>



# In received messages screen, press ( and select a saving method.

• For sent mail, press B in sent messages screen.

To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	Press 🝱.
To save new to FOMA card phonebook	Press 2 de la companya della company
To add/overwrite phonebook	Press $3 \Rightarrow$ name $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

- Sender or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations.
   (№ P. 96, P. 103)
- If phonebook PIM is locked, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to save to phonebook.

#### Note

- When there are multiple addresses, select address screen appears after performing step 1. Select an address and press (•).
- When mail or SMS is received while operating phonebook, saving the mail address and phone number to phonebook is not available.

# Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses from Message to Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>



In received messages screen, select phone number or mail address, press (a) # 372 and select a saving method.

To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	Press 1.4.
To save new to FOMA card phonebook	Press 2 2.
To add/overwrite phonebook	Press $3 \stackrel{.}{\Rightarrow} \rightarrow \text{name} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

 Selected phone number or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (PP P. 96, P. 103)

### **Receive Image Mail**

# **Opening Image Mail Images**

View images from large attachment files (still pictures) or mail with image URLs.

**Example: When opening large attachment files (still pictures)** 

# 1

Open mail with large attachment file (吃了steps 1 to 4 on P. 268), select 適画像あり (image) in the message and press ①.

- Images are retrieved and saved in the i-mode/Other folder in My picture of Data box.
- When there is no available space in memory, delete unnecessary files and increase space to save.
- Still picture appears.
- A large image file (still picture) is not attached if unable to be retrieved.
- When image URL is included in mail message, select the URL and press ●. i-mode connect confirmation screen appears. Press [a] [Yes] to connect to i-mode and image appears.
- Procedure for saving image is the same as downloading from a site. Refer to P. 225 for details.

# Playing/Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

A URL to view i-motion is included in received i-motion mail. 過あり (movie) appears. Select the URL to retrieve i-motion files from the i-motion mail center and play back.



# Open i-motion attached mail (\*\*) steps 1 to 4 on P. 268), select URL in message and press (•).

- Connect to site? appears in i-mode connect screen. Press [a] [Yes] to begin receiving.
- i-motion is downloaded and played back. Some i-motion files automatically play during download, and data acquisition screen appears after playback.
- Remaining number of play times appears for i-motion with play number limit. To play, select Yes and press (●).
- Expiration date appears for some i-motion.
- Replay period appears for some i-motion.
- To save i-motion, press 
   m
   while downloaded i-motion is paused or stopped.
- When i-motion auto replay (TP P. 335) is set to No, a screen appears to select whether to play or save after i-motion download is complete.

#### Note

- Downloading i-motion is canceled when voice call is received immediately after downloading is started.
- i-motion mail sent to an i-mode terminal that is held at the i-motion mail center can be retrieved 50 times for each URL. After the 50th time, i-motion retrieval is no longer possible.
- Compliant software is necessary for i-motion playback on PC or other device. (©P P. 583 "About Movie Player Software") Refer to DoCoMo web page for details.
- Some i-motion may not play properly after being downloaded.
- For i-motion that play during download, when unable to play due to weak signal, play after downloading is completed.

### **Check File**

# **Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File**

Check, save and delete attached images, movies and melodies.

 Files are saved in i-mode/Other in My picture of Data box, i-mode/Other in i-motion, or Melody folder in Melody.



### 

- Attached file list appears.
- For sent mail, press 
   6 ...
- To check attachment URL, press @ 9 .....

# 2

## Select file with (\*) and check.

To check attachme	nts	Press ● [Agree].  • Attachment is shown or played.
To save attachmen	ts	Press $\widehat{\blacksquare}$ [Save] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\blacksquare}$ .
To delete	Delete one	Press $\bigcirc$ [Delete] $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
attachments	Delete all	Press $\bigcirc$ [Delete] $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$

#### Note

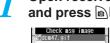
Some images may not appear correctly. Images with width or height exceeding 2,048 pixels or total image
area exceeding 1,536(W) × 2,048(H) can be received but may not be displayed. If size exceeds limit,
image is received but not shown.

### **Check Message Image**

# **Checking and Saving Deco-mail Images**

Check and save images inserted in Deco-mail.

• Image is saved to the i-mode/Other folder in My picture of Data box.



Open received mail with image inserted ( $\mathfrak{P}$  steps 1 to 4 on P. 268) and press  $\mathfrak{DP}$ .



# Select image with (\*) and check.

To check image	Press   [Agree].
To save image	Press $\widehat{\mathbf{s}}$ [Save] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\mathbf{o}}$ .

#### Note

- For attached images, check and save with Check message image.
- Movies and JPEG images 10,001 bytes or more cannot be saved from Check file.

### **Save Template**

# Saving Deco-mail as Templates

Save a Deco-mail as a template.

• The template is saved to **Deco-mail picture** folder in My picture of Data box.

1

Open received Deco-mail ( steps 1 to 4 on P. 268), press , select Save template and press .

- Template save confirmation screen appears.

2

Select Yes and press .

· Saves as a template.

### **Note**

- Attachments are not saved for received Deco-mail.
- When an inserted image has file restrictions, the image is deleted.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (PP P. 393)

# Displaying Messages in Outbox and Inbox

#### Check sent/received/unsent i-mode mail and SMS.

- Both i-mode mail and SMS are saved in Inbox/Outbox.
- i-mode mail of up to 5,000 double-byte characters can be sent and received.
- "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of i-mode mail exceeding 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters and exceeding portions are deleted. The deleted portion cannot be read.
- For sent messages and unsent messages combined, save up to 50 to 101 i-mode mail and 20 SMS. Note that 100 messages is the maximum to save as sent messages or as unsent messages. (Capacity varies depending on size of messages.)
- For received messages, save up to 100 to 1,000 i-mode mail and 20 SMS. (Capacity varies depending on size of received messages.)
- Manage sent and received i-mode mail and SMS in folders. The FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card each have Inbox and Outbox folders. Folders can be created on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Sent mail in Outbox of FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card are shown together in the Outbox folder of the Sent messages list. This also applies for the Inbox folder in the Inbox list.

### In stand-by, press (1.73) [Inbox].

- Inbox list appears. Folder is pink when there are unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- For sent mail, press @ 2 in stand-by.
- For unsent mail, press @35 in stand-by.

## Select folder, press $(\bullet)$ , select i-mode mail or SMS and press $(\bullet)$ .





Message screen

- Message content appears.
- For unsent mail, selecting a folder is unnecessary.
- To view mail in mail-type i-αppli folder, select folder, press 
   α, select View *i-mode mail*, press (•), select mail and press (•).

1, 0	
To end viewing	Press ≅ <sup>™</sup> .
· ·	Press ${\color{red} {\bf i}}$ [List] or ${\color{red} {\bf \Theta}^{\alpha_R}} \to {\rm select}$ mail from messages list.
	Press

### In viewer position

### Viewing messages in viewer position

- 1 In stand-by, press () (shutter) ▶ ☑ (mail) ▶ () (shutter).
- 2 Select Inbox or Outbox ▶ (shutter) ▶ folder ▶ (shutter) ▶ mail ▶ (shutter).
  - To end viewing: Press (c) several times.

### **Related Operations**

### Message screen operations

Operation	In normal position	In viewer position
Scroll down	$\odot$	•
Scroll up	•	0
Scroll down one screen	Ď	(right guidance) for 1+ seconds
Scroll up one screen	Ġ	i (left guidance) for 1+ seconds
Scroll down automatically*	# 📆 for 1+ seconds	-
Scroll up automatically*	<b>★</b> for 1+ seconds	_
Show next mail	$\odot$	C
Show previous mail	$\odot$	•

<sup>\*</sup> To stop Auto scroll, press ##, \*\* or a dial key.

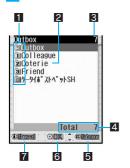
### **Use Assistant View**

While composing message, press ( (shutter) for 1+ seconds in viewer position).

Make calls from message screen <Call from entry>

## **Message Box List Layout**

### Outbox list



- 1 Folder icons
  - 1 : Created folder

For folders (a) to (3), press (2) to (9.5) to open corresponding sent messages list.

Mail-type i-αppli folder

2 Folder name

Shows up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

- 3 Total i-mode mail and SMS sent
- 4 Number of i-mode mail and SMS in selected folder
- 5 Press to create or delete folders.
- Press to list sent i-mode mail and sent SMS saved in the selected folder
- 7 Press (a) to list all sent i-mode mail and sent SMS saved.

### Inbox list



1 Folder icons

Appears in pink when an unread message is saved.

ា: Created folder

For folders ① to ③, press 💯 to 🖭 to open corresponding received messages list.

Mail-type i-αppli folder

2 Folder name

Shows up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

- 3 Total i-mode mail and SMS received
- 4 Number of unread i-mode mail and unread SMS in selected folder/total in folder
- 5 Press (a) to create or delete folders.
- Press to list received i-mode mail and received SMS saved in the selected folder.
- 7 Press (≰) to list all received i-mode mail and received SMS saved.

## Unsent messages list



1 Folder icons

Mail-type i-αppli folder

2 Total i-mode mail and SMS not sent

3 Attached data

2 : Melody attached.

il (blue): GIF image attached.

(blue): JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached.

(pink): JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.

: Movie or i-motion attached.

Subject (Messages with no subject appear as *Untitled*.) Message subject appears. Shows up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

5 Date/Time saved

Time for current day and date for other days.

6 Mail type

: Unsent i-mode mail

■: Unsent SMS

7 Press a to delete mail, etc.

Press ● in i-mode mail or SMS to show the editing screen for the selected unsent i-mode mail or unsent SMS.

#### **Note**

 When deleting a mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete the automatically created mail folder. If the mail folder contains a protected message, the software and folder cannot be deleted.

### miniSD Memory Card

- Copy i-mode mail and SMS data saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (☼ P. 385) or view i-mode mail or SMS saved on miniSD Memory Cards (溪 P. 387).
- Copy i-mode mail and SMS data saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (©P P. 388).

#### Ir exchange

Send and receive i-mode mail and SMS data saved on FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange.
 (№ P. 400)

### **FOMA** card

- Copy SMS data saved on the FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card (P. 307) or view SMS saved on FOMA card (P. 305).
- Copy SMS data saved on FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset.

### Messages List/View Layout for Sent and Received Mail

### Sent messages list layout



1 Mail type (protection)

Sent i-mode mail Sent i-mode mail (protected) Sent SMS (protected)

Sent SMS

Sent SMS on FOMA card

Mail-type i-αppli sent i-mode mail Mail-type i-αppli sent i-mode mail (protected)

In the Outbox folder, i-mode mail and SMS in Outbox on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown mixed together.

Shows up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

3 Attached data

: Melody attached.

: GIF image attached. 鄙 (blue)

: JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached. : JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.

: Movie or i-motion attached.

4 Subject (Messages with no subject appear as *Untitled*.)

Message subject appears. Shows up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters

5 Sent date and time

Time for current day and date for other days.

6 Press (a) to move or delete i-mode mail.

Press (•) to show the selected i-mode mail screen or SMS screen.

Press (i) to switch the display in the following order: Subject → Name (mail address when name not in phonebook) → Mail address (phone number for SMS).

### Sent messages view layout



1 Folder name

Displayed according to font size settings.

Large font : 11 single-byte (5 double-byte) characters : 15 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters Small font : 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters

2 Protected icon

Appears when protected.

3 Sent date and time

4 Address (recipient)

Sending type (To/Cc/Bcc)

5 Subject

6 Message

- END - appears at the end of the message.

7 Attachment type icon/file name

Appears when attached file is present.

: Melody attached.

st (blue) : GIF image attached.

: JPEG image 10.000 bytes or less attached. \atop (pink) : JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.

: Movie or i-motion attached.

Attached melody cannot be played (corrupted).

Attached GIF image cannot be displayed (corrupted).

: Attached JPEG image cannot be displayed (corrupted). (pink) : Attached large JPEG image cannot be displayed

(corrupted). Attached i-motion cannot be played (corrupted).

: Invalid data pasted.

8 Press a to edit or delete.

Press and the sent messages list reappears.

Refer to "Related Operations" on P. 278 for details on screen operations.

• If the sender address is saved in Phonebook, their name appears in the recipient field. If it is not saved, the phone number or address appears. However, the name does not appear when phonebook PIM is locked or phonebook is set to Secret (PP P. 114). To show names of secret phonebook entries, set Secret mode (@P. 156) to ON.

### Received messages list layout



1 Mail type (protection)

☐: Unread i-mode mail : Unread i-mode mail (protected) : Read i-mode mail Read i-mode mail (protected) □ Unread SMS : Unread SMS (protected)

3: Read SMS (protected) E : Unread SMS on FOMA card

图: Read SMS on FOMA card

Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail

Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail (protected)

Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail

Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail (protected)

sa: Reply complete (protected) **S**: Reply complete **?**: Forward complete **s**: Forward complete (protected) In the *Inbox* folder, i-mode mail and SMS in *Inbox* on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown mixed together.

Shows up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

3 Attached data

Melody attached or pasted.

: GIF image attached. នីធី (blue)

: JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached.

: JPEG image 10.001 bytes or more attached.

: Large image is saved on the server.

a: i-αppli To information attached.

4 Subject (Messages with no subject appear as *Untitled*.) Message subject appears. Shows up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

5 Received date and time

Time for current day and date for other days.

6 Press a to move or delete i-mode mail.

Press (•) to show the selected i-mode mail screen or SMS screen.

Press (a) to switch the display in the following order: Subject → Name (mail address when name not in phonebook) → Mail address (phone number for SMS).

- The default setting lists messages in the order received at i-mode center, starting with the newest. (The display method can be changed. P. 284)
- SMS are displayed as follows, depending on the other party.

  - When the other party sends caller ID and is not saved in phonebook............. 090 (or 080, etc.) XXXXXXXX

### Received messages view layout



1 Folder name

Appears according to font size settings.

Large font : 11 single-byte (5 double-byte) characters
Normal : 15 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters
Small font : 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters

2 Protected icon

Appears when protected.

- 3 Shows receiving type (To/Cc/Bcc)
- 4 Received date (Shows date and time received at i-mode center or SMS center.)
- 5 Sender

Sending type (To/Cc: displayed when Broadcast is set.)

- 6 Subject
- 7 Message
  - END appears at the end of the message. When receiving limit is exceeded, "/" or "//" appears and exceeding portions are automatically deleted.
- 8 Attachment type icon/file name

Appears when attached file is present.

Melody attached or pasted.

(blue) : GIF image attached.

(blue) : JPEG image 10,000 bytes or less attached.(pink) : JPEG image 10,001 bytes or more attached.

: URL of i-motion is shown.

3: Attached melody cannot be played (corrupted).

attached GIF image cannot be displayed (corrupted).
 attached JPEG image cannot be displayed (corrupted).

: Invalid data pasted.

9 Press to reply or delete.

10 Press (a) and the received messages list reappears.

Refer to "Related Operations" on P. 278 for details on screen operations.

- If the sender address is saved in phonebook, the name appears in the sender field. If it is not saved, the
  phone number or address appears. However, the name does not appear when phonebook PIM is locked or
  phonebook is set to Secret (PP. 114). To show names of secret phonebook entries, set Secret mode
   (PP. 156) to ON.
- When an image is attached, the image appears.

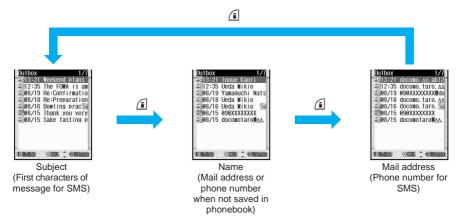
### **Managing Mail**

Delete, sort and separate sent/received i-mode mail and SMS into folders.

- Up to 20 folders (not including *Inbox*, *Outbox*, and mail-type i-αppli folder) can be created, renamed and deleted. However, *Outbox* and *Inbox* names cannot be edited or deleted.
- Delete all is not available for protected mail.

### Switching message display

Press (i) in messages list to switch the display in the following order.



### Protecting messages

 Protect up to 500 received mail, 10 received SMS, 50 sent mail and 10 sent SMS. (The number of protected mail may vary depending on size.)

### Deleting messages

### Sent/Unsent messages

Method	Explanation	Location
Delete all	Deletes all unprotected sent messages/SMS and	Outbox list
	unsent messages/SMS.	Unsent messages list
All in folder	Deletes all unprotected sent messages/SMS and	Sent messages list
	unsent messages/SMS from folder.	i-αppli folder list in Unsent
		messages
Delete selected	Selects and deletes multiple unprotected sent	Sent messages list
	messages/SMS and unsent messages/SMS	Unsent messages list
	collectively.	
Delete one	Deletes sent message/SMS and unsent message/	Sent messages list
	SMS individually.	Sent message screen
		Unsent messages list

### **Received messages**

Method	Explanation	Location
Delete all read	Deletes all unprotected read messages/SMS from all	
	folders including <i>Inbox</i> .	
Delete all unread	Deletes all unprotected unread messages/SMS from	Inbox list
	all folders including <i>Inbox</i> .	IIIDOX IISt
Delete all	Deletes all unprotected read/unread messages/SMS	
	from all folders including Inbox.	
Read in folder	Deletes all unprotected read messages/SMS from	
	folder.	
Unread in folder	Deletes all unprotected unread messages/SMS from	
	folder.	Received messages list
All in folder	Deletes all unprotected messages/SMS from folder.	
Delete selected	Selects and deletes multiple unprotected received	
	messages/SMS collectively.	
Delete one	Deletes message/SMS individually.	Received messages list
		Received messages screen

## Sorting messages

### For sent messages

Date (new $\rightarrow$ old)	Latest sent date first	
Date (old $\rightarrow$ new)	Latest sent date last	
By address	Depending on mail address, numbers → upper case alphabet → lower case alphabet	
By subject	Messages are sorted by subject in the following order: Single-byte (symbols $\rightarrow$ numbers $\rightarrow$ upper case alphabet $\rightarrow$ lower case alphabet $\rightarrow$ katakana) $\rightarrow$ double-byte (symbols $\rightarrow$ numbers $\rightarrow$ upper case alphabet $\rightarrow$ lower case alphabet $\rightarrow$ hiragana $\rightarrow$ katakana $\rightarrow$ symbols/special characters $\rightarrow$ kanji $\rightarrow$ pictographs). (Messages are sorted by character code.)	
Protected mail*	Protected mail → normal mail	
Message with attachments*	Mail with attachments → mail without attachments	

<sup>\*</sup> Messages are sorted with newest mail first in each criterion.

### For received messages

Date (new $\rightarrow$ old)	Latest received date first
Date (old $\rightarrow$ new)	Latest received date last
By address	Depending on mail address, numbers $\rightarrow$ upper case alphabet $\rightarrow$ lower case alphabet
By subject	Same as <i>By subject</i> above
Unread/protected/read*	Unread protected $\rightarrow$ unread $\rightarrow$ read protected $\rightarrow$ read
Message with attachments*	Mail with attachments → mail without attachments

<sup>\*</sup> Messages are sorted with newest mail first in each criterion.

### **Related Operations**

### Create folders < New folder>

### Edit folder names <Edit folder name>

- 1 In the Outbox list (♥ P. 278) or Inbox list (♥ P. 278), select folder ▶ 🔊 🖾 .
- 2 Edit folder name ▶ (•).
  - To delete folder name: Press @ cr 1+ seconds.

### Delete created folders < Delete>

- 1 In the Inbox list (♥ P. 278), select folder ▶ № 5₺ ▶ 4₺.
  - To delete folder in Outbox: In the Outbox list, select folder ▶ a 5 €
- 2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ Yes ▶ ●.

### Move folder order upward <Move folder up>

In the Outbox list (♥ P. 278) or Inbox list (♥ P. 278), select folder • • 4 ...

### Move sent/received messages to different folders <Move>

- 1 In the sent (☞ P. 280)/received (☞ P. 281) messages list, select mail ▶ (□ 1...)
- 2 Press 1.2.
  - To move all files in the folder: Press 22.
  - To move selected mail in the folder: Press 3 → mail (repeat)
     (repeat)
- 3 Select folder ▶ ●.

### Move to folder from message screen <Move one>

- 1 In the received messages screen (PP. 282), press 6 5.....
  - In the sent messages screen: Press @ 4.5.
- 2 Select folder ▶ ●.

### Protect sent/received messages <Protect set>

- 1 In the received messages screen (PP. 282), press Protect set .
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To disable: Press 24.

### **Related Operations**

### Delete mail individually < Delete one>

- 1 In the received messages screen (PP P. 282), press 2.
  - To delete a sent message: In the sent messages screen, press 5 5.
- 2 Select Yes ▶ (•).

### Delete mail individually from messages list < Delete one>

In the sent (☞ P. 280)/received (☞ P. 281) messages list or unsent messages list (☞ P. 279), press 🌬 🖾 🕩 Yes 🕨 .

### Delete all messages <Delete all>

- 1 In the Outbox list (P. 278) or Inbox list (P. 278), press 5.
  - In sent/received messages list or unsent messages list: Press 22.
- 2 Press 3 ...
  - To delete all read mail: Press 1.4.
  - To delete all unread mail: Press 22.
  - In the Outbox list: Press 1.3.
- 3 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ Yes ▶ ●.

### Select mail and delete < Delete selected>

- 1 In the sent (PP. 280)/received (PP. 281) messages list or unsent messages list (PP. 279), press 22.
- 2 Press 5 %.
  - For sent/unsent message: Press 33.
- 3 Select mail (●) (repeat) ▶ (■ [Complete] ▶ Yes ▶ (●).

### Delete mail in i-αppli folder <Delete>

- 1 In the Outbox list (♥ P. 278) or Inbox list (♥ P. 278), select i-αppli folder ▶ ⊕ € ...
- - To delete selected messages: Press @ 2 ₺ 5 ₺ mail (•) (repeat) (f) [Complete] Yes (•).

### Sort sent/received messages <Sort>

In the sent (☞ P. 280)/received (☞ P. 281) messages list, press 🍙 🕉 🕨 sort method 🕨

### Note

### **Creating folders**

- Folders cannot be created on FOMA card.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a folder name.
- Outbox, Inbox and mail-type i-αppli folder names cannot be changed.
- When a mail-type i-αppli is downloaded, a mail-type i-αppli folder is automatically created in Outbox, Inbox and Unsent messages.
- Mail-type i-αppli folders are named with the downloaded mail-type i-αppli name and cannot be changed.

### **Deleting folders**

- Outbox and Inbox cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing messages can be deleted.
- When a folder is deleted, messages saved in the folder are also deleted. Folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted.
- When there is software compatible with mail-type i-αppli folder, the folder cannot be deleted. Delete the software and then delete the folder. When there is no compatible software, the folder can be deleted, but deleting one mail-type i-αppli folder created in Sent message, Received message or Unsent messages list will also delete all other mail-type i-αppli folders.

#### **Related Operations**

#### **Note**

#### **Moving messages**

- *Outbox*, *Inbox* and mail-type i-αppli folder cannot be moved.
- SMS on FOMA card cannot be moved within card.
- Sent messages are saved in *Outbox*. Received messages are saved in *Inbox*.
   Mail is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (PP P. 290).
- Sent/Received messages can be sorted automatically. (PP. 289)
- Already received i-αppli mail can be manually sorted into the folders automatically created when downloading a mail-type i-αppli.

#### **Protecting mail**

SMS on FOMA card cannot be protected. Copying a protected SMS to FOMA card will cancel
protection.

#### **Deleting mail**

- When deleting multiple mail collectively, protected i-mode mail, SMS and FOMA card SMS are not deleted.
- Depending on i-αppli software, i-αppli mail may be automatically deleted.

#### Sorting

- In Inbox and Outbox, i-mode mail, FOMA terminal handset SMS and FOMA card SMS are sorted.
- The default setting is sort by Date (new → old).
- Sort method returns to default setting when screens other than messages list are displayed. Press ( after checking message screen with changed display method. When messages list is viewed again after *Move one* or *Delete one*, the changes remain.

#### **Received/Sent Messages History**

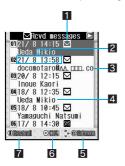
## **Using Mail History**

The FOMA terminal stores a history of 30 sent/received i-mode mail or SMS starting with the newest. Use history to send mail, make voice/video-phone calls or save the other party's mail address or phone number to phonebook.

- When 30 entries are exceeded, entries are erased starting with the oldest.
- Parties that repeat are assigned as separate entries.
- Mail addresses from Broadcast mail are not recorded. All successfully sent mail can be checked in sent messages screen. (PP P. 257)
- Up to 50 single-byte characters appear for mail addresses.

## Received/Sent messages list layout

Here is an example using the received messages list screen.



1 Types of history

: i-mode mail

SMS: SMS

 : Mail that cannot be replied to, or SMS with no caller ID (Received messages history)/unsent messages (Sent messages history)

- Receive date (Received messages history)/Sent date (Sent messages history)
- 3 Other party's mail address or phone number
- 4 Name
- (Appears when the same mail address or phone number is already saved in phonebook.)
- 5 Submenu
- 6 Received message/Sent message details screen (press to show.)
- 7 Received calls (Redial for Sent messages history)

Press • in mail history list to switch to Received/Sent messages history.

### Received/Sent message details layout

Here is an example using the received messages details screen.



1 Types of history

- ☐: i-mode mail
- SMS: SMS
- : Mail that cannot be replied to, or SMS with no caller ID (Received messages history)/unsent messages (Sent messages history)
- Receive date (Received messages history)/Sent date (Sent messages history)
- 3 Name

(Appears when the same mail address or phone number is already saved in phonebook.)

- 4 Other party's mail address or phone number
- 5 Submenu
- 6 Compose message screen (press to show.)

#### Note

• Set to not show Received/Sent messages history. (PP. 156)

## Using Received messages history to send a message



## In stand-by, press ⊙ (◄☐) 📵



- Received messages list appears.
- Smaller numbers to the left of date represent newer received messages.
- Show rcvd msgs set to OFF appears when Show received messages is set to OFF.
- When there is no Received messages history, No rcvd messages appears.

## 2

## Select entry and press •.

- · Received message details screen appears.
- Press to end viewing.

? Press • [Mail].



- When i-mode mail history is selected, compose message screen appears.
   Sender's mail address is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 256 for subsequent steps.
- When SMS history is selected, compose SMS screen appears. Sender's phone number is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 302 for subsequent steps.
- Saving phone numbers and mail addresses from Received messages history to phonebook
- In stand-by, press (◄☐) ⑥, select entry, press and ⑥ 📆.



- Alternatively, select entry and press (a) 1.2 in received messages list.
- Select i-mode mail entry and perform operation to save mail address.
- Select SMS entry and perform operation to save phone number.

## Select save method.

To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	Press 1.4.
To save new to FOMA card phonebook	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
To add/overwrite phonebook	Press $3 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow \text{name} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

- Mail address or phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations. (PP P. 98, P. 103)
- Using Sent messages history to send a message
- In stand-by, press ⊙ (□) ⓐ.

Ueda Mikio

- Sent messages list appears.
- Smaller numbers to the left of date represent newer sent messages.
- Show sent msgs set to OFF appears when Show sent messages is set to OFF.
- When there is no Sent messages history, No sent messages appears.
- Select entry and press .
  - Sent message details screen appears.
  - Press ro end viewing.
- ? Press [Mail].
  - When i-mode mail history is selected, compose message screen appears. Recipient's mail address is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 256 for subsequent steps.
  - When SMS history is selected, compose SMS screen appears. Recipient's phone number is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 302 for subsequent steps.

#### Note

- Save phone numbers and mail addresses from Sent messages history to phonebook. Operations are the same as for Received messages history.
- Deleting mail history

History entries can deleted in the following ways.

Delete one	Deletes entries from Received messages history or Sent messages history individually.
Delete all	Deletes all entries from Received messages history or Sent messages history.

#### **Related Operations**

Open received messages history from compose message screen <Received messages>

In the compose message screen (இ P. 255), select To ▶ ● 45 ▶ history ▶ ●.

Open sent messages history from compose message screen <Sent messages> In the compose message screen (இ P. 255), select To ▶ ● ③ ▶ history ▶ ●.

#### Delete mail history < Delete>

- 1 In the received messages list (PP. 287) or sent messages list (PP. 287), press 2 ABC.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To delete all history entries: Press 22.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (•).

#### Make calls from mail history <Call from entry>

- 1 In the received messages list (PP. 287) or sent messages list (PP. 287), press
- 2 Press (•) to make voice call.
  - To make video-phone call: Press ( [V-phone].

#### **Mail Setting**

## **Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions**

## Changing Font Size <Font Size>

Default setting

Normal

Set mail/SMS font size to Large font, Normal or Small font.

• Font size is not changed for message entry screen, messages in compose message screen, Deco-mail preview screen and list screens.



In stand-by, press (a) O (25) (4 dist) and select a font size.

• Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{Y}$  (Mail)  $\rightarrow$  *Mail* setting  $\rightarrow$  *Font* size from Top menu.

Large font	Press 1.2.
Normal	Press 2 %.
Small font	Press 3

### **Related Operations**

Change font size in message screen <Set font size>

In the message screen (126 P. 277), press (a) ▶ ■ Set font size ▶ (a) ▶ font size ▶ (b).

## Sorting Mail Automatically <Sort Rules>

Set Sort rules for folders and sort i-mode mail and SMS automatically.

- Rules to sort mail in *Outbox*, *Inbox* and Unsent messages are not available.
- SMS cannot be sorted to FOMA card.
- Sort up to 25 folders (including i-αppli) in Inbox/Outbox and set up to five rules for each folder.
- Sort normal mail to mail-type i-αppli folders. Sort rules for mail-type i-αppli are prioritized.

#### Sort rules

The following six rules are available.

Address (From)	Sort by mail address (only received mail).
Address (From/Cc) Rcvr/broadcast	Criteria are applied from the folder shown at top to From, To and Cc for received mail and To, Cc, and Bcc for sent mail.
Group	Sort by groups set in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
Subject	Sort by text in subject.
Phonebook empty	Sort mail from senders not saved in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Sort only sent mail containing addresses not saved in phonebook.
Sort all received (sent) mail	Sort all received (or sent) mail.

- Folder 1 has top priority and the folder listed at the bottom has least priority if Sort rules for multiple folders coincide.
- Secret phonebook entries are treated as unsaved entries. Sort by group settings are ignored but Phonebook empty is applied. To use Sort by group, set Secret mode to ON.
- Note that **Sort by group** is disabled while phonebook PIM is locked.

## Setting Sort rules to folders

In Inbox list (P. 278) or Outbox list (P. 278), select folder and press 3.



• Set rules are prioritized from top to bottom.

## Select slot and set Sort rules.

- Select a used slot to edit rules.
- To set mail-type i-αppli folder, Mail will be used in software. Set mail sorting? appears. Select Yes, press 

   and set Sort rules. Select No, press
   and the screen of step 1 reappears.

Sender's mail address	Select slot $\to$ $\bullet$ $\to$ <i>Address(From)</i> $\to$ $\bullet$ $\to$ input method $\to$ $\bullet$ $\to$ select or enter mail address $\to$ $\bullet$ .
Mail address of sender or recipient(s)/broadcast	Select slot $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{o}$ $\rightarrow$ <i>Address(From/Cc)</i> or <i>Rcvr/broadcast</i> $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{o}$ $\rightarrow$ input method $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{o}$ $\rightarrow$ select (or input) mail address $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{o}$ .  • Up to 20 single-byte characters appear.
Group	Select slot $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ $\rightarrow$ <i>Group</i> $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ $\rightarrow$ group $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ . $\bullet$ Group name appears.
Subject	<ul> <li>Select slot → ● → Subject → ● → enter text → ●.</li> <li>Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters. The first 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are shown.</li> </ul>
Mail addresses not in FOMA terminal handset phonebook	Select slot $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ <i>Phonebook empty</i> $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
All received (sent) mail	Select slot → ● → All rcvd messages or All sent messages → ● → Yes → ●.  • All rcvd (sent) msgs is set to ①.  • Select No and press ● to set to specified number.

3

Repeat step 2 to set multiple rules.



Press ( [Complete].

#### Note

- Mail from senders saved in FOMA card phonebook are sorted as *Phonebook empty*.
- i-αppli mail is sorted to the applicable mail-type i-αppli folder regardless of sort rules.

#### Deleting sort rules

Delete sort rules.

1

In Inbox list (P. 278) or Outbox list (P. 278), select folder and press 3.

• Sort rules setting screen appears.

2

Select rule, press and select a deletion method.

To delete one rule	Press $\underbrace{1.\text{?e}}$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\underbrace{\bullet}$ $\rightarrow$ $\underbrace{\bullet}$ [Complete].
To delete all rules	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet$ [Complete].

## Adding Signature to i-mode Mail <Save Signature>

Default setting

OFF

Add a signature and notify name, phone number and mail address.

• Set to add automatically when composing i-mode mail.

- Only one signature can be saved.
- When sending chat mail or i-mode mail, signature is not automatically added to Quick reply, reply with quote
  or mail to be forwarded. Add the signature manually in the message entry screen. (EPP. 256)
- Signature cannot be added to SMS.



In stand-by, press இ்் இ்.

- The signature saving screen appears.
- When a signature is already saved, saved signature appears.

2

## Enter signature, press and Image: [ON].

- Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.
- Line breaks (♣) are available.
- Signature is entered automatically in *Message* when composing a new message.

## **Related Operations**

**Delete signature** 

In stand-by, press @ OFF ▶ OF

## Setting Check New Message Details <Check New Message>

See below

Set message type to check (i-mode mail, Message R/F).

The default setting is ON for i-mode mail, Message R and Message F.

1

## In stand-by, press (a) O (SE) (B (B)), select type and select ON or OFF.



i-mode mail	Press $1.4 \rightarrow 1.4$ [ON] or $2.4$ [OFF].
Message R	Press 2 → 1. [ON] or 2 (OFF).
Message F	Press $3 \stackrel{?}{\Rightarrow} \rightarrow 1 \stackrel{?}{\Rightarrow} [ON]$ or $2 \stackrel{?}{\Rightarrow} [OFF]$ .

2

## Press ( [Complete].

# Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail <Receive Option Setting>

Default setting OFF

 All mail is retrieved when checking for new messages even if Receive option setting is set to ON. To not retrieve all mail, set to not check i-mode mail. (PP P. 270)

1

## In stand-by, press @ O ? and 1. [ON].



## Composing Mail Member List < Mail Member>

Save multiple addresses for a mail member to easily specify multiple addresses. Unlike Broadcast mail, multiple addresses are specified collectively.

- Save up to five mail addresses per mail member.
- Save up to ten mail members.
- Charges are the same as when sending one mail. (Network charges stemming from added users are incurred.)
- Saving addresses for mail members

1

In stand-by, press ( O ) O )

Select slot for mail member, press , select slot to save to and press .



# Select input method, press , select (or enter) mail address and press .



• When slot selected is already in use, *Overwrite?* appears if input method other than ②②② [Direct input] is pressed. Select *Yes* and press ⑥ to select mail address. Select *No*, press ⑥ and the screen of step 3 reappears. If ②②③ [Direct input] is pressed, enter normally. To save mail address, select a slot, press ⑥ and repeat step 3.

# Press (i [Complete].

## Editing mail member names

In stand-by, press @ O E O Select mail member and press @ T.S.



## 7 Edit member name and press ①.

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- Press @ cr 1+ seconds to delete member name.

## Deleting addresses saved for mail members

Use one of the following to delete mail addresses saved for mail members.

In stand-by, press উতি হেট , select mail member, press 🖜

## Select mail address, press and select deletion method.

To delete one mail address	Press $\textcircled{1.8} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \textcircled{i}$ [Complete].
To delete all mail addresses	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ [Complete].
	<ul> <li>Deletes all addresses in specified mail member.</li> </ul>

# Setting Whether to Automatically Replay Melody <a href="Melody Auto Replay"></a>

Default setting
Automatic replay

Set whether to automatically replay melodies attached or pasted to Message R/F or i-mode mail.

In stand-by, press ( ) and select whether to automatically replay melodies.



To automatically replay	1./2	Plays automatically when opened.
To not automatically	2 #c	Does not play automatically when opened.
replay		

#### **Note**

 When Automatic replay is set while in Manner mode, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not. Select Yes to play.

## Setting Quick Reply Mail < Quick Reply Mail>

Set messages in advance for Quick reply (PP. 272).

- Ten messages of up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters can be saved.
- The following are preset messages.

1	また後でかけ直します (Will call back later)	6	よろしくお願い致します (Your cooperation is greatly appreciated)
2	OKです (OK)	7	キャンセルです (Canceled)
3	NGです (No good)	8	今忙しい (Busy)
4	ありがとうございます (Thank you very much)	9	了解しました (Understood)
5	ごめんなさい (Apology)	0	ちょっと待ってください (One moment please)

1

In stand-by, press  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  , select number of the message to save or edit and press  $\bigcirc$ .



- · Registered messages appear.

2

Edit message and press .

# Setting Whether to Receive Attached Files <Receive Attached File>

Default setting
Image and melody

Set whether to receive attached image and melody files.

1

## In stand-by, press @ O ? and select the type of attachment.

Image and melody	Press 1.4.
Image only	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
Melody only	Press 3
To not receive attached file	Press 4

#### Note

- If set to Not receive, attached files cannot be received at a later time. Attached files are deleted at the i-mode center. Notification is not sent when attachments are deleted.
- For Message R/F, all attached files are received.
- Melodies in MFi format in the message text are received regardless of settings.

## **Setting Received Mail Notice While Using Other** Functions < In Use Mail Tone Set>

Set the method to be notified of received mail when using other functions.

• While running i-αppli or playing i-motion, receive display and receive results screen do not appear.



## In stand-by, press (a) O ? 5 ft and select notification method.

• Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{M}$  (Mail)  $\rightarrow$  *Mail setting*  $\rightarrow$  *In use mail tone set* from Top menu.

ON	When receiving mail, received ☑, ℝ, ౯ or  icon appears, called LED lights and Mail ring tone sounds.
OFF	When receiving mail, received ☑, ℝ, F or  icon appears. Mail ring tone does not sound, called LED does not light and vibrator does not activate.

## Checking Mail Settings Status < Check Mail Settings>

Check mail settings.



# In stand-by, press @ Offi, select Check mail settings and press



- Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{M}$  (Mail)  $\rightarrow$  *Mail setting*  $\rightarrow$  *Check mail settings* from Top menu.
- Scroll with (\*) and check.
- Press (•) [Agree] to end checking.

## Resetting Mail Settings < Reset Mail Settings >

Reset mail settings to default values.



In stand-by, press  $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ , select **Reset mail** set and press  $\bigcirc \bigcirc$ .



- Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{M}$  (Mail)  $\rightarrow$  *Mail setting*  $\rightarrow$  *Reset mail set* from Top menu.
- The reset mail settings screen appears.

Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits), press (•), select Yes and press (●).

Numbers are masked with asterisks.

#### Note

Settings for Save signature, Quick reply mail, Mail member, SMS center and SMS expiry are not reset.

### **Related Operations**

#### Lock mail PIM <Security setting>

In stand-by, press @ □ 🚰 🕽 ★ 🛣 (for 1+ seconds) 🕨 enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) • • • 1.3.

## **Creating and Sending Chat Mail**

#### Chat by exchanging mail with multiple parties.

- Requires saving other party's mail address to Chat mail member in advance.
- Include @docomo.ne.jp when saving i-mode mail addresses for chat members.
- User's mail address shown in chat mail member setting screen is linked to Owner information. (127 P. 464)
- Register up to six members including self.
- If chat mail is exchanged between multiple people, charges incurred are the same as for Broadcast mail.
- If the other party's handset does not support Chat mail, mail is sent with チャットメール (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) in the title.
- When using Chat mail with three or more other people, each member must register all other member's mail addresses. Exchange mail addresses with all other members prior to using Chat mail.
- If Receive option setting is set to ON, Chat mail cannot be activated. Set to OFF and try again. (PP P. 292)

### Setting a Chat Member <Set Members>

Save members in advance to use Chat mail.

## 1

## In stand-by, press 🗐 🗗 .

- If a chat member is already registered, chat mail screen (☼ P. 297) appears. To add, press (♠ ◄ ♠), open the member setting screen and proceed to step 2.

# 2

## Press (a) 1.2 and select input method.

Direct input	<ul> <li>Press ② → enter address → ●.</li> <li>Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers and some symbols.</li> <li>Symbols (③ P. 552) and Internet-related phrases (⑤ P. 551) are available.</li> <li>If a mail address is saved to phonebook, the name is automatically registered.</li> </ul>
To select from phonebook	Press ⚠ → recipient → •.  If mail address is not saved, ▷ ₺ ₺ does not appear. Up to three mail address icons are shown.
To select from Sent messages history	Press $3 \longrightarrow \text{recipient} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet$ .
To select from Received messages history	Press $(4.5)$ $\rightarrow$ recipient $\rightarrow (0)$ $\rightarrow (0)$ .
Mail member	Press 5♣ → Yes → ● → member name → ● → ♠ [Complete].  • Replaced by specified mail member. (Members set)  • Save mail member in advance. (❤ P. 292)

- When exchanging Chat mail with a party with a registered secret code, the other party's secret code
  must be saved in advance. (P. 100)
- Same mail address cannot be registered more than once.

3

## Select &, press •, enter chat name and press •.

• Enter up to four single-byte (two double-byte) characters.



## Press [ [Complete] twice.

## Saving and disabling a chat mail member

#### **Note**

• Opening mail with Assistant View is not available during in Chat mail.

When Chat mail auto start is set (P. 301)

• When mail with チャットメール (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) in the title is opened from mail list, auto start confirmation screen appears.

## **Creating and Sending Chat Mail**

1

#### In stand-by, press 🖻 🗗 🛣 .



- When members are not saved, member setting screen appears. Save a member. (☼ P. 296)

# 2

## Press •, enter message and press •.

- Characters are highlighted.
- Enter up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters.

# 3

## Press ( [Send].

- Chat mail is sent to addresses marked 

  ✓.
- When sending fails, error message appears. Press (Confirm) to return to chat mail screen. Unsent chat mail appear red. To resend, repeat steps 2 and 3.

#### Note

- Sent chat mail is saved in Outbox. Mail in accordance with Sort rules (PP P. 290) are saved to set folder.
- Mail that could not be sent is saved in Unsent messages.
- Images and melodies cannot be attached to chat mail.

## **Receiving Chat Mail**

### When chat mail is received while Chat mail is activated

The chat mail tone sounds when mail with  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau} \mathcal{V} \setminus \mathcal{V} - \mathcal{V}$  (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) in the title is received. Moments after receiving chat mail, chat mail message appears at the top. (Other types of mail are not shown while in chat mail screen.)



Chat mail message (Up to 50 messages displayed starting with the newest.)
Up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters are sent.

- Scroll up or down one line with ①.
- Scroll up or down one screen with @ or .

#### **Note**

- Received chat mail is saved in Inbox as read mail. Mail is saved to set folder in accordance with Sort rules (MBP. 290).
- When receiving multiple mail, the chat mail tone rings for the last received mail.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, and Web To (©P. 230) functions are not available even if a phone number, mail address or URL is included. End Chat mail (@P. 299), and open again from Inbox to use Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions.
- When a chat mail with attached file is received, only the message appears in the chat mail screen.

#### When chat mail is received while Chat mail is not activated

- · Chat mail ring tone sounds.
- If Receive option setting is set to ON, Chat mail cannot be activated.

# **1** When mail with チャットメール (Chat mail) (single-byte or double-byte) in the title is opened from mail list, chat mail confirmation screen appears.

- Auto start is not available when set to OFF. Refer to P. 301 for details on Auto start.
- When sender is a registered chat member, Chat member. Start chat mail? appears.
- When sender is an unregistered chat member or disabled (
   Chat member then start chat mail? appears. (Does not register when there are already six registered members.)

## Select Yes and press .



- Selected message is added as a new chat mail message and chat mail screen appears. (If an already added mail is selected, a duplicate message is added as new chat mail.)
- When disabled (□), switches to (♥) and chat mail screen appears.
- To not activate Chat mail, select No, press and received messages screen appears.

#### Note

- When replying by i-mode mail, operations are the same as when using i-mode mail. (FP P. 271)
- Up to four single-byte (two double-byte) characters of names can be displayed on the chat mail screen.
- When a name is not registered, the first four characters of the mail address appears.
- Up to 50 mail are shown, starting with the newest.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Update Chat mail < Update>

In the chat mail screen, press @ 2 2.2.

## **Ending Chat Mail < End Chat Mail>**

Press em or 6 during Chat mail.

- Delete chat mail? appears.
- Unsent chat mail is deleted.
- If spressed while editing chat mail message or set members, Your changes will be lost. End
  anyway? appears. Select Yes, press and stand-by reappears. (Sent/Received chat mail is saved.)
- Select No and press ①.
  - Chat mail ends.
  - To delete and end Chat mail, select Yes and press .

#### **Note**

• If Chat mail is finished without deleting mail, the next time Chat mail is activated the previous mail is displayed.

## Starting Chat Mail from Received Mail <Start Chat Mail>

- Start Chat mail from received mail. Chat mail cannot be activated from Deco-mail or SMS.
- If Receive option setting is set to ON, Chat mail cannot be activated.

In stand-by, press 🖲 📆.

- ullet Alternatively, select  ${f M}$  (Mail) ightarrow from Top menu.
- Inbox list appears.
- ງ Select folder, press ◉, select i-mode mail and press ໖ 歹ὧ..
- Select Yes and press (•).
  Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 297 for subsequent steps.

#### Note

• Chat mail is not available if sender's mail address cannot be replied to.

## Checking Chat Mail Address < New Mail Addresses>

Check addresses of newest chat mail and current chat member. Set and disable unregistered chat member's addresses.

In stand-by, press জিটিজ and 🏻 🗷 🚉 .

- Address confirmation screen for the newest mail appears.
- Set and unset members are shown separately.
- Press (a) [Set], select member and press (o).



- ✓ appears for selected and 
   ☐ appears for unselected entries. Press 

   to switch.
- Select up to five members.

• Resets members and the chat mail screen reappears.

### **Editing Members**

Edit a chat member's name or address.

User cannot edit own mail address.



In stand-by, press 🚊 🗗 and 🖻 🍕 🖫 .

• Member setting screen appears.

2

Select a member and press @ 2 %.



**Edit names and mail addresses and press** (a) [Complete] twice.

• Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 296 for details.

## **Deleting a Member**

User cannot delete self.

1

In stand-by, press 🗟 🗗 🛣 and 🖻 🍕 🖫 .

Member setting screen appears.

2

Select member, press (a) 3 2 and select a deletion method.



To delete one member	Press $\bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ [Complete].
To delete all members	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ [Complete].

#### **Note**

## **Deleting Chat Mail < Delete Chat Mail>**

Delete all chat mail from chat mail screen.

- Also delete data in sent/received folders.
- Protected messages are not deleted. (However, unsent messages are deleted.)

1

In stand-by, press 🚊 🗗 and 📵 💆 .

• The delete chat mail screen appears.

2

Select Yes and press .

• To delete chat mail individually, use same steps as for i-mode mail. (PP. 283)

## **Changing Chat Mail Font Size < Font Size>**

Default setting Standard

1





Setting Chat Mail to Start Automatically < Auto Start>

#### Default setting

DN

Set to automatically open chat mail screen when mail with  $\mathcal{F} + \mathcal{V} + \mathcal{V}$ 

1

In stand-by, press ( press ( and ) and ( I.Z. [ON].



#### Create/Send SMS

## Creating and Sending SMS (Short Messages)

#### Create and send SMS.

- Enter phone number as the address for SMS.
- Send and receive up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters (70 double-byte characters). Single- and double-byte characters are both counted as one character.
- Single-byte katakana and pictographs in SMS may not appear correctly for recipient.
- Exchange messages with non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications providers. Refer to the DoCoMo web
  page for information on available countries and providers.



## In stand-by, press 🗟 5 🛣.



## Select To, press • and select an input method.

To select from phonebook	Press ♠ → recipient → ♠.  If phone number exceeds 20 digits, exceeding portion is deleted.
To input directly	Press ②♣ → enter address → ●.  • Enter phone number (up to 20 digits).  • Press ②♣ for 1+ seconds to enter +. Enter up to 21 digits if + is entered.  • For addresses of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications providers, enter + (press ③♣ for 1+ seconds), the country code, and the recipient's mobile-phone number. If the phone number begins with a 0, remove the 0.
To select from Sent messages history	Press $\boxed{3}$ $\rightarrow$ recipient $\rightarrow$ $\boxed{\bullet}$ $\rightarrow$ $\boxed{\bullet}$ .
To select from Received messages history	Press $(4.5)$ $\rightarrow$ recipient $\rightarrow (0)$ $\rightarrow (0)$ .

## Select Message, press ●, enter message and press ●.

- Enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters (70 double-byte characters). Single- and doublebyte characters are both counted as one character.
- Line breaks (₄) are counted as two characters. Spaces are counted as one character.

# 4

### Press ( [Send].

- When complete, Sent appears.
- To set delivery notice, press a and either [Request] or [ [Do not request].
- To set expiration date, press (a) (4.5), select expiration date and press (b).

#### Note

- When entering address, + can only be entered at the beginning.
- Depending on the signal status, messages may not be sent. SMS that is not sent is saved as unsent SMS.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.
- SMS can be exchanged without i-mode subscription.
- The FOMA terminal receives Short mail from mova service i-mode terminals as SMS.
- Up to 20 sent and unsent SMS can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Copy sent SMS saved on the FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. (PP. 307)
- Up to 254 sent and received SMS can be saved on the FOMA card. Unsent SMS cannot be saved on the FOMA card.
- Delivery notice and expiration date set at time of sending are not reflected on Report request and SMS
  expiry settings.

#### When called during editing

• Previous screen reappears after disconnecting and editing can be resumed.

#### When i-mode mail or Message R/F is received during editing

Continue editing without displaying receive results.

#### When Keypad dial lock is set

• Cannot send SMS to addresses not in phonebook while Keypad dial lock (PP. 154) is set.

#### When 184, 186, #31#, \\$31# is added

- SMS cannot be sent when 186, #31#, or ¥31# is added to address. SMS can be sent when 184 is added, but caller ID is notified.
- Add 184 and #31# to the beginning of a phone number to not notify caller ID and add 186 and ¥31# to notify caller ID. (☼ P. 49)

## Saving SMS (Short Messages) and Sending Later <Save SMS>

Save SMS being created to FOMA terminal and continue creating at a later time. Edit saved SMS and send.

- Refer to P. 301 for details on creating SMS.
- Up to 20 sent and unsent SMS can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

## Saving unsent SMS

## Press while creating SMS ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 301).

• SMS being created is saved as unsent SMS.

#### **Note**

- Press Emily while creating SMS and end confirmation screen appears. Select Yes to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- Unsent SMS cannot be copied (saved) to FOMA card.

### Editing/Sending saved SMS

In stand-by, press (a) 3 (a), select SMS and press (b). • Compose SMS screen appears.

## Select item, press (•), edit and press (•) [Send].

- Edit using same steps as when composing new SMS. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 302 for details.
- Sent SMS is saved in Outbox. SMS is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (**愛P. 290**).

#### **Note**

#### **FOMA** card

- Copy sent SMS from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. (PP. 307)
- Copy SMS data saved on FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset. (PP P. 308)

#### miniSD Memory Card

- Copy SMS saved on the FOMA terminal handset or FOMA card to miniSD Memory Cards (@P. 385) or view SMS saved on miniSD Memory Cards (PP. 387).
- Copy SMS saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (FFP. 388).

## Editing/Resending sent SMS

## In stand-by, press 🗟 🗷 🛣 .

Outbox list appears.

# Select folder, press (•), select SMS and press (•).

SMS content appears.



## Edit/Resend mail.

To edit	Press (a) 2 de dit SMS → (a) [Send].
	<ul> <li>Edit using same steps as when composing new SMS. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 302 for details.</li> </ul>
To resend	Pressa 1.3.

## **Receiving SMS (Short Messages)**

#### SMS is automatically received.

Up to 20 received SMS can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

# 1

#### SMS is automatically received.

2

## SMS receive results appear and SMS ring tone sounds (500 appears).



- Received SMS are saved in *Inbox*. SMS is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (PP P. 290).
- Folders holding unread mail are pink.

#### Icons displayed in stand-by

(red) : SMS received.

(black): FOMA terminal handset SMS is full.

(blue) : FOMA card SMS is full.

(yellow): FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card SMS are full.

3

## In the receive results screen, select Mail and press .

- Inbox list appears.
- If no operations are performed in receive results screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen from before reception automatically reappears and xx mail message(s) appears.



## Select folder, press **●**, select SMS and press **●**.





#### Note

- Change SMS ring tone. (© P. 118)
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected SMS is overwritten. (Confirmation message does not appear.)
- SMS on FOMA card cannot be overwritten.
- Copy received SMS from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. Delivery reports are not copied.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied.
- Even if the amount of saved messages in FOMA terminal handset is less than 20, new SMS cannot be
  received when FOMA card memory is full. When Memory is full. Unable to receive anymore. appears,
  delete some received SMS from the FOMA card.

#### Receiving when not in stand-by

• M appears. Received results screen does not appear.

## Checking for SMS (Short Messages) < Check New SMS>

Received SMS are held at the SMS center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. Retrieve from the SMS center.



## In stand-by, press & Briv.



- After the screen on the left appears, automatic retrieval starts.

#### Note

- SMS reception is not available if M (black) (FOMA terminal handset SMS full) or M (blue) (FOMA card SMS full) appears. Delete unnecessary SMS or disable protection. Read SMS or protection disabled SMS are overwritten in order with oldest first. (PP P. 304)
- Automatic retrieval may not start immediately after checking.

## Viewing Received SMS (Short Messages) < Display Received SMS>

Open received SMS.

- Received SMS are saved in *Inbox*. SMS is sorted to various folders in accordance with Sort rules (№ P. 290).
- Received SMS copied to FOMA card are also saved in Inbox.

# 1

## In stand-by, press @ 1.2 [Inbox].

- When the Inbox list contains unread i-mode mail or SMS, the folder is shown in pink.
- Folder list layout (PP. 278)
- For sent SMS, press @2 in stand-by.
- For unsent SMS, press ౩ఄ in stand-bv.

# 2

## Select folder, press •, select SMS and press •.



SMS screen

- SMS content appears.
- Message list/view layout for sent and received mail (PP P. 280)
- To view received SMS in FOMA card, select *Inbox*, press , select SMS and press . Inbox list appears for both FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Distinguish by the icon.
- To view sent SMS in FOMA card, select *Outbox*, press , select SMS and press .
- Press to end viewing.

#### Note

- Up to 20 received SMS can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Received SMS can be sorted to folders automatically. (PP P. 289)
- Receive notification of missed calls with Voice mail notification (P. 486) when the handset is turned off
  or outside the service area. An SMS is received after returning to the service area or when power is turned
  on. Even if a call is received from a caller saved in the phonebook, only the phone number is shown in the
  message.

## Replying to Received SMS (Short Messages) <Reply to SMS>

Reply to SMS.



## In SMS screen, press 2 , compose SMS and press [Send].

- Enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters (70 double-byte characters).
- When complete, Sent appears.

#### Note

- Quick reply, Reply with quote, and Forward are not available for SMS.
- Cannot reply to User unset/Payphone/Not support recipients with SMS.
- If SMS replied to from FOMA card is saved while creating, it is saved to unsent SMS on FOMA terminal handset.
- Reply is not available for Short mail sent from mova terminals.

#### **SMS Settings**

## Making SMS (Short Messages) Settings

## Setting SMS (Short Messages) Center < SMS Center>

Default setting

See below

Change SMS center host.

The default setting is **DoCoMo** (DoCoMo SMS center).

Setting does not normally need to be changed.

1

In stand-by, press @ O ? # # ...



ullet Alternatively, select lacktriangle (Mail) ullet Mail setting ullet SMS center from Top menu.

Press 2 [User set], enter SMS center address and press .

- Enter up to 20 digits.
  - Type of number screen appears.

Press 🕮 [International] or 🕮 [Unknown].

# Receiving Notification of SMS (Short Messages) Retrieval <Report Request>

Default setting

Do not request

Set whether to receive delivery notice for SMS.

1

In stand-by, press @  $\bigcirc \textcircled{\mathbb{Z}}$ , select  $\blacksquare$  Report request and press  $\textcircled{\bullet}$ .



## Select whether to receive delivery reports.

To receive delivery reports	Press 📶.
To not receive delivery reports	Press 2

#### Note

- Report request is received as an SMS.
- Report request can be set for each individual SMS.
- Report request by itself cannot be copied to FOMA card or miniSD Memory Card or be sent by Ir data transmission.

### Setting SMS (Short Messages) Expiration Date <SMS Expiry>

Set expiration date for SMS to be sent.

Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

In stand-by, press @ Office, select SMS expiry and press (•).

days Pall day 13 days Select length of time.

0 days	Press 1.4.	2 days	Press 3
1 day	Press 2	3 days	Press 4 5.

SMS expiration date is set.

#### **Note**

Setting can be applied to each SMS individually.

## Saving SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Card

Copy SMS saved in FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card.

Up to 20 sent and received SMS can be saved to FOMA card. Up to 254 SMS can be saved to non-DoCoMo FOMA card.

Insert FOMA card in advance.

### Copying SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Card

Copy SMS from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card.

#### **Example: For received SMS**

In stand-by, press (4). select folder and press (6).

- Received messages list appears.
- Delivery reports are not copied.
- For sent SMS, press (a) 2 in stand-by, select folder and press (•).
- To copy from SMS screen, press 
  in SMS screen, select Copy → UIM and press ●.

## Select SMS from FOMA terminal handset and press $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ [Copy $\rightarrow$ UIM].

- When an SMS in FOMA terminal handset is selected, Copy → UIM appears in submenu.
- For sent SMS, press 
   6 ...

#### Meaning of icons

: Unread SMS on FOMA terminal handset

: Unread SMS (protected) on FOMA

terminal handset Read SMS on FOMA terminal handset

Read SMS (protected) on FOMA

terminal handset

Sent SMS (protected) on FOMA terminal handset

## Select copy method.



To copy one SMS	Press $\textcircled{1.2} \rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ .
To select and copy SMS	Press $2 \mathbb{A} \to SMS \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{O}$ (repeatable) $\to$ $\mathbf{I}$ [Complete] $\to \mathbf{Yes} \to \mathbf{O}$ .

: Unread SMS on FOMA card

: Sent SMS on FOMA terminal handset

Read SMS on FOMA card

Sent SMS on FOMA card

Received SMS is copied to Inbox, and sent SMS is copied to Outbox.

#### Note

- Unsent SMS cannot be copied to FOMA card.
- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA card is reached.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied.

## Copying FOMA Card SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Terminal Handset

Copy SMS from FOMA card to the FOMA terminal handset.

#### Example: For received SMS

## 🊺 In stand-by, press ৠি🕼, select *Inbox* folder and press 🖲.

- Received messages list appears.
- For sent SMS, press @2. in stand-by, select Outbox folder and press •.
- To copy from SMS screen, press  $\widehat{}$  in SMS screen, select  $Copy \rightarrow main$  and press  $\widehat{}$  •).

# Select SMS from FOMA card and press [Copy $\rightarrow$ main].

- When an SMS in FOMA card is selected, Copy → main appears in sub menu.
- For sent SMS, press 6 5.

#### Meaning of icons

Unread SMS on FOMA cardRead SMS on FOMA card

Sent SMS on FOMA card

Select copy method.



To copy one SMS	Press $\bigcirc$ $\longrightarrow$ Yes $\longrightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To select and copy SMS	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow SMS \Leftrightarrow \bigcirc$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ [Complete] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .

Received SMS is copied to Inbox, and sent SMS is copied to Outbox.

#### Note

- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA terminal handset (20 entries) is reached.

#### **Delete SMS**

## **Deleting SMS (Short Messages)**

Delete SMS from FOMA terminal handset or FOMA card.

### Example: When deleting received SMS

In stand-by, press (4) T.A., select folder and press (6).

- Received messages list appears.
- SMS on FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card are distinguished by an icon.
- To delete from SMS screen, press [a] Z in SMS screen for received SMS and [a] 5 in SMS.

## Select SMS and press @ 2 2.

• The delete screen appears.

# Press 🝱 [Delete one], select Yes and press 🖲.

#### Note

• In Received messages list and Sent messages list, delete multiple SMS collectively. (EFP. 283, P. 285)

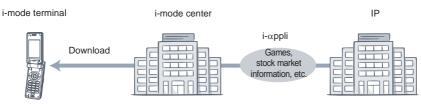
# i-αppli

• I-αppii	
• i-αppliDX	310
<ul> <li>Downloading i-αppli from Sites</li></ul>	Download>312
ullet Running i- $lpha$ ppli	<run i-αppli="">313</run>
<ul> <li>Running i-αppli Automatically</li> </ul>	<auto start="">323</auto>
<ul> <li>Running i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail</li></ul>	<i-αppli function="" to="">325</i-αppli>
• Setting i- $\alpha$ ppli as the Stand-by Display	<i-αppli stand-by="">326</i-αppli>
Managing i-αppli	327
Using Various i-αppli Functions	

## i-αppli

Download i-αppli software from sites for more convenient use of the i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal). Download various games to the i-mode terminal, and periodically receive automatic updates on the stock market by downloading market information i-αppli.

With mapping i- $\alpha$ ppli, only necessary data is downloaded, enabling smoother scrolling. Directly save information from an i- $\alpha$ ppli to the phonebook or Schedule, or use an i- $\alpha$ ppli to link with Data box to store or retrieve images.



- To run i-αppli 
   P. 313
- Depending on the software, the terminal ID and UIM ID may be used.
- Some software may transmit data when running. It is possible to configure the software not to transmit data.

## **Using Saved Data**

Use certain i- $\alpha$ ppli software to view, save and use data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedule, images and icon information) saved in the i-mode terminal. The following can be performed using saved data.

- Add to phonebook
- Use icon information
- Add bookmarks

Save schedule

- Retrieve images from Data box
- Save images to Data box

## i-αppliDX

Link i-αppliDX with various information on the i-mode terminal (mail, Redials/Received calls, phonebook data, etc.) and have animated characters assist in composing messages and inform who incoming callers are. Also link with mail to receive real time information such as stock quotes and game progress. (இP P. 313)

## **Using Saved Data**

Use certain i-αppliDX software to view, save and use saved data such as mail, redial information, Received calls and ring tones in addition to saved data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedules, images and icon information) available for use with regular i-αppli. The following can be performed using saved data.

- Add to phonebook
- Add bookmarks
- Use compose i-mode message screen
- View latest unread messages
- Retrieve images from Data box
- View phonebook
- Save schedule
- View latest redial numbers
- Save ring tones
- Save images to Data box
- Use icon information
- Use Mail menu
- View latest received calls
- Change ring tones (call, mail, message)
- Change screen settings (stand-by, incoming/outgoing calls, sending/ receiving mail, receiving Message R/F)

- To verify the validity of the software, some i-αppliDX software may transmit data regardless of the software connection setting.
  - The number of connections and connection timing differs depending on the software.
- Set the date and time before starting i-αppliDX software.

### Mail-type i-αppli

A mail-type i- $\alpha$ ppli is an i- $\alpha$ ppliDX that provides more enjoyable and convenient use of i- $\alpha$ ppli software by exchanging information via i-mode mail. Receive real-time updates of stock market information and game progress updates.

• Some i-αppli mail may not be displayed properly when using mail-type i-αppli.

#### Mobile Wallet Compatible i-αppli

Use the convenient features of Mobile Wallet compatible i- $\alpha$ ppli, such as reading and writing data on an IC-card, downloading electronic money or railway tickets, viewing the balance and usage history on the mobile phone.

- When using Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli, information in the IC-card is sent to the IP (Information Provider).
- Mobile Wallet (P. 338)

### Other features

#### i-αppli stand-by

Set i- $\alpha$ ppli as stand-by and enjoy receiving mail or making calls while the i- $\alpha$ ppli is running. In addition, use the stand-by to conveniently display up-to-date news, weather and other information or have your favorite character inform you of incoming mail and alarm times. ( $\mathcal{E}$  P. 326)

• Use this function with software compatible with i-αppli stand-by.

#### i-αppli auto start

Configure the i- $\alpha$ ppli software to start at a certain time, date or day of the week. Some software can also start automatically at a preset interval. ( $\mathcal{C}$ P. 323)

#### Camera

Use i-αppli software to shoot still pictures with the camera on the i-mode terminal. (😭 P. 330)

• Use this function with software compatible with camera function.

#### Ir exchange

Use i- $\alpha$ ppli software to connect to infrared communication (Ir exchange) devices. Link to Ir exchange devices for even greater use of the i-mode terminal. ( $\mathbb{CPP}$ . 330)

- Use this function with software compatible with Ir exchange function.
- Some data may not be transmitted depending on the Ir exchange function of the other device.

#### Infrared remote control

Use i-αppli software to operate various electronic devices compatible with Ir remote control. For example, use the pre-installed software, Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control), to use the handset as AV remote control linked with the TV program schedule. (で育 P. 402)

 Use this function with software compatible with Ir remote control function. Software compatible with the electronic device is required.

#### Bar code reader

Use i- $\alpha$ ppli software to read bar codes (JAN/QR codes) with the camera on i-mode terminal. (FP . 330)

## Downloading i-appli from Sites

Download i- $\alpha$ ppli software from sites and web pages, and run the software on the FOMA terminal display.

• Save up to 100 i-αppli software. (Capacity varies depending on size of software.)



# When browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), select software and press .

• The i-αppli download screen appears and downloading begins.

When <i>Run software?</i> appears	Select Yes → ●.  Depending on the software settings, the software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save.	
When the FOMA terminal does not have enough memory	After <i>Memory is full or saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite?</i> appears, select $Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow software$ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow \textcircled{i}$ [Complete].	
To stop downloading	While <i>Downloading</i> is displayed, press ⊚ ∠R.	

 If software was already downloaded with a different FOMA card, Already downloaded by different UIM. Overwrite? appears. Select Yes and press ( ) to overwrite.

#### **Note**

- If download fails due to weak signal strength, i-αppli is not saved.
- If software currently saved in the handset is deleted because of insufficient memory during download, and download fails due to weak signal strength, deleted software cannot be restored.
- Information may not be provided if Network set is set to No.
- The following messages may appear before downloading: This software (i-appliDX) will (may) use saved data and terminal and UIM ID. Download?, This software (i-appliDX) will (may) use saved data. Download?, or This software will use terminal and UIM ID. Download? Select Yes to begin download. Alternatively, select saved data to view a list of saved data to be used.
- If Soft description is set to *ON*, software information appears when downloading is about to begin. Press
   to begin download.
- If Icon info is set to Use, the icon descriptions for unread mail/messages, battery level, Manner mode, and
  inside/outside the service area may be sent through the Internet to the IP (Information Provider) along with
  terminal ID and UIM ID so this information may be viewed by a third party.
- [SSL] appears when downloading i-αppli information or software from an SSL-enabled page.
- Once downloaded, some i-αppli software may continue transmitting data automatically. The FOMA terminal must be set up in advance to use this service.
- i-αppli software cannot be downloaded when i-αppli PIM is locked.

#### When selected software is already saved to the FOMA terminal

 If a new version of i-αppli software is available, a message appears asking whether to upgrade the software. Select Yes to begin download (upgrade).

#### When Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded

- Depending on the IC-card data capacity, downloading Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli may not be
  possible even when software storage space is available. Follow the instructions on the screen, delete the
  displayed software, and repeat the download. (Depending on the software to be downloaded, some
  software may not appear as candidates for deletion.) Some software must be started, and delete data on
  the IC-card to delete the software itself.
- While IC-card is locked, Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli may not be downloaded.

#### Memory area

- Data box and i-αppli share memory area. Depending on the amount of data saved in Data box, i-αppli software may not be saved.
- Save downloaded i-αppli of up to 520 KB each.

## Downloading mail-type i-αppli software

Note the following when downloading mail-type i-αppli software.

- When downloading mail-type i-αppli software, mail-type i-αppli folders are automatically created in the Outbox, Inbox and Unsent messages. The folder name is the name of the downloaded mail-type i-αppli and cannot be changed.
- If there are already five mail-type i-αppli folders, additional mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded.
- If a mail-type i-αppli using the same folder is already on the software list, that software cannot be downloaded.
- Already received i-αppli mail can be sorted into folders automatically created when downloading a mail-type i-αppli. Also sort manually.
- If a mail-type i-αppli is downloaded again when only the folders for that i-αppli remain, those folders for the i-αppli can be re-used. To use new folders, delete the existing folders and create new folders. If new folders are not created, the mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded.
- Folders containing mail-type i-αppli cannot be deleted. If the folder contains no mail-type i-αppli, it can be deleted, but all folders created in Outbox, Inbox, and Unsent messages are deleted collectively.
- When deleting mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete automatically created mail folders. If the folder contains protected messages, the software and folder cannot be deleted. When only the folder remains, move the cursor to the folder in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages folder, press ♠, select View i-mode mail and press ♠ to check a message.
- Mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded when mail PIM is locked (\$\mathbb{C}\$P. 153).
- Mail-type i-αppli that change the mail folder name cannot be downloaded or upgraded when mail PIM is locked.
- Mail-type i-αppli that create new mail folders cannot be downloaded when mail PIM is locked.

## Viewing i-αppli Information During Download <Soft Description>

Select whether to view the software description when downloading begins.



In stand-by, press  $\widehat{\underline{}}$  for 1+ seconds, press  $\widehat{\underline{}}$  and  $\widehat{\underline{}}$  [ON].



• Soft description appears when download is started.

## Run i-αppli

## Running i-αppli

Run (start) an i- $\alpha$ ppli saved in the FOMA terminal.

- Software can be added to Shortcut menu. (PP. 461)



In stand-by, press (i) for 1+ seconds.

- Alternatively, select (i-αppli) from Top menu.
- Or, press twice to view the i-αppli screen.

## 7 Press 💯 [Software list].

- Software List 会認 分)作 計組表現120年 フライギスペットSH 30 MUSICAFE SH 電子マネー「Edy」
  - Software list
- Titles of the software saved in the FOMA terminal appear.
- The following icons indicate the settings of the selected software.
  - Software with i-αppli stand-by function
  - Software with Auto start function
  - 副: Software downloaded with SSL session
  - ★: i-αppliDX software
  - Mail-type i-αppli software
  - Software set to i-αppli stand-by
  - : Software set to Auto start
  - Software with data transmission function
  - T: Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli software

## Select software to run and press .



- i-αppli start screen appears and the software starts.
- To end, press multiple while the software is running, select Yes and press .

#### In viewer position

#### Running i-appli in viewer position

In standby, press **(i)** (left guidance) for 1+ seconds **) (iii** Software list **) (iii** (shutter) **(iiii** software **) (iiii** (shutter).

#### Note

- If the FOMA card used when downloading the software is not inserted, some i-αppli may not run (start).
- When i-mode mail, Message R/F or SMS is received while running software, the message is received automatically. (□/R/F/№ appears.) To view the received message, end the i-αppli.
- When a call is received while software is running, the software is interrupted. After the call is terminated, the software will resume. However, depending on the i-αppli software, the software may be ended when a call is received.
- When schedule or alarm time arrives, running software stops and the schedule or alarm notification screen appears. The software resumes when the schedule or alarm notification screen is closed. However, depending on the i-αppli software, the software may be ended when the alarm activates.
- Mail-type i-αppli can also be started from Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages. Select the i-αppli mail folder from each folder list.
- If a new version of the software is available, a confirmation screen for upgrading the software appears at startup.
- By installing a 3D polygon engine, 3D images can be displayed with i-αppli.
   3D polygons express three-dimensional images with depth, by combining polygons (triangles, squares, etc.).

#### Starting i-αppliDX software

- Some i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software connection setting. (The number of connections and connection time differs depending on the software.)
- If the date and time are not set, validity cannot be checked and the software cannot start.
- If the software is not validated, it cannot start until the validity is checked.

#### Setting i-appli volume

Some i-αppli do not have sound.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Start from Shortcut menu

In stand-by, press **●** software **● ●**.

#### Set volume <i-αppli volume>

In stand-by, press ⓐ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ ② ♦ (louder) or ♠ (softer) ▶ ♠.

#### View software description <Soft description>

In Software list, select software ▶ (a) 1.3.

#### Note

#### Shortcut menu

- When calendar is set in stand-by, press ♠ to change month. Press ➡ to disable calendar, and press ♠.
- Register frequently used i-αppli in advance. (
  P. 461)

#### Soft description

- The information that appears in the description includes the software name, version, storage, profile version, compatible models, Auto start time interval and SSL connection.
- The software name of the i-αppli cannot be changed.

## Configuring the Connection Setting <Network Set>

Default setting

YES

For each i- $\alpha$ ppli software, set whether data can be transmitted while the i- $\alpha$ ppli is running.

- This setting is valid only for software that transmits data.
- Network set is set to YES when software is downloaded.



In Software list (PP. 314), select software, press 5 and select whether to transmit data or not.

YES (transmit)	Press 1.3.
NO (not to transmit)	Press 2 de.
To check upon i-αppli startup	Press 3 .

#### Note

- Software may not function properly and information may not be available in a timely manner if Network set is set to NO. This may also prevent the software from starting.
- Because images used with the i-αppli software and entered data is sent over the Internet, some of this
  information may be viewed by a third party. (Images used with the i-αppli software include images shot
  using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated
  with i-αppli and images viewed and downloaded from Data box operated with i-αppli.)

# Configuring the Icon Information Setting <Icon Information Set>

Default setting

Use

For each i- $\alpha$ ppli software, set whether the software should be notified regarding icons indicating unread mail and Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode setting and whether the handset is inside or outside the service area.

- This setting is valid only for software that uses icon information.
- Icon information is set to Use when software is downloaded.



In Software list (P. 314), select software, press B and U.S [Use].

#### **Note**

i-αppli requiring use of icon information may not function properly if set to Do not use.

#### Note

If Icon info is set to Use, the icon status for unread mail/messages, battery level, Manner mode, and inside/outside the service area may be sent via the Internet to the IP (Information Provider), along with terminal ID and UIM ID, and this information may be viewed by a third party.

# Configuring the Phonebook and History Access Setting <View Phonebook>

Default setting YES

Set whether to allow the i- $\alpha$ ppli software to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls. Setting this to **YES** allows the i- $\alpha$ ppli to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls automatically.

- This setting is valid only for software that accesses the phonebook and history information.
- View phonebook is set to YES when software is downloaded.



In Software list (P. 314), select software, press © I and I.S. [YES].



#### **Note**

- Setting this to YES allows automatic access to the phonebook, Redial and Received calls.
- Setting this to *NO* may prevent operation of some i-αppli software.

# Configuring the Ring Tone and Screen Change Setting <br/> <Change Tone/Image>

Default setting

YES, NO

Set whether to allow the i- $\alpha$ ppli software to change the ring tone and screen, and whether to show a confirmation screen when making the changes. Setting this to **YES** allows the i- $\alpha$ ppli to change the ring tone and screen automatically.

 Change tone/image is set to YES and Change tone/image confirmation screen is set to NO when software is downloaded.



In Software list (PP. 314), select software, press and select whether to allow changes to ring tones or images or not.

To allow change	To show the confirmation screen	Press 1.2 1.2.
To allow charige	To not show the confirmation screen	Press 1.2 2.
To not allow change		Press 22.

#### Note

The i-αppli may change the ring tone and screen automatically if allowed (set to YES).

## Starting One Software from Another Software

Some software allows starting other software without returning to the software list.

- If the software to start is not specified, follow the instructions on the screen to select the software.
- If the software to start is not saved in the FOMA terminal, download the software.

#### **Default Software**

The following software are preset.

To use again after deleting, download from the iMenu site **SH-MODE**.

iMenu → ③メニューリスト (Menu List) → 旨ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → SH-MODE

## ■ Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)

This convenient application combines the TV program schedule with a TV remote control and does not incur a monthly usage fee.

Download TV program information anywhere at any time, and easily check what programs are being shown at a particular time. Access information such as program titles, program details, start/end time, and G-Code<sup>®</sup> for channels in your area.

Use the おすすめメール (recommendation mail) function to send information about interesting programs to friends.

Also, use as a remote control for the TV and video/DVD player (some models are not supported).

- X Only packet transmission charges apply.
- \* Refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

#### Starting the software

# In Software list, select Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) and press ●.

- The software starts and the main screen appears.
- When starting the software for the first time, the initial setting screen appears.
- Enter your postal code, birth year, gender, etc.
- To set up remote control, select a key such as TV1登録 (Register TV1), press and select the manufacturer.
  - The remote control function is tested for operation.
- \_\_\_\_ Press ፟ [設定] (Set).
  - The user agreement screen appears.
- To agree, select はい (Yes) and press .
  - The channel setting screen appears.
- Select a station, press and 圖 [設定] (Set).
- Select a remote control channel to assign to the selected station and press and ⑥ [設定] (Set).
  - The main screen appears.
  - Main screen does not appear when remote control is not set.

# **Displaying program information Changing program information**

Program information and advertisements appear on the main screen. Press 🗘 to select channel while program information is selected. Press 💿 to switch the time frame. Press 💿 to view program information. If remote control registration and remote control channel settings are activated. It data is transmitted.

#### Common operations in the main screen

To display help screen	Press ②.  This cannot be displayed when the remote control has not been set.
To display menu	Press  .
To save to schedule list	Press ##.
To switch remote control (in the order of: $TV \rightarrow Video \rightarrow DVD$ )	Press O.F.

#### **Operations in advertisements**

When advertisement is selected, the provided text information appears in a balloon. Pressing 
 on may start the function (Phone To, Mail To, Web To) set in the advertisement.

#### Viewing the program schedule for a specified date

- 【 In the main screen, press [a] [メニュー] (Menu), select 日時指定 (Specify date) and press (●).
- 2 Select a date to display, press •, select the time to display and press •.

#### Searching programs by key word

- 【 In the main screen, press (メニュー) (Menu), select 検索 (Search) and press (●).
- Select  $\neq \neg \neg \neg \vdash$  (Key word), press  $\bigcirc$ , enter key word or select from the search history and press  $\bigcirc$ .
  - To search by genre, select ジャンル検索 (Search by genre) and press ⑥. Select the genre, press ⑥, select a sub-genre and press ⑥.
- Press ⊚ [検索] (Search).
  - Search results appear.

## Saving a schedule from schedule list

- 【 In the main screen, press [a] [メニュー] (Menu), select 予約リスト (Schedule list) and press (a).
- う Select 一覧 (List) and press ●.
- Select a program, press (メニュー) (Menu), select スケジュール登録 (Save schedule) and press (●).
- \_\_\_\_\_ Press and ⑥ [完了] (Complete).

#### **Related Operations**

#### View detailed program information

In the main screen, press 🍙 [メニュー] (Menu) ▶ 番組詳細 (Program details) ▶ .

#### View schedule list

In the main screen, press 🍙 [メニュー] (Menu) ▶ 予約リスト(Schedule list) ▶ ● ▶ 一覧 (List). Set viewing channels/remote control registration/initializing/remote control channels In the main screen, press 🍙 [メニュー] (Menu) ▶ 初期設定 (Initial settings) ▶ (●).

#### Update to latest program schedule

In the main screen, press 🍙 [メニュー] (Menu) ▶ アプリ情報 (i-αppli information) ▶ ● ▶ 最新に更新 (Update to latest) ▶ ●.

## ケータイポストペットSH (Keitai PostPet SH)

Select an adorable pet from ten available types to carry your mail. Care for your pet or give it a treat. Also care for the sender's pet that brings you mail. Sometimes an unexpected guest may move into your pet's room.

- Once a pet is selected from the ten available types, it cannot be changed.
- This trial version is valid for 21 days after initial startup. When the trial period ends, the pet disappears. However, mail can still be sent and delivered by a postman, and you can care for quest pets.



**©SCN** 

#### Starting the software

- In Software list, select ケータイポストペットSH (Keitai PostPet SH) and press (•).
  - The software starts and the room screen appears.
  - The initial startup will display the user agreement, and then display the pet selection display.
- Select a pet and press (●).
  - The user information input screen appears.
- Enter the pet name, owner name and gender, and press [a] [決定] (OK).
  - Enter up to eight double-byte characters for pet and owner names.
    - After confirming selection, changes cannot be made.
    - The room screen appears.
    - The King Postman appears below the room screen, and comments on the pet or the room.

## Sending mail

- In the room screen, press 🗊 [メール] (Mail), select 新規メール作成 (Compose message) and press (•).
- Select 宛先 (Address), press ●, select input method, press and enter address.
  - Select the input method among 電話帳から (From phonebook), おともだち帳から (From friends list) and 直接入力 (Direct input).
- Enter the subject and message, and press 📵 [送信] (Send).
- Select ペットで送る (Send by pet) or ポストマンで送る (Send by postman) and press (•).
  - When **Send by pet** is selected, the pet carries the mail.
  - The unexpected guest may tag along for the delivery, and move into the room of the recipient.
  - While the pet is delivering, only the postman can be selected.

- 【 In the room screen, press ⓐ [メール] (Mail), select 受信メール (Received messages) and press ⑥.
- 2 Select mail and press ●.

   To save to the friends list, press ④ [Functions], select おともだち帳に登録 (Save to friends list) and press ●. Only mail delivered by a pet can be saved.

#### Caring for a pet

- **1** In the room screen, press ⓐ [メニュー] (Menu).
- **?** Select 世話 (Care), press ●, select type of care and press ●.
- Select action and press .

To display $^{\circ}$ In the room screen, press $\odot$ or $^{\checkmark\!$	To pet	Press $^{ullet}$ , $_{ullet}$ , $^{ullet}$ or $^{ullet}$ $^{ullet}$ .
	To hit	Press • or 5 ½.

• When the sender's pet delivers mail, the pet knocks on the door and comes in.

When caring for the sender's pet, ひみつ日記 (secret diary) is sent to the sender. (Packet charges apply.)

When going home, the sender's pet may take a picture of your pet's room. The picture taken is included in the secret diary.

#### **Related Operations**

Give the pet a toy

Check pet status

In the room screen, press [メニュー] (Menu) ▶ 部屋の状態 (Room status) ▶ ④.

Set sound effects on/off and background image (view outside room window)

In the room screen, press [メニュー] (Menu) ▶ 設定 (Settings) ▶ ● ▶ set each item. Edit friends list

In the room screen, press ⓓ [メール] (Mail) ▶ おともだち帳 (Friends list) ▶ ⑥ ▶ ㉑ [機能] (Functions) ▶ 編集 (Edit) ▶ ⑥.

Call the pet over

In the room screen, press  $\bigcirc$  or #.

#### Note

- The pet and the unexpected guest appear close-up when called over.
- **Background image**
- Set images saved in the FOMA terminal as the background image.

### **3D MUSICAFE SH**

Use 3D MUSICAFE SH to create and enjoy 3D sound as if playing a game. Compose a song for an image or key word or add changes to sounds with key operations.

Save and play back a composition or set as the ring tone.



#### Starting the software

In Software list, select 3D MUSICAFE SH and press .

• The software starts and title screen appears.

#### **Composing songs with images**

- In the title screen, select *CREATE*, press ⊙, select イメージで作曲 (Compose with images) and press ⊙.
- Select an image and press .

   Automatically compose and play songs.
- **?** Select 決定 (OK) and press ●.
  - The green arrow moves in time with 3D events.
- Perform 3D mixing.
  - When the green arrow reaches the red line, press the dial keys to move the position of the sound.
  - When finished mixing, playback starts automatically. The red light moves with the position of the sound and depending on when you press the dial keys, you can get a rating like THAT'S COOL!.
- ▼ Press ② [次へ] (Next) and save.

	Select 保存 (Save) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ enter title $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$
	Select 再MIX (Remix) → ⑥. ● The screen of step 4 reappears.
To return to title screen	Select タイトルに戻る (Return to title) → .

## Setting 3D sound as ring tone

- In the title screen, select *REPLAY*, press •, select a composition and press •.
- **2** Select 着信メロディ登録 (Save as ring tone), press ●, select *YES* and press ●.
- Select a folder, press and ① [OK].
  - Saved ring tones are named MLD xxx. ("xxx" in the title name is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999)

To edit the title	Press $2 \frac{2}{4} \rightarrow \text{enter title} \rightarrow \mathbf{O}$ .
To change destination folder	Press $3 \stackrel{.}{=} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

#### **Related Operations**

#### Compose songs with key words

- 1 In the title screen, select *CREATE* ▶ キーワードで作曲 (Compose with keywords) ▶ ⑥ ▶ enter keyword ▶ 作曲 (Compose) ▶ ⑥ ▶ listen ▶ 決定 (OK) ▶ ⑥ ▶ 3D mixing ▶ ⑤.
- 2 Select 保存 (Save) ▶ ● ▶ enter title ▶ ▶ 登録 (Register) ▶ ●.
  - To redo mixing: Select 再MIX (Remix) ▶ ⑥.
  - To return to the title screen: Select タイトルに戻る (Return to title) ▶ .

#### Play 3D sound

In the title screen, select *REPLAY* ▶ ● ▶ composition ▶ ● ▶ 演奏 (Play) ▶ ●.

#### **Delete 3D sound**

In the title screen, select *REPLAY* ▶ ● ▶ composition ▶ ● ▶ 削除 (Delete) ▶ ● ▶ *YES* ▶ ●. View help screen

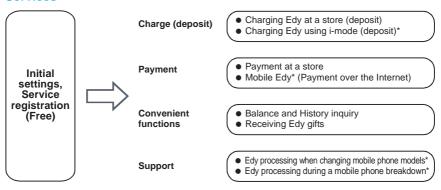
In the title screen, select HELP • (•).

#### ■ 電子マネー Edy (Mobile Wallet compatible)

Electronic money Edy is prepaid electronic money used with the touch of a key, making payment easy and convenient. (PP P. 338)

- Edy is a service provided by bitWallet, Inc. Confirm notes regarding use and user agreement before performing initial settings.
- When i-αppli communication settings are set to *No* or while the mobile phone is set to *Self mode*(愛ア. 152), i-mode access is not available. Therefore, *Initial settings* and functions in 主なメニュー (Main Menu) of the Electronic money Edy i-αppli are not available.
- Operations for *Initial settings* and functions in 主なメニュー (Main Menu) of the Electronic money Edy i-αppli
  require i-mode access and are subject to packet charges.
- When changing mobile phones, the Edy balance can be transferred to the new handset. Be careful when disposing of the old mobile phone. It can still be used as an Edy card. For details, read ⑤機種変更のお手続き (When changing models) in the 主なメニュー (Main Menu).
- If domain specific reception is set, always add **bitwallet.co.jp** to the specified domains when using MobileEdy (payment over the Internet). This is required for receiving the account startup mail from the Edy center.

#### Services



Services marked with an asterisk require registration in advance.

### Inquiries concerning this service

DoCoMo shall not be liable for information set in FOMA terminal.

For service details regarding electronic money Edy, available stores and Edy processing for FOMA model changes, breakdowns or loss, access the Edy web page or i-mode site, or contact the following number.

bitWallet, Inc.

• Refer to the Edy webpage or i-mode site for details on Edy.

Webpage: http://www.edy.jp

i モードサイト: http://imode.edy.jp

*iMenu* → ③メニューリスト (Menu List) → くらしの情報 (Lifestyle) → 生活総合 (Other information) → 電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money Edy)

Need help with Edy processing?

Edy emergency number: 0570-081-999 (unavailable for PHS)

Office hours: 9:00 to 21:00 (every day)

X Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

#### Note

- Packet transmission charges apply when using this service.
- The default settings of the preset i-αppli functions are as follows.
- Change settings from the submenu of Software list.

	Default setting			
Setting	G-GUIDE program schedule remote control	Keitai PostPet SH	3D MUSICAFE SH	Electronic money Edy
Stand-by display	_	Do not set	_	_
Network set	YES	YES	YES	YES
i-αppli To	_	YES	_	YES
Icon info set	_	Use	-	_
Change tone/ image	_	YES	YES	_
View phonebook	_	YES	_	_

• Refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details on G-GUIDE program schedule remote control.

#### **Auto Start**

# Running i-αppli Automatically

There are three methods to automatically start i-αppli.

Set date and time in advance. (PP P. 48)

Auto start using the i-αppliDX setting	Set Auto start to <b>ON</b> to enable.
S	Auto start setting pre-installed in software. Set Auto start to <b>ON</b> and register software to enable. Register up to ten.
O O	Set time, date and day for i- $\alpha$ ppli saved in FOMA terminal to set Auto start. Set Auto start to <b>ON</b> and set schedule to use. Register up to ten.

## Configuring Auto Start < Auto Start>

Default setting OFF



In stand-by, press (a) for 1+ seconds, press (4 4 a) and (1.2) [ON].

• Alternatively, select  $(i-\alpha ppli) \rightarrow Auto start$  from Top menu.



- 4 . . . . . . . . . . .
- Auto start is set.

Auto start screen

# Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings

# 1 In the auto start screen (PP. 323), press and select a number.

To save new Auto start schedule	Select number → ●.  To save a new schedule, select a slot with
To change Auto start schedule	Select number to change $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{1.5}$ .
To delete Auto start schedule	Select number to delete $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ .

Auto start software list appears.

# Select software, press •, and set the start date and time.



To start daily	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ enter time $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To start on set day of week	Press $2 \longrightarrow $ day of week $\Leftrightarrow \bigcirc $ (repeatable) $\rightarrow $ $\bigcirc $ [Complete] $\rightarrow $ enter time $\rightarrow \bigcirc $ .
To start on set date	Press $\bigcirc \longrightarrow$ enter date and time $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
- 11 041 ( )	

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with •.

Schedule setting screen

## Enabling Auto start setting for supported software

## In the schedule setting screen, press (4 5) [Time interval].

- To disable, delete Auto start setting. ("To delete Auto start schedule" in step 1 of "Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings")
- Time interval appears in gray for software without Auto start settings.

- If Auto start cannot be started, the error is recorded in Auto start error history.
- Auto start is not available in the following situations:
- Auto start is not available in the following situations.
  - Handset is turned off
     Other functions are activated
  - i-αppli is running During a call
  - Auto start time is the same as alarm time of Schedule or ToDo list
  - i-αppli PIM is locked
- The functions below operate with the following priority when the same time is set.

	Priority (high → low)	
Function	Auto power OFF $\rightarrow$ Auto power ON $\rightarrow$ Alarm $\rightarrow$ ToDo list $\rightarrow$ i- $\alpha$ ppli Auto start	

- Reset settings (P. 480) disables i-αppli Auto start setting.
- If transmission setting for software with Auto start settings is set to Always confirm, a transmission
  confirmation screen appears upon startup. If no operations are performed for five seconds, software starts
  automatically as if No was selected in confirmation screen.
- When two Auto start times for the same software are set within ten minutes of each other, Auto start does not
  function. Set Auto start time interval to ten minutes or more. Run error appears in the Auto start error history.

# Running i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail

If  $i-\alpha ppli\ To\ (Run\ i-\alpha ppli)$  is set for a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, or Screen memo,  $i-\alpha ppli\ can$  be started.  $i-\alpha ppli$  starts when a signal to start  $i-\alpha ppli$  is received during Ir exchange, when the start signal is read by the Bar code reader or when a FeliCa mark is held up to the reader/writer (external device) and the start signal is read.

• Set whether to allow i-αppli To in i-αppli To settings.

# Configuring Startup with i-αppli To <i-αppli To>

Default setting YES

Select whether to start i- $\alpha$ ppli with i- $\alpha$ ppli To for each software.

• i-αppli To is set to **YES** when software is downloaded.



In Software list (P. 314), select software, press (A. and (L. (YES).

#### **Note**

- The software to start is determined by the site, Internet web page, i-mode mail or Screen memo. Download
  the specified software in advance.
- Run i-αppli information for up to three i-αppli can be read by Bar code reader.

## Starting i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail <i-αppli To Function>

If i- $\alpha$ ppli To (Run i- $\alpha$ ppli) is set for a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail or Screen memo, i- $\alpha$ ppli can be started. Or, start i- $\alpha$ ppli by holding the FeliCa mark up to a reader/writer (external device) to read Run i- $\alpha$ ppli information.

- If i-αppli To is set to NO, i-αppli does not function.
- i-αppli To cannot be started from i-αppli stand-by.



Select i- $\alpha$ ppli in a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail or screen memo, press  $\bullet$ , select Yes and press  $\bullet$ .

- The software starts.
- To cancel, press while **Running i-αppli** appears.

- When i-αppli is ended, the original site, Internet web page, received message details screen or screen memo reappears.
- If there is no software corresponding to the Run i-αppli setting, *No requested software* appears.
- Some software run from a site cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the site, the specified i-αppli software can be downloaded if it is not saved on the FOMA terminal or if a newer version is available for the software saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the software settings, the software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software is not saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save it.
- Network set (
   P. 315) may be required while running i-αppli software.
- i-αppli To from i-mode mail is a function only available from i-mode mail delivered from an IP (Information Provider). Not available for i-mode mail exchanged between FOMA terminals.

# Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display

#### Set i-αppli as the stand-by display.

Press <sup>@ α.R</sup> to operate i-αppli set as stand-by display.

### Setting i-αppli Stand-by <i-αppli Stand-by>

Set i-appli as the stand-by display.

Set whether to transmit from the software set as the i-αppli stand-by, using Stand-by NW set (© P. 327).



Set network transmission?

# In Software list (♥ P. 314), select software, press (♠ ④ ♣, select Yes and press (♠).

- The software is set as i-αppli stand-by, and the software starts when the FOMA returns to stand-by

When  $\boxed{2}$  is pressed, data is not transmitted and information may not be received.

#### Note

- Only one software can be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- Some software cannot be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- When i-αppli stand-by is set, the image set in stand-by display (@P. 128) does not appear.
- If software that transmits data is set as i-αppli stand-by, the software may not operate properly depending on the signal strength.
- If All lock is set when in i-αppli stand-by, i-αppli screen closes and default 待受画面1 image appears. In addition, if i-αppli PIM is locked when in i-αppli stand-by, the image set as the stand-by display appears. When All lock or i-αppli PIM lock is disabled, i-αppli stand-by reappears.
- If i-appliDX is set as i-appli stand-by, the i-appliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software transmission setting.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, the i-αppli stand-by confirmation screen appears when the handset is turned on.
   Select Yes or do nothing for five seconds to start i-αppli stand-by. Select No to show normal stand-by and cancel i-αppli stand-by settings. If the handset is turned on by the Auto power ON setting, the confirmation screen does not appear and i-αppli stand-by starts when the FOMA terminal returns to stand-by.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, i-αppli appears as stand-by. If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, the image set as the stand-by display ( PP P. 128) appears.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, usable battery time decreases.
- Web To is not available from stand-by i-αppli.
- The following operations end stand-by i-αppli.

#### Ending appears when ending i-αppli.

■ Using the camera

- Using Image viewer
- Using Video player
- Using Ir exchange
- Downloading i-αppli software
- Viewing i-αppli screen (appears when pressing ⓐ for 1+ seconds or pressing ⑥ twice)
- Starting i-αppli

- Using video-phone
- AV output using Document viewer
- AV output using PDF viewer
- Updating software

#### Security errors

- While i-αppli stand-by is set, if an incorrect i-αppli action is attempted, or use of a function not permitted by the software is attempted, i-αppli stand-by is disabled.
- If an error occurs that cancels i-αppli stand-by, the error time and other information appears and is saved in the error history. No information is saved when ended properly. When Security error appears in stand-by, press to view error history.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Set whether to transmit data from i-αppli stand-by

- 1 In Software list (♥ P. 314), select software set as stand-by ▶ 🗈 🗗 🕮.
- 2 Press 1.3.

#### Set i-αppli stand-by from menu <Stand-by display>

- 1 In stand-by, press (•) 2 1/2 (1/2 (1/2 (3 2)).
- 2 Select software ▶ (•).
  - To set a different i-αppli as stand-by: Press T > software → (\*) Yes → (\*).
  - To end i-αppli set as stand-by: Press 2 ...
  - To disable i-αppli set as stand-by: Press 3.

## Disabling i-αppli Stand-by

If i- $\alpha$ ppli stand-by is disabled, the previous image set as stand-by appears.

Even if i-αppli stand-by is ended, i-αppli stand-by settings are not disabled and i-αppli stand-by is restarted
when returning to stand-by.



In stand-by, press  $\widehat{\underline{\phantom{a}}}$  for 1+ seconds, press  $\widehat{\underline{\phantom{a}}}$ , select software set as stand-by and press  $\widehat{\underline{\phantom{a}}}$ .



2

Select Yes and press .

• i-αppli stand-by is disabled.

# Managing i-αppli

Upgrade, delete and sort i- $\alpha$ ppli saved in the FOMA terminal and view run error and trace information.

## Upgrade

Upgrade software saved in the FOMA terminal if a new version is available on the site. Some software automatically checks for updated information and upgrades itself when running.

## Sort

The order that software is listed can be changed as follows.

Download (New → Old)	Latest download date first	
Download (Old → New)	Oldest download date first	
By size	Largest program size first	

The default setting is DL (New → Old).

#### Delete

Use one of the following to delete software.

Delete one	Deletes software individually.	
Delete all	Deletes all software.	
Delete selected	Deletes selected software collectively.	

# Error display and Trace information display

View run error information (*Auto start error*, *Stand-by error* and *Security error*) and trace information.

• If there is no trace information, No trace info available appears.

## **Related Operations**

#### Upgrade i-αppli <Upgrade>

- 1 In Software list (௴P. 314), select software ▶ @ 2 ₺.
- 2 Select Yes ▶ .
  - When software description appears: Press .

#### **Automatic upgrade**

In the *Upgrade available* confirmation screen, press (•).

• To skip software upgrade: Press @ CLR .

#### Sort i-appli <Sort>

In Software list (P. 314), press (Fig. 1) sort method (▶ ○).

#### Delete i-αppli <Delete>

- 1 In Software list (♥ P. 314), select software ▶ ⓐ ③ .
- 2 Press 1.3.
  - To delete all software: Press ②
     ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits)
     ▶ (•).
    - To delete selected software collectively: Press (Fig. 1) software (Fig. 1) repeat (Fig. 1) (Fig. 1) repeat (
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (•).

#### View Error display < Error display>

In stand-by, press (a) (for 1+ seconds) ▶ 5 € Perror history ▶ (a).

#### View Trace information <Trace info>

#### Lock i-appli PIM <Security settings>

In stand-by, press (for 1+ seconds) ★ (for 1+ seconds) ★ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ★ ( ★ ) ★ ( ...)

#### Note

#### Upgrading i-αppli

- i-αppli cannot be upgraded when the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough available memory.
   Delete other software or data in Data box that shares memory area with i-αppli.
- If the software is not upgraded because it is already the latest version, **Software updated** appears.
- Some Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli may not be downloaded or upgraded while IC-card is locked.

#### **Automatic upgrade**

 Mail-type i-αppli software that changes the mail folder name cannot be upgraded when mail PIM is locked.

#### Deleting i-appli

- When deleting mail-type i-αppli software, select whether to automatically delete the created folder at the same time. If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the software and folder cannot be deleted.
- When mail-type i-αppli software is deleted and only the folder remains, press in Inbox, Outbox or
  Unsent messages folder and select *View i-mode mail* and press to check the i-mode mail in the
  folder. View the i-mode mail inside the folder without starting the mail-type i-αppli.
- The names of software downloaded with a different FOMA card appear in blue on the Delete selected list.
- To use a preset software again after deleting it, download the software from the SH-MODE iMenu site.
   (FOMA card restriction function applies to downloaded i-αppli software. ☼ P. 39)

#### **Related Operations**

#### **Note**

#### Deleting Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli software

- Some software must be started, and delete data on the IC-card to delete the software itself.
- Some Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli may not be able to be deleted.
- While IC-card is locked, Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli software may not be able to be deleted.

#### Deleting all software including mail-type i-αppli

• If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the software and folders cannot be deleted.

#### **Error display**

 If an error occurs that cancels i-αppli stand-by, the error time and other information appears and is saved in the error history. No information is saved when ended properly.

#### Trace information display (for i-αppli creators)

- If a created i-αppli does not function properly, use Trace info details as a reference.
- Trace info does not appear if there is no software set to obtain a trace.

# Using Various i-αppli Functions

## Viewing Sites from i-αppli

View sites and Internet web pages from the running software.

- Download software that enables viewing of sites.
- Web To is not available from stand-by i-αppli.
- Sites with URL exceeding 255 characters, including single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols, cannot be viewed.



# With software running, select a URL and press ( ) to display the site.

• The method for viewing sites and Internet web pages varies depending on the software.

To view sites	Press 1.3.
To cancel operation	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
To display a URL	Press 3

# Making Calls from i-αppli

Make voice/video-phone calls from the running software.

- Download software that supports voice calling and video-phone calling.
- Calls cannot be made while Keypad dial lock or Self mode is set.

# 1

# With software running, select phone number, press ●, select Yes and press ●.

- Procedures for making voice/video-phone calls differ depending on the software.
- Phone number for voice/video-phone call appears.

# 2

#### Press AFE.

• Call is placed to phone number displayed.

## Using the Camera from i-αppli

Operate the camera on the handset from the running software.

• When the camera is started from i-αppli, shot images are saved and used as part of i-αppli.

## With software running, select camera startup and press (●).



- Camera mode (still picture shooting screen) appears. Adjust the brightness and use Auto timer and
- Use software to set Image size, Continuous mode, Image quality and Frame. Items that can be set, setting methods and camera startup method differ depending on the software.



# Press (•) [Shoot].

- An image is shot.
- To save the image, press ( ) [Save].

#### Note

 Some software may automatically send images and entered data used with i-αppli over the Internet. Images used with i-αppli include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images selected from My picture in Data box operated with i-αppli and images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli.

### Using Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

Operate Bar code reader from the running software.



# With software running, select Bar code reader startup and press

- Camera mode (Bar code reader) is activated.
- The bar code is read using closeup shooting in AF mode. Focal distance is approximately 10 cm. (EFP. 195)
- If screen is dark, press (a) [Light] to turn on picture light.
- Procedures for starting Bar code reader differ depending on the software.

## Position camera to show bar code (JAN/QR code) and press (●) [Scan].

• An image of the bar code (JAN/QR code) is shot.

#### Note

Scanned data may be used for some software.

# Using Ir Exchange from i-αppli

Use the Ir exchange function (PP. 397) from running software.

Ir exchange is not available while in Self mode.



## With software running, start Ir exchange, select Yes and press (●).

- Procedures for starting Ir exchange differ depending on the software.
- Ir exchange begins.
- To cancel Ir exchange, press @ while **Exchanging data** appears.

# i-motion

• i-motion	si-motion>332
Downloading i-motion from Site	. <download i-motion="">333</download>
Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion	<automatic replay="">335</automatic>
Setting i-motion Type to Download	<i-motion type="">335</i-motion>

## i-motion

i-motion refers to image, voice, and music data. Download i-motion to FOMA terminal from i-motion sites and Internet web pages. Play downloaded i-motion immediately, or save them to FOMA terminal. Search for i-motion sites in iMenu list.

- i-motion types include Normal type and Streaming type.
  - Normal type (up to 500 KB)

These can be saved to FOMA terminal. There are two types.

- Those played after downloading
- Those played while downloading

Some Normal type i-motion cannot be saved.

- Streaming type (up to 2 MB)
  - Streaming refers to simultaneous playback while downloading data. When playback is complete, the played data is discarded, and cannot be played again or saved to the FOMA terminal. Even if Automatic replay (127 P. 335) is set to **No**, Streaming type i-motion are automatically played.
- The type of i-motion downloaded differs depending on site of Internet web page.
- Save up to 200 i-motion. (Capacity varies depending on size of i-motion.)

### Ring tone and Receive display combinations

When i-motion is set as the ring tone and receive display, the combinations and actions are as follows.

Type of ring tone	Type of receive display	Type of ring tone and receive display when received
Melody	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without	Ring tone: Melody
ivielody	voice, Flash movie	Receive display: the set Receive display*
i-motion with image	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion (voice +	Ring tone: i-motion with image and voice
and voice	image), i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Receive display: i-motion with image and
and voice	image), i motion without voice, i lasii movie	voice
		Ring tone: voice only i-motion (melodies
Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)	JPEG image, GIF image	with no video)
		Receive display: the set Receive display
		Ring tone: voice only i-motion (melodies
	i-motion without voice, Flash movie	with no video)
		Receive display: image set by default
No ring tone	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without	Ring tone: Silent
INO TING TOTIE	voice, Flash movie	Receive display: the set Receive display*

Flash movie sound effects do not play.

- Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) are not available for Receive display.
- i-motion without voice are not available for ring tone.
- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the ring tone, the i-motion is automatically set as the Receive display. If a voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set, the Receive display is not changed and the set image appears.
- If an i-motion with image and voice is set as the Receive display, the i-motion is automatically set as the ring tone. If an image only i-motion is set, the ring tone sounds in the following priority.
- Priority for ring tone is specified ring tone → group ring tone → regular ring tone.
- The priority for Receive display is phonebook Picture call → group Picture call → Call/Receive display. If none are set, the default image appears.
- Receive display returns to default setting if V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not
  support are set to *Phone ring tone* and melody or a voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set for
  ring tone.
- Ring tone is set to 着信音1 if V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support are set to
   *Phone ring tone* and JPEG image, GIF image, animated GIF, Flash movie or an image only i-motion is set
   for Receive display.
- Incoming voice calls screen appears when V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support are set to *Phone ring tone*.

#### Note

Some i-motion are not available.

#### **Download i-motion**

# **Downloading i-motion from Site**

### **Playing i-motion Downloaded from Sites**

Play back i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.



# When browsing ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 208, steps 1 and 2 on P. 217), select i-motion and press ( ).

Streaming type		Select <b>Yes</b> → <b>(•</b> ).  • i-motion is played back while downloading.
	Automatic replay [Yes]	After i-motion download is complete, playback begins.
Normal type	Automatic replay [No]	The play/save selection screen appears. Press ♠ to play,  ② to save, and ③ to show properties.  • When ♠ is pressed, Save this i-motion? appears.  Select Yes and press • to save.

- To cancel download, press @ all while downloading.
- Press ( [Stop] to stop playback.
- Press (•) [Pause] during playback to pause.

#### **Note**

- Some i-motion cannot be played while downloading.
- If Streaming type i-motion download is attempted while i-motion type is set to Normal type, Invalid
  content. Change i-motion type for replay? appears. Select Yes to change i-motion type and enable
  download
- For i-motion that plays during download, when unable to play due to weak signal, play after downloading is completed.
- Weak signals may stop playback or distort the image during i-motion download.
- Date and time information on FOMA terminal may be reset after the battery pack has been removed for a long time. In such cases, playback for i-motion with an expiration date or replay period is not available.
- Some i-motion may not play properly after being downloaded.
- i-motion can be set as the stand-by display (PP. 128). (Some i-motion are not available.)
- i-motion can be set as Chaku-motion (@P. 100). (Some i-motion are not available.)

#### i-motion with a replay period



When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a replay period, the screen on the left appears.

- This cannot be played before the replay period.
- When download is attempted for i-motion with an expired replay period, Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error. appears.

#### i-motion with an expiration date



When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with an expiration date, the screen on the left appears.

 When download is attempted for i-motion with an expired replay period, Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error. appears.

#### i-motion with a set number of replays



When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a specified number of replays, the screen on the left appears.

• When download is attempted for i-motion with a replay number of zero, The data cannot be saved. Download? appears. To download, select Yes and press (•).

# Saving i-motion

Downloaded i-motion can be saved.

i-motion is saved to the i-mode/Other folder in Data box.



While downloaded i-motion is stopped or paused, press .

#### **Note**

- i-motion saved can be played using Video player (PP. 359).
- Some downloaded i-motion cannot be saved to FOMA terminal.

### When a Ticker Contains a Link

When a link is present in the ticker during i-motion playback, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To may be available. Provided phone numbers and mail addresses can be saved to Phonebook.

After playing a downloaded i-motion, the dial screen (for Phone To (AV Phone To)), compose message screen (for Mail To), or site access screen (for Web To) appears.



Select operation and press (•).

- Refer to P. 230 and P. 231 for subsequent steps.
- To return to the previous screen, press @ clr.

# Viewing i-motion File Properties

View file properties for i-motion.



While downloaded i-motion is stopped or paused, press \( \begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} \exists & \left & \exists \exists \\ \exists & \left & \exists \exists \\ \exists & \exists & \exists & \exists \\ \exists & \e

- · Properties screen appears.
- For Streaming type i-motion or i-motion allowing playback during download, press @ 2 while downloading i-motion from sites or Internet web pages (PP P. 333) or while paused.
- Press (•) [Agree] to end viewing.

# **Setting Whether to Automatically Replay** i-motion

Default setting Yes

Set whether to automatically replay i-motion when downloading.



In stand-by, press (19 m) 3 to 4 to 1.5, and 1.5 [Yes].

Alternatively, select indicated indicated

#### Note

- Streaming type i-motion are always automatically replayed, regardless of Automatic replay settings.
- Some i-motion are not automatically replayed, even when Automatic replay is set to Yes.
- When Automatic replay is set to *No*, a selection screen for playback and save operations appears.

#### i-motion Type

# **Setting i-motion Type to Download**

Default setting
Normal type

Set whether to download only Normal type i-motion or to download both Normal type and Streaming type i-motion.



Alternatively, select (i-mode) → i-mode setting → Internet → i-motion setting → i-motion type setting from Top menu.

To download Normal type only	Press 1.2.
To download Streaming type and Normal type	Press 2 de .

- To download Streaming type i-motion, set i-motion type to Norm Streaming.
- While set to Normal type, if Streaming type i-motion download is attempted, Invalid content. Change
  i-motion type for replay? appears. Select Yes to change i-motion type and enable download.



# i-mode FeliCa Mobile Wallet

Mobile Wallet	. 338
---------------	-------

## **Mobile Wallet**

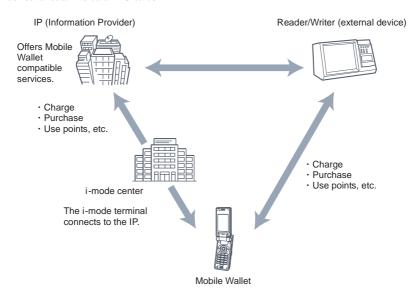
"Mobile Wallet (おサイフケータイ)" refers to useful IC-card i-mode functions (i-mode FeliCa) and i-mode terminals equipped with IC-cards.

FeliCa, using non-contact IC-card technology, enables reading and writing of data without direct contact.

Simply hold the handset up to the reader/writer\* (external device) at supported stores to turn your mobile phone into a convenient tool with "Mobile Wallet". Use electronic money to pay for shopping and use as an airline ticket or a point card.

Compared with already existing non-contact IC-cards which support FeliCa, the IC-card in the Mobile Wallet enables depositing electronic money, checking your balance or viewing usage history from sites, and other useful functions.

\* A device to read/write data in IC-cards.



\* To use the IC-card function, download Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli.

- Application and utilization methods vary for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. Contact the IP (Information Provider) for inquiries. Refer to "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details on using Mobile Wallet compatible services.
- Be sure to keep a memo of the names and contact information for the Mobile Wallet compatible services being used. Mobile Wallet malfunctions, repairs, changing FOMA terminal or other handling may cause data saved in the IC-card to be altered or lost. (Note that as a rule, you will be asked to delete data when repairs are necessary.) DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. To delete data saved in the IC-card, or when data is lost or altered, handling methods vary for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. Contact your IP (Information Provider) for more details.
- Data saved in the IC-card cannot be copied to another model at the DoCoMo retailer when changing to other Mobile Wallet compatible mobile phones or when exchanging phones due to malfunction. Handling methods vary for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. Contact your IP (Information Provider) for more details.
- Be careful not to lose the Mobile Wallet. If lost, handling methods vary for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. Contact your IP (Information Provider) for more details. However, note that the IC-card function cannot be restricted.

## **Using Mobile Wallet**

Use Mobile Wallet in the following manner.

Download Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli. P. 312



Start Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli and read/write data in the IC-card. 😭 P. 313 (run i-αppli)

 Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli enables you to charge electronic money or railway tickets, check your balance and usage history, as well as other useful functions.



Hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device). See below

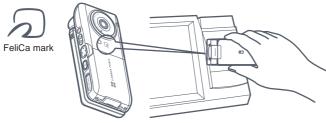
Holding the side of the FOMA terminal with the FeliCa mark up against the reader/writer (external device)
 enables payment with electronic money, works as a replacement for railway tickets, as well as other functions.

## Hold the FeliCa Mark up to the Reader/Writer (External Device).

Holding the side of the FOMA terminal with the FeliCa mark up against the reader/writer (external device) enables payment with electronic money, works as a replacement for railway tickets, as well as other functions.

- Usage is possible without starting up software.
- Avoid contact between the FOMA terminal and reader/writer (external device).
- Only the side with the FeliCa mark can be read.
- Hold the FeliCa mark parallel to the reader/writer (external device).
- Hold the FOMA terminal up to the center of the reader/writer (external device).
- If you hold the side of the FOMA terminal with the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device) and it
  is still not recognized, try moving the handset around.
- Reading may not be possible if metallic substance is present on the FeliCa mark side.

# Hold the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device).



# Onfirm that the data was read.

• Check the reader/writer (external device) display to confirm the read results.

### **Precautions for Using Mobile Wallet**

- When using Mobile Wallet, be sure to have the battery pack attached.
- Although Mobile Wallet is available when the handset is turned off, Mobile Wallet compatible i-αppli cannot be started. In addition, the Mobile Wallet is not available if the battery is empty.
- Although Mobile Wallet is available during calls or i-mode connection, Mobile Wallet compatible i-αpplil cannot be started.
- If you hold the side of the FOMA terminal with the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device) and it is still not recognized, try moving the handset around.
- i-αppli can be started by reading Run i-αppli information from a reader/writer (external device).
- Mobile Wallet may not be available even when holding FeliCa mark up against a reader/writer (external device) if battery is empty.
- FeliCa function is not available while IC-card is locked (@P. 154).
- Even if All lock (@P. 149) is enabled, FeliCa IC-card functions are not locked.
- When Remote lock all (PP P. 150) is enabled, FeliCa functions are suspended. However, when Remote lock all is disabled, IC-card lock is not disabled. Refer to P. 154 for details on disabling IC-card lock.

#### Note

- Electronic money Edy, preinstalled i-αppli software, can also be used.
- In the following cases, data being read or written to the IC-card from software will be interrupted. In such cases, the data being read or written will be lost. Operations after a call is ended vary depending on the service being used.
  - When a call is received while software is running, the software is interrupted. After the call is ended, the software resumes.
  - When the scheduled time or alarm time arrives, running software stops and the schedule or alarm notification screen appears. The software resumes when the schedule or alarm notification screen is
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations:
  - Handset is turned off
    - Other functions are activated
  - i-αppli is running
- During i-appli PIM is locked
- During a call

# Locking the IC-Card Function <IC-card Lock>

• Make sure to safeguard security codes and service passwords.

Lock IC-card functions to restrict usage of the FeliCa IC-card function (@PP. 154). If All lock is set with remote operations, IC-card is automatically locked (PP. 150).

- IC-card lock is set automatically when battery pack is removed. IC-card lock is disabled when battery pack with battery power left is inserted even if power is not turned on. However, if the battery pack is removed while the IC-card lock is set, when the battery pack is reinserted, the IC-card lock is retained.
- When IC-card lock is set or IC-card lock is set using Remote lock all, IC-card lock is retained even if battery becomes empty and power turns off.

# Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

■Using Still Pictures
• Displaying Saved Images
• Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB)
■Using Movies
• Playing Movie/i-motion
• Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB) 
■Using Chara-den
• What is Chara-den?
■Using Melodies
• Playing Back Melodies
■Using miniSD Memory Cards
• miniSD Memory Card
<ul><li>Copying from FOMA Terminal to miniSD Memory Card &lt; Copy to miniSD&gt;38</li></ul>
<ul><li>Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data &lt; Backup/Restore &gt; 38</li></ul>
• Previewing miniSD Memory Card Data < View miniSD Data>38
• Copying from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal < Copy to Main>38
Managing miniSD Memory Card
■Using Various Data
• Managing Data
■Using Ir Exchange
Ir Exchange
• Sending and Receiving Data Individually40
• Sending and Receiving All Data Items
Using Ir Exchange with i-αppli Software40
• Using the Infrared Remote Control Function < Infrared Remote Control>40
■Using Voice Recorder
• Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder < Voice Recorder>40
■Using PDF Viewer
• Displaying PDF Files
• Managing PDF Files
■ Document viewer
Displaying Word and Excel Files
<ul> <li>Managing Documents</li></ul>
■ Book Viewer
Displaying e-Dictionary and Book
Using the Information in Book/Dictionary
• Scanning Text to Search for Words in a Dictionary < Character Reader>42
Managing Book/Dictionary
■ Printing Still Pictures
Printing Still Pictures Printing Saved Images
Trinking Gaved images

# **Displaying Saved Images**

Play back still pictures shot with FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites and web pages saved in My picture of Data box with Image viewer.

• Show still pictures and slideshows on a TV screen. (PP. 474)

1

# In stand-by, press ( ) 7 st (1.2)



- Alternatively, select ☐ (Data box) → My picture from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- List of folders in My picture of Data box appears.

My picture folder list

2

# Select a folder and press (•).



When **Camera** folder is selected

- Still picture list appears.
- Alternatively, press @ 2 in the still picture shooting screen (PP. 170).
- To switch image list, press <a>D™</a> and press <a>D™</a> [9-part display], <a>D™</a> [16-part display], <a>D™</a> [2.5] [16-part display], <a>D™</a> [2.5] [16-part display], <a>D™</a> [2.5]
- To view next page, press 🗐.
- To view previous page, press \( \bar{\alpha} \).
- To view still pictures saved in miniSD Memory Card, press (##). To view still pictures saved in FOMA terminal handset again, press (##).

3

# Select still picture and press .



- To view next/previous image, press ).
- Switch between Actual size and Zoom↑ if still picture is smaller than 240×252.
   Switch between Actual size and Zoom↓ if larger than 240×252. Zoom↑,
   Actual size and Zoom↓ are not available for 240×252 images.
- Shrink and Zoom are not available for animated GIF and Flash movies.
- Press or a 2 to view still picture in Full-screen.
- Alternatively, press ☐ in the image list. When in viewer position, press (shutter) for 1+ seconds. Press a key other than ☐ (shutter) for () to cancel Full-screen.

- Data is not saved if memory is full. Delete unnecessary files to increase available space when saving still
  pictures shot with camera, edited still pictures and downloaded still pictures to the FOMA terminal handset.
  (PP . 393)
  - Check memory before shooting, editing or downloading still pictures. (FP P. 396)
- Opening and saving becomes slower when more images are saved.
- Animated GIF and Flash movies may appear differently (such as frame dropping) from when on a site or Internet web page.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or miniSD Memory Card) is saved even if Image viewer is ended, and is used the next time Image viewer is started.

#### Note

# Forward and store still pictures saved in Data box on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (@P P. 381).

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Use Zoom <Zoom in>

In the screen in step 3 of "Displaying Saved Images" ((② P. 342), press (a) ↓ [Zoom↑].

- To show other areas: Press 👀.
- To return to original view: Press •.
- To shrink (zoom out) enlarged still pictures: Press (☐) [Zoom ↓].

#### Light up <Light up>

In the screen in step 3 of "Displaying Saved Images" (☞ P. 342), press • Light Up • .

- Alternatively, press ## for 1+ seconds.
- To turn off: Perform same steps or show another image.

### Set Playback light <Playback light>

- 1 In My picture folder list (P. 342), press 6 5.
- 2 Press 24 for Always ON.
  - To set same as light setting: Press 1.3.

#### Note

#### Zoom in

Zoom is only available for JPEG images.

#### Light up

- Backlight turns off after time set for Display light time (P P. 133) when Playback light is set to As light setting.
- When Playback light is set to Always ON, even after time set for Display light time (PP. 133) passes
  while playing Flash movies, the backlight remains lit until image display is ended. For Light Up, the
  backlight turns off after set time passes.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of brightness settings (P. 135).

#### Playback light

- The default setting is As light setting. (PP. 133)
- Flash movie playback is subject to settings.

# My Picture Folder List/Image List

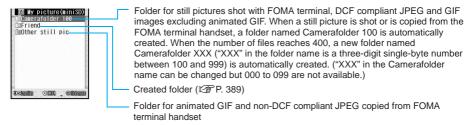
## My picture folder list layout

### **FOMA** terminal handset



### miniSD Memory Card

Press (##) in My picture folder list to switch to miniSD Memory Card folder. (FP P. 384)



### Image list layout

Show image list in 9-part display, 16-part display or List display.







9-part display

16-part display

List display

### Still picture icons

				JPEG			
Image type and size	Icon: 76×76	sQCIF: 128×96	QCIF: 176×144	Stand-by: 240×320	CIF: 352×288	VGA: 480×640	1.2M: 960×1280
Not protected	76	128	176	240	352	480	960
Protected	7E <sub>E</sub>	128	176	240	352	480	960

		JPEG				Deco-mail
Image type and size	UXGA: 1200×1600	3M: 1536×2048	Others	GIF image	Flash movie	template
Not protected	1500	ЗМ	JPG	GIF		BE
Protected	1200	3M		GIF.	•	S.E.

- 🖫 (not protected) or 🖫 (protected) appears for still pictures with FOMA card restrictions applied.
- 😂 appears for still pictures set as stand-by display, Picture call, Own image and Schedule.
- Let appears for still pictures with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.
- ⊕ appears for still pictures downloaded with i-mode and ⊕ appears for images retrieved from miniSD Memory Cards and Bar code reader. 
   ■ appears for frames and stamps regardless of source.
- appears for still pictures shot with camera.
- © appears for still pictures shot with Chara-den.
- 🗐 appears for still pictures saved with e-Dict/Book.
- appears for still pictures cut out from PDF viewer.

- ■, ■, ■, , ■, or ⓐ appears if no image sizes that apply. Also, check the image size from File property.
   (★ P. 395)
- Refer to P. 166 for shot sizes and capacity.
- Change still picture protection settings. (PP. 395)

### **Related Operations**

### Change list display method <Switch view mode>

In stand-by, press ● 🗷 🗥 ▶ folder ▶ • ▶ 🔊 🗗 ▶ display method ▶ •.

#### **Note**

#### Display method of list screens

- The default setting is 9-part display.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters for title name. Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen.

### **Playing Flash Movies**

Play back Flash movies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in *i-mode/Other* folder in My picture of Data box.



# In stand-by, press • Table 1. select folder, press •, select Flash movie and press •.

- Alternatively, select ☐ (Data box) → My picture from Top menu.
- 🔳 or 🖁 appears for Flash movies in Image list.
- Flash movie is played.
- To restart playback, press [Stop] and press ① during playback.

#### **Note**

• Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or web page.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Set Playback light <Playback light>

- 1 While playing back Flash movie, press [Stop] ▶ ₪ 🗷...
- 2 Press 2 for Always ON.
  - To set same as light setting: Press 1.4.

#### Set playback volume < Change volume>

#### Note

#### **Playback light**

The default setting is As light setting. (P. 133)

#### Change the volume

The default setting is Volume 3.

## Viewing Slideshows <Slideshow>

Show all supported images in a folder consecutively.

• Slideshow is not available for pre-installed folders.



## In stand-by, press ( ) 7 ( ), select folder and press ( ) 5 ( ).

- Opening image appears and slideshow begins at full screen.
- Press @cur to end playback.

### Playing BGM during slideshow

Play BGM during slideshow. Set tone and volume. However, during Manner mode, BGM is silent even when set.

- Select BGM tone from Melody of Data box.
- The default setting is ラグタイムダンス for tone and *Silent* for volume.

# 1

# In stand-by, press ( ) ( ), select folder and press ( ) ( ) ( ), select folder and press ( ) ( ), select folder and press ( ), selec



# 2

### Select tone and volume.

To set BGM tone	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ folder $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ Melody $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ [OK].
To change BGM volume	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow \text{Volume} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

## Setting playback interval and effects

Set Slideshow in My picture playback interval (speed) and effects.

• The default setting is *Normal* for interval and *OFF* for effects.

# 1

# In stand-by, press • 7 5 1.2 , select folder and press • 4 5 .....

Slideshow setting screen appears.

# 2

## Press [Play interval] and select interval.

Fastest	1./2	Images are played one after another.
Fast	2 %	Next image appears after approximately three seconds.
Normal	3 🏝	Next image appears after approximately five seconds.
Slow	(4 &	Next image appears after approximately ten seconds.

\* Play interval may vary depending on image size.

3

# Press 4 [Effects settings] and select effect.

OFF	1.5	Effect is not set.
Wipe ↓	2 %	Next still picture appears from top to bottom.
Wipe ↑	3 🎄	Next still picture appears from bottom to top.
Wipe $\rightarrow$	(4 gr	Next still picture appears from left to right.
Wipe ←	5 #	Next still picture appears from right to left.
Mixed wipe	6 H	Next still picture appears randomly vertically or horizontally.

## **Attaching Still Pictures and Sending i-mode Mail**

Select still picture from My picture of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

- Send still pictures up to 500 KB (512,000 bytes).
- Available still pictures are those received via i-mode mail as attachments, shot with FOMA terminal and downloaded from sites that do not have restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.
- Still pictures shot with FOMA terminal and those retrieved with miniSD Memory Cards are available even when restricted.





- When a JPEG larger than Stand-by: 240×320 is selected, Reduce to Standby? appears. Select Yes and press 
   on treduce and attach. Select No and press to attach file (500 KB or less). Files larger than 500 KB are automatically compressed to 500 KB or less.
- Stand-by: 240×320 is the suitable size for sending to i-mode terminals.
- Compressed still images are automatically saved to the i-mode/Other folder in My picture.

# Create and send i-mode mail.

Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 255 for details.

## Setting an Image as Stand-by Display <Set Screen>

Set still pictures saved in My picture of Data box as stand-by display, Call/Receive display, send/receive display and guidance keys.

- Frames and stamps are not available.
- Flash movies are available for stand-by and call/receive display.
- JPEG images, animated GIF and some GIF images are not available for pop-up windows, notice windows and guidance keys. Some animated GIF, JPEG images and GIF images are not available for Background pattern.





- Screen setting screen appears.

# Select screen item and press .



- Select Yes and press •.
- Select additional items depending on the screen.

# **Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB)**

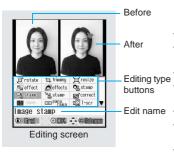
#### Compare before and after images while editing without interruption.

- Some images cannot be edited depending on the size of still picture shot with the FOMA terminal.
- Some images downloaded from sites or Internet web pages and images imported via Data Link Software cannot be edited.
- Image quality may deteriorate with repeated editing of an image after saving, such as by adding frames and
- Data size may increase when edited.
- Attach edited image to i-mode mail and send. (PP. 349)
- Flash movies cannot be edited.

## **Opening Image Editing Screen**

# In stand-by, press (•) 7 %, select folder, press (•), select still

- picture and press @ . Image editing screen appears.
- Alternatively, press [a] [Edit image] in the still picture screen (E) step 3 on P. 342).
- Alternatively, press [a] [Edit image] in the still picture preview screen after shooting (Estep 2 on P. 173).



#### Editing type buttons

Use editing type buttons to access editing menu directly

matata taimumin m					
rotate	trimming	resize			
Rotate	Trimming	Resize			
(©FP. 349)	(©FP. 350)	(©FP. 350)			
effect	effects	stamp			
Image effect	Face effects	Face stamp			
(©FP. 352)	(©FP. 352)	(©FP. 355)			
stamp	stamp	correct			
Image stamp	Character stamp	Correct image			
( <b>©</b> P. 356)	(© P. 357)	(©FP. 351)			
save	panorama	1-scr			
Save	Combine panorama	1-screen			
( <b>©</b> P. 349)	(©FP. 357)	(©FP. 349)			
cancel					
Cancel					

\* Editing type buttons differ for functions and screens.

# Key operations in editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press and select editing type.
- Select editing type with .
- Press dial key (□™ to ⑤™, ★♥ or #♥). (Editing type buttons correspond to keypad layout.)

  - Select another editing type to continue editing same still picture.
  - Editing type appears in gray when not available.

## Undoing previous operation

# 

- Last edit is undone. (Operation not performed if nothing was edited.)
- Undo one step. Undo again to return to original still picture.

## Showing in one screen

Show the edited still picture in a single screen. Before editing, the original still picture is shown in a single screen.

## Press







- Press en in 1-screen to switch to full-screen. When in viewer position, press (•) (shutter) for 1+ seconds. Press a key other than (2000) to cancel Full-screen.

#### **Note**

• Edited still pictures are compressed when saved and may appear different during editing.

### **Rotating Still Pictures < Rotate>**

Rotate 90 degrees left/right or reverse images vertically/horizontally.

- Some images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and images imported via Data Link Software (P. 391) are not available.
- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.

## In the editing screen (PP. 348), press (1.2) and select the type of rotation.



To rotate 90° right	Press 1.8.
To rotate 90° left	Press 2 de la companya della company
To rotate (up/down)	Press 3
To rotate (left/right)	Press 45.

Rotating and rotated still picture appears.

# Save still picture.

To save still picture	Press (i) [End] $\rightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow$ (ii) $\rightarrow$ 1.4.
To change title and save	Press $\widehat{\textbf{1}}$ [End] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\textbf{0}}$ $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\textbf{2}}$ $\widehat{\textbf{2}}$ $\rightarrow$ enter title $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\textbf{0}}$ $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\textbf{1}}$ $\widehat{\textbf{2}}$ .  • Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
To change folder and save	Press $(\hat{\mathbf{a}})$ [End] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $(\hat{\mathbf{O}})$ $\rightarrow$ $(\hat{\mathbf{O}})$ $\rightarrow$ folder $\rightarrow$ $(\hat{\mathbf{O}})$ $\rightarrow$ $(\hat{\mathbf{O}})$ .
To attach to i-mode mail and compose	Press ③ [End] → Yes → ⑥ → ④ → create/send i-mode mail.  Still picture is automatically saved.  Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 256 for details.
To make additional editing without saving	Press
To save before continuing	Press

- Image quality may deteriorate when trimmed or resized (PP P. 350) still pictures are rotated.
- When still pictures are rotated left or right, the aspect ratio changes for sizes other than Icon: 76×76.

## **Changing Size of Still Pictures < Trimming>**

Change size or trim still pictures to use as icons or stand-by.

Original size	Available still picture sizes
Icon: 76×76	Icon: 76×76
sQCIF: 128×96	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96
QCIF: 176×144	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144
Stand-by: 240×320 CIF: 352×288 VGA: 480×640 1.2M: 960×1280 UXGA: 1200×1600 3M: 1536×2048	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320

Some still pictures from miniSD Memory Cards and Ir exchange cannot be resized depending on size of still
 picture.



# In the editing screen (PP. 348), press 2 and select the image

 Some still pictures cannot be edited depending on original size. Still pictures appear in gray when not available.

Icon (76×76)	Press 1.4.
sQCIF (128×96)	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
QCIF (176×144)	Press 3
Stand-by (240×320)	Press 4

- Opening image appears and edited still picture is displayed.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.



# Specify portion to cut with ② and press ①.

3

# Save still picture. (Frater 2 on P. 349)

## Resizing Still Pictures < Resize Image>

Resize images for Deco-mail or stand-by.

Aspect ratio is maintained when still picture is resized. For images with differing aspect ratio, use Trimming to
use as icon or video-phone substitute images.

Original size	Available still picture sizes
Icon: 76×76	sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320
sQCIF: 128×96	Icon: 76×76, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320, Deco-mail
QCIF: 176×144	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, Stand-by: 240×320, Deco-mail
Stand-by: 240×320	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Deco-mail
CIF: 352×288	Icon: 76×76, sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320, Deco-mail
VGA: 480×640	
1.2M: 960×1280	
UXGA: 1200×1600	
3M: 1536×2048	

# In the editing screen (PP P. 348), press and select the image size.



1	Icon (76×76)	Press 1.4.
ſ	sQCIF (128×96)	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
ſ	QCIF (176×144)	Press 3 .
ſ	Stand-by (240×320)	Press 4 5.
	Deco-mail	Press 5 €.  Still picture is compressed to 9,000 bytes or less. Still pictures larger than <i>Stand-by: 240×320</i> are resized to <i>Stand-by: 240×320</i> or smaller.

- Resizing appears and edited still picture is displayed.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.

# Save still picture. ( step 2 on P. 349)

# **Correcting Still Pictures < Correct Image>**

Correct sharpness and softness of still pictures.

- Some images downloaded from sites or Internet web pages and imported via Data Link Software (P. 391) are not available.
- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.

# In the editing screen (PP. 348), press @ 9 and select the type of correction.



Sharpness	1./2	Emphasizes edges.
Softness	2 %	Blurs edges.
Sensitivity up	3 🔅	Increases brightness and contrast.
Vibrancy	(4 E	Increases colorfulness.

• Processing... appears and corrected image appears on the right.

# Save still picture. ( step 2 on P. 349)

#### **Note**

• Degree of corrections differ depending on original still picture.

## Adding Various Effects < Image Effect>

Change hue and feel of still picture or add frames.

- Some images downloaded from sites or Internet web pages and imported via Data Link Software (P. 391) are not available.
- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.



# In the editing screen (PP. 348), press (a) and select the type of effect.



Item (internal)	Press $\boxed{0\%}$ $\boxed{1.3}$ $\rightarrow$ frame $\rightarrow$ $\boxed{i}$ [OK].	Preset frames
Item (download)	Press $\bigcirc^{\mathbb{C}^*}$ $\bigcirc^{\mathbb{C}^*}$ $\bigcirc^{\mathbb{C}^*}$ $\bigcirc^{\mathbb{C}^*}$ $\bigcirc^{\mathbb{C}^*}$ folder $\rightarrow^{\mathbb{C}^*}$ $\bigcirc^{\mathbb{C}^*}$ $\bigcirc^{$	Downloaded frames
Sparkling	Press Of 3 &.	Bright areas light up in a cross-shaped pattern
Sepia	Press Of 4 &.	Image contrast is expressed in sepia color
Monotone	Press 0 % 5 %.	Image contrast is expressed in monotone
Emboss	Press 0 6	Adds metallic silver three dimensional effects
Oil painting	Press Of 7.6.	Adds feel of oil painting
Shading	Press O & B	Blur image
Ripple	Press Oh 95.	Adds ripple effect
Fish-eye	Press (1.20 02°).	Image is expressed as seen through a fish-eye lens

Processing FX appears and edited still picture appears on the right when completed.

# 2

# Save still picture. (Frater 2 on P. 349)

#### **Note**

- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.
- Image quality may deteriorate when frames are added to trimmed (P. 350) or resized (P. 350) still pictures.

## **Decorating Faces <Face Effects>**

Add emotions to still pictures of faces.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face effects, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting
  edited images to stand-by.
- Use larger portraits that face forward for Face effects.
- Face effects are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following.
- Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair
- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.

# In the editing screen (PP. 348), press 5 and select the type of effect.



Slender	Press Or 1.2.
Plump	Press Of 2 de.
Big eyes	Press O & 3 &.
Smile	Press Or 4 & dell.
Angry	Press Or 5 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya
Sad	Press Or B in Band.
Hide wrinkles	Press Of Time.
Light skinned	Press O & B &
Wrinkled face	Press O & O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O
Face symmetry(R)	Press 1.2 0%.
Face symmetry(L)	Press 1.4 1.4.
Change position	Press ① ♣ ② ♣ .  Set contour manually. Refer to the following ■ Setting contour manually.

- Face contour is automatically extracted, Processing FX appears and processed still picture appears on right.
- When facial contours are not properly extracted, press (♠ ##), select Yes and press (♠ to return to original image. Press (♠ 5♣ (T♣ 2♣ and set contour manually. Refer to the following "■ Setting contour manually".

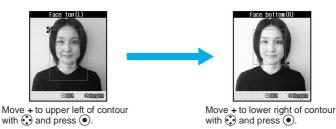
# Save still picture. (📽 step 2 on P. 349)

## Setting contour manually

Set face contour, right eye contour, left eye contour and mouth contour and apply effects. Move + cursor with 😯 to set contour for each part.

- + moves only within image.
- Outlines for contour are red for face, blue for right eye, green for left eye and yellow for mouth.
- Also use contour data with Facial treatment (@P. 358).

# In the editing screen ( P. 348), press 5 12 2 and specify the face contour.



# Set right eye contour.



Move + to upper left of contour with ♠ and press ♠.

Move + to lower right of contour with ♠ and press ♠.

# Set left eye contour.



Move + to upper left of contour with ♠ and press ♠.

# Move + to lower right of contour with (\*) and press (•).

# Set mouth contour.



Move + to the lower right of contour with .

# Press [a] [Complete] and save still picture. ( The step 2 on P. 349)

- Hold to move + consecutively.
- Set contour data is saved when edited image is saved. Contour data settings return if edited image is not saved. Saved contour data is used the next time the image is edited.

## Pasting Face Stamps <Face Stamp>

Add decorations such as tears, sunglasses and swirly cheeks.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face effects, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting
  edited images to stand-by.
- Use larger portraits that face forward.
- Face stamps are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following.
  - Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair
- Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.

# In the editing screen (PP. 348), press 6 5 and select the type of stamp.



Anger	Press O LE (1.2).
Tears	Press O N Z Ac.
Lose color	Press Of 3 &.
Swirly cheeks	Press Of 45.
Puppy dog eyes	Press O to 5 to
Sunglasses	Press O to G inco.
Brainy glasses	Press Of T
Mosaic (eyes)	Press On Brive.
Mosaic (face)	Press On Pre
Change position	Press (1.26 D.27).
	● Set contour manually. (☞ P. 353)

- Face contour is automatically extracted, Processing FX appears and processed still picture appears on right.

# 2

## Save still picture. (Frater 2 on P. 349)

#### Note

 Image quality may deteriorate when Face stamps are added to trimmed (P. 350) or resized (P. 350) still pictures.

## Pasting Image Stamps < Image Stamp>

Paste preset and downloaded image stamps such as stars, flowers and kiss marks.

• Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.

# In the editing screen (PP. 348), press © And select the type of image stamp.



Small flower	Press On the Control of the Control
Heart (small)	Press On 2 de la companya della companya della companya de la companya della comp
Footprints	Press Of 3.
Clover	Press On the Arman Press On the
Star	Press Or 5 to 1.
Kiss mark	Press On the land.
Crystal	Press Off.
Note	Press On Brown.
Hibiscus	Press O & G & G & G & G & G & G & G & G & G &
Pass	Press (1.1%) (1.1%).
Rose	Press 1.2 1.2.
Rainbow	Press 1.2 2.
Balloon	Press 1.2 3
Shooting star	Press 1.2 4 2.
Heart (big)	Press 1.2 5 %.
Stamp(Download)	Press $\underbrace{1.26}_{6.60} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{stamp} \rightarrow \bigcirc \boxed{1}$ [OK].

- Image stamp appears.
- Press to adjust location.
- Press @aa to re-select Image stamp. Stamp selected before pressing @aa is deleted.

# 7 Press • [Paste].

- Adjust location and press to paste same stamp.
- Press 🗊 [Complete] and save still picture. (🖙 step 2 on P. 349)

#### Note

 Image quality may deteriorate when Image stamps are added to trimmed (௴P. 350) or resized (௴P. 350) still pictures.

## Pasting Character Stamps < Character Stamp>

Paste entered characters and date/time.

• Still pictures larger than VGA: 480×640 are not available.

# In the editing screen (PP P. 348), press and select a Character stamp.



	Press ♠ → enter text → ♠.  • Enter up to 22 single-byte (11 double-byte) characters.  Text that exceeds display width is cut. (Line breaks are not available.)
Date	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de

- Press to adjust location.
- Entered characters appear in orange.
- Press (a) [Font size] to change the font size in order of 20 dots → 24 dots → 30 dots → 48 dots (double height size) → 12 dots → 16 dots → 20 dots.
- Characters move back to center when font size is changed.

# Press • and save still picture. (Fratep 2 on P. 349)

#### **Note**

Image quality may deteriorate when Character stamps are added to trimmed (PP P. 350) or resized
 (PP P. 350) still pictures.

# Combining Two Still Pictures < Combine Panorama>

Combine two still pictures and create a panoramic image.

- Combine images that are of the same tone.
- Only Stand-by: 240×320 still pictures are available.



First still picture



Second still picture



Panorama image

**1** Open editing screen for still picture to come on the left, press ⓐ, select ■ Combine panorama and press ④.



# Select the type of combination.

Standard	1./2	Standard Combine panorama. Use as default. Suited for combining scenery and long range images.
Foreground	2 ABC	Corrects parallax for close range images. Use for combining close range images for which Standard mode was not sufficient.
Document	3 🎄	Suited for shooting characters such as close-by signs and time tables by moving the camera sideways.

- List of folders in My picture of Data box appears.
- Press @ cent to re-select type of combination. The screen in step 1 reappears.

# Select folder, press •, select still picture to come on the right and press [ ] [OK].

- To check the still picture to come on the right and combine images, select still picture and press ●
  [Agree] and [OK].
- Composing image appears and combined still picture is displayed.
- Press [a] [Flip] to flip right and left images.

# Press and save still picture. (Fratep 2 on P. 349)

• To re-select still picture to combine, press @and select image.

#### Note

 Image quality may deteriorate when trimmed (P. 350) or resized (P. 350) still pictures are combined to create a panoramic image.

### Making Up People's Faces <Facial Treatment>

Whiten or add natural make up to still pictures of people's faces.

Effects are available for still pictures sized sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, Stand-by: 240×320, CIF: 352×288 and VGA: 480×640.

# In stand-by, press ( ) ( ), select a folder, press ( ), select a still picture and press ( ).



# Press and select the type of effect.



Whitening	1./2	Makes the complexion whiter.
Natural	2 %	Makes the skin look natural and healthy.

• Processing facial treatment appears and edited still picture is displayed.

Press • and save still picture. ( step 2 on P. 349)

• Effects may differ depending on the still picture.

#### Video Player

# Playing Movie/i-motion

Play back movies shot with FOMA terminal, Voice recorder audio and i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in i-motion folder of Data box with Video player.

- Show movies/i-motion on a TV screen. (PP. 474)
- Also, play back movies saved on miniSD Memory Cards using Record video (PP. 455).
- 00:00:02/00:00:06 IUPIUSE MINIS

• Use Full-screen to enjoy movies/i-motion desktop style.

# 1

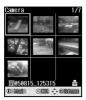
# In stand-by, press ● ७७०० विकास



- Alternatively, press  $\bigcirc$  for 1+ seconds in stand-by and press  $\bigcirc$  [ $\rightarrow$  i-motion].
- Movie/i-motion folder list appears.

# 2

# Select a folder and press .



- Movie/i-motion image list appears.
- Alternatively, press 2 in the movie shooting screen (PP. 170).
- To view next page, press
- To view previous page, press
- To view movie/i-motion saved in miniSD Memory Card, press (###). To view movie/i-motion in FOMA terminal handset again, press (###).
- To view ASF file details, press (1) [Details].

# Select movie/i-motion and press .

- Press during playback to pause.
- Fixed animation appears for voice only movies/i-motion (melodies with no video).

To play back desktop style	Press () (shutter) for 1+ seconds in viewer position) while paused or stopped.  Movie/i-motion is played back horizontally full-screen. Press () (shutter) for 1+ seconds in viewer position) while paused or stop playback in full screen to automatically return to original size.  When in full screen display, operations for up/down and left/right are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.
To adjust volume	Press 🕠 (softer) or 🕚 (louder).
To fast forward	Hold ⊘.  ◆ Plays when key is released.
To fast reverse	Hold €.  • Plays when key is released.
To pause	Press ● [Pause].  ● Press ● [Play] again to resume playback.  ● Press ● while paused to advance by frame or ● to reverse by frame.  ● Press
To jump to assigned location	Press ① to ② □ .  ■ Jumps to the location assigned by the pressed key and resumes playback.*
To play next movie/i-motion	Press O.
To play previous movie/i-motion	Press €.

<sup>\*</sup> Press (1.4) during playback to return to the beginning of movie/i-motion. Press (2.4) to (9.4) to jump to locations divided by one-ninth increments of the recording time. However, it may not be possible to jump when the recording time is short.

Supported movie/i-motion formats are as follows. View format for movies/i-motion in file properties.

File format		Encoding
MP4	Image	MPEG-4, H.263
(extensions: .mp4, .3gp)	Audio	AMR (8 kHz), AAC (8 kHz/16 kHz/32 kHz/44.1 kHz/48 kHz)
ASF	Image	MPEG-4
(extensions: .asf)	Audio	AMR, G.726 (16 to 32 kbps)

sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144, QQVGA: 160×120, hQVGA: 240×176 and QVGA: 320×240 can be played back.

#### **Playback icons**

Track information	Image + voice + text		Appears while buffering (Normal type/Streaming type)	
	Image + voice	e i	Download incomplete	<b>.</b>
	Image + text	9	Repeat playback	U
	Voice + text		Playback light	*
	Image only	Le.	Zoom playback	Ç
	Voice only	į e	Surround playback capable file	u
	Text only	<b>a</b>	Surround ON	S.

• 🗟 appears at lower right of screen if video and audio are unsupported.

#### Vote

- Playback may be resumed from a spot slightly off when paused. Playback is stopped if alarm activates.
- Playback may be resumed from slightly before pausing if sub menu is accessed depending on menu or data.

#### Note

- Jumping to specified location by pressing (T.A) to (D.A) is not available for some data or locations.
   In addition, some images are not available when forwarding or rewinding frames.
- Movies saved to miniSD Memory Cards from external devices can be played back on the FOMA terminal.
   (P. 583)
- Playback continues even if FOMA terminal is closed.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or miniSD Memory Card) is saved even if Video player is ended, and is used the next time Video player is started.

# Forward and store movie/i-motion saved in i-motion folder of Data box on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (PP P. 381).

 Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

#### When voice/video-phone call is received during movie/i-motion playback

The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered. Playback is canceled and the stopped
movie/i-motion reappears after the call is ended. Even if Resume settings is set to Yes on the miniSD
Memory Card for MP4/ASF files saved on the FOMA terminal handset, playback cannot be resumed from
where it was interrupted.

#### **Related Operations**

### Repeat playback < Repeat playback>

During playback, press (a) 1.3.

- To return to normal playback: Press (1.28).
- To stop playback: Press @ cur.

#### Change playback size < Change size>

- 1 During playback, press 2 2.....
- 2 To enlarge, press 2 ...
  - For actual size: Press 1.4.

### Light up <Light Up>

### During playback, press ▶ ■ Light Up ▶ ●.

- Alternatively, press # or 1+ seconds.
- To turn off: Perform same steps.

#### Set forwarding frame <Frame rate>

- 1 During playback, press 

  ▶ Frame rate ▶ .
  - To set from movie editing screen (PP. 367): Press @ O?\*\*.
- 2 To make frame rate more detailed, press 2 kg.
  - To make frame rate more rough (high speed): Press 1.3.

#### Set surround <Surround>

- 1 During playback, press 

  ► Surround 

   .
- 2 To set Surround, press 1.3.
  - To not set Surround: Press 22.

#### Set Playback light <Playback light>

- 2 Press 2 for Always ON.
  - To set same as light setting: Press 1.3.

#### Set Playback volume < Playback volume>

- - To set in the screen of step 2: Press @ O?\*.
- 2 Press (\*) (louder) or (\*) (softer) (\*).

#### Set resume playback settings <Resume settings>

- In the screen in step 2 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (இP. 359), press (BP) folder
   Movie/i-motion
   Marketing
   Movie/i-motion
- 2 Press 1.5 to resume playback.

#### **Related Operations**

#### **Note**

#### Repeat playback

- Data with limitations on number of times to play back is not available for repeat playback.

#### Switch playback size

- Switch playback size to Zoom if image size is sQCIF: 128×96, QCIF: 176×144 (without telop), or QQVGA: 160×120.
- Playback size is retained even if power is turned off.
- The default setting is Actual size.

#### Light up

- Backlight turns off after time set for Display light time (P. 133) if Playback light (P. 361) is set to
   As light setting.
- When Playback light is set to Always ON, even after time set for Display light time (P. 133) passes, the backlight remains lit until movie/i-motion is ended. For Light Up, the backlight turns off after set time passes.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of brightness settings (@P. 135).

#### Forwarding frame rate

- The default setting is Rough (hi-speed).
- Settings are retained even if power is turned off.
- For voice only movies, Fine is not available and forwarding frame is set to Rough (hi-speed).
- For some movies, Fine is not available and forwarding frame is set to Rough (hi-speed).
- If data size exceeds 500 KB while editing in the movie editing screen, forwarding frame is set to Rough (hi-speed).

#### Surround

- When video player is activated, the movie/i-motion is played with surround sound ON when Surround is set to Stereo effects (PP. 123) and OFF when a setting other than Surround is set. Set Surround ON/OFF during playback. However, settings are not applied to Stereo effects.
- Surround playback is available for movies/i-motion with AAC (44.1 kHz) encoded in MP4 format.

#### Playback light

• The default setting is As light setting. (P. 133)

#### Playback volume

• The default setting is Volume 7.

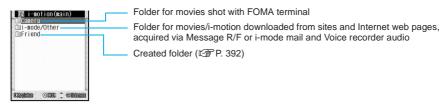
#### Resuming playback

- The default setting is Yes.
- Resume playback is available for movies/i-motion saved in miniSD Memory Card.
- Set Resume setting to Yes to resume playback of movie/i-motion saved in the miniSD Memory Card
  that are interrupted by incoming calls.
- Movies/i-motion saved in *Music/Voice* folder are not available.
- Resume settings is not available if no movies or i-motion are saved on the miniSD Memory Card.

## i-motion Folder List/Image List Layout

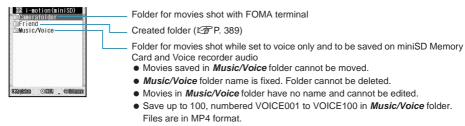
# i-motion folder list layout

#### **FOMA** terminal handset



#### miniSD Memory Card

Press minist in i-motion screen to show miniSD Memory Card folders.



### Image list layout

Show image list in 9-part display, 16-part display or List display.



9-part display



16-part display



List display

- In 9-part and 16-part display, [›] or appears in place of image if movie/i-motion corresponds with below.
  - Voice only or text only data
  - Unsupported image file format data
- Unsupported image size data
- Images that cannot be displayed (corrupted)

# Movie/i-motion icons layout

	Mobile	e MP4	MI	ASF	
	Unlimited	Limited	Unlimited	Limited	-
Not protected	HOBILE MP4	MB1E	MP4	MPG	ASF
Protected	HOBILE MIP-4)	HOBILE MIC4	MP4	MP4	asf
Shot image		_		_	-

- 🖫 (not protected) 🖺 (protected) appears for i-motion with FOMA card restrictions applied.
- appears for movie/i-motion set as stand-by, Picture call, ring tone or Select ring tone, alarm, Schedule alarm or ToDo alarm.
- appears for restricted movie/i-motion.
- ⊕ appears for movie/i-motion downloaded with i-mode and 
   ⊕ appears for movies/i-motion retrieved from miniSD Memory Cards.
- appears for movies shot with camera.
- @ appears for movies shot with Chara-den.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Change list display method <Switch view mode>

In the screen in step 2 of "Playing Movie/i-motion" (☞ P. 359), press 🌬 🕩 b display method 🕨 🌖.

#### Note

#### Display method of list screens

- The default setting is 9-part display.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters for title name of movies/i-motion. Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen.

# Repeating Movies < Continuous Play>

Play all movies/i-motion in a folder in succession.



# In stand-by, press • 7 ♣ 2 ♣, select folder and press • 5 ♣.

- Press (•) during playback to pause.
- Press [Stop] during playback to stop. Press to resume stopped movie/i-motion from beginning and continuous play is resumed.
- Message appears for movies/i-motion with restrictions on replay period or expiration date.
- Full-screen is not available during continuous playback.

## Setting continuous play

Perform settings for movie/i-motion continuous play.

Setting	Function	Default setting
Repeat playback	Sets repeat settings on or off. Settings are applied to all folders.	No
Preview	Sets maximum playback time. (Transitions are not included.) Settings are applied to all folders.	No
Transitions	Sets transitions between movies. Settings are applied only for movie/i-motion folders in miniSD Memory Cards. However, settings are not applied to <i>Music/Voice</i> folder. Set folders individually.	Random
Switch AV output	Displays continuous play images on a TV screen (電子 P. 474). Settings are applied to all folders.	_

# Repeating playback

In stand-by, press • 7 \$\overline{2}\$ and select folder, press • 4 \$\overline{4}\$ 1.\$\overline{2}\$ and 1.\$\overline{2}\$ [Yes].



#### Preview

In stand-by, press ( ) 7 & 2 & , select folder and press ( ) 4 & 2 & .



Select playback time.

5 seconds	Press T.A.
15 seconds	Press 22.
No Preview	Press 3

## Setting transition

• Settings are applied only to movie/i-motion folders in miniSD Memory Cards.

In stand-by, press ① 乙蕊 ②蕊 圖 # テデ , select folder and press ⓐ ④ ഛ ౩ ౙ .



Select the type of transition.

Diamond shape	1./2	Next image appears from inside to outside, like a rhomboid enlarging.			
Pin-wheel	2 /BC	Next image spins and enlarges.			
Wheel	3 &	Next image spins from center and enlarges.			
Dissolve	(4 gr	lext image fades in.			
Stretch	5 #k	Next image enlarges vertically from center.			
Random	6 it is	Next image appears using a random transition.			
OFF	7 8	No transition is set.			

### Attaching and Sending Movie/i-motion <i-motion Mail>

Attach movie/i-motion to i-mode mail and send.

- Send movie/i-motion up to 500 KB (512,000 bytes).
- Send Mobile MP4 format movie/i-motion.
- Send QCIF: 176×144 or sQCIF: 128×96 images.

# In stand-by, press ( ) ( ), select folder, press ( ), select movie/ i-motion and press ( ) [Mail].



- Compose message screen appears. Selected movie/i-motion is attached.
- Select For mail (short) or For mail (long) if movie/i-motion exceeds 300 KB.
- Select *For mail (short)* and press to cut out the first 290 KB automatically.
- For movie/i-motion which exceed 500 KB, select For mail (long) and press to cut out the first 490 KB. Movie/i-motion larger than 300 KB and 500 KB or less are not cut.

# Compose and send i-mode mail.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 255 for details.

## Setting Movie/i-motion as Stand-by Display <Set to Stand-by>

Set movie/i-motion as stand-by display.

• If animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switched to Calendar.



- Movies/i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) and ASF format movies/i-motion are not available.
- Movie/i-motion with image size of QQVGA: 160×120 are not available.

# Select Yes, press and select a display method.

To view	at actual size	Press 1.3.
To zoor	n	Press 2

• Zoom is not available for image sizes other than sQCIF: 128×96 or QCIF: 176×144.

#### Note

- Refer to P. 118 to set movie/i-motion as Chaku-motion.
- Some i-motion are not available for stand-by display.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To are not available from i-motion stand-by.
- Set movie/i-motion stand-by volume with open sound volume (P. 122).

# **Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB)**

#### Edit shot movies.

• Movie editing is not available for some data recorded on devices other than FOMA SH901iS.

## **Opening Movie Editing Screen**

In stand-by, press ● 乙基 ② □ , select folder, press ●, select movie and press 圖圖.



Movie editing screen

- Movie editing screen appears. First frame of file appears.
- Press to forward/reverse. Sound is off.
- Press 1.2 to 9 to jump to specified location.

#### **Editing type icons**

	Capture still (© P. 369)	TX.	Image cutter (© P. 368)	ABCD	Edit telop (©P. 369)
1	Edit voice (© P. 370)	<b>←</b>	Insert effect (© P. 371)	\$ <del>7</del> ≜⇒	Resize (© P. 371)

### Key operations in movie editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press and select editing type.
- Select editing type icon with (\*).

#### **Note**

- After editing movie, select another editing type to continue editing same movie.
- Edit telop, Edit voice and Insert effect are available only for QCIF: 176×144 and sQCIF: 128×96.
- Edit telop, Edit voice and Insert effect are not available when the file size exceeds 500 KB.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Hide telop <Show ticker>

- 1 In the movie editing screen, press 

  ▶ Show ticker ▶ ●.
- 2 Press 2 2.....
  - To show tickers: Press 1.2.

### View detailed information <File property>

In the movie editing screen, press a .

• To end viewing: Press • [Agree].

#### **Note**

#### **Show ticker**

• The default setting is ON.

## **Cutting Movies < Image Cutter>**

Cut out a portion and save as a new movie.

• Ticker is deleted unless entire length of telop is included in portion to cut.

## Setting start and end points and cutting

Set starting point and ending point and cut.

• Not available for movies that are shorter than three seconds.

# In the movie editing screen (PP. 367), press 2 and select cut method.



- Press to forward/reverse. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast reverse.
- Ending point must come after starting point.

g p	9 F
	Press $3 \div \rightarrow 1$ [Origin] $\rightarrow 1$ [Last] $\rightarrow$
point and cut	[Agree].
To cut from starting point to end of file	Press $\underbrace{4 \frac{\pi}{60}} \rightarrow \underbrace{1}$ [Origin] $\rightarrow \underbrace{\bullet}$ [Agree].
To cut from beginning of file to	Press $5 \frac{\pi}{3} \rightarrow 1$ [Last] $\rightarrow \bullet$ [Agree].
ending point	

Movie editing screen reappears.

# Save movie.



To save edited movie	Press B B O 1.5.
To change title and save	Press   Bright 2 → enter title → → →  1.2  Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
To change folder and save	Press (a) (a) (b) → folder → (a) → (1.2a).  • Changing folders may not be available for movies in miniSD Memory Cards.
To play edited movies	Press 🗈 [Preview].
To attach to i-mode mail and send	Press   B  G  G  G  G  G  G  G  G  G  G  G  G
To not save edited movie	Press

• When edited movie is QCIF: 176×144 or sQCIF: 128×96 and larger than 300 KB, a screen to select whether to convert for mail attachment appears. Select For mail (short) and press ⊕ to cut out the first approximately 290 KB automatically. Select For mail (long) and press ⊕ to cut out the first approximately 490 KB automatically. To save as is, select None and press ⊕.

## Cutting for Mail

Cut movie to attach to i-mode mail.

- Select For mail (short) to automatically approximately cut 290 KB from starting point.
- Select For mail (long) to automatically approximately cut 490 KB from starting point.
- Available only for QCIF: 176×144 and sQCIF: 128×96.

# In the movie editing screen (PP. 367), press 2 and select cut method.



To select For mail (short)	Press 1.4.
To select For mail (long)	Press 2 de la company.

• Press • to forward/reverse. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast reverse.

2

Press 🗊 [Origin] at starting point and press 💿 [Agree].

3

Save movie. (F step 2 on P. 368)

## Saving Movie as Still Picture < Capture Still>

Save a scene from a movie as a still picture. Handle captured still picture as those shot with FOMA terminal. Attach to i-mode mail and send.

- Captured still picture is saved to *i-mode/Other* folder in My picture of Data box.
- Capture still is not available for voice only data.



In movie editing screen (PP. 367), press • to select scene to save as still picture and press • T.





## Press ①. [OK].

- · Scene is saved as a still picture.
- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures <Rotate>" on P. 349 for details on operations in the saving screen.

# **Editing Telops < Edit Telop>**

Pause movie during playback to add telop. Add up to five telops per movie.

Change font color and size or add color to background.

- Available only for QCIF: 176×144 and sQCIF: 128×96.
- Telops are not available for data shorter than one second, larger than 500 KB or when voice only.

# 1

# In movie editing screen (P. 367), press 35.



 Delete all telop? appears for movies with telops already added. To delete, select Yes and press (a). Select No and press (b) to leave current telop as is, and continue editing.

# Press ( [Play], press ( Pause] at spot to enter telop and press [ Origin].

- Press and adjust frame before pressing [Origin]. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast reverse.
- Telop input screen appears.
- 3
- Enter characters (P. 544) and press .
  - Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte, including pictographs and line breaks) characters.



# Press (a), select decoration type, press (b) and select decoration.



• Decoration menu screen appears.

#### **Decoration**

Decoration	Decoration
Font color	Select font color ▶ .
Background color	Select background color ▶ .
Underline	Press 1.4 [Yes] or 24 [No].
Flash	Press 1.4 [Yes] or 24 [No].
Font size	Press 1.4 [Small] or 2.4 [Big].
Display position	Press 1.4 [Left], 2.4 [Center] or 3.5 [Right].
Scroll in	Press 1.4 [Yes] or 24 [No].
Scroll out	Press 1.4 [Yes] or 24 [No].
Scroll direction	Press $\textcircled{14}$ [ $\leftarrow$ (right to left)], $\textcircled{24}$ [ $\rightarrow$ (left to right)], $\textcircled{34}$ [ $\uparrow$ (bottom to top)] or $\textcircled{44}$ [ $\downarrow$ (top to bottom)].

• Entered text is decorated.

# 5

## End editing telop.

To end editing telop	Press a 1.3.
To edit characters again	Press $\bigcirc$ $\longrightarrow$ steps 3 and 4 (repeat).
To delete decorations	Press
To delete telop	Press
To add telop at another location	Perform steps 2 to 4 (repeat).



Save movie. (Fratep 2 on P. 368)

# **Editing Voice < Edit Voice>**

Add audio to movies. Record while playing movie. Record using the mouthpiece.

- Available only for QCIF: 176×144 and sQCIF: 128×96.
- Edit voice is not available for data shorter than one second, larger than 500 KB or when voice only.
- Record from flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) when connected.

# 1

# In movie editing screen (P. 367), press @ 4 5...



Proceed to step 3 for image only movies.

# Select Yes and press .

- File is paused at beginning.
- Edit voice is not available from middle of file.

# 3

- Press [Rec], and press [Complete] when recording ends.
- Record audio while playing movie.
- Pause, Fast forward, Fast reverse, forward and reverse are not available during recording.
- Recording automatically ends when movie ends.



Save movie. (Frequency step 2 on P. 368)

## Adding Effects to Entire Movie <Insert Effect>

Change tone or touch of movies.

- Available only for QCIF: 176×144 and sQCIF: 128×96.
- Insert effect is not available for data that exceeds 500 KB or is voice only.

# In the movie editing screen (PP. 367), press 5 and select the type of effect.



Black & white	Press 1.3.
Sepia	Press 2 de .
Sparkling	Press 3 .
Colored pencil	Press 4
Spectrum	Press 5 de .
Ripple	Press 6 die.
Kaleidoscope	Press Z
Into the sun	Press 8

2 Sav

Save movie. (Frestep 2 on P. 368)

## Changing Movie Size <Resize>

Resize movie to size attachable to mail. Movies are changed to image quality **NORMAL** and image size **QCIF:** 176×144. The first 490 KB are automatically cut.

- Resizing is available for movies shot in QVGA: 320×240 and hQVGA: 240×176 or movies sized QCIF: 176×144 in SUPER FINE.
- In the movie editing screen (PP. 367), press 6. select Yes and press 6.
- Save movie. ( step 2 on P. 368)

### **Chara-den Player**

# What is Chara-den?

During a video-phone call, send a character instead of camera image. The character moves its mouth according to sound (for lip-sync supported data), raises its arms and legs, dances, and performs various actions. After downloading a character, set it in still pictures/ movies in stand-by or send as a mail attachment. (Images/movies with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal cannot be sent.) Check and shoot Chara-den's movements anytime with Chara-den player.

- Chara-den are preset on the FOMA terminal, but can also be downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.
   (№ P. 229)
- Keypad sound is not active when operating character during video-phone call (P. 86), while playing Chara-den or while shooting Chara-den (P. 374).

# Playing Chara-den < Chara-den Player>

Play Chara-den saved in Chara-den of Data box. Also perform actions.

# In stand-by, press ( ) 7 th (GH).



- Alternatively, select ☐ (Data box) → Chara-den from Top menu.
- Chara-den list appears.
- To switch image list, press and press 💯 [9-part display], 🕮 [16-part display] or 3 [List display].
- To view next page, press <sup>™</sup>
- To view previous page, press

# Select Chara-den and press (•).



- Chara-den is played.
- Press (\*) to switch action mode. Switch between modes.
- To perform actions, press (,), select an action and press (•) or directly enter a shown action number (1.1 to 9.1). Alternatively, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.
- Refer to P. 87 for preset Chara-den actions.

#### Action mode icon

© SCN

© SCN

: Full-action mode

Action mode icon

: Part-action mode

#### Note

#### Key operations for Chara-den player

0	•	0	# ==> (for 1+ seconds)	1.½ to 9.5, # 💬	<b>□</b> \$\frac{D}{h}\$
5	Screen size (© P. 373)	Action list (©PP. 374)	Light up (©P P. 372)	Actions (©PP. 374)	Cancel action (PP P. 374)

# Screen size

Adjust screen size.



© SCN



Zoom

© SCN

1/1 (actual size)

# **Related Operations**

## Light up <Light ↑>

While playing, press B B .....

- Alternatively, press ## for 1+ seconds.
- To turn off: Perform same steps.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Set Playback light <Playback light>

- 1 While playing, press @ 9 .....
  - To set from Chara-den list: In the screen of step 1, press B B ....
- 2 Press 2 for Always ON.
  - To set same as light setting: Press 1.4.

#### Adjust screen size <Screen size>

#### While playing, press (•) [Actual size].

• To return to zoom size: Press • [Zoom].

#### Set Chara-den as video-phone substitute image <Substitute image>

While playing, press (1.2) (1.2).

#### Set phonebook < Image for call>

- 1 While playing, press (1.4) 2 2....
- 2 To save as a new phonebook entry, press .
  - To overwrite: Press 22.

#### Note

#### **Light Up**

- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of brightness settings (EFP. 135).
- Backlight turns off after time set for Display light time (137 P. 133) if Playback light is set to As light
- Backlight stays lit until Chara-den ends when Playback light is set to Always ON.

#### Playback light

• The default setting is As light setting.

#### Changing image size

• The default setting is **Zoom**.

#### Substitute image

æ appears for set Chara-den.

# Calling with Chara-den as substitute image <Chara-den call>

Select a Chara-den to use as substitute image.



In stand-by, press (a) (7 ) (4 ) (5), select a Chara-den and press (a) (24).





# Select input method and make a video-phone call.

To call with direct input	Press $2 \longrightarrow$ enter phone number $\rightarrow (1 \text{ [V-phone]})$ .
To make a call from phonebook	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ select person to call $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ [V-phone].

## Controlling Chara-den

### Making a Chara-den perform actions

Make Chara-den perform actions during video-phone calls.

- Select from a range of expressions, including happiness and anger, while in full-action mode.
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts, jump and dance.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Depending on the Chara-den, sound from a microphone can be synchronized with the movement of the mouth.
- Types of actions vary for each Chara-den.



In stand-by, press (a) (7.5) (4.5), select a Chara-den and press (a).



# Press $\bullet$ or $6.5 \, \text{m}$ , select action and press $\bullet$ .



- To show action list details, press (1) [Details].
- Performs the selected action.
- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing (1.2) to (9.5), or (#77) to have the character perform an action. Alternatively, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.
- Refer to P. 87 for preset Chara-den actions.
- Press to end action.

#### Note

• Depending on the Chara-den, some actions are performed automatically.

#### **Related Operations**

Switch between full-action and part-action <Change action>

During Chara-den playback, press (\*) or (a) 45.

## Recording Chara-den < Record Chara-den >

Shoot pictures of Chara-den.

Shutter sound disabled while in Manner mode.

## Shooting still pictures

Shoot Chara-den and save as still picture.

- Still pictures are saved to *Camera* folder in My picture of Data box or specified folder.
- Shoot QCIF: 176×144 size still pictures.



In stand-by, press ( ) 7 ( ) select a Chara-den, press ( ) and



# Press 22 [Still picture].



© SCN

- To switch to Shoot movie, press a 1.2 1.2.
- To change image quality, press [a] 2. select an image quality option and press
- To switch Chara-den, press [a] 3 select a Chara-den and press [a] [OK].
- To change display size, press @ 4 5 and either 1. [Actual size] or 2 % [Zoom].
- To specify save destination on the handset, press 55, select folder and press (•).
- To switch action, press (\*).
- To perform actions from Action list, press (,), select action and press (•), or enter the action number by pressing 1.2 to 9. or ##.

# Press ( [a] and ( Save].

- Press immediately after performing action to shoot.
- Still picture is saved.

### **Shooting movies**

Record Chara-den and save as movies.

- Movies are saved to Camera folder in i-motion of Data box or to a specified folder.
- Shoot QCIF: 176×144 size still pictures.

# In stand-by, press ( ) 7 ( ) select a Chara-den, press ( ) and **6**

# Press 1.2 [Movie].



© SCN

- To switch to Shoot still picture, press (1.4) [2.4].
- To change image quality, press [a] 2 2 3, select an image quality option and press
- To set file size limit, press a 3 and either 1. [For mail (short)] or 2 [For mail (long)].
- To switch Chara-den, press (a) [OK].
- To change display size, press 5 and either 1. [Actual size] or 2 % [Zoom].
- To set backlight duration, press <a>● 6 </a> <a>●</a> and either <a>1.8</a> <a>●</a> [As light setting] or</a> [Always ON].
- To specify save destination on the handset, press (a) Z (a), select folder and press (•).
- [Image only].

# Press ( ) [Rec].

- To switch action, press (\*).
- To perform from Action list, press , select action and press •, or enter the action number by pressing 1.4 to 9 or #7.
- Alternatively, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.
- Recording continues while displaying the Action list, but remaining record time may not be updated.



# Press (•) [Stop].



- · Recording stops.
- Recording stops automatically when remaining record time becomes 00:00:00. Recording time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may automatically stop before indicator reads 00:00:00.

# 5

#### Save.

To save	Press 1.2.
To play	Press 2 de la Companya del Companya de la Companya del Companya de la Companya de
To not save	Press $3 \stackrel{?}{\Rightarrow} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

#### **Note**

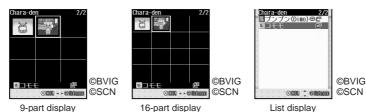
Keypad sound is not emitted during Chara-den movie recording, but sounds from operating keys may be recorded.

# **Managing Chara-den**

Protect, delete, and sort Chara-den.

### Switching display of list screens

Set Chara-den list display method to 9-part display, 16-part display or List display.



### Sorting

The order that Chara-den are listed in can be changed as follows.

Date (new $\rightarrow$ old)	Files are sorted with latest save date first.
Date (old → new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2.
By source	Pre-install → download (i-mode)
Size (big → small)	Files are sorted with largest files first.
Size (small $\rightarrow$ big)	Files are sorted with smallest files first.

The default setting is Date (new → old).

### Deleting

Use one of the following to delete Chara-den.

Delete one	Deletes individually.
Delete all	Deletes all Chara-den.
Delete selected	Deletes selected Chara-den collectively.

# Viewing properties

The following information is shown.

- Date/time saved
- File restriction: Restricted/Not restricted
- Video-phone settings: ON/OFF
- Rec. File Restriction: Restricted/Not restricted
- Display size
- Protect set: Yes/No
- File name
- Source
- File size
- Phonebook settings: ON/OFF
- Title (Original)

#### Note

 Rec. File Restriction includes attaching an image or movie created with Chara-den to mail, saving to the miniSD Memory Card or editing.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Change list display method <Switch view mode>

#### Sort Chara-den <Sort>

In stand-by, press ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) sort method ( ) ( ).

#### Protect Chara-den < Protect set>

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗷 🍜 🕨 Chara-den 🕨 🗈 🗷 🖹
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To disable protection for Chara-den: Press 2 2 ...

#### Change the title <Edit title>

- 1 In stand-by, press 7♣ 4♣ ▶ Chara-den ▶ № 5♣.
- 2 Press 1.2.
  - To return to original title: Press 22.
- 3 Edit the title ▶ ●.
  - To erase current title: Press @cr for 1+ seconds.

#### Delete Chara-den < Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press ७७०००००० ▶ 🗈 🗁 Chara-den ▶ 🗈 🗁 🗀.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To delete all Chara-den: Press (3) ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ (0).
  - To delete selected Chara-den collectively: Press (4.5) ▶ Chara-den (•) (repeat) ▶ (1) [Complete].
- 3 Select Yes ▶ ●.
  - To not delete: Select No ▶ .

#### View Chara-den properties <File property>

In stand-by, press ● 7 ♣ 4 ♣ ▶ Chara-den ▶ ⓐ 4 ♣ .

• To end viewing: Press (•) [Agree].

#### Note

#### Display method of list screens

• The default setting is 9-part display.

#### **Protecting Chara-den**

 Chara-den set as substitute images or set to phonebook are automatically protected. (Even if substitute image settings are disabled, protection is not automatically disabled.)

#### Changing titles

- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are displayed on screen.

#### **Deleting Chara-den**

- Delete protected Chara-den individually.
- Delete all will erase preset Chara-den as well.
- To use again after deleting, download preset Chara-den from the iMenu site SH-MODE. (EFP. 229)

# **Playing Back Melodies**

i-melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and melodies attached to Message R/F or i-mode mail are saved to Melody in Data box. They can be played with Melody player.

1

# In stand-by, press • 7 5 3 5.



- Alternatively, select (Data box) → Melody from Top menu.
- Melody folder list appears.
- Press @ 4 5 for continuous playback.

2

# Select a folder and press .



Melody list appears.

To view next page	Press 😇 when the cursor is on the last melody in the
	list.
To view the previous page	Press 🖲 when the cursor is on the first melody in the
	list.
To view miniSD Memory	Press ⋒##.
Card melodies	<ul> <li>Press (a) # ₹₹₹ to check FOMA terminal handset</li> </ul>
	melodies again.

3

# Select melody and press .



- Melody is played.
  Press (•) while played.
- When in Manner mode, In Manner mode. Play melody? appears. Select Yes and press .

#### Note

• Some melodies may not play.

Forward and store melodies saved in Data box on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (P. 381).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- Set melody to ring tone. (PP. 381)
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or miniSD Memory Card) is saved even if Melody player is ended, and is used the next time Melody player is started.

378

## Setting Playback Effects < Playback Effects>

Change Stereo effects such as 3D sound (PP. 123) and Surround set in Stereo effects (P. 123) while playing melodies.



# In the melody playback screen ( step 3 on P. 378), press and select the type of Playback effect.

Stereo · 3D sound	1./-2	Melodies with 3D data are played in 3D sound. Melodies without 3D data are played in stereo sound.
3D (swing)	2 ABC	Sound moves left⇔center⇔right during playback. Melodies are played back in stereo sound even when 3D data is included.
3D (loop)	3 🎄	Sound moves forward, backward, left and right during playback. Melodies are played back in stereo sound even when 3D data is included.
Surround*1	4 & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & &	Melodies are played back in surround sound. Melodies are played back in stereo sound even when 3D data is included.
OFF	5 ₺	Playback effects are not set. Melodies play in monaural*2.

- \*1 Playback format that offers rich, vibrant sound.
- \*2 Playback format that does not feature rich sound.

#### **Related Operations**

#### Adjust volume < Change volume>

In the screen in step 2 of "Playing Back Melodies", press (louder) or (softer) (olumer) (softer) (olumer) (olu

#### Adjust volume while playing <Change volume>

While playing, press (softer) ▶ (louder) or (softer) ▶ (o.

#### Set Equalizer < Equalizer>

While playing, press (a) 2 de le equalizer type ▶ (a).

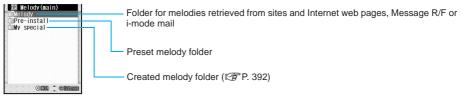
#### Note

#### Adjusting the volume

• The default setting is Volume 3.

# Melody Folder List Layout

#### **FOMA** terminal handset



#### miniSD Memory Card

Press memory Card folder.



# Melody icon layout

	SMF	MFi
Not protected	SMF	MFI
Protected	SMF	

- 🔄 (not protected) or 🖺 (protected) appears for still pictures with FOMA card restrictions applied.
- 😂 appears for melody set as ring tone.
- • ☆ appears for melodies downloaded with i-mode and ⇨ appears for melodies retrieved from miniSD Memory
   Cards and Bar code reader.
- 3D appears for melodies with 3D data.

## Playing a Series of Melodies < Continuous Play>

Play all melodies in a folder in succession.

melacy purver

To skip to the next melody	Press .
	Press €.  • Press € again at the beginning of a melody to return to previous melody.

# Specifying Start Position <Start Position>

For melodies downloaded from i-mode or received via i-mode mail, only the specified section can be played.

- The play section is specified and cannot be changed.
- Start position is not available for SMF melodies.
- Start position for melodies saved to miniSD Memory Card cannot be specified.

# In stand-by, press • 🍱 🕮, select folder, press •, select melody to specify play section and press • 🕮.

- Start position selection screen appears.
- **Start position** appears in gray when not available.

# Select playback method.

To play entire melodies <i>Play all</i>	Press 1.4.
To play a portion of melodies <i>Play portion</i>	Press 2

# **Attaching Melodies to Outgoing i-mode Mail**

Select melody (SMF) from Melody of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

Maximum size for attachment is 10,000 bytes. Files over limit are not attached.

# In stand-by, press • 🕩 📆 🛣, select folder, press •, select melody and press 🗓 [Mail].

• Compose message screen appears. Selected melody is attached.

# Compose and send i-mode mail.

Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 255 for details.

#### **Note**

- Melody may not be played properly if other party is not using a FOMA SH900i, SH901iC, SH700i or SH901iS handset.
- Some SMF melodies acquired from i-αppli or downloaded from i-mode with file restrictions, melodies attached to mail. or MFi melodies cannot be attached to i-mode mail.

## Setting a Melody as the Ring Tone < Melody Settings>

Set melodies in Melody of Data box as the ring tone.

1

In stand-by, press • Z , select folder, press •, select melody and press • S .



2

Select item and press .

# miniSD Memory Card

Use a miniSD Memory Card with the FOMA terminal. The miniSD Memory Card is a further miniaturized version of the SD Memory Card. Copy phonebook, mail and bookmarks from FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Card or copy from miniSD to FOMA terminal handset. Also, view miniSD data from the FOMA terminal.

Refer to P. 606 and P. 607 for an estimated number of recordable still pictures/movies and voice recording times for miniSD Memory Cards.

With the miniSD Memory Card adapter, use the card with SD compatible PCs, printers, etc. miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops.

Be aware of the following when using the miniSD Memory Card.

- Do not insert or remove miniSD Memory Card while FOMA terminal is on.
- Insert the miniSD Memory Card into the slot correctly. The miniSD will not function when not inserted correctly.
- SH901iS is compatible with miniSD Memory Cards up to 256 MB (as of May 2005).
   To check current compatibility for miniSD Memory Cards,

From FOMA terminal: *iMenu*  $\rightarrow$  ③メニューリスト (Menu List)  $\rightarrow$  旨ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer)  $\rightarrow$  *SH-MODE* 

From a PC: http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/products/sh901is.shtml

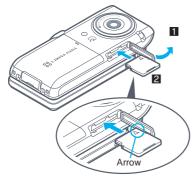
- Be aware of the following for miniSD Memory Cards and miniSD Memory Cards formatted by other devices.
  - Wait five seconds for data to be written after inserting miniSD into FOMA terminal. During this time, do not remove the card or turn off the power. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
  - Not all miniSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use miniSD Memory Cards formatted by the FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 389 for details on formatting. When a card is formatted, all saved data is lost.

- Do not remove miniSD Memory Card while editing data on a miniSD. Also do not turn off the FOMA terminal
  or miniSD inserted device while editing data. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Data saved on miniSD Memory Cards from other devices may not be displayed or played on FOMA terminal.
   Some data saved on miniSD Memory Card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- When a miniSD Memory Card used with another FOMA terminal or PC is inserted into the SH901iS, Unable to use miniSD. Please format may appear. Delete unnecessary data and insert again.

# Inserting/Removing the miniSD Memory Card

### Inserting miniSD Memory Card

Turn off FOMA terminal before inserting miniSD Memory Card.



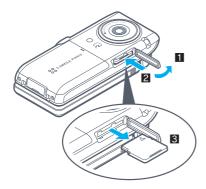
- Open miniSD Memory Card slot cover. (11)
- Slowly insert card with the arrow ( ) facing up. (2)
  - Do not force the card in at an angle. The miniSD Memory Card slot may be damaged.



- 3 4
- Push slowly until a click is heard. (图)
  - Use finger to insert.
  - Close miniSD Memory Card slot cover. (4)

# Removing miniSD Memory Card

Turn off FOMA terminal before removing miniSD Memory Card.



- Open miniSD Memory Card slot cover (1) and gently push card in. (2)
  - Push slowly until a click is heard. miniSD Memory Card springs forward. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.
- Remove miniSD Memory Card. (3)
  - Remove slowly and straight. Close miniSD Memory Card slot cover after removing.

#### Note

- Keep your face away from miniSD Memory Card when inserting or removing card. Card may pop out.
- To remove miniSD Memory Card, press miniSD Memory Card lightly until a click is heard and then pull out.
   Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.
- Store miniSD in included case after removing.

## miniSD Memory Card Features

Copy FOMA terminal handset data to miniSD Memory Card.

Select Copy one, Copy all or Copy selected. Copy entire groups or folders for some functions.

# Data available when copying from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal

Function	Total*1		Copy one/Copy	Copy all in folder
runction	16 MB	32 MB	selected/Copy all	Copy all ill loider
Phonebook*2			0	0
Schedule*3*8	Combined maximum of up to 65,535 items		0	_
ToDo list*3			0	_
Text memo			0	_
Bookmark			0	(Folder information is not copied.)
i-mode mail/SMS*5*6				0
Still picture*4*7	1,900 folders/up to per folder (	o 400 still pictures P. 606)	0	0
Movie*4	4,095 folders/uper folder (	o to 400 movies P. 606)	0	0
Melody*4	999 folders/up to 400	melodies per folder	0	0
PDF*4*9	999 folders/up to 4	100 files per folder	0	0

- \*1 The above numbers lessen depending on size of data and capacity of miniSD Memory Card.
- \*2 Secret settings, group number, group name, memory number, Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED and mail/message LED and Chara-den settings are not copied. If *Image transfer* in phonebook is set to *No*, Picture call setting is not copied. Even if *Image transfer* is set to *Yes*, data with file restrictions (restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal) is not copied. Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.
- \*3 Secret settings and alarm information (except set alarm time) are not copied. Contacts and image settings for Schedule are also not copied.
- \*4 Copy only files that are not restricted for output from the FOMA terminal.
- \*5 Reply to or forward mail saved in miniSD Memory Card. Mail saved in cards cannot be protected. Folder information is not copied.
- \*6 Large attachment files are deleted when copying mail.
- \*7 Flash movies and frames are not copied.
- \*8 Holiday settings are not copied. Start date and time are entered for end date and time if entry with no end date and time is copied. Channel data and record ON/OFF data of Program recording cannot be copied.
- \*9 Some PDF files that failed to download may not be copied to the miniSD Memory Card.

#### Note

- Save still pictures and movies shot with FOMA terminal to miniSD Memory Cards or FOMA terminal handset.
- Manager info is written to miniSD Memory Card when data is copied.
- Some files directly copied from PC to miniSD Memory Cards are not available on FOMA terminal. In such cases, use Data Link Software. Refer to P. 584 for details on downloading Data Link Software.

#### Note

 When PIM is locked, locked data cannot be operated. Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) to unlock temporarily and operate.

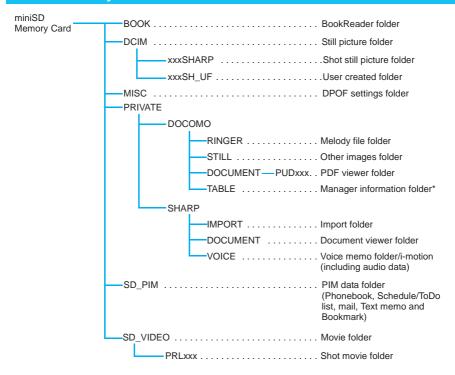
### miniSD manager screen

View miniSD Memory Card data and back up or format card from miniSD manager screen.

- Press (●) 图形 ※型 to show miniSD manager screen.
- Folder and file names in miniSD Memory Cards are managed by *Manager info*. Update Manager info if miniSD Memory Card is used (data edited, added, deleted, etc.) with PC or other device. (PP P. 390) Editing, saving, moving, or copying of data may not be available without proper manager information.



### miniSD Memory Card Folder Structure



- \* TABLE folder contains folders for DCIM, RINGER, STILL, SD\_VIDEO and DOCUMENT information.
- "xxx" in the folder names PUDxxx and PRLxxx is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999.
- "xxx" in the folder names xxxSHARP and xxxSH\_UF is a three-digit single-byte number between 100 and 999. ("xxx" can be changed but 000 to 099 are not available.)
- Animated GIF are stored in STILL folder. All other GIF files are stored in DCIM folder.
- Data on miniSD Memory Cards do not appear properly on FOMA terminal if folder name is changed or deleted with PC.
- If PDF files are saved in \(\begin{align\*} \mathbb{PRIVATE\SHARP\nocument\* folder in the miniSD Memory Card using SH506iC,
   SH900i or SH901iC, move files to \(\begin{align\*} \mathbb{PRIVATE\nocument\* DOCOMO\nocument\* pubzxx folder. Change file name to
   "PDFDCxxx.PDF" before saving. ("xxxx" in the file name is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and
   999)

# **Copying from FOMA Terminal to miniSD Memory Card**

Copy data from data list screen or details screen to miniSD Memory Card. miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (PP P. 381)

• Sub menu numbers vary depending on function and screen.

**Example: When checking phonebook** 



## In stand-by, press $\bigcirc$ , select name and press $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ .



# 2

### Select copy method.

To copy one	Press $\bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow $ Yes $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc $ .
	Press $\bigcirc \longrightarrow$ group $\rightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To copy all	Press $\boxed{3}$ $\rightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To copy selected	Press $\textcircled{4.5} \rightarrow \text{name} \Leftrightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow \textcircled{i}$ [Complete] $\rightarrow \textbf{Yes} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet}$ .  • Select up to 50 entries.

#### Note

- Group information from phonebook is not copied with Copy all.
- When copying still pictures, melodies or movies/i-motion from Data box to miniSD Memory Card, destination folder can be selected.
- Copy up to 2 MB of PDF files between the FOMA terminal and miniSD Memory Card.
- Still pictures or movie/i-motion copied to or from miniSD Memory Card may deteriorate in image quality or
  may have different file sizes. When the destination folder contains more than 400 still pictures, a new folder
  is automatically created and images are saved in the new folder.
- JPEG images in FOMA terminal increase in size when copied to miniSD Memory Card. When available
  memory space in FOMA terminal is low, images copied from handset to miniSD Memory Card may not be
  copied back even if the original image is deleted.
- Images larger than maximum image size or file size can be copied.
- An entry copied more than once is saved as separate data.
- Data may not be copied depending on miniSD Memory Card available space.

#### Backup/Restore

# **Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data**

Backup data from FOMA terminal functions (Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, ToDo list, Bookmark, Text memo) to miniSD Memory Card as one file per function. Owner information is also forwarded with phonebook Backup/restore.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (127 P. 381)

- Refer to P. 383 for details on data that can be backed up. Still pictures, movies/i-motion, melodies and PDF files in Data box cannot be backed up.
- It is recommended to set this function when sharing information with same models or with miniSD Memory Card compatible FOMA terminals, or when transferring data to a new handset, etc.
- When battery level is low, data may not be backed up properly. It is recommended to back up data while recharging battery.
- Set date and time in advance. (@P. 48)
- Data cannot be backed up while PIM is locked.
- Phonebook cannot be backed up while Keypad dial lock is set.

# Backing up from FOMA terminal to miniSD Memory Card

# In stand-by, press <a>● 日記 <a>(元息)</a>, select a function and press</a> <a>●</a>.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → Backup/restore → Backup → miniSD from Top menu.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears.
- When *Mail* is selected, mail categories appear. Select mail to backup and press ①.

# 2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits), press •, select Yes and press •.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Backup begins.
- When backup is complete, Backup complete appears.

#### Note

- Some data may not be sent depending on miniSD Memory Card available space.
- Some backed up data may not be read with other FOMA terminals.
- Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED, mail/message LED and Chara-den settings in the
  phonebook cannot be backed up. Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address
  may change.
- When Image transfer is set to Yes, image set to Picture call is also backed up. Images that are backed up
  include still pictures or movies shot with FOMA terminal camera and edited images shot with FOMA
  terminal camera.
- Alarm information other than alarm time for Schedule and ToDo list is not backed up. Contacts and image settings for Schedule are not backed up.
- Channel data and record ON/OFF data of Program recording in Schedule cannot be sent.
- When ToDo list is backed up, secret data is saved as ordinary data.
- i-αppli To and folder information in mail are not backed up.
- Phonebook entries and SMS in FOMA card are not backed up.

# Reading backup data from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal

Read backup data from miniSD Memory Card.

- When backing up data, keep or delete data in FOMA terminal.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.

# 

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → Backup/restore → Restore ← miniSD from Top menu.
- Backup data for selected function appears. When data cannot be found, No data appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Backup date appears in data name.
   Example: August 21, 2005 8:52 AM → datagr050821\_0852
- When *Mail* is selected, mail categories appear. Press to show mail backup list.
- Select data and press 2 to check contents of backup data.

# 2 Select backup data, press •, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press •.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Restore confirmation screen appears.

# Select Add and press .

- · Backup data starts being read.
- When complete, Restore complete appears.
- To overwrite FOMA terminal data, select *Overwrite*, press •, select *Yes* and press •. When overwriting phonebook, owner information except for own number is overwritten. Group names are also overwritten. Group settings which cannot be overwritten are reset to initial settings.

#### Note

- Because folder information is not saved with mail and bookmarks, received mail is saved in *Inbox*, sent
  mail is saved in *Outbox* and bookmarks are saved in *Bookmark* folder.
- Mail may take more time to transfer.

# Deleting backup data

# In stand-by, press <a>● 日前 <a>(全型 <a>2</a> <a>2

Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → Backup/restore → Restore ← miniSD from Top menu.

# Select data, press (Delete) and select a deletion method.

To delete one	Press $\bigcirc A \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc A$ .
To delete all	Press $ ot\!$
To delete selected	Press $\  \  \  \  \  \  \  \  \  \  \  \  \ $

#### View miniSD Data

# **Previewing miniSD Memory Card Data**

Check data copied to miniSD Memory Card from various function screens or miniSD manager screen. miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (PP. 381)

## Checking from various function screens

Check data from the list screen.

**Example: When checking phonebook** 

# In stand-by, press ⊕ and ⋒#₹.

- Data saved on miniSD Memory Card appears. Check data like checking data on FOMA terminal handset.
- Select backup data and press to check backup data on miniSD Memory Card.
- When data cannot be found, *No data* appears and the previous screen reappears.

# Checking from miniSD manager screen

# In stand-by, press 🍑 🗷 🌿 ুর্থ 🕰 🗘 , select a function and press 💽.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → View miniSD data from Top menu.
- Data for selected functions appears in a list. When data cannot be found, No data appears and the
  previous screen reappears.
- When *Mail* is selected, mail categories appear. Select mail to preview and press •.
- To copy to FOMA terminal handset, press 

   n select Copy → main and press
   Select copy method, press
   and follow instructions on screen. Data created with Backup/restore (♥ P. 385) cannot be copied
- To check data properties, press a, select *File property* and press •.

# Select data and press .

- Data appears.
- For details, refer to corresponding page for each function.

### **Copy to Main**

# **Copying from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal**

Copy data saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset.

Select Copy one, Copy all or Copy selected.

Copy from each data list screen.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. ( \*\*T P. 381)

• Sub menu numbers vary depending on function and screen.

#### **Example: When copying phonebook**

1

In stand-by, press ⊕ and ⊕ # →.

Data saved on miniSD Memory Card appears.

# 7

# Select data, press @2x [Copy $\rightarrow$ main] and select a copy method.

To copy one	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To copy all	Press $ ot\!$
	Press $\boxed{3}$ $\rightarrow$ name $\Leftrightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ [Complete] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .  • Select up to 50 entries.

Copying begins.

#### **Note**

- Alternatively, copy data from miniSD manager screen while checking data.
- Data backed up to miniSD Memory Card cannot be copied. Read data (PP. 386) from miniSD Memory Card.
- Copy up to 2 MB of PDF files between the FOMA terminal and miniSD Memory Card.

#### Copying phonebook entries

• No name appears when data without name is copied.

#### Copying bookmarks

Will overwrite the same URL. Are you sure? appears. To overwrite current data, select Yes.

# **Managing miniSD Memory Card**

Create/delete folders and edit folder names to manage miniSD Memory Card data for My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document of Data box. View data details or set still pictures to print.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (127 P. 381)

 In miniSD Memory Card, save up to 400 files per folder. Refer to P. 383 and P. 384 for details on files and folders.

# Formatting miniSD Memory Card <Format>

Format unformatted miniSD Memory Cards on the FOMA terminal before use.

- Note that all data in miniSD Memory Card is deleted when formatted.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Not all miniSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal.
   It is recommended to use miniSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal.



## In stand-by, press ( B \*\*\* \*\*\*\* 5 \*\*.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → Format from Top menu.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

# **2**

# Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits), press •, select Yes and press •.

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- · Format begins.
- When format is complete, Formatted appears.

#### Note

• Do not remove miniSD Memory Card during operation.

## **Managing Data**



Use the following methods to delete data from the miniSD Memory Card.

Delete one	Deletes data individually.
Delete all	Deletes all data.
Delete selected	Deletes selected data collectively.

## **Related Operations**

#### **Delete miniSD Memory Card data (example: Phonebook)**

- 1 In stand-by, press ( ▶ (a) # ##.
- 2 Select data @ 1.3.
- 3 Press 1.4.
  - To delete all data: Press ②
     Penter terminal security code (four to eight digits)
     P.
  - To delete selected data collectively: Press 3 → name ( (repeat) (repeat) (repeat)
- 4 Select Yes ▶ (•).

#### **Create folders in miniSD Memory Card (example: My picture)**

- 1 In stand-by, press (●) T♣ T♣ ▶ (a) T♣.
- 2 To create Camera folder, press 1.3.
  - To create **Other still pic** folder: Press **2** 3.
- 3 Enter folder name ▶ .

## **Related Operations**

#### Delete miniSD Memory Card data by folder (example: My picture)

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗷 🛣 ▶ 🔊 # 📂 ▶ folder ▶ 🔊 🕉 .
- 2 Press 3 henter terminal security code (four to eight digits) •.
  - To delete all images in the folder: Press T → enter terminal security code (four to eight digits)

    - To delete selected folders collectively: Press ④ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶
       ♦ folder (•) (repeat) ▶ (•) [Complete].
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (•).
  - To not delete: Select No ▶ (●).

#### View miniSD Memory Card data details (example: Phonebook)

In stand-by, press 🖗 🕨 📾 #₹ 🕨 data 🕨 📵 🗷 🗓 .

• To end: Press • [Agree].

#### Note

#### **Deleting files**

- Alternatively, delete data from miniSD manager screen while checking data. (@P. 388)
- Delete up to 50 selected entries.

#### **Creating folders**

- When the miniSD Memory Card memory is full, new folders cannot be created.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

#### **Deleting folders**

• If all data in a created folder is deleted, folder is also deleted.

#### File property

- Sub menu numbers vary depending on function and screen.
- View properties while checking data in the miniSD manager screen. (PP P. 388)

# Updating miniSD Memory Card Manager Information <New Manager Information>

When miniSD Memory Card was used on a PC or other device (editing/adding/deleting data, etc.), manager information must be updated.

- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Manager information may not be updated if there is no available space on the miniSD Memory Card.
- miniSD Memory Card may not operate properly if manager information is not updated on FOMA terminal.
- Time needed to update depends on number of files and amount of data in miniSD Memory Card.
- Updating manager information is necessary when using data saved by another device. When updating, file name extensions (.ipq) in lower case become upper case.
- Be aware that when updating, titles for non-Exif format files are deleted. However, original titles for i-motion and melodies are not deleted.
- Mail details display with Assistant View is not available while updating miniSD Memory Card manager information.



# In stand-by, press Brive (4 5).



- Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → New manager info from Top menu.
- When i-αppli stand-by is set (P. 326), Software terminate? appears. Select Yes, press (a) and (a) to show manager information update screen.

# Select item and press .

- Icon changes to ☑. ☑ appears for selected and ☐ appears for unselected entries. Press to switch.
   Select all items to update.
- When **All** is selected, select **Yes** and press (•) to start updating manager information.

# Press [ [Complete], select Yes and press .

- Updating begins.

#### Note

- Do not remove miniSD Memory Card while updating.
- While updating, voice/video-phone call and mail can be received. The following functions are not available:
   i-mode, i-αppli, shooting still picture/movie, Barcode reader, view mail, play image/i-motion/melody/Charaden, viewing miniSD data from phonebook/mail/Schedule/ToDo list/text memo, print setting (DPOF), checking memory on miniSD Memory Card, sending/receiving Ir data, Document viewer, PDF viewer, BookReader.

### Checking PC and Other Device Data on FOMA Terminal < Import>

Use miniSD Memory Card to check data (phonebook, mail, schedule, ToDo list, text memo, still pictures/movies/i-motion/melodies, and PDF in Data box) created on a PC or other device.

 Use Data Link Software to copy data from PC or other device to miniSD Memory Card import folder in advance.

# 1

# In stand-by, press ● B \*\* ★ \*\* 3 \*\* ...

- Alternatively, select  $(Tools) \rightarrow miniSD manager \rightarrow Import$  from Top menu.
- Import screen appears.

# Select function and press .

- When data cannot be found, No data appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Data (file name) for selected function appears.
- To copy to FOMA terminal handset, press (a) [22]. Subsequent steps are the same as for copying data normally. File names with kanji or hiragana are changed to names supported by the FOMA terminal when copied to the handset.

# 3

# Select data and press .

Data appears.

#### Note

- For melodies, copy up to 100 KB on the handset and play up to 200 KB on miniSD Memory Cards. Play back and copy up to 1.2 MB for JPEG images, 500 KB for GIF images and 500 KB for movies. Play back and copy up to 2 MB for PDF files.
- When backup data is put into an import folder, only the first item is shown.
- Not all still pictures (JPEG/GIF) larger than 1,536(W) × 2,048(H) pixel can be viewed. Images from the image list may be displayed for larger images.
- PDF files cannot be displayed when saved in the Import folder. Copy to FOMA terminal handset to display.

#### Note

- Attached files may be deleted in part or in whole under the following conditions.
  - Attachment not supported by FOMA terminal
  - Exceeds 100 KB
  - Eleven or more files of 10,000 bytes or less are attached
  - Two or more i-motion, still picture, or melody (SMF) files over 10,000 bytes are attached
  - Total size of attached files and message text exceeds 10,000 bytes (not including i-motion, still picture, melody (SMF) files over 10,000 bytes)

# **Managing Data**

Data box consists of the following folders.

Data box	My picture
	— Chara-denChara-den are saved. (@P. 371)
	— My document
	Print setting (DPOF) Information such as the number of prints for still pictures saved on the miniSD Memory Card is saved to the miniSD Memory Card. (@P. 425)

## Creating, Editing, and Deleting Folders

Manage data by creating up to 20 folders each for My picture, i-motion, Melody, My document of Data box.

• Setting a requirement to enter security code to view data saved in folders is possible.

## Deleting folders

Use one of the following to delete folder.

Delete all	Deletes all folders.
Delete one	Deletes folders individually.
Delete selected	Deletes selected folders collectively.

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- Saved data is deleted along with folder.
- Folders containing protected data cannot be deleted. Disable protection and try again.

Operation examples below are for My picture.

### **Related Operations**

Lock Data Box PIM <Security setting>

In stand-by, press ● 乙基 ▶ ★亞 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ ①基.

Create folders < New folder>

In stand-by, press ( ) ( ) New folder ( ) enter folder name ( ).

Set Folder security <Folder security>

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗷 🕩 🕩 folder 🕨 📾 🕊 (for 1+ seconds).
- - To disable: Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits)
     ▶ ▶ ②

### **Related Operations**

#### Edit folder names <Edit folder name>

In stand-by, press ● 乙基 ① ▶ folder ▶ • ▶ Edit folder name ▶ • ▶ edit folder name ▶ • .

• To erase folder name: In the edit screen, press @ccr for 1+ seconds.

#### Delete folders < Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press ७०० ♦ folder • Delete •.
- 2 Press ③ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
  - To delete all folders: Press 24 enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) •.
  - To delete selected folders collectively: Press ④ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ folder ⑥ (repeat) ▶ ⑥ [Complete].
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (•).

#### Note

#### Creating folders

• Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

#### **Folder security**

- When Folder security is set to ON, terminal security code (four to eight digits) is required to view data list.
- Folder security can be set to **ON** only for created folders.
- Only folders in the FOMA terminal handset are available for Folder security.

#### **Editing folder names**

• Only folder names of created folders can be changed.

## Protecting, Deleting, and Sorting Data

Protect, delete, and sort data.

• Refer to P. 376 for details on how to manage Chara-den.

### Deleting

Use one of the following to delete data.

Delete one	Deletes data individually.
All in folder	Deletes all data in a folder.
Delete all	Deletes all data.
Delete selected	Deletes selected data collectively. Select up to 50 entries.

Only Delete one and Delete selected are available for protected data.

#### Sorting

Change the list order to one of the following.

Date (new $\rightarrow$ old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first.
Date (old $\rightarrow$ new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2.
By source*	Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: camera $\rightarrow$ download (i-mode, i-mode mail, i- $\alpha$ ppli) $\rightarrow$ miniSD Memory Card/Ir exchange/USB $\rightarrow$ video-phone $\rightarrow$ Chara-den $\rightarrow$ PDF.
Size (big → small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first.
Size (small → big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first.

- \* File acquisition source differs by data type.
- The default setting is Date (new → old).

### **File restrictions**

Restrict still pictures and movies from mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.

- If a File restriction is set on data shot with the FOMA terminal, although sending the data as an attachment to i-mode mail is possible, the receiver will not be able to send restricted data to another party.
- File restrictions on data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to i-mode mail, or saved from i-αppli, and picture memos shot during video-phone cannot be changed.
- Only data created through editing or shot by the FOMA SH901iS can be changed.
- Even if movies shot with the FOMA SH901iS, File restrictions cannot be changed for i-motion downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or i-motion retrieved from a URL in an i-motion mail message.

### File properties

The following info	The following information is shown.								
Item	My picture	i-motion	Melody	PDF	Item	My picture	i-motion	Melody	PDF
Date/time saved	0	0	0	0	Slideshow settings	_	_	0	_
Date/time saved (Exif) (images shot with camera only)	0	_	_	-	Creator	_	0	-	_
Date/time created	_	0	(MFi only)	0	Copyright	_	0	_	-
Display size*1 (excluding Flash movies and Deco- mail templates)	0	0	-	_	Description	-	0	-	_
File size	0	0	0	0	File name	0	0	0	0
File size (video) (JPEG images only)	0	_	-	ı	Shooting date (JPEG images only)	0	-	-	-
File format (except Flash images)	0	0	0	0	Title (Original)	_	0	0	_
File restriction:  Restricted/ Not restricted	0	0	0	0	Replay: <i>MobileMP4</i> / <i>MP4</i> *3	_	0	_	-
Protect set: <b>Yes/No</b> *2 (Including Deco-mail templates)	0	0	0	0	Expiration date: MobileMP4/ MP4*3	_	0	_	_
Tone settings*2	_	0	0	_	File period: MobileMP4/MP4 <sup>*3</sup>	_	0	_	_
Set screen*2	0	0	_	_	Sound: <b>AAC</b> / <b>AMR/G.726</b> *4	_	0	_	_
Ph/book settings*2	0	0	0	_	Source	0	0	0	0
Schedule/ToDo*2	0	0	0	-	Transfer for Repair: available/ unavailable (Excluding Deco- mail templates)	0	-	0	0
Video-phone*2	0	-	-	_	Ring tone: available/ unavailable, MobileMP4/MP4	-	0	-	_
Record message*2	0	_	-	ı	Receive display: available/ unavailable	_	0		-
Owner Information*2	0	_	_	_	Surround playback: available/ unavailable	_	0	_	_
Daily alarm*2	_	0	0	_					

- \*1 Display size appears in pixels.
- \*2 Does not appear for file properties of My picture Deco-mail templates or miniSD Memory Card.
- \*3 Not displayed when there are no replay restrictions.
- \*4 Not displayed for movies/i-motion with no audio sound.

Operation examples below are for My picture.

### **Related Operations**

### Edit title <Edit title>

- 1 In stand-by, press (●) T folder ▶ (●) b data ▶ (a) ▶ Edit title ▶ (●).
- 2 Edit title ▶ (•).
  - To delete title: In the title editing screen, press @ can for 1+ seconds.

### Delete data < Delete >

- 1 In stand-by, press Z ♣ J ♦ folder ▶ ▶ data ▶ ▶ Delete ▶ ●.
- 2 Press 1.3.
  - To delete all data in the folder: Press ②
     Penter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
  - To delete all data: Press ③ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
  - To delete selected folders collectively: Press 45 b data (•) (repeat) 1 [Complete].
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (●).

### Protect data < Protect set>

- 1 In stand-by, press ( ) The folder ( ) ( ) data ( ) Protect set ( ).
- 2 Press (1.4).
  - To disable: Press 22.

### Move data to a new folder < Move>

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗷 🕩 folder 🕨 data 🕨 🗈 🕨 Move 🕨 •.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To move all data in the folder: Press 22 enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) •.
  - To move multiple data: Press 3 → data ( (repeat) (repeat) (repeat)
- 3 Select folder ▶ ●.

### Edit file names <Edit file name>

In stand-by, press  $\bullet$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  folder  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  data  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  *Edit file name*  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  edit file name  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$ .

• To delete file name: In the edit screen, press @ ar for 1+ seconds.

### Sort data <Sort>

In stand-by, press  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  folder  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  Sort  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  sort method  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$ .

Restrict output of still pictures and movies from the FOMA terminal <File restriction>

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗷 1 ▶ folder ▶ ▶ data ▶ 🗈 ▶ File restriction ▶ ●.
- 2 Press 2 2...
  - To disable: Press 1.3.

# View detailed information <File property>

In stand-by, press ● 乙基 ① ▶ folder ▶ ● ▶ data ▶ • File property ▶ ●.

To end: Press [Agree].

### Note

#### Changing titles

- Title names are names that appear on data lists. File names are names used for data sent as i-mode mail attachments.
- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are displayed on screen.
- Titles cannot be edited for data contained in the Music/Voice folder on the miniSD Memory Card.

### **Note**

#### **Deleting data**

- Data in *Pre-install* folder of My picture and *Pre-install* folder in Melody cannot be deleted.
- Perform Delete one or Delete selected when deleting protected data or data set for various functions.

### **Protecting data**

- Data saved on a miniSD Memory Card cannot be protected.
- Data set to any of the following are automatically protected: stand-by, call/receive display, send/receive display, Picture call, background pattern, schedule, ring tone, alarm tone, and sound effect. Protection is not disabled even after data is released from screen or sound settings.
- At a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies, check whether your FOMA terminal handset data can be transferred. (DoCoMo shall not be liable for lost data, modified data, or data that cannot be transferred.)

### Moving data to a new folder

- Select up to 50 files.
- When miniSD memory is full, data cannot be moved to another folder within the miniSD Memory Card.
- If the destination folder on miniSD Memory Card contains more than 400 still pictures, movies/i-motion, melodies and PDF, the exceeded amount cannot be moved.
- Data contained in the *Music/Voice* folder on the miniSD Memory Card cannot be moved.

### Changing file name

- Enter up to 36 single-byte characters for the file name.
- File names for the following cannot be edited: data with file restrictions (data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to i-mode mail or saved from i-αppli), picture memos shot during a videophone call or data saved on a miniSD Memory Card.

# **Checking Available Memory < Check Memory>**

Check the following contents.

Item	Details
Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo	Number of remaining entries, registered entries, and secret entries
Bookmark, Text memo	Number of remaining entries, and registered entries
Received mail, Sent mail, Message R/F, Screen memo	Percentage used (%)
Sent SMS, Received SMS	Registered entries/20 entries
My picture, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den, My document, i-αppli of Data box	Total percentage used (%)
miniSD Memory Card	Amount, amount used, and free space
FOMA card	Number of remaining phonebook entries and registered entries, and percentage used for SMS (%)

Secret data items can only be displayed when Secret mode is set to ON. (PP P. 156)

# In stand-by, press (1.1.2)



Handset



miniSD Memory Card



FOMA card

- Alternatively, select \(\int\_i^1\) (Settings) → General settings → Check memory from Top menu.
- Press ๔ [⇒miniSD] to check miniSD Memory Card or FOMA card memory usage. miniSD Memory Card usage status appears. Press ໔ [UIM] again for FOMA card usage status.
- Current available memory status is shown.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- To show available memory status for other functions while checking available memory on the handset, press (\*).
- Press (•) [Agree] or (© clr to end checking.
- The number of phonebook entries includes secret data.

### When Memory is Low or Saved Data is Full

Data and files cannot be saved when memory is low or saved data is full. Saving to miniSD Memory Cards or deleting unnecessary files is recommended.

- If saved data is full, data and file cannot be saved, even if available memory exists. Delete unnecessary data before saving.
- For images, melodies, and i-αppli software, saving can be temporarily suspended to delete unnecessary data
  or files.
- In stand-by, M or w appears when the FOMA terminal handset's available memory is low or memory is full.

	Appears when available memory is less than 1.2 MB.
(red)	Appears when available memory is less than 100 KB.

### Ir Exchange

# Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive phonebook, schedule, mail, still picture and other data to and from other FOMA terminals which also support infrared communication. In addition, use Ir exchange from i- $\alpha$ ppli to operate simultaneously with other devices.

- The FOMA terminal Ir exchange function conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.
- During Ir exchange, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area. Therefore, functions such as making/receiving calls, i-mode, sending/receiving i-mode mail, sending/receiving SMS, and receiving Message R/F are not available.
- Ir exchange is not available during a call.

# When Lock Functions are Set

- Ir exchange is not available while All lock or Self mode is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Data of locked functions cannot be sent or received when PIM is locked. For example, when phonebook PIM is locked, phonebook data cannot be sent or received. However, data can be sent when PIM lock is temporarily disabled.

### Using Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive the following data.

# Data that can be sent from the FOMA terminal

Function	One	All	Remarks
		items	
Phonebook	0	0	Group information and memory numbers are not sent when sending data items individually. Secret phonebook entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to <b>ON</b> . Image data, Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED, Mail/Message LED and Chara-den settings are not sent. Owner Information is sent when sending all phonebook data.
Schedule	0	0	Secret schedules cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to <i>ON</i> . Alarm information other than alarm time, contacts, and image setting information cannot be sent. Data with no end date/time set will be sent with start date/time set as end date/time. Channel data and record ON/OFF data of Program recording cannot be sent.
ToDo list	0	0	Secret ToDo list entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to <i>ON</i> . When sending all items, data saved as secret data is also sent and saved by the receiver as normal data. For alarm information (contacts, alarm tone, alarm volume, ring duration settings), only alarm time can be sent.
Text memo	0	0	_
i-mode mail/SMS	0	0	Pasted data, attached files, and protected mail can be sent. Data that cannot be attached, is not be sent. Attachments of 10 KB or more cannot be sent.
Bookmark	0	0	Folder information cannot be sent.
Still pictures, movies, i-motion, melodies, PDF in Data box	0	×	Data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or received as i-mode mail attachments that have file restrictions cannot be sent.  Data pre-registered in the FOMA terminal cannot be sent.  PDF files up to 1.2 MB can be sent.
Owner Information	O (not s	pecified)	Saved as phonebook entry by receiver.

# Data that can be received by the FOMA terminal

Function	One	All items	Storage location	Storage order
Phonebook	0	0	Phonebook	When receiving a single data item, smallest available memory number after <i>010</i> is automatically added. When receiving all phonebook entries, all owner information except own FOMA terminal's phone number is saved in place of the existing owner information. <i>No name</i> appears for data without name saved.
Schedule	0	0	Schedule	Saved in order of start date/time.
ToDo list	0	0	ToDo list	Saved in order of expiration date.
Text memo	0	0	Text memo	Saved in order of last revision date/time.
i-mode mail/SMS	0	0	i-mode mail/SMS	Saved in order of date/time received, sent or saved.
Bookmark	0	0	Bookmark	Saved at the top.
Still pictures, movies, i-motion, melodies, PDF in Data box	0	×	My picture, i-motion, Melody, My document of Data box	Saved starting from the top.
Owner Information	O (not s	pecified)	Owner Information	Saved as phonebook entry.

#### Note

- Data saved on miniSD Memory Cards cannot be sent or received.
- If overwriting existing data with new data is selected when receiving all the items of a function, all existing
  data for that function will be deleted.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent or received.
- Sort settings for folders may not be reflected when bookmarks are sent or received, depending on the other party's terminal.

### Sending or receiving single phonebook entry

- Received phonebook data is automatically added to the smallest available memory number after 010.
   When no memory number after 010 is available, data is added to an available memory number after 000.
- Group numbers for all entries are set to Not specified.
- · Secret codes are not sent.

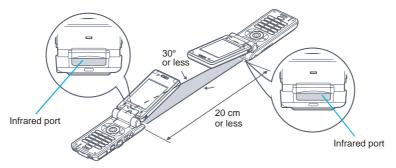
### Receiving all phonebook entries

- For Receive all, memory number, secret settings, group names and group numbers are also saved. Sending or receiving single mail message
- $\bullet \ \, \text{For i-mode mail with i-} \alpha \text{ppli To pasted, the pasted information is deleted and is not sent or received.}$

### Sending or receiving pictographs

 For functions which pictographs can be saved, pictographs can be sent and received. However, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

### Precautions for using the Ir exchange function



- Place the FOMA terminals to send and receive on a desk or other stable surface, no more than 20 cm apart.
   Align the FOMA terminals with their infrared ports facing each other as shown above.
- When data is received, Save ? appears on the receiving FOMA terminal. Keep the terminal's infrared ports facing each other and do not move the terminals until Yes or No is selected.
- Keep the terminal's infrared ports facing each other and do not move the terminals, until all data is sent and received.
- Ir exchange may not function properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.
- If either of the infrared ports is dirty, Ir exchange will become difficult. Take care not to scratch the ports, and wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth.

### Note

• When Ir exchange could not be performed properly, the following messages appear.

### Authentication failed. Retry?

### No response. Retry?

If these messages appear, select Yes to try again.

- If Ir exchange fails, move the FOMA terminals close and try again.
- Images sent by Ir exchange may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes.
- Depending on the receiving terminal, even when still pictures with titles of 19 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters or more are sent, only up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters can be received.

### **Authentication Password**

Terminal security code and authentication password entry are required for sending or receiving all data items.

- For terminal security code, enter current security code (four to eight digits) set in the FOMA terminal.
- Authentication password is a password exclusively for Ir exchange. Before starting data transfer, the sender
  and receiver must enter the same user-specified four-digit password. This password can be changed for each
  Ir exchange operation.

# Sending and Receiving Data Individually

Use Ir exchange to send/receive data individually on the FOMA terminal.

• Refer to P. 398 for details on data that can be sent and received.

# Sending Single Data Item <Send Ir Data>

Send one data item, operating from the list screen or details screen of data to send.

**Example: When checking phonebook** 

In phonebook list (☞ P. 109) or details screen (☞ P. 109), select data, press ⓐ, select *Send Ir data* and press ④.



 Operation can be performed using sub menu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.

# 2 Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive single data item, press ①. [Send], select Yes and press ①.

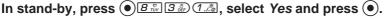
- Data sending begins.
- When completed, *Exchange completed* appears, and the previous screen reappears.

# Receiving Single Data Item <Receive Ir Data>

Receive one data item, operating from the Ir data receiving screen.

1





- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Receive Ir data → Receive from Top menu.
- The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Data is automatically received when data is sent within 30 seconds.
- When receiving is completed, a confirmation screen appears.



When phonebook is received

# Select Yes and press .

 When received bookmark is identical to existing bookmark, The same URL is saved. Overwrite? appears. To overwrite current data, select Yes and press (\*).

# Sending and Receiving All Data Items

Use Ir exchange to send/receive all data items on the FOMA terminal.

Refer to P. 398 for details on data that can be sent and received.

# Sending All Data Items < Send All Ir Data>

Operate from the list screen of data to send.

**Example: When checking phonebook** 



### In phonebook list (PP. 109), press , select Send Ir data and press

- Operation can be performed using sub menu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.
- Send Ir data screen appears.



### Press 2 [Send all].

- Terminal security code entry screen appears.
- Ready receiving FOMA terminal to receive all data items, enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (●).
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
  - Authentication password entry screen appears.



### Enter authentication password (four digits), select Yes and press (•).



- If the entered authentication password matches an authentication password entered by receiver, data sending begins.
- When completed, Exchange completed appears, and the previous screen reappears.

#### Note

- When all bookmarks are received, they appear on the receiver's bookmark list in the order used, starting
- When sending all schedules, operate from Show all schedules or Calendar display.

# Receiving All Data Items < Receive All Ir Data>

Receive all data items using Ir exchange, operating from the Ir data receiving screen.

- To receive all data items, terminal security code and authentication password entries are required.
- When all data items are received, saved data will be overwritten.

# In stand-by, press (●) 🗷 🛣 🗵 🛣 , select Yes and press (●).

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Receive Ir data → Receive all from Top menu.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears.

# Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (•).

Numbers are masked with asterisks.

# Ready sender's FOMA terminal to send all data.

- Remember the authentication password entered in the sender's FOMA.
- Authentication password entry screen appears.



### Enter the same authentication password (four digits) entered on sender's FOMA terminal.

- Data is automatically received when data is sent from the other FOMA terminal within 30 seconds.
- To cancel Receive all after entering authentication password, press (•) [Cancel].



# Select Yes and press (•).

#### Note

When all bookmarks are received, they appear in the order used, starting from the oldest.

# Using Ir Exchange with i-αppli Software

Use the Ir exchange function (P P. 397) from running software. Activating i-αppli from Ir exchange is also possible.

- While in Self mode, Ir exchange is not available.
- While i-αppli PIM is locked, i-αppli will not activate.

### Activating Ir Exchange from i-αppli



# While running software, start Ir exchange, select Yes and press (•).



- Procedures for starting Ir exchange differ, depending on the software.
- Ir exchange begins.
- While *Exchanging data* appears, select *Cancel* and press to cancel Ir exchange.

### Activating i-αppli from Ir Exchange

During Ir exchange, if a signal to start i-αppli is received from devices supporting infrared communication, software can be activated.

- When i-αppli To is set to **NO**, i-αppli will not activate from Ir exchange.
- Cannot be activated as i-αppli stand-by.



# In stand-by, press (●) 8 元 3 元 1.万.

• The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Refer to step 1 of "Receiving Single Data Item <Receive Ir Data>" on P. 400.



Software is activated when signal is received from the sender's FOMA terminal

#### Note

If applicable software is not installed in the i-αppli startup setting, No requested software appears.

### **Infrared Remote Control**

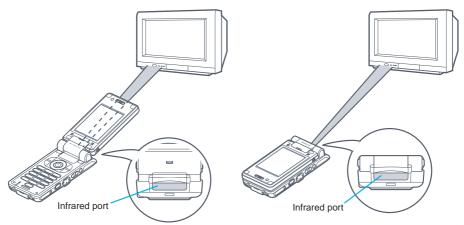
# **Using the Infrared Remote Control Function**

Use the FOMA terminal's Infrared port from i-αppli software to operate equipment supporting remote control such as TVs and VCRs.

- Requires compatible i-αppli software. (The preinstalled software Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) supports the Ir remote control function.)
- While in Self mode, the Ir remote control function cannot be used.

# **Remote Control Operation**

Start i- $\alpha$ ppli software that supports Ir remote control functions, point the FOMA terminal's Ir port to the front of the remote control sensor on the TV, VCR or other device to operate, and perform remote control operations.



- Actual operational methods will differ with each i-αppli software application. Refer to P. 317 for details on Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control).
- Control devices from a distance of up to approximately 4 meters. (Distance will vary depending on the device, the ambient brightness and other factors.)
- ) flashes when an Ir remote control signal is being sent.

#### **Note**

- Depending on the device, proper operation may not be possible.
- Proper remote control may not be possible directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.

### Voice Recorder

# Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder

Use the FOMA terminal as a voice recorder.

Voice recorder uses the movie shooting function and saves movie data with *Voice only* (= no image).

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (1287 P. 381)

- Save up to a combined total of 200 recordings and i-motion in Camera folder in i-motion of Data box. (Actual number varies depending on recording time.)
  - Recordings are saved as voice only movies. Save up to 100 recordings in the *Music/Voice* folder of miniSD Memory Card. (Actual number varies depending on recording time.)
- Record up to approximately five minutes per recording, when saving to FOMA terminal handset. Record up to approximately five hours when saving to 32 MB miniSD Memory Card.
- Play back recorded voice or audio with Video player (PP. 359).
- Recorded data is saved without file restrictions.
- Recording within a distance of 1.5 meters is recommended.
- The default setting for save destination is Camera folder in i-motion of Data box on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Set Retain settings to ON to retain set values.

# 1

# 

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Voice recorder from Top menu.
- · Recording begins.
- When recording starts, the shutter sounds and the picture light automatically flashes. The picture light automatically turns off when recording ends. (Picture light cannot be turned off during recording.)

# 2

# To stop recording, press .

- The save screen appears.
- Recording stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads 00:00:00 (recording file size reaches limit or miniSD Memory Card has no available space).

# 3

# Press 1. [Save].

- Recorded audio is saved to the Camera folder in i-motion of Data box.
- To resume recording, press [2.4] [Resume]. Not available when the remaining time indicator is 00.00.00
- To play back recorded audio, press ③ [Play]. To pause playback, press ⑥ [Pause]. To stop playback, press ⑥ [Stop]. Press ⑥ and the previous screen reappears.
- To create i-mode mail with recorded voice attachments, press [mail]. Refer to P. 194 for details on creating i-mode mail.
- To not save, press 4 [Cancel], select Yes and press •).
- Files are saved in specified folder if save destination is set. (PP. 192)
- When saving to the FOMA terminal handset, if available memory space is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save. (PP. 393)

#### Note

- Recording cannot be resumed if movie is played back in the save confirmation screen.
- When FOMA terminal is closed during recording, recording automatically ends and the save confirmation screen appears. Refer to step 3 for information on saving.
- When voice/video-phone calls are received during recording, recording automatically stops and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears. Recording cannot be resumed.
- Play back recorded audio with Video player. In i-motion screen, select Camera (for FOMA terminal handset) or Music/Voice (for miniSD Memory Card). (PP P. 363)
- When File size limit is set to *Unrestricted*, file cannot be attached to i-mode mail. However, files 500 KB or less can be attached.

# **Changing Settings for Voice Recorder**

The following settings can be made for Voice recorder. Refer to section on shooting movies for details.

Data box		Displays file from specified save folder.	
Auto timer		Sets recording to start in 2 seconds, 5 seconds, or 10 seconds when set to <b>ON</b> . (© P. 183)	
File size limit		When saving to miniSD Memory Card, set to either For mail (short), For mail (long), or Unrestricted. When saving to the FOMA terminal handset, set to either For mail (short) or For mail (long). (FP P. 183)	
Recorder	Noise reduction	Sets to reduce noise. (Default setting: ON) (PP. 188)	
	Save to	Sets save destination folder when saving to FOMA terminal handset. (© P. 192)	
	Retain settings	Sets Retain settings to <i>ON</i> to retain set values. (Default setting: <i>ON</i> ) (©了P. 194)	
	Set ON time	Sets time backlight illuminates when recording. (© P. 187)	
Switch main⇔SD		Switches save destination. (© P. 191)	

## **Related Operations** Open Data box < Data box> In stand-by, press ( ) B \*\* 1.% ) ( 2 % ). Set Auto timer < Auto timer> 2 Press 1.4. To change the time for Auto timer: Press ③ ▶ time ▶ ⑥. To disable: Press 2 ... Set File size limit <File size limit> In stand-by, press ( ) B \*\* (1.5) | (a) D \*\* ) file size ( (a). Set Noise reduction <Noise reduction> 1 In stand-by, press (●) B → (1.5) ▶ (a) ▶ ■ Recorder ▶ (b) ▶ (1.5). 2 Press 1.4. ● To not set: Press ②蕊. Specify save destination <Save to> Set Retain settings < Retain settings> 1 In stand-by, press (●) B → 1 A Recorder (●) (●) ■ 3 → 3. 2 Press 1.4. ● To not set: Press ②蕊. Set lit duration <Set ON time> 1 In stand-by, press (●) B → (1.5) ▶ (a) ▶ ■ Recorder ▶ (b) ▶ 5 5 ... 2 Press 2 [Always ON]. • To use light setting: Press 1.5 [As light setting]. Switch save destination <Switch main⇔SD>

### **PDF Viewer**

# **Displaying PDF Files**

In stand-by, press ( ) B \*\* (1.2 ) ( # \*\*).

Display PDF files saved on FOMA terminal handset and miniSD Memory Card, or display on an external device (AV output). Download, display and save PDF files from sites and Internet web pages. (©FP. 227)

- Save files in advance to My document of Data box or \( \begin{align\*} \begin{align\*} \textit{PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx} \) folder on miniSD Memory Card. To save to miniSD Memory Card, change file name to \( \begin{align\*} \begin{align\*} \textit{PDFCxxx.PDF} \) and update the miniSD Memory Card manager information. ("xxx" in the folder name is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999) (\( \begin{align\*} \textit{P} \) 384, P. 390)
- To view PDF files saved on miniSD Memory Card, insert the miniSD Memory Card in advance. View PDF files of up to 2 MB directly from miniSD Memory Card.
- ※ In order to differentiate the file type, an alphanumeric character string called a file extension, such as ".pdf", is added to the end of the file name on a PC. (Depending on the computer settings, file extension may not appear.) Refer to the user's guide for the PC or software being used.

# 

- Alternatively, select 
   <sup>♠</sup> (KEITAIViewer) → PDF Viewer from Top menu.
- Alternatively, select ☐ (Data box) → My document from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press 7 in stand-by.
- PDF viewer folder list appears.

# Select a folder and press .



File list appears.

To show next page	Press 🗓.
To show previous page	Press 🖷.
To show PDF files in miniSD Memory Card	Press 🛍 # 😴 .

- ♣ appears for PDF files downloaded with i-mode and ♣ appears for PDF files retrieved from miniSD Memory Card.
- appears for PDF files with file restrictions.

# Select a file and press .



Details screen

- The first page appears.
- PDF files are displayed in accordance with settings such as Magnification.

To scroll Up and down		Up: Press 🖜 Down: Press 🕽.
	Left and right	Left: Press ⊙. Right: Press ⊙.
To display e	ntire page	Press   [Fit].
To display A (when display	actual size ayed as <i>Fit</i> )	Press ● [Actual size].
To save as s	still picture	Press ④ [Cut off] → Yes → ⑥.  Part of the screen is cut and image is saved in JPEG format.
To view next page		Press 🗓.
To view prev	vious page	Press 🖷.
To end		Press ■.  If a still picture is not saved, the save confirmation screen appears.

### Note

- When multimedia PIM is locked (PP P. 153), terminal security code is required to display files.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or miniSD Memory Card) is saved even if PDF viewer is ended, and is used the next time PDF viewer is started.
- Depending on the PDF file, a password may be required. Enter password (up to 32 digits) and press (•).
- When using the PDF viewer, some fonts or complex images may not appear correctly.
- Some files may not be displayed depending on the software used to create the file.
- Some files may take more time to display or may not be able to display entire contents.

#### Cut image

- Depending on the security settings, some PDF files may not be cut.
- Cut document image to Stand-by: 240×320 and save on FOMA terminal handset as a still picture (JPEG image).
- Images cut from PDF files cannot be sent in mail, copied to the miniSD Memory Card or output from the FOMA terminal.
- Cut image is not available during AV output.

# Operating the details screen

• Use PDF viewer details screen in the following ways.

. , .	Switches between Display link and Open PDF viewer. When Display link is set, links within the file, Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To) are available.
-------	---

Rotate view					
7:			Rotates screen 90° left or right.		
Zoom in			Zooms screen in 10% increments, up to 1,000%.		
	Page Single page		Displays file one page at a time. (Default setting)		
la	ayout	Continuous facing	When file contains multiple pages, displays pages two at a time.		
	Display	Fit page	Displays entire page. (Default setting)		
		Actual size	Displays PDF file at full size.		
		Fit width	Sets PDF file to fit display horizontally.		
5	Scroll bar		Sets whether to display scroll bar. The default setting is <b>ON</b> .		
F	Page num	bers	Sets whether to display page numbers. The default setting is ON.		
N	Magnificat	ion	Sets whether to display magnification. The default setting is <b>ON</b> .		
Move page C	Go to first	page	When file contains multiple pages, moves to first page.		
	Go to last	page	When file contains multiple pages, moves to last page.		
5	Specified p	page	When file contains multiple pages, displays specified page.		
Bookmark • E Mark	Bookmarks	Bookmarks	Displays up to 50 bookmark titles already saved in PDF file and jumps to selected bookmark.		
		My bookmarks	Displays added bookmarks and jumps to selected bookmark. In addition, deletes bookmark, changes title and displays properties.		
A	Add bookmark		Adds bookmark. Magnification and rotation settings can be saved. Save up to ten.		
	Display ma	ark	Displays mark list. In addition, deletes mark and displays properties.		
Į.	Add mark		Adds mark to center of displayed screen. Save up to ten.		
Save			Saves PDF file on FOMA terminal handset or miniSD Memory Card.		
Search			Searches for a character string (up to 16 characters), and displays search results highlighted. Search criteria can be set.		
File property			Displays information about PDF file. Displayed information includes file name, file format, file restrictions, Transfer for Repair setting, file size, Source, date/time saved, date/time made and protection settings. However, Transfer for Repair and protection settings are not displayed when a PDF file on the miniSD Memory Card is displayed.		
Full-screen Switch AV output			Clears guides, and fits PDF file to display size.		
			Displays PDF file on TV screen using FOMA terminal and special cable. Refer to P. 474 for details on AV output.		
Light Up			Displays at maximum brightness.		
All download			Downloads pages that have not been downloaded yet.		
Key list			Displays Key list.		

### Set to Display link mode < Display link>

In the details screen (☞ P. 406), press ♠ ▶ Display link ▶ ●.

• To return to original view: Press ♠ ▶ Open PDF viewer ▶ ●.

# Zoom/Shrink screen <Zoom in/Zoom out>

- 1 In the details screen (P. 406), press 3...
  - To shrink: Press (1.73).
- 2 Set position to Zoom in center of screen (•).
  - To zoom/shrink further: Press •.
  - To end: Press (■ [Complete] or (□ CAR).

### Rotate screen 90° left <Rotate 90° left>

In the details screen (PP. 406), press 2 2 2 2.

● To rotate screen 90° right: Press <a>□</a> <a

### Set Page layout <Page layout>

In the details screen (♥ P. 406), press (♣ ♣ 🗥 ▶ page layout type ▶ •.

### Set display method <Display>

In the details screen (12 P. 406), press (a 4 ♣ 2 ♣ b display method b (a).

# Display scroll bar, page numbers and magnification

### <Scroll bar, Page numbers, Magnification>

- 1 In the details screen (P. 406), press 45.
- 2 To display scroll bar, press 32.
  - To display page numbers: Press 45.
  - To display magnification: Press 5 ...
- 3 Press 1.4.
  - To not display: Press ②፟.

### Display first page <Go to first page>

In the details screen (PP. 406), press 5 1.3.

To display last page: Press <a>□</a> <a>5 <a>□</a> <

### Display specified page <Move page>

In the details screen (PP P. 406), press 5 € 3 ♦ enter page number • .

### Add Bookmark < Add bookmark>

- 1 In the details screen (P. 406), press 6 2 2.
- 2 Press 1.4.

  - When ten bookmarks are already saved: Press T→ Yes N (a) bookmark to overwrite N (b).

### Display added bookmark list <My bookmarks>

- 1 In the details screen (PP. 406), press 6 5 1. 2 2 2.
  - To display preset bookmark list: Press 6 1.2 1.2.
- 2 To jump to bookmark, select bookmark •.
  - To edit title of added bookmark: Press <a>□</a> <a>□
  - To display Properties of added bookmark: Press (Agree) after confirming.

### Delete added bookmark < Delete one>

- 1 In the details screen (♥ P. 406), press ⑤ ⑤ ① ② ② ▶ bookmark ▶ ⑥ ① ③.
- 2 Press ① → Yes (•).
  - To delete all bookmarks: Press ②♣ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ▶ Yes ▶ ●.
  - To delete selected bookmarks collectively: Press ③ ▶ bookmark ⑥ (repeat) ▶ ⑥ [Complete] ▶ Yes ▶ ⑥.

### Add mark < Add mark>

- 1 In the details screen (P. 406), press 6 6 4 5.
- 2 Select Yes ▶ (•).
  - When ten marks are already saved: Select Yes ▶ mark to overwrite ▶ ●.

### Display mark list < Display mark>

In the details screen (P. 406), press 6 3 .

### Delete marks < Delete one>

- 1 In the details screen (♥ P. 406), press 5 → 3 → mark ▶ 1 → 1.
- 2 Press **1.₺** Yes ▶ **(•)**.
  - To delete all marks: Press 2 → enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) → Yes → (•).
  - To delete selected marks collectively: Press (repeat)
     ★ (repeat)
     <

### **Display mark Properties < Properties>**

In the details screen (PP. 406), press 6 5 3 5 mark ▶ 6 2 €.

To end: Press [Agree].

### Save file to FOMA terminal <Save>

In the details screen (PP. 406), press (PP. 406). ▶ folder • (PP. 406).

### Search for character string <Search>

- 1 In the details screen (♥ P. 406), press ▶ ⊕ enter character string ▶ ●.
- 2 To search for next search result, press or a T.3.
  - To search for previous search result: Press @ or @ 22.
  - To search for a new character string: Press (a) 3 → enter character string (b).
  - To set Search criteria: Press (4 5).
  - To cancel search: Press [Cancel] or @ an in search screen.
- 3 To end search mode, press (i [Agree] or (acr).

### Set Search criteria < Search criteria>

- 1 In the details screen (PP. 406), press BB 2 2 2.
- 2 To search for case-sensitive, press (1.3).
- To search for exact match: Press 24.
- 3 Press 1.4.
  - To clear criteria: Press 24.

### Show documents in Full-screen <Full-screen>

In the details screen (P. 406), press @ O....

To end: Press □<sup>n</sup> or <sup>® αlR</sup>.

### **Operations in Full-screen**

To move up/down/left/right	<b>:</b>	To view previous page	<b>®</b>
To zoom/shrink	3 🕏 or 1 🧘	To view next page	<b></b>
To rotate 90° left	2 #sc	To fit to screen	• [Fit]
To save displayed image as a still	[Cut off]	To light up	# ===
picture			(for 1+ seconds)

### Display PDF file on TV screen <Switch AV output>

• Refer to P. 474 for details on Switch AV output.

### Light up <Light Up>

In the details screen (PP. 406), press for 1+ seconds.

#### Note

### **Display link**

- Screen cannot be scrolled when in Display link mode.
- Refer to P. 230 for details on Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To).

### Rotate 90° left

• Every time operation is repeated, screen is rotated left (rotated right for *Rotate 90° right*) an additional 90°.

#### Page layou

 When activated from a site or Internet web page, Page layout is set to Single page and cannot be switched.

### Adding bookmarks and marks

- Added bookmarks appear at the bottom of My bookmarks list and added marks appear at the bottom of the marks list.
- Added bookmarks may be deleted when moving PDF files to a PC using the miniSD Memory Card or Ir exchange.

#### Search

- Previous character string appears in the character string entry screen.
- When Next result is selected and search reaches the last page, search automatically continues from the first page. When Previous result is selected, search automatically starts from the last page.
- If New search is performed in step 2, search starts from the first page. Previous search result is deleted.

### Displaying Key list < Key list>

Display a list of one-touch key operations in the details screen. Frequently used operations are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

1

# In the details screen (♥ P. 406), press ♠, select **K**ey list and press ♠.

Key	Operation	Reference	Key	Operation	Reference
Ġ	To show previous page		6 M	bookmark · mark	
<b></b>	To show next page		7 🐇	Save	
(1.2	Zoom out*1		8 **	Search	
2 ABC	Rotate 90° left	P. 406	9 8 S	File property	P. 406
3 🌦	Zoom in*2	1.400	O NE	Full-screen	1.400
(4 E	Set screen		<b>★</b> ***	Switch AV output	
5 k	To move to specified page		# 💬 (for 1+ seconds)	Light Up	

<sup>\*1</sup> Each time key is pressed, image shrinks. Keep key pressed to gradually shrink image.

# **Managing PDF Files**

Manage PDF files by dividing into folders, deleting and sorting.

 Edit titles of PDF files without restrictions, copy to miniSD Memory Cards (PP. 385) and send to other FOMA terminals using Ir exchange function (PP. 397).

### Creating, Editing and Deleting folders

Create up to 20 folders and manage files.

• Folders can be set to require the terminal security code to view contents.

# Deleting

Use one of the following to delete folder.

Delete all	Deletes all folders.	
Delete one	Deletes folders individually.	
Delete selected	Deletes selected folders collectively.	

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- Saved files are deleted along with folder.
- Folders containing protected files cannot be deleted. Disable protection and try again.

# **Related Operations**

Create folders < New folder>

In stand-by, press ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) enter folder name ( ) ( ).

• To delete **New folder** name: Press @cr for 1+ seconds.

Set Folder security <Folder security>

1 In stand-by, press ● 🗐 🕮 🕉 ▶ folder ▶ 📾 🕊 (for 1+ seconds).

2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) • • • •

To disable: Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits)
 ▶ ② ▶ ② □

Edit folder names < Edit folder name>

In stand-by, press ( ) ( ) folder ( ) ( ) edit folder name ( ) ( ).

• To erase folder name: In the edit screen, press @ ar 1+ seconds.

<sup>\*2</sup> Each time key is pressed, image enlarges. Keep key pressed to gradually enlarge image.

### Delete folders < Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗐 🕮 🕽 🕻 ▶ folder ▶ 📾 🗷 🛣 .
- 2 Press ③ ♠ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ▶ Yes ▶ ●.
  - To delete all folders: Press ②
     Penter terminal security code (four to eight digits)
     Pess
     Pess
  - To delete selected folders collectively: Press 43 > enter terminal security code (four to eight digits)

### Note

### **Creating folders**

• Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

### Folder security

- When Folder security is set to ON, terminal security code (four to eight digits) is required to view file list.
- Folder security can be set to **ON** only for created folders.

### **Editing folder names**

• Only folder names of created folders can be changed.

### **Protecting, Deleting, and Sorting Files**

Protect, delete, and sort PDF files.

### Deleting

Use one of the following to delete PDF files.

Delete one	Deletes files individually.	
All in folder	Deletes all files in a folder.	
Delete all	Deletes all files.	
Delete selected	Deletes selected files collectively. Select up to 50 files.	

• Only Delete one and Delete selected are available for protected file.

# Sorting

Change the list order to one of the following.

• Even when PDF viewer is ended, list order settings remain.

Date (new $\rightarrow$ old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first.
Date (old $\rightarrow$ new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers $\rightarrow$ single-byte upper case alphabet $\rightarrow$ single-byte lower case alphabet $\rightarrow$ single-byte katakana $\rightarrow$ double-byte numbers $\rightarrow$ double-byte upper case alphabet $\rightarrow$ double-byte lower case alphabet $\rightarrow$ hiragana $\rightarrow$ double-byte katakana $\rightarrow$ kanji $\rightarrow$ Pictograph 1 $\rightarrow$ Pictograph 2.
By source*	Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: download (i-mode, i-mode mail, i-αppli) → miniSD Memory Card/Ir exchange/USB.
Size (big → small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first.
Size (small → big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first.

File acquisition source differs by file type.

The default setting is Date (new → old).

### Change the title <Edit title>

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗐 🛣 ▶ folder ▶ ▶ file ▶ 🗈 📆.
- 2 Edit title ▶ (•).
  - To delete title: In the title editing screen, press @ can for 1+ seconds.

### Delete files < Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press (●) 9 ♣ 3 ♣ ▶ folder ▶ (●) ▶ file ▶ (□) ₽ €.
  - To delete files on miniSD Memory Card: In Folder list, press (###) ▶ folder ▶ (•) ▶ file ▶ (22).
- 2 Press 1.₺ Yes (•).

  - To delete all files: Press ③
     Penter terminal security code (four to eight digits)
     Yes
     Yes
  - To delete selected files collectively: Press (4 €) | file (•) (repeat) | € [Complete] | Yes | (•).

### Protect files < Protect set>

- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To disable: Press 2 &

### Move file to a new folder <Move>

- 1 In stand-by, press (●) (9 m) (3 m) ▶ folder ▶ (●) ▶ file ▶ (a) (4 m).
- 2 Press 1.3 folder •.

  - To move selected files collectively: Press ③ ↑ file (•) (repeat) ↑ (a [Complete] ↑ folder ↑ (•).

### View detailed information <File property>

In stand-by, press ● 9 m 3 b folder ▶ ● file ▶ 6 5 m.

• To end viewing: Press • [Agree].

### Sort files <Sort>

In stand-by, press ( ) ( ) folder ( ) ( ) sort method ( ).

#### Note

### **Changing titles**

- Enter up to 63 single-byte (31 double-byte) characters.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are displayed on screen.

### **Deleting files**

• Perform Delete one or Delete selected when deleting protected data.

#### **Protecting files**

• Files saved on a miniSD Memory Card cannot be protected.

### Moving files to a new folder

• Select up to 50 files.

### File property

 Displayed information is file name, file format, file restriction, Transfer for Repair setting, file size, Source, date/time saved, date/time made and protection settings.

# **Displaying Word and Excel Files**

Display files saved on miniSD Memory Card, such as Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel and image files, on FOMA terminal or external device.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (1287 P. 381)

- Supported file types (file extension\*):
   Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), Plain Text (.txt), JPEG (.jpg,.jpeg),
   GIF(.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp)
- Place file to view in VPRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT folder of the miniSD Memory Card in advance. (PP P. 384)
- Before using this function, insert miniSD Memory Card into FOMA terminal miniSD Memory Card slot in advance.
- If PDF files are saved in \(\begin{align\*} \mathbb{VRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT\\ folder\) in the miniSD card using SH506iC, SH900i, or SH901iC move files to \(\begin{align\*} \mathbb{VRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUDxxx\\ folder.\\ \end{align\*}\)
- \* In order to differentiate the file type, an alphanumeric character string called a file extension, such as ".doc" or ".xls", is added to the end of the file name on a PC. (Depending on the computer settings, file extension may not appear.) Refer to the user's guide for the PC or software being used.

# In stand-by, press ( g #5) [2 #5].

- Alternatively, select 
   \( \text{(KEITAIViewer} \) → DocumentViewer from Top menu.
- Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → View miniSD data → Document viewer from Top menu.
- Document viewer folder list appears.

# Select a folder and press



File list appears

File list appears.		
To display image list of still pictures <switch mode="" view=""></switch>	9-part display	Press
	16-part display	Press
	List display	Press (a) 4 € → 3 ₺.
To display next page		Press ᠍.  ■ In viewer position, press ® (right guidance) for 1+ seconds.
To display previous page		Press ၍.  ■ In viewer position, press ③ (left guidance) for 1+ seconds.

• Document folder data is listed. 9-part and 16-part display are not available.

# Select a file and press .



Details screen

To scroll up/down/left/right	Up: Press ①. Down: Press ②. Left: Press ②. Right: Press ④.
To show entire page in center of display	Press   [Default].
To display next page	Press ⊕.  • In viewer position, press (a) (right guidance) for 1+ seconds.
To display previous page	Press ⑤.  In viewer position, press ⓒ (left guidance) for 1+ seconds.

# Display methods for details screen

• Use Document viewer details screen in the following ways.

Shrink	Displays screen at a reduced size.
Change L⇔W	Switches screen orientation between vertical and horizontal view.
Zoom	Displays screen at an enlarged size.

Magnifier	Magnifies the area specified by the cursor and view in the lower part of the display in order to distinguish letters. The lower part of the display changes as the cursor is moved. Magnified area can be enlarged or shrunk.
Zoom selected	Enlarges length and width four times, centered on the cursor.
Move w/in screen	Displays upper left, upper right, lower left, lower right or center of page without changing magnification.
Move spec page	When file contains multiple pages, displays specified page.
Auto scroll	Automatically scrolls screen to the right. When screen reaches right side, screen moves down and repeats scrolling from left to right until lower right of screen is reached. Scrolling speed can be changed.
Cut image	Cuts document image to <b>Stand-by: 240</b> ×320 and save on miniSD Memory Card as a still picture (JPEG).
Mail	Creates i-mode mail with document image attachments.
Full-screen	Clears marks and guides, and fits document to display size.
Switch AV output	Displays document on TV screen using FOMA terminal and special cable. Refer to P. 474 for details on AV output.
Light Up	Displays at maximum brightness.
Key list	Displays Key list.



Vertical screen





Zoom selected screen

パクジョンホです パンソリは庶民の の古典芸能です。 また、人間の喜怒 うた」なのです。 パンソリとは そう思ったときに知識が PT4

Horizontal screen



Move spec page screen



Magnifier screen



Move w/in screen (when upper left is selected)

### Note

 When multimedia PIM is locked (PP P. 153), terminal security code is required to display files not in document folder.

### When using Document viewer

- File contents may appear differently from when displayed on a PC depending on the contents.
  - Some files may take longer to be displayed depending on file size. Some files may not be able to display entire contents.
  - Fonts supported by Document viewer differ from those supported by a PC and may cause file to not be displayed properly.
  - Files with names that exceed 64 single-byte characters cannot be displayed.
  - The number of digits that appear in a cell on a Microsoft Excel worksheet may differ from when displayed on a PC. In addition, Japanese era names cannot be displayed.
- Up to 255 files per folder can be viewed in file list.
- Refer to http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/products/sh901iS.shtml for details on files that can be displayed using Document viewer.

### Zoom/Shrink <Zoom/Shrink>

In the details screen (P. 413), press 3 or 3 .

- To enlarge further: Press 3 or 3.
- To shrink: Press (a) 1.2 or 1.2.
- To shrink further: Press (a) T. or T. or T.
- To display entire page: Press [Default].

### Switch between vertical and horizontal view <Change L⇔W>

In the details screen (P. 413), press 2 or 2 ...

To return to original view: Press <a>□</a> <a>□</a>

### **Enlarge with Magnifier < Magnifier >**

In the details screen (PP. 413), press (45) or 45 move Q cursor.

- To zoom/shrink specified area: Press 3 or 3 [Zoom] or 1 or 1 [Shrink].
- To end Magnifier: Press (•) [End] or (@c.).

### Enlarge length and width four times <Zoom selected>

In the details screen (♥ P. 413), press (■ 5 ♣ or 5 ♣ b move + cursor b •).

### Display edges or center of page <Move w/in screen>

In the details screen (PP. 413), press 65 or 55 b select area ▶ .

### Display specified page <Move spec page>

In the details screen (1 P. 413), press 1 or 2 or 1 enter page number ▶ 0.

### Scroll automatically <Auto scroll>

In the details screen (P. 413), press B B or B. or B.

- To move vertically on vertical screen: Press .
- To move vertically on horizontal screen: Press ).
- To adjust scrolling speed on vertical screen: Press () (faster) or () (slower).
- To adjust scrolling speed on horizontal screen: Press (\*) (faster) or (\*) (slower).
- To end Auto scroll: Press (●) [End], (B m) or (⑤ ar.).

### Save displayed image as a still picture <Cut image>

In the details screen (♥ P. 413), press 🔊 🗐 or 🗐 🖒 Yes 🕨 •).

### Create i-mode mail with displayed image attachment

In the details screen (PP. 413), press (■ [Mail] > compose message.

### Show documents in Full-screen <Full-screen>

In the details screen (P. 413), press @ O?\* or O?\*.

To end: Press □<sup>pe</sup><sub>k</sub> or ⊚<sup>clR</sup>.

### **Operations in Full-screen**

- To move up/down/left/right: Press .
- To zoom/shrink further: Press 33/1.3.
- To switch between vertical and horizontal view: Press 22.
- To display next page: Press (a) (right guidance) for 1+ seconds in viewer position).
- To display entire page: Press •.

### Display document on TV screen <Switch AV output>

• Refer to P. 474 for details on Switch AV output.

### Light up <Light up>

In the details screen (P. 413), press A Light Up • (•).

- ◆ Alternatively, press # for 1+ seconds.
- To turn off: Perform same steps.

#### Note

### **Auto scroll**

• Auto scroll is not available when the entire page or lower right of page is displayed.

### **Note**

### Cut image is not available for the following

- When there is no available space on miniSD Memory Card.
- During AV output.
- When Document viewer is activated from Assistant View.

### Compose message is not available for the following

- When Document viewer is activated from Assistant View.
- When there is no available space on miniSD Memory Card.
- During AV output.
- When Document viewer is activated from mail.
- Refer to P. 255 for details.

### **AV Output**

- Switch AV output is not available when Document viewer is activated from Assistant View.
- AV output is not available when Document viewer is activated from mail.
- Refer to P. 474 for details.

### Displaying Key list < Key list>

Display a list of one-touch key operations in the details screen. Frequently used operations are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

# 1

# In the details screen (PP P. 413), press ♠, select Key list and press ♠.

Key	Operation	Reference
0000	Scroll up/down/left/right*1	P. 413
<u>@</u> *2	Displays previous page.	P. 413
	Displays next page.	P. 413
[Default]	Displays entire page.	P. 413
[Mail]	Converts displayed image into a JPEG file and creates i-mode mail with file as attachment.	P. 415
1.8	Shrink*4	P. 415
2 #3c	Change L⇔W	P. 415
3 🍰	Zoom*5	P. 415
(4 E	Magnifier	P. 415
5 #	Zoom selected	P. 415
6 iii	Move w/in screen	P. 415
7 / rins	Move spec page	P. 415
8 m	Auto scroll	P. 415
9 5	Cut image	P. 415
<b>□</b> %	Full-screen	P. 415
(* °°	Switch AV output	P. 415
(for 1+ seconds)	Light Up	P. 415

<sup>\*1</sup> Keep key pressed to scroll continuously.

<sup>\*2</sup> In viewer position, press (i) (left guidance) for 1+ seconds.

<sup>\*3</sup> In viewer position, press (a) (right guidance) for 1+ seconds.

<sup>\*4</sup> Each time key is pressed, image shrinks. Keep key pressed to gradually shrink image.

<sup>\*5</sup> Each time key is pressed, image enlarges. Keep key pressed to gradually enlarge image.

# **Managing Documents**

Using Document viewer, delete document files and images on miniSD Memory Card, display file properties and sort files.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (127 P. 381)

### Deleting

Delete files in Document folder using one of the following.

• This method can only be used to delete data in the *Document* folder. Operate from My picture. (@PP. 395)

Delete one	Deletes files individually.
Delete selected	Deletes selected files collectively. Select up to 50 files.

### Sorting

Sorting order can be selected from the following.

- The default setting is Clear sort.
- Even when Document viewer is ended, list order settings remain.

Date (new $\rightarrow$ old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first.
Date (old $\rightarrow$ new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2.   **Characters are sorted according to their character code.
Size (big → small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first.
Size (small → big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first.

### **Related Operations**

### Delete files <Delete>

- 1 In the screen in step 2 of "Displaying Word and Excel Files", select file \( \) \(
- 2 Press 1.4.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (•).

### View detailed information <File property>

In the screen in step 2 of "Displaying Word and Excel Files", select file 🌶 🍙 🗵 🛣 .

• To end viewing: Press • [Agree] or • all of the control of the c

#### Sort files <Sort>

In the screen in step 2 of "Displaying Word and Excel Files", press (๑) ♣ sort method ▶ Press (๑).

● To disable: Press 🔊 🗷 🛣 .

#### Note

### File property

• Save date, file size, file format and file name appear.

# Displaying Mail Attachment Saved in the miniSD Memory Card

Using Document viewer, view files attached to mail ( P. 391) saved on miniSD Memory Card. miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. ( P. 381)

- Supported file types:
   Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, Microsoft PowerPoint, Plain Text, PNG, BMP
- View JPEG and GIF files with Image viewer.

# In stand-by, press <a>●</a> <a>●</a> <a>●</a> <a>●</a> <a>●</a> <a>●</a> <a>○</a> <

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → View miniSD data → Mail from Top menu.
- Alternatively, press (a) in Stand-by, select Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages and press (a) # == ...

# Select mail and press .

· Message details screen appears.

3 Select attachment file.

To check received mail attachment	Press $\widehat{\mathbb{Q}} \xrightarrow{\mathcal{B}_{100}^{\circ}} \to \text{file} \to 0$ .
To check sent mail attachment	Press $\widehat{\mathbb{A}}$ $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}$ $\longrightarrow$ file $\longrightarrow$ $\widehat{\bullet}$ .
To check unsent mail attachment	Press $ \mathbb{A}                                   $

#### **Note**

• Attachments of 10,000 bytes or more are not shown.

### **BookReader**

# **Displaying e-Dictionary and Book**

An e-dictionary/book saved on miniSD Memory Card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal. miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (PP P. 381)

- Books/Dictionaries (file extensions) that can be displayed: XMDF format (.zbf), TEXT format (.zbk, .txt, .text)
- Place file to view in the \BOOK folder of the miniSD Memory Card in advance. (FP P. 384)
- Supportbook (preset) is preset on the FOMA terminal handset.
- To use e-dictionary/book, insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary/book into FOMA terminal
  miniSD Memory Card slot in advance. When using Supportbook (preset), miniSD Memory Card need not be
  inserted.
- Depending on the book/dictionary, voice or images may be included in the data. However, voices cannot be
  used on the FOMA terminal. In some cases, images may not be viewed either.

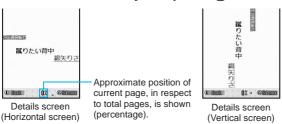
# In stand-by, press ( ) [9 m] (1.2).

- Alternatively, select 
   <sup>Q</sup> (KEITAIViewer) → BookReader from Top menu.
- Alternatively, select (Tools) → miniSD manager → View miniSD data → BookReader from Top menu.
- BookReader list appears.
- In previous viewing, if more of termination appears.

   was pressed for 1+ seconds to end, the page displayed at time of termination appears.

# 2

# Select book/dictionary and press .



To move a line	Horizontal screen	Press 🗘.
	Vertical screen	Press •.
To display next	Horizontal	Press ⊙ or ⋻.
page	screen	<ul> <li>In viewer position, press          ® (right guidance) for 1+ seconds.</li> </ul>
	Vertical	Press 🕠 or 🗐.
	screen	<ul> <li>In viewer position, press (€) (left guidance) for 1+ seconds.</li> </ul>
To display	Horizontal	Press ⊙ or ⊜.
previous page	screen	<ul> <li>In viewer position, press (€) (left guidance) for 1+ seconds.</li> </ul>
	Vertical	Press <sup>♠</sup> or <sup>♠</sup> .
	screen	<ul> <li>In viewer position, press</li></ul>
To jump to first page		Press (i) [To top] or (a) 4 5.
To return to BookReader list		Press @all or @ #2.

### **Note**

- "蹴りたい背中" (Keritai Senaka) by Lisa Wataya provided by ⊚ザウルスセレクト文庫 (⊚ Zaurus Select Library)/河出書房新社 (Kawade Shobo Shinsha Publishers).
- Screens shown are samples.

# Displaying history

Display previous pages in order.

• When there is no history, **Back** and **Next** do not appear.



To display pages viewed in backward order	Press 📵 [Back].
To display pages viewed in forward order	Press 📭 [Next].

### **Note**

- Depending on the book/dictionary, a password may be required. Enter password (up to 16 digits) and press (...)

#### Note

- Up to of 400 files can be viewed in file list.
- "家庭の医学" (Katei no Igaku) © 2004 Jiji Press Publication Services, Inc.
- Screens shown are samples.

### **Using Assistant View**

### **Related Operations**

### Switch folders <Switch folder>

In the BookReader list in step 1 of "Displaying e-Dictionary and Book" (☞ P. 418), press (♠ ④ ♣ ) folder (▶ •).

### Note

### Switching display folders

- Display folder with book of XMDF format that was used on mobile information devices or non-FOMA terminals.
- Depending on mobile devices used, folders may not be displayed.

### Operating the details screen

Use book/dictionary details screen in the following ways.

Insert bookmark		Adds a bookmark to the page being viewed. Up to two bookmarks (up to ten books) can be set for one book/dictionary.
Move to bookmark		Displays page bookmarked previously.
Table of contents		When table of contents is available for data, displays page from table of contents.
To top		Displays first page.
To end		Displays last page.
Set % move		Displays page which is located approximately specified percentage into the document.
Сору		Copies character string from book/dictionary. Can be pasted to other screens. Up to 20 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters can be copied at once.
Display settings	Font size	Sets font size of book/dictionary to <i>Large font</i> , <i>Default</i> or <i>Small font</i> . (Default setting: <i>Default</i> )
	Text direction	Sets the screen to display horizontally or vertically. (Default setting: Vertical)
	Ruby text	Sets whether to show ruby text (reading of kanji). (Default setting: <b>OFF</b> )
List		Displays BookReader list.







Vertical screen

Horizontal screen

Ruby text ON

# **Related Operations**

### Insert Bookmark < Insert bookmark>

- 2 Press T. [Bookmark 1].
  - To set Bookmark 2: Press 2 €

### Move to Bookmark < Move to bookmark>

In the details screen (P. 419), press 2 b bookmark ▶ .

### Display from table of contents < Table of contents>

In the details screen (PP P. 419), press (33) ▶ item ▶ (1).

### Jump to last page <To end>

In the details screen (P. 419), press 5 3.

### Move to a page by specifying percentage <Set % move>

In the details screen (௴ P. 419), press ் □ ● enter percentage (two digits: 00 to 99 percent) ▶ ●.

### Copy characters < Copy>

In the details screen (இP. 419), press (Start) ♦ first character ♦ (Start) ♦ last character ♦ (Copy).

### Change font size <Font size>

In the details screen (♥ P. 419), press 🔊 🗗 🗘 ▶ character size ▶ .

### Switch between vertical and horizontal view <Text direction>

- 1 In the details screen (PP. 419), press @ 9 2 2 2.
- 2 Press 1.3.
  - To set vertical display: Press 2.8.

### Set whether to show ruby text (reading of kanji) <Ruby text>

- 1 In the details screen (P. 419), press 99 38.
- 2 Press 1.4.

### Display BookReader list <List>

In the details screen (PP. 419), press or & ...

### Note

#### **Bookmarks**

- When a bookmark is set for the 11th book or dictionary, the oldest bookmark is automatically deleted.
- When BookReader ends, the last page displayed is automatically set as Auto bookmark 1. The next time the same book/dictionary is displayed and ended, the last page viewed is set as Auto bookmark 1 and the previously set Auto bookmark 1 is reset to Auto bookmark 2. (Up to two auto bookmarks can be set for each book and dictionary (up to ten total) and are automatically deleted from the oldest.)
- Auto bookmark cannot be set when battery pack is removed.

### Copying

- Scanned text is discarded when the power is turned off.
- Certain characters cannot be copied.
- Masked characters, ruby text, and external characters cannot be copied.

#### Display settings

- Depending on the data, switching display may not be possible, or the display setting for the book/ dictionary may be specified.
- Supportbook (preset) cannot be switched between vertical/horizontal display.

#### Ruby text

• For book/dictionary with no ruby text settings, readings are not available.

# ■ Using Supportbook (Help)

# In stand-by, press (view 2).

- Alternatively, select 
   (KEITAIViewer) → BookReader → Supportbook (preset) from Top menu.
- Press ( •) ( shutter) for 1+ seconds in viewer position) during a voice call or while composing message to use Supportbook (preset). ( • P. 36)
- Use functions that can be activated from Supportbook (preset). (PP. 37)

# Searching in dictionary

Operations for dictionary and book are the same. Explanations below use the dictionary as an example.

- Text read with Character reader can be looked up in the dictionary as well. (@P. 424)
- Insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.

1

In stand-by, press 🗨 🖳 📆, select dictionary and press 🗨.

To read text with Character reader

● Press 🔊 🗷 📆 . (🍞 P. 198)

2

Select input field, press •, enter word and press •.

- Enter up to 255 single-byte characters.
- The search results appear.
- When the character string is not applicable, *Not found* appears.

3

Select word and press .

· Contents appear.

# **Using the Information in Book/Dictionary**

Perform various functions from book/dictionary, such as moving data to another page, using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, playing back movies, saving still pictures, and masking character strings (supported pages only).

• Insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary/book before performing operations.

# Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To

Use information (such as phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs) highlighted in book/dictionary, or images embedded with Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To functions to easily make calls, send mail, or view sites and Internet web pages. ( P. 230)

1

In stand-by, press (•) 9 ..., select book/dictionary and press (•).

The assessment and assessment assessment as a second assessment as assessment as a second asset as a second as a second assessment as a second asset as a second as a second a

• The screen with contents appears.

2 Select p

- Select phone number, mail address, or URL and press .
- A confirmation screen appears.
- For image, select the image and press •.
- When **Save to My pic** is set in image, press (•) (1.2) [Move to link].

# Select Yes and press (•).

- When Phone To (AV Phone To) is set, check the phone number and press [ [V-phone] to make a video-phone call. For voice call, check the phone number and press ( ) [Phone].
- When Mail To is set, compose message screen with mail address already entered appears.
- When Web To is set, connection starts, and site or Internet web page appears.

#### Note

• In some cases, even if phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed, making calls, sending messages, and displaying sites may not be possible.

### Jumping to the linked site

When a link for another page is set on a character string or image, that page can be displayed.

In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To" (P. 422), select a character string or image with link and press (•).

The linked site appears.

### Playing back movies

Movies can be played back when information to execute movie is set in the image.

In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To" (♥ P. 422), select image and press (•).

• When playback does not start, press • The [Run movie].

### **Related Operations**

Mask character strings and images <Mask>

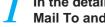
In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To" (P. 422), select character string/image ▶ (•).

- To display masked character string/image: Select character string/image ▶ ●.
- When Save to My pic is set in image: Select image ▶ (•) (1.28 [Switch mask].

# Saving Images in Book/Dictionary

Still pictures displayed in book/dictionary can be set to the Stand-by display (PP P. 128) if saving them to My picture (PP. 343).

- Some images, such as those in PNG format, cannot be saved.
- Image is saved in the *Camera* folder in My picture. (P. 173)
- Save up to 700 images. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
- All images are saved as having copyrights. Images cannot be saved on miniSD Memory Cards, nor attached to mail.



In the details screen in step 1 of "Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To" (P. 422), select still picture and press .

• Menu screen appears.



Select Save to My pic and press (•).

• The picture is saved in My picture.

# Scanning Text to Search for Words in a Dictionary

While displaying e-dictionary, search English words scanned with FOMA terminal.

- Insert miniSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary before performing a search.
- Refer to "Reading Text" on P. 198 for details.

Example: When searching in an English-Japanese dictionary

In the details screen in step 1 of "■Searching in dictionary" on P. 422, press ৯ ৪ 元.



• Camera is activated, and the character reader screen appears.

Display text to be scanned in the center of the screen. (PP. 198)

? Press •.

- Text is shot as a still picture and appears on the display.
- Press to specify the line to scan. (Text is read one line at a time.)
- Press (•) [Scan].
  - Candidate 6/256 Character reader starts.
    - When reading is complete, candidates screen appears with read text.

Select word to search and press .

Contents appear.

# **Managing Book/Dictionary**

Delete book/dictionary files, rename them or view their properties.

# Deleting book/dictionary

Use one of the following to delete book/dictionary.

• Supportbook (preset) cannot be deleted.

Delete one	Deletes files individually.
All in folder	Deletes all files in a folder.
Delete selected	Deletes selected files collectively. Select up to 50 files.

# File properties

The following information is shown.

- In XMDF format (.zbf), for the BookReader list, title, file name, author, publisher, and file size appear. For the
  details screen, series, title, subtitle, file name, author, publisher, brief, distribution date/time, file size and
  distribution date/time stamping information appear. (Information listed does not appear if not saved in book/
  dictionary.)
- In TEXT format (.zbk, .txt, .text), information other than file name and file size appears as blanks in BookReader list.

### Delete a book/dictionary < Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗐 🛣 ▶ book/dictionary ▶ 🗈 🗷 🛣
- 2 Press 1.3.
  - To delete all books/dictionaries in a folder: Press ②♣ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.
  - To delete selected books/dictionaries collectively: Press ③ book/dictionary (repeat)
     ☐ [Complete].
- 3 Select Yes ▶ (•).

### Edit file names <Edit file name>

In stand-by, press (9) (1.28) book/dictionary (1.28) enter file name (1.28).

### View detailed information <File property>

- To view from BookReader list: Press [a] 3 ...
- To end viewing: Press [Agree].

### **Note**

### **Editing file names**

- Supportbook (preset) file names cannot be changed.
- Enter up to 218 single-byte (109 double-byte) characters for a file name.
- File names up to eight single-byte characters and their extensions may be changed from lower to upper case.

### File properties

- File properties for Supportbook (preset) is not available.
- File names appear with their extensions.

### **Print setting (DPOF)**

# **Printing Saved Images**

DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) is a format for printing still pictures shot with digital camera. Designate still pictures on miniSD Memory Card and print specified images/quantity at a digital camera print shop which supports DPOF or use a DPOF compatible printer.

- Still pictures downloaded from sites or web pages cannot be printed. JPEG images that can be copied to miniSD Memory Card can be printed.
- Refer to printing device user's guide for details on printing.
- Folder for DPOF use
  - Still picture folder/user created folder (© P. 384)
  - DCF compliant folder created by other device (© P. 191)
- File for DPOF use
  - Still pictures saved in above folders (DCF compliant JPEG)
- Still pictures on FOMA terminal handset cannot be designated.

# Setting Printing Method for Images Saved in the miniSD Memory Card <Print Setting (DPOF)>



# In stand-by, press • 7 th Barrier.

- Alternatively, select  $\square$  (Data box)  $\rightarrow$  *Print setting (DPOF)* from Top menu.
- Print setting (DPOF) folder list appears.
- When DPOF is already set by another device, a confirmation screen appears. To clear, select Yes and press (a). Current DPOF must be cleared to set a new DPOF.

$\simeq$
<u>8</u>
0
a
⋖
=
<i>≒</i>
æ
Ш
0
≡
=
ヹ
¥
Z
0
=
<u>~</u>
õ
Ħ
_
9
ĕ
₹
C)

To designate the number of prints	Select folder → ● → still pictures → ■ ♣ → enter number of prints (1 to 99) → ●.  Select still picture and enter the quantity to print by pressing ♠ to ♠.  Set to continue printing other still pictures.  To view the next page of the image list, press ᠍. To view the previous page, press ⑤.
To print same quantity of all still pictures	Press $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ enter number of prints (1 to 99) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To print same number of still pictures larger than Over 640×480	Press (1 to 99) → ●.
To print same number of still pictures larger than Over 1,024×768	Press (1 to 99) → enter number of prints (1 to 99) → .
To cancel all designated print settings	Press (a) (2 de
To add date	Press (3-3-) (1-5-).  ■ Date in properties of still picture can be added.
To specify index print	Designate the number of prints → Press (a) (42) (72).  • Index print enables thumbnail-size images to be printed along with the file name on postcard or A4 size paper.
To check Designated print status	Press <u>▶ 5 €.</u> • When using Specify group, an approximate quantity appears.

Press 🗊 [Complete], select Yes and press 💿.

• Select No and press • to specify again.

4

Press 

[Agree].

### **Note**

- Non-DCF compliant still pictures saved on miniSD Memory Cards with other devices may not be printed.
- Printing is not available for files cut from PDF viewer and Document viewer.
- With Specify group, when Designate number is specified from Over 640×480 or Over 1024×768, Reset all
  is not available.

# **Other Useful Functions**

• Checking Settings
• Multiaccess
• Using Assistant View
● Turning Power On Automatically < Auto Power ON>431
● Turning Power Off Automatically
• Sounding Alarm after Set Time Passes
• Sounding Alarm at Set Time
• Saving ToDo Lists
• Saving Schedules
• Recording Video < Record Video>455
• Accessing Functions Quickly < Shortcut Menu>461
• Saving Own Name and Image < Owner Information>464
Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice in Stand-by
• Using as Calculator
• Adding Monetary Amounts
• Displaying the Call Duration/Charge
• Entering Memos
<ul> <li>Output Video-phone/My Picture/i-motion/PDF Viewer/Document Viewer to TV Screen</li> <li></li> <li><a href="https://www.example.com/articles/">AV Output&gt;474</a></li> </ul>
• Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch < Earphone/Microphone with Switch>478
• Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone
• Resetting Settings < Reset Settings>480
Deleting All Saved Data

### **Check Settings**

# **Checking Settings**

### Check settings for various functions.

Check the following functions.

Sound, Display, General settings, Phone settings, Security, i-mode, Mail/Message, i-αppli

# In stand-by, press (3) (3), enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (0).



- Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → General settings → Check settings from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

# Select function to check.

331 Sound	
Phone ring vol	
Phone ring tone	
Volu	ne 3
V-phone ring tone	
Volu	ne 3
Payphone ring tone	
Volu	ne 3
User unset	
Volu	ne 3
Not support	
Volu	ne 3
Offeren	

When **Sound** is selected

Sound	Press 1.3.
Display	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de
General settings	Press 3 .
Phone settings	Press 4
Security	Press 5 #.
i-mode	Press 6 to .
Mail/Message	Press 📶.
i-αppli	Press B

- Settings appear.
- Press ( Agree) and the previous screen reappears.

### **Multiaccess**

# **Multiaccess**

Use voice communications and some packet transmissions (receiving i-mode mail or data communications with a PC) simultaneously with the FOMA terminal. This is called Multiaccess.

- Receiving SMS during communication (such as voice call) is available besides Multiaccess.
- Other packet transmissions (i-mode and sending i-mode mail) are not available during voice calls.

# **Multiaccess Compatibility**

Refer to "Multiaccess Combinations" on P. 581 for the main combinations of transmission functions available for simultaneous use on the FOMA terminal.

### **Main Features of Multiaccess**

Receive i-mode mail or SMS during voice calls. Use Assistant View (©FP. 430) to view mail while in voice call.

# Receiving i-mode Mail or SMS During Calls

Receive i-mode mail or SMS during voice calls, and receive SMS in the progress screen during video-phone calls. Use Assistant View to read i-mode mail or SMS during a voice call.

• i-mode mail cannot be received during video-phone call. i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center.

# Receive i-mode mail or SMS during a voice call.

- $\square$  or  $\square$  appears on the display.
- Alternatively, continue the call and read i-mode mail or SMS afterwards.



- During a call, press we to read i-mode mail or SMS. • When in viewer position, press (•) (shutter) for 1+ seconds.
  - Refer to P. 430 and P. 431 for instructions on Assistant View.
  - Press and voice call screen reappears.

Select *Mail*, press (•), select *Inbox* and press (•).

Inbox list appears.



Select folder, press (•), select mail and press (•).

• Press and voice call screen reappears.

# Making a Call During i-mode

Make a voice call with Phone To (AV Phone To) while in i-mode.

Select phone number from sites or Internet web pages and press (•).





- Select Yes, press ( ) and press ( or ( ) [Phone].
  - Number is dialed while connected to i-mode.
  - i-mode is disconnected when dialing video-phone.
- Press safter call.
- The site or Internet web page reappears.

# **Using Assistant View**

# **Checking Other Data During Voice Call and Other Functions**

Check or copy data with other functions while voice call or using a function. Check schedule or phonebook during a voice call, or use mail address or phone number from phonebook while composing message.

- Use Assistant View to check messages, Phonebook, Calculator, Schedule, ToDo list, Text memo, Supportbook (preset), BookReader and Document viewer. (Some functions are not fully compatible.) Assistant View is not available when Assistant View is already active.
- When another function is activated from Assistant View, Assistant View icon corresponding to the original function flashes. (ﷺ 2.31)
- Check data or copy items (text) from active functions. Editing and deleting are not available. Sorting mail and searching phonebook are available.
- Assistant View is not available while using i-mode (\$\frac{\sqrt{s}}{\sqrt{s}}\$ flashes), recording Record message (voice calls), making video-phone calls, recording Record message (video-phone calls), playing Record message/Voice memo, during Ir exchange, or Record video.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To are not available when activated.

## Assistant View combinations

		Mail	Phone- book	Schedule	ToDo list	Text memo	Calculator	Support book	Book- Reader	Document viewer
	Voice call	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	×	×
Original	i-mode	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	i-mode mail/ SMS	0*	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
I fun	Phonebook	0	_	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
nction	Schedule	0	0	-	×	0	0	0	0	0
	ToDo list	0	0	×	_	0	0	0	0	0
	Text memo	0	0	0	0	_	0	0	0	0

O: Available X: Not available -: Same function; not available.

#### Note

 When connecting to URL read from Bar code reader or Character reader, Assistant View may not be available during i-mode. In such cases, bookmark the URL and connect using bookmark. (@P. 220)



# Press during a voice call or while using a function.



- When in viewer position, press 
   • (shutter) for 1+ seconds.
- Compatible functions appear. (Functions in gray are not available.)
- When Assistant View is not available, nothing appears even when pressed.
- Cursor appears on the last selected function.

<sup>\*</sup> Not available during Chat mail.

# Select a function and press .

- Move cursor with ...
- Selected function activates. Some functions are limited.
- Refer to the corresponding page for details on each function.
- To copy characters from text memo, select memo to copy and press twice. Refer to P. 554 for subsequent steps.
  - Refer to P. 555 for details on pasting data.
- When a call is received while using Assistant View from i-mode, Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo list or Text memo, Assistant View ends and incoming call screen appears. After call, screen before activating Assistant View reappears. When i-mode mail or SMS is received, ☑ or ™ appears. Check mail with Assistant View.

# Press week to end Assistant View.

- When in viewer position, press (•) (shutter) for 1+ seconds.
- Previous screen reappears.
- Alternatively, press

## **Auto Power ON**

# **Turning Power On Automatically**

Default setting
OFF (disabled)

## Turn FOMA terminal On automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power ON settings are repeated daily until disabled.
- Set date and time in advance. (PP P. 48)
- Disable Auto power ON before turning the handset off when near high precision instruments, aboard aircraft, in hospitals or in other locations where use is prohibited.



# In stand-by, press • 3 5 7 4 and press 1.4 [ON].

- Alternatively, select \(\int\_i^t\) (Settings) → General settings → Auto power ON/OFF → Auto power ON from Top menu.
- Time entry screen appears.

# 7

# Enter time (four digits) and press ( ).

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with •.
- Alarm setting screen appears.

# 3

## Select alarm tone.

To sound alarm	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ folder $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ alarm tone $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ [OK].
	Alarm does not sound until PIN1 code is entered if Set PIN1 code is
	ON appears.
	<ul> <li>To preview alarm tone, select an alarm tone and press ● [Agree].</li> </ul>
	To stop, press 📵 [Stop].
To silence alarm	Press 2 de la Pr

Adjust alarm tone screen appears.



# ress 🅙 (louder) or 🕟 (softer) to adjust and press 💽

Auto power ON is set.

## When the set time arrives

Power automatically turns on and Auto power ON It's time appears.

- Message also appears when power is already on.
- When PIN code settings (EP P. 146) are ON, the PIN code entry screen appears and Auto power ON It's time appears after entering PIN code.
- Alarm sounds for approximately 30 seconds if set. Press a key to stop.
- If in a call or receiving a call, alarm sounds after returning to stand-by. If phonebook or other function is in use, alarm sounds when the call is ended, phonebook is exited and stand-by reappears.

## Note

- If Auto power ON and alarm (or schedule alarm) are set for the same time, Auto power ON takes priority.
   Press a key to clear the Auto power ON notification screen, and the alarm activates.
- If Auto power ON and Auto power OFF are set for the same time, power turns off if FOMA terminal is on and turns on if off.
- When power is turned off at time set for alarm (or Schedule alarm), the alarm will not operate.

## **Auto Power OFF**

# **Turning Power Off Automatically**

Default setting
OFF (disabled)

Turn FOMA terminal Off automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power OFF settings are repeated daily until disabled.
- Set date and time in advance. (PP P. 48)

# 1

# In stand-by, press (a) 3 ft 7 ft 2 # and press 1. [ON].

- Alternatively, select 
   (Settings) → General settings → Auto power ON/OFF → Auto power OFF from Top menu.
- Time entry screen appears.



# Enter time (four digits) and press .

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with •.
- Auto power OFF is set.

## When the set time arrives

If other operations are performed at set time (i.e. not in stand-by: i-mode, Mail, Alarm (ringing), Calculator, Timer, Melody player, Continuous play/Slideshow/Full-screen of Data box), the screen on the right appears. Select **Yes** or wait for approximately one minute. Handset turns off.



Select No to continue operations.

(Stand-by reappears when in Normal menu list.)

- If in a call, the screen on the right appears after ending call and returning to stand-by.
- If software is being updated (PP P. 597), the confirmation screen on the right appears after software update is completed and returning to stand-by.

## **Note**

- If Auto power OFF and alarm (or Schedule alarm) are set for the same time, handset turns off and alarm
  does not sound. (If handset is restarted immediately or No is selected in the confirmation screen, alarm
  sounds after returning to stand-by.)
- Handset does not turn off at time set for Auto power OFF if i-αppli is running. A confirmation screen appears after returning to stand-by. Wait for power to turn off.
- Handset does not turn off at set Auto power OFF time while Ir exchange function is activated. Auto power OFF confirmation screen appears after returning to stand-by. Wait for power to turn off.
- If Auto power ON and Auto power OFF are set for the same time, power turns off if FOMA terminal is on and turns on if off.

# **Sounding Alarm after Set Time Passes**

## Sound an alarm after a set amount of time passes.

- Alarm sounds for approximately 15 seconds. Press a key to stop.
- If Vibration mode (@P. 123) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.



# 

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Timer from Top menu.
- Time entry screen appears.

# 2

# Enter time and press ( [Start].



- The two digits on the left are minutes and the two on the right are seconds.
- Set between 1 second and 99 minutes 59 seconds.
- Timer begins.

To stop Timer	Press   [Stop].	
	<ul> <li>Press  (Start) to resume.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Press (i) [Reset] to reset to 3 minutes.</li> </ul>	
To disable Timer	Press .	

9 minutes 58 seconds **→** 09:58

## **Note**

- Optionally, change alarm tone and ring duration (@P. 120) and volume (@P. 122).
- Timer continues when mail is received but stops when a call is received.
- Timer ends if power is turned off.

## **Related Operations**

## Use timer from stand-by

In stand-by, enter time (1 to 99 minutes) ▶ ● 45.

## **Alarm**

# **Sounding Alarm at Set Time**

## Sound an alarm or activate movie/i-motion at the set time/day.

- Set date and time in advance. (PP P. 48)
- Save up to ten. Alarms are repeated until disabled.
- If Vibration mode (PP. 123) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

# **Setting Alarms**

Default setting See below

Basic setting methods for alarm date and day are described below.

 $\bullet$  Also change alarm volume, tone, displayed message or phone number. (  $\ensuremath{ \mathbb{Z} } \ensuremath{ P} \ensuremath{ P} \ensuremath{ A} \ensuremath{ A} \ensuremath{ S} \ensuremath{ O} \ensuremath{ A} \ensuremath{ P} \ensuremath{ A} \ensuremath{ S} \ensuremath{ A} \ensuremath{ A} \ensuremath{ S} \ensuremath{ A} \ensuremath{ A}$ 

The default setting is 着信音1 for Alarm tone, *Volume 3* for Alarm volume, *OFF* for Snooze setting and *15 seconds* for Ring duration.

Message Show messages when alarm operates. Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-characters.	
Contacts	Show phone numbers when alarm operates. Make calls when alarm operates. (©FP. 436)
Alarm tone Change alarm tone. Movie/i-motion are available.	
Alarm volume	Set the volume.

Snooze setting	Set the number of times to ring alarm and its interval.
Ring duration Set the duration to ring alarm.	



# In stand-by, press ( ) B ( ) and enter registration number.



Alternatively, select (Tools) → Alarm from Top menu.

Alarm setting screen

# Press (I.a.) [Enter time], enter activation time (four digits) and press (•).

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with ).

# Press [2 is [Set repeat] and select a repeat method.

To sound alarm every day	Press 3
To sound alarm once	Press 1.2.
	Setting is disabled after activation.
To sound alarm on specified day	Press ② → day ⇔ ● (repeatable) → ② [Complete].  If a check is placed in Exclude holidays, alarm does not activate on vacation days, holidays and observed holidays.  To disable, select day and press ● [Select].

# 4

# Press (i [Complete].

Alarm is set.

## **Setting details**

Appears when alarm is set.

Repeat frequency

: Once only
: Set day of week
: Daily

Duration of alarm

Appears when snooze is set.

Unsaved

Time

• Press to end setting. ( appears in stand-by display.)

## Note

- If Alarm and Schedule alarm are set for the same time, Alarm operates first.
- One-time alarm can also be easily set on the current day (the following day if set time has passed). (Quick alarm)
- If animated GIF or Flash movie is set as stand-by,  $\triangle$  does not appear until animation is finished.

## **Related Operations**

## Set alarm from stand-by <Quick alarm>

- 1 In stand-by, enter time (ex. 2:05 PM: "1405") ▶ 3♣.
- 2 Select Yes ▶ (•).

## **Related Operations**

## Display messages < Message>

In the alarm setting screen (₱P. 434), press ♠ enter message ▶ ♠.

## **Display contacts < Contacts >**

- 1 In the alarm setting screen (PP P. 434), press 45.
- 2 Press ① → name •.
  - To enter directly: Press ② → phone number → ○.

## Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen (PP. 434), press 5 %.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To set movie/i-motion: Press 22.
  - To not set: Press 3♣
- 3 Select folder ▶ ▶ alarm tone ▶ ⓐ [OK].
  - To check alarm tone: Select alarm tone ▶ ( ) [Agree] (stop with ( )).
  - To check movie/i-motion: Select movie/i-motion ▶ (agree) (stop with (a)).

## Change alarm volume < Alarm volume>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen (PP. 434), press 6....
- 2 Press (\*) (louder) or (.) (softer) (\*).
  - To not sound alarm: Select Silent.

## Set number of times and interval of alarm <Snooze setting>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen (P. 434), press .
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To disable: Press 24.
- 3 Enter interval (two digits: 02 to 15 minutes) ▶ enter times (2 to 6) ▶ ●.

## Change ring duration <Ring duration>

In the alarm setting screen (இP. 434), press ⑤ → enter ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) ▶ ⑥.

## Note

## Setting alarms from stand-by (Quick alarm)

 The alarm set is saved as a Quick alarm in Schedule, with No category, for the current day (the following day if set time has passed).

#### Contacts

- Contacts cannot be entered while Keypad dial lock (PP. 154) is set.
- Terminal security code (four to eight digits) is required to use Phonebook when phonebook PIM is locked (♥♥ P. 153).

#### Setting alarm tone

- During New manager info, melodies and movies/i-motion are not available.
- While multimedia PIM is locked (P. 153), terminal security code (four to eight digits) is required to
  use melodies, movies or i-motion.

#### **Snooze interval**

 If voice call is received while snoozing, alarm rings after call is disconnected regardless of the set interval. Next alarm rings in set interval from when last alarm finishes ringing.

## **When Set Time Arrives**



# Alarm sounds (4 flashes).



- Alarm operates in accordance with alarm tone, volume and duration settings.
   (Still pictures and i-motion saved as contacts in phonebook and saved messages are also displayed.)
- Vibrator functions with alarm if Vibration mode is set (@P. 123).
- Adjust the volume with () (louder) or () (softer) when volume is not set to Step.

# 2

# Press a key to stop.

To clear display	Press .
To make a call (when contact is saved)	Press   [Phone] → place the call (  P. 109).

When snooze is set, alarm continues to ring in set intervals if a key other than significant is pressed to stop alarm. When alarm is turned off by pressing (or (a) in viewer position), snooze settings are canceled.

## **Note**

- If power is not turned on at time set for alarm, the alarm will not operate.
- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image appears when alarm sounds.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of picture call set for contacts.
- When an i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.
- When picture call and group picture call are set for a phonebook entry, the picture call saved in the entry
  has priority.
- If the time set for alarm or Schedule alarm arrives during Ir exchange, data transmission or Ir remote control, alarm activates after transmission ends and stand-by reappears. However, if time set arrives during software update, alarm may not activate even when updating is completed.

## If alarm duration passes before step 2 is performed

• Alarm stops and a message stating alarm time has passed appears. (The set alarm time appears.)

## If alarm time arrives during a call

Alarm is activated when call is ended and stand-by reappears.

## If alarm time arrives while in Manner mode

Alarm tone does not sound. Vibrator activates. Vibrator operates in Pattern 1 even if Vibrator (P. 123) is set to OFF.

## If alarm time arrives while in Drive mode

Alarm tone does not sound. Picture light and vibrator do not activate.

#### If alarm time arrives while recording video

• Alarm is activated when recording is ended and stand-by reappears.

# **Disabling/Deleting/Changing Alarm Settings**

Change/disable/delete alarm settings individually. Details are erased when alarm is deleted. Details are retained when disabled. To use the same details, set again.



# In stand-by, press (a) (B (b) (b) (b) and select a registration number to disable.



To disable	Press ⓓ [Disable].  • To disable, select a slot with ♡. When disabled, ♡ disappears.
To set (or set again)	Press ⓓ [Set].  • To set again, select a slot without ⊗. When set, ⊗ appears and △ appears in stand-by.
To delete	Press   [Delete] → Yes → (•).  • Details are deleted and appears in Alarm list.

## Registering from Zoom menu

Register alarm from the Zoom menu.

• Set alarm time only. Other items are set in the following ways.

Set repeat: Daily Message: none Contacts: none Alarm tone: 着信音1 Alarm volume: Volume 3 Snooze setting: OFF Ring duration: 60 seconds

- 1
- In stand-by, press (•), select Easy setup and press (•).
  - Press 📵 [Switch] to switch from Top menu or Shortcut menu.
- Select *Alarm*, press •, select a registration number and press •.
- 2 Enter time (four digits) and press .
  - Use 24-hour format.
  - Move cursor with ••.
- Disabling/Deleting/Changing alarm settings from Zoom menu
- Perform steps 1 and 2 from "Registering from Zoom menu".
- Select registration number to disable, delete or change.
  - Refer to step 1 of "Disabling/Deleting/Changing Alarm Settings" for procedure.

# **Saving ToDo Lists**

Save dates and details of tasks and manage schedules. Set priority and sound alarms for notification. When secret tasks are set, Secret mode (PP. 144) must be set to ON to view. Protect private entries.

- Set date and time in advance. (PP P. 48)
- Save up to 100 in ToDo lists.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Basic saving methods for tasks including date, details, and category are explained below.



# In stand-by, press (●) 8 nm 5 km and le 1.43.



Alternatively, select (Tools) → ToDo list from Top menu.

Task saving screen

# Select *Date* and press $(\bullet)$ , enter date (time) and press $(\bullet)$ .

- To set end date, select *End*, press (•), enter end date (time) and press (•).
- To set status, select **Status**, press (•), select status and press (•).
- To set priority, select *!*, press (•), select priority and press (•).

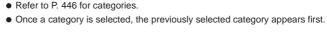
# Select Agenda, press (•), enter agenda and press (•).

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.
- In the task list, if a brief is saved, the first 18 single-byte characters (9 double-byte characters) of the brief appear. If not registered, the first 18 single-byte characters (9 double-byte characters) of the Agenda appear.
- Select *Brief*, press (•), enter brief and press (•). Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.



# Select *Ctgry*, press $(\bullet)$ , select category icon and press $(\bullet)$ . 17/08/2005 17/08/2005





# Press (a) [Complete], select Yes and press (b).

When a task is not entered, entry is not completed even if is pressed.

#### Note

#### Ir exchange

"End:

Status:[Needs action] !: [High ]

Agenda:[Meeting for Brief: [Pre25 Ctgry: [Meeting Alarm: [OFF Secret:[OFF

Dunging Ouk

- Send and receive ToDo lists saved on FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange. (PP P. 400) miniSD Memory Card
- Copy ToDo lists saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (☞ P. 385) or view ToDo lists saved on miniSD Memory Cards (@P. 387).
- Copy ToDo lists saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (@P. 388).

#### Note

Note information saved in ToDo lists separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards ( P. 381) or Data Link Software ( P. 584).

## **Related Operations**

## Sound alarm before task <Alarm settings>

- 1 In the task saving screen (♥ P. 438), select Alarm ●.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To disable: Press ②♣.
- 3 Press ⚠ ▶ enter time (number of minutes before scheduled task) ▶ .
  - To set a contact in the alarm: Press 5₺ pinput method pinp

## Save tasks as secret <Secret>

- 1 In the task saving screen (☐ P. 438), select Secret ▶ .
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To disable: Press 2 €.

## Note

## **Alarm settings**

- Set contact information to show in the alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.
- Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.

#### Secret mode

• Refer to P. 156 for instructions on setting Secret mode.

## **When Alarm Time Arrives**

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. Press a key to stop alarm. (PP P. 436)

- Secret tasks are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear. (Appears when Secret mode (TP P. 156) is set to ON.)
- If ToDo PIM is locked, alarm does not sound at set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Manner mode.
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Drive mode, alarm tone and vibrator do not activate, and picture light and called LED do not flash.







Secret data

## Note

- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image (still picture, movie, or imotion) appears when alarm sounds.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of picture call set for contact.
- When an i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.

## **Checking ToDo Lists**

Specify status or category of ToDo lists or check completed lists.

# 1

# 

• To check schedules in miniSD Memory Cards, press (# # ) in task list.



Task list

\* If brief is saved, the first 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters appear.
If brief is not saved, the first 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

# 2

# Select a task and press .

To copy Agenda	Press <u>a 2 de</u> .
To end viewing	Press 🐃.



Task details screen

#### Note

Press ☐ to view ToDo list during a voice call or while composing message (press () (shutter) for 1+ seconds when in viewer position). (☐ P. 430)

## **Related Operations**

## Change status < Change status>

# Display by Status/Category <Show by status/Show by category>

- 1 In stand-by, press B \*\* 5 \*\*.
- 2 Press (a) (4 £ ...
- 3 Select item ▶ .

## **Check finished ToDo list**

In stand-by, press ● B \*\* 5 \* task ▶ (i [V].

To mark as unread (fat): Select task marked fat and press fat [☑].

## Lock PIM for ToDo List <Security setting>

In stand-by, press ● 🕫 🕫 🕨 🔊 🕨 😭 (for 1+ seconds) 🕨 enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) 🕨 🌒 🕽 📆.

## **Related Operations**

## **Note**

## **Checking ToDo lists**

• End date is entered automatically.

## **Editing ToDo Lists**

1

Task saving screen appears.

2

## Edit task.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving. (FP P. 438)
- To set end date, select *End* and press •). Enter end date (time) and press •).
- When finished editing, press ② [Complete] and select save method.

  Solver 1 (10) | To save as a new task | Press ③ → Yes → ④.

	i B
$\neg$	ľ
	ľ
es	H
10	
_	* III

To overwrite task Press $2  \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow 0$ .	To save as a new task	Press $\underbrace{1.8} \rightarrow \mathbf{Yes} \rightarrow \mathbf{\bullet}$ .
	To overwrite task	Press $2 \frac{2}{36} \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ .

## **Deleting ToDo Lists**

Overwrite

Use the following to delete tasks.

Delete one	Deletes tasks individually.
Delete completed	Deletes all completed tasks.
Delete all	Deletes all tasks.
Delete selected	Deletes selected tasks collectively.

X Delete completed and Delete all are not available when tasks are listed by status or category.

1

In stand-by, press ( ) [8 ] [5 ], select a task and press ( ) [6 ].



• Entries do not need to be selected for *Delete completed* and *Delete all*.

# 2

## Select deletion method.

• Delete confirmation screen appears.

To delete one task	Press $\longrightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To delete all completed tasks	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To delete all tasks	Press $\longrightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\bigcirc$ $\longrightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\longrightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To delete selected tasks collectively	Press $(4.5)$ $\rightarrow$ task $\Leftrightarrow$ $(1)$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow$ $(2)$ [Complete] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $(3)$ .

# **Saving Schedules**

Manage schedules by saving start date and time, end date and time, details and contacts (phone number). Sound alarm before scheduled time or show a message, phone number or still picture. Additionally, search schedules by contacts, call using the shown phone number or create mail. Easily save category icons on the one month icon calendar. Add details later. (©FP. 445)

- Set date and time in advance. (PP P. 48)
- Save up to 300 schedules.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

## **Displaying Calendar < Calendar >**

Display calendar. (PP. 130) Check saved schedules.

- Set date and time in advance. (PP. 48)
- Fifteen Japanese national holidays (as stipulated by the National Holiday Law as of May 2005) are set by default and appear in red.
- Add holidays and vacations and show on calendar.



## In stand-by, press ● B \*\* 4 defined.



Calendar

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Schedule from Top menu.
- Current month's calendar appears.
- Press to close calendar.

	Press ⓓ.  ■ In viewer position, press ⑥ (left guidance) for 1+ seconds.
To show next month	Press ᠍.  ■ In viewer position, press ® (right guidance) for 1+ seconds.

## Specifying date <Go to Date>

1

In Calendar, press , select Go to date and press .



2

# Enter date and press .

Calendar for specified date appears.

## **Related Operations**

Show calendar by entering date from stand-by

In stand-by, enter date ▶ ● 2 2 ...

## **Note**

Entered dates and calendar shown correlate as follows.
 01 to 31 Current month (1st to 31st)

0101 to 1231 Specified date (January 1 to December 31)

20000101 to 20991231 Specified date and year (January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2099)

## Changing calendar format <Switch view mode>

- Stand-by calendar does not change when calendar display is changed to 2 months or 1 month icon. (Set schedules and vacation are reflected.) Refer to P. 130 for setting stand-by calendar display.
- The default setting is 2 months.

## In calendar, press (a) 6 5 and select format.



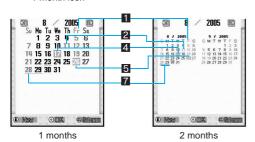
To display one month icon	Press 1.2.
To display one month	Press 22.
To display two months	Press 3 3.

- Calendar format is switched.
- To show a schedule, select schedule and press (•). (PP. 449)

## Calendar layout



- 1 Days with color set (Shown in set color)
- 2 Set vacation (Shown red)
- 3 Selected day (Shown in a black box)
- 4 Selected day (Shown green)
- 5 Today (Day color highlighted)
- 6 Saved schedule (Icon display by category)
- 7 Schedule saved (Underlined)
  - Schedule is two or more days (Underlined)



# **Setting Vacation < Set Vacation>**

Set certain days or certain days of the week as vacations. Set up to 100 vacations. Disable all set vacations or all past vacations (excluding vacations set to specific day of week) collectively.

• For Disable all, vacations set to specific days of week are reset to the default settings (Sundays only).

# 1

# In Calendar (PP. 442), select day to set as vacation (or disable vacation settings), press and select method of setting.

• Days do not need to be selected when disabling all vacations and weekly vacations.

	Press ①☑.  ■ When day set as vacation is selected, setting is disabled.
To set weekly vacations	Press $\longrightarrow$ day $\Leftrightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ [Complete].

· Set vacation appears red.

## **Related Operations**

## Collectively disable set vacations <Disable all>

- 2 Press **4** 5 Yes ▶ **(•)**.
  - To disable all past vacations: Press ③ ▶ Yes ▶ (•).

## Note

• Vacations set to specific day of week are reset to default settings (Sundays only).

## Setting Holiday < Set Holiday>

Default setting

See below

Set and change holidays.

• Save up to 20 holidays in addition to the preset Japanese national holidays.

The default setting is Japanese national holidays (15 holidays).



# 



# 2

## Press 1. [New].

- Holiday setting screen appears.
- To disable all set holidays, press [2.4], select **Yes** and press [•).
- 3

# Select method of setting holidays.

7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	Press 1.4.
To set 1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup> /3 <sup>rd</sup> /4 <sup>th</sup> /5 <sup>th</sup> (day) of (month) of every year	Press 2 %.

Details entry screen appears.



# Enter holiday name and press .

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.
- In schedule details screen (☼ P. 450), press (♠ T.Δ) to change the details for the set holiday. Enter day to change, press (♠) and proceed to step 3.
- The FOMA terminal calculates the dates for the Vernal Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day.
   Actual dates may differ.
- Set holiday appears red.

# Changing Day Colors <Set Day Color>

Default setting

See below

Change the color of days in the Calendar.

When holidays or vacations are set, colors of days change but dates (numbers) remain red.
 The default setting is *Red* for Sunday (Set vacation), *Black* for Monday to Friday, and *Blue* for Saturday.

1

# In Calendar (☞ P. 442), press ⓐ, select ■ Set day color and press ⑥.





Select day, press •, select color and press •.

Continue setting other days.

# 3

Press (i [Complete].

• Day color is changed.

#### **Note**

The color of days in stand-by calendars changes when day color is changed. When clock display is set to
 ON, day color of the date/time shown in stand-by also changes. (PP P. 130)

## **Saving Schedules**

Basic saving methods for schedules including time and date, agenda, category and contact are explained below.

In stand-by, press (a) B (a) 4 (a), select day and press (a) [New] or

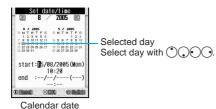
- Always set start date/time and agenda.
- Sound alarm before scheduled time or save schedules as Secret. (@P. 447, P. 448)
- Date: [--/-/---] | Ctgry: [No category ] | Alarm: [OFF ] | Image: [

● When in 1 month icon, press ⓐ 1.₺.



screen

# Select *Date* and press . Then, press [Switch] to select the date in Calendar.



Enter start date for schedule or select from the calendar, press •, enter time and press •.



- Use 24-hour format.
- If end date and time are entered, select **Once only** in step 4.
- To reset end date and time, press (1) [Reset].

## Select a repeat method.

To set to repeat every day	Press $2  \rightarrow$ enter number of times to repeat (00 to 99) $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ .
To save a one-time schedule	Press 1.4.
To save a weekly schedule	Press $3 \implies 0$ enter number of times to repeat (00 to 99) $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To save a monthly schedule	Press $\textcircled{45} \rightarrow$ enter number of times to repeat (00 to 99) $\rightarrow$ $\textcircled{\bullet}$ .
To save an annual schedule	Press $\underbrace{5 ^{\text{\#}}}_{\text{\#}} \rightarrow \text{enter number of times to repeat (00 to 99)} \rightarrow \bullet$ .

## • 00 represents unlimited times.

Select Smry, press (•), enter summary and press (•).

• Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

# Select Ctgry, press (•), select category icon and press (•).

## Categories

Icon	Category	lcon	Category	lcon	Category	Icon	Category
	No category		Meeting	43	Hobby	1	Business trip
IV	TV program*	84	Meals	S	Date	2	Appreciation
	Personal		Drive	P	Karaoke	1	Hospital
	Holiday	$\mathcal{A}$	Exercise		Party		
R	Travel	*O	Anniversary		Shopping		
	Business	ڰۣٛ	Birthday		School		

- TV program cannot be selected in step 6. To save TV programs, refer to "Set using Save only category icon from 1 month icon calendar" (FP P. 447), or "Scheduling Video Recordings < Reserve TV Program>" (PP P. 454).
- Selected category appears.
- Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

# Select *Image*, press (●) and select an image.

To set still picture	Press $\textcircled{1.4} \rightarrow \text{folder} \rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{still picture} \rightarrow \textcircled{i} [OK].$
To not set a still picture	Press 2 de la companya della company

- Movies/i-motion cannot be selected.
- Title of selected still picture appears.
- Set image appears in Schedule list and schedule details screen.

# Select *Cntcts*, press (●), select input method and set contact.



To select from	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ enter phone number $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
phonebook	<ul> <li>Entries without phone numbers are not available.</li> </ul>
To input directly	Press $2 $ $\rightarrow $ enter phone number $\rightarrow $ $    \bigcirc $

- Set contact information to show the contact in the schedule details or alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.
- Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.



# Select Agenda, press (•), enter agenda and press (•).

Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.



Press (i [Complete], select Yes and press (o).

#### **Note**

## Ir exchange

• Send and receive schedules saved on FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange. (FP P. 400)

## Setting image

• While updating manager information, My picture is not available.

## miniSD Memory Card

- Copy schedules saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (P. 385) or view schedules saved on miniSD Memory Cards. (P. 387)
- Copy schedules saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (PP P. 388).

Note information saved in Schedule separately or transfer/store on a PC using miniSD Memory Card (PP. 381) or Data Link Software (PP. 584).

## **Related Operations**

## Save only category icon from 1 month icon calendar

## Note

## **Contents of Schedule**

Date	Selected day + set time
Summary	_
Category	Category of selected icon
Alarm	OFF
Image	_
Contacts	_
Secret	OFF
Agenda	No content is entered.

# **Setting alarms**

Default setting See below

Sound an alarm before the scheduled time. Also set alarm actions.

- Saved contact information appears when activating Alarm.
- If Vibration mode (P. 123) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.
- If multiple Schedule alarms are set for the same time, the set alarm sounds for the set number of times.

The default setting is *00 minutes* for Alarm time, *15 seconds* for Ring duration, 着信音1 for Alarm tone, and *Volume 3* for Alarm volume.

Alarm time	Set to sound an alarm before the scheduled time.
Ring duration	Change the duration the alarm sounds.
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone.
Alarm volume	Change alarm volume.

• Set the above in schedule saving screen ( steps 1 and 2 of "Saving Schedules" on P. 445).

# Setting Alarms

# In schedule saving screen (PPP P. 445), select *Alarm*, press and IPP [ON].



Alarm setting screen

# Press (1.5), enter time to sound alarm (minutes before the scheduled time) and press (•).

• Press (i) [Complete] and schedule saving screen reappears.

## **Related Operations**

## Change alarm duration <Ring duration>

In the alarm setting screen, press ②② ▶ ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) ▶ (●).

## Change alarm tone < Alarm tone>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press 3.
- 2 Press 1.4.
  - To set movie/i-motion: Press 2 &.
  - To not set alarm tone: Press 3 ...
- 3 Select folder ▶ ▶ alarm tone ▶ ⓒ [OK].

## Change alarm volume < Alarm volume>

In the alarm setting screen, press 45 (louder) or (softer) • (...

## Note

• If animated GIF or Flash movie is set as stand-by, 🗘 does not appear until animation is finished.

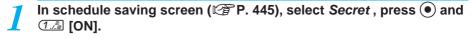
## Setting alarm tone

• During New manager info, melodies and movies/i-motion are not available.

## **Setting as Secret**

When schedules are set as Secret, they cannot be seen unless entering terminal security code (FP . 144) and setting Secret mode to **ON**.

- Refer to P. 156 for instructions on setting Secret mode.
- Set Secret mode to **ON** (PP. 156) in advance to disable secret setting.



## When Alarm Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. Press a key to stop alarm.

- Adjust the volume with (louder) or (softer) when alarm volume is not set to Step.
- If image is set for Schedule, i-motion with image is set for alarm tone or contact set has Picture call set, image
  appears in the following priority.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	i-motion set as alarm tone $ ightarrow$ schedule image $ ightarrow$ picture call $ ightarrow$ group picture call $ ightarrow$ alarm image

- Secret schedules are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear.
   (Appears when Secret mode (PP P. 156) is set to ON.)
- If Schedule PIM is locked, alarm does not sound at the set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Manner mode.
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Drive mode, alarm tone and vibrator do not activate, and picture light and called LED do not flash.





Normal schedule

Secret data

## **Checking Schedules**

Check contents of saved schedules. Sort them by categories or contacts. Place calls or send i-mode mail if phone number or mail address is saved. Copy schedules or view still pictures and Money calculator saved on specified date.

1

# In stand-by, press • B \* 4 & , select day and press •.

- Up to four schedules for selected day are listed. (Schedule list)
- Press to show previous day's schedule list.
- Press ( ) to show next day's schedule list.
- To check secret schedules, set Secret mode (@P. 156) to ON.
- To check schedules in miniSD Memory Cards, press <a>●</a> # ⇒ in calendar.



\* If summary is saved, the first 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters appear.
If summary is not saved, the first 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

# Select schedule and press 💽



Schedule details

- If an image is saved, press (a) [Viewpicture] to preview.
- If contact is saved, phone number appears and call can be made. Name appears if saved in phonebook. Press (a) [Phone] to show phonebook details.
   Make calls or send mail. (P P. 109)
- Press to end viewing.

#### Note

Press ⊕ to view Schedule during a voice call or while composing message (press (shutter) for 1+ seconds when in viewer position). (♠ P. 430)

## **Related Operations**

## Display by category <Show by category>

In stand-by, press (a) Brill (4 50) \( \right) \( \right) \( \right) \) category (a).

## Display by contacts <Show by contact>

In stand-by, press  $\bigcirc B_{nv}^{\circ} / 4_{an} \rightarrow 0$  contacts  $\triangleright \bigcirc$ .

## Check all schedules <Show all schedules>

In stand-by, press ● B \*\* 4 \*\* ▶ 🍙 3 \*\*.

- To check the schedule: Select schedule (•).
- To check schedule in miniSD Memory Cards: In Calendar, press (##).

## Make calls from schedule

In the schedule details screen, press (•)(•).

• To make video-phone call: Press • 1

## Create i-mode mail from schedule

In the schedule details screen, press ● [Phone] ▶ select address ▶ ● [Mail] ▶ compose message.

## Search still pictures saved on specified date <Search My picture>

In stand-by, press ● B → date ▶ a ▶ ■ Search My pic ▶ • ▶ folder ▶ • ▶ Still picture ▶ •.

## View Money calculator for specified date < View Money calculator>

In stand-by, press (B) (4 2 ) date (a) View money calc (b).

To copy: Press ๔ [Copy].

## Copy schedules <Copy>

In the schedule details screen, press 2 2 2.

## Lock Schedule PIM <Security setting>

#### **Note**

## Composing i-mode mail

• Compose i-mode mail from schedule if mail address is saved in phonebook.

## Searching My picture

• If applicable still pictures are not saved in the selected folder, No image from specified date appears.

## Viewing Money calculator

 If Money calculator is not set for the specified date, Money calc does not exist for specified date appears.

# **Editing Schedules <Edit>**

In stand-by, press ● B ♣ 4 ♣ , select day, press ●, select schedule and press ◎ 3 ♣ .



• To select secret schedules, set Secret mode (PP. 156) to ON.

**Edit schedule, press (a) [Complete] and select save method.** 

• Editing procedures are the same as when saving. (PP P. 445)

To save as a new schedule	Press $(1.8)$ $\rightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow$ $(\bullet)$ .
To overwrite schedule	Press $2\pi \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ .

## Saving contacts from Received calls and Redial

Save phone numbers from Received calls and Redial as contact information.

Select Received call ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 66) or Redial ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 55) and press ( select Received call ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 55) and press ( select Received call ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 66) or Redial

• Schedule saving screen appears.

## **Contents of Schedule**

	Received calls	Redial
Date	Received date and time	Called date and time
Summary	-	-
Category	No ca	tegory
Alarm	OFF	
Image	-	-
Contacts	Phone	number
Secret	OFF	
Agenda	No content	t is entered.

Add and save the contents. ( steps 2 to 10 on P. 445)

# Saving contents of i-mode mail

Save contents of received/sent mail as Agenda.

Attachments are not saved.

# 1

# Show received messages ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 277), press , select Create schedule and press ( ).

- Schedule saving screen appears.
- For sent mail, open sent mail and press

## **Contents of Schedule**

	Received mail	Sent mail	
Date	Received date and time	Sent date and time	
Summary		_	
Category	No ca	No category	
Alarm	OFF		
Image	-		
Contacts	First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook.)	First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook.)	
Secret	OFF		
Agenda	Subject and message (Up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters)		

# 2

# Add and save the contents. ( steps 2 to 10 on P. 445)

## Saving contents of text memos

Save text from text memos as Agenda.

1

# In stand-by, press ( B \*\* B \*\* B \*\* ), select text memo and press ( A \*\* ).

- Schedule saving screen appears.
- If the text memo category is *TV program*, the program edit screen appears.

#### Contents of Schedule

Date	/
Summary	_
Category	Category of Text memo
Alarm	OFF
Image	_
Contacts	_
Secret	OFF
Agenda	Content of Text memo

2

Add and save the contents. ( steps 2 to 10 on P. 445)

# Saving still pictures from My picture

Save still pictures from My picture of Data box to Schedule.

• Movies/i-motion in Data box are not available.

# 1

# Select still picture ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 342) and press ( 3 b).

• Schedule saving screen appears.

#### **Contents of Schedule**

Date	Save date and time of still picture
Summary	-
Category	No category
Alarm	OFF
Image	Title of still picture
Contacts	-
Secret	OFF
Agenda	No content is entered.

# 2

# Add and save the contents. (Frates 2 to 10 on P. 445)

## Note

- While previewing a shot still picture, press ( The Save to save to schedule. Still picture cannot be saved to Schedule if save destination is set as miniSD Memory Card. Set save destination to the handset before shooting.
- Still pictures in miniSD Memory Cards are not directly available. Copy to FOMA terminal handset before saving.

# **Deleting Schedules < Delete Schedules >**

Use one of the following to delete schedules.

Delete one	Deletes entries individually.
Delete all past	Resets all schedules prior to specified day.
Delete all	Deletes all entries.
Delete selected	Deletes selected entries collectively.



# 



- When selecting secret schedules for Delete one or Delete selected, set Secret mode (@P. 156) to ON.
- To delete selected entries, select in step 2.
- To delete all past schedules, select entry to start with.

# 7

# Select deletion method.

To delete one schedule	Press $\bigcirc A \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc A$ .
To delete all past entries	Press $ ot\!$
To delete all entries	Press $\boxed{3}$ $\rightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To delete selected entries collectively	Press $4 \  \                              $

## **Related Operations**

## **Delete entries from Calendar**

- 1 In Calendar (@P. 442), press @ 9......
- 2 Press 1.3 [Delete all past].
  - To delete all: Press 2 2 3.
- 3 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ▶ Yes ▶ ●.

# Scheduling Video Recordings < Reserve TV Program>

Schedule TV program recording from schedule screen. Set alarm to notify before recording beings.

- Connect to a VCR or TV with a video output terminal using flat-plug AV cable (sold separately) and record TV
  programs to miniSD Memory Card. Refer to P. 455 for details on Record video.
- Set to record up to two hours.
- Set one record setting **ON**.
- Recording is also available in Secret mode.
- In stand-by, press ( ) [8 ] ( 4 ] ( ), select day to record and press ( ) [2 ] ( )



- Alternatively, press (包括) (2基) (2基) in stand-by. Record video is entered for Agenda.
- Ctgry is TV program and cannot be changed.
- Select *Date*, press •, enter start and end date/time and press •.
  - Date/time setting screen appears.
- Press 1.2 [Once only].
- Select Smry, press , enter summary and press .
- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.
- Select *TV alm*, press and [ON].
  - Alarm setting screen appears.
    - To not set alarm, press 23.
- Press 🖾 [Alarm time], enter time to sound alarm (minutes before recording begins), press 🌘 and 👔 [Complete].
  - Set between 03 and 99 minutes.
  - Also set Alarm tone and Alarm volume. Refer to P. 448 for details.
- Select Record, press ( ) and ( ). [ ON].
   Recording is not set when recording start time is set to a date/time that has already passed, when the recording start/end time is not entered or is the same time, or when recording time is over two hours.
- Select *ChnI*, press •, enter channel and press •.
  - Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.



# Select Agenda, press •, enter recording agenda and press •.

• Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.



# Press (a) [Complete], select Yes and press (a).

Set recording schedules will be disabled. OK? appears if another recording is scheduled. Select
Yes and press ● to turn previously set recording OFF. Select No and press ● to retain previous
schedule.

#### Note

- Next recording timer does not automatically turn ON even if current timer recording ends or set timer is deleted. Turn timer ON.
- The entered channel name is just the name saved in Schedule. Programs are not recorded based on the channel name. Set channel with the TV or VCR being used as the video source.
- Use the i-αppli "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) to save a scheduled recording.

# When Recording Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. Press a key to stop alarm. Previous screen appears after ring duration elapses (approximately 15 seconds).





When recording timer is ON When recording timer is OFF

- Adjust the volume with (\*) (louder) or (\*) (softer) when alarm volume is not set to Step.
- If recording timer is OFF, set to ON and connect cable.
- Depending on the FOMA terminal status, Battery low, Memory low, Battery and Memory low, No miniSD or No mini SD. Btry empty appears. (Messages do not appear when i-motion is set as the alarm tone.)
- Recording schedules set as secret data are notified by alarm but details do not appear. (Appears when in Secret mode (☼ P. 156).)

## **Record Video**

# **Recording Video**

Use a flat-plug AV cable (sold separately) to record from TV or VCR to a miniSD Memory Card.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. ( P. 381)

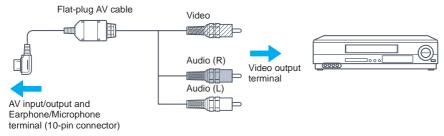
- Cannot be recorded directly on FOMA terminal.
- Copy up to 500 KB per video file from miniSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal.
- Video is recorded in ASF format.
- Editing, attaching to mail and setting as stand-by or Chaku-motion are unavailable.
- Insert miniSD Memory Card before recording. Check that memory is sufficient.
- Recording of copy-guarded programs, such as digitized terrestrial broadcast, is unavailable.
- Can also be added to the Shortcut menu. (PP P. 461)
- Because recording uses up the battery, it is recommended to connect the AC adapter.
- Before recording important programs, perform a test recording in advance to verify recording quality.
- Use only flat-plug AV cables.

- Set the correct date and time on the TV, VCR and FOMA terminal to prevent errors in recording. If incorrectly set, TV programs will not be recorded properly.
- Approximate times for saving on a 32 MB miniSD Memory Card are as follows.

Image size Quality	hQVGA (small)	QVGA (large)
High quality	16 minutes	_
Standard	37 minutes	8 minutes

## Recording methods

I DOG-TOLICO	From recording stand-by, recording starts when a video signal is received from the TV or VCR. (©F P. 457)
Program	TV programs can be reserved from the schedule screen. Recording starts when a video signal is received from the TV or VCR. (@P. 458)



Connect the input terminals of the flat-plug AV cable to the video output terminals of the VCR or TV.

## Recording screen



- 1 Start time/End time
- Appear during recording.
- 2 Recordable time
- 3 Volume
  - Adjust volume with (\*) if audio output is **ON**.
- 4 Status
  - ■ST□P: Stopped.

    WAIT: Stand-by.
    - : Stand-by. Recording is in stand-by status until signal is
      - detected after pressing ( ) [Rec].
  - RE□ : Recording

## Note

- Recorded video is saved to the PRLxxx folder in the miniSD Memory Card. ("xxx" in the folder name is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999) (☼ P. 384)
- When audio output is OFF or while in Manner mode, press and Output audio? appears.
   Select Yes to adjust volume.
- Audio is silenced when FOMA terminal is closed.
- Alarm does not activate during recording. Alarm activates after recording and stand-by reappears.
- For one-touch recording, recording stops when video signal is no longer detected (video signal is not
  detected for sections of video tape with nothing recorded or when attempting to record the blank between
  recorded programs on a video tape). Scheduled recording continues.

#### Note

- An error message does not appear in the following situations.
  - When stand-by display is not shown
  - When Auto power ON/OFF and scheduled recording are set for the same time
  - When All lock is enabled

## About the flat-plug AV cable (sold separately)

- Firmly connect the flat-plug AV cable. Do not pull on the cable or twist terminals when connecting.
- When disconnecting the plug, pull out slowly.
- Turn off the power of device connecting to when connecting or pulling out the plug.
- For AV output (PP . 474), adjust the volume of the TV or other device connected to the FOMA terminal.
   Additionally, verify that the volume of the television is not too loud and turn off the TV or VCR when disconnecting the FOMA terminal.
- Connect the flat-plug AV cable to the video output terminals of the TV or VCR. Connecting cable to the video input or other terminals may cause a malfunction.

## Recording with One-Touch Operations <One-Touch>

• When recording is stopped or in stand-by, Detailed settings (PP. 459) can be changed.

# Verify that a miniSD Memory Card is inserted, and connect the FOMA terminal to a VCR or TV with a flat-plug AV cable.

• Display the video to record on the TV or VCR.

2



- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Record video → One-touch from Top menu.
- Recording is stopped and TV or video image appears.



Recording screen: Stopped

3 F

# Press ( [Rec].

- Recording starts. If a video signal is not detected, recording is paused and begins when video signal is detected. (Synchronized recording)
- Picture light flashes during recording.



# To stop recording, press • [Stop].



• Recording ends automatically after set recording time passes.

# Save.

To save recorded movie	Press 1.3.
To play recorded movie	Press 2 de la companya della company
To delete recorded movie	Press $3 \longrightarrow Yes \rightarrow 0$ .

## **Related Operations**

## Change Record mode <Switch rec mode>

Recording screen: When stopped (PP. 457), press (PR. 457). Press (PR. 457). Record mode (PR. 457).

## Switch audio <Switch audio>

Recording screen: When stopped (№ P. 457), press 🔊 💷 🕨 audio type 🕨 💿.

## Set recording time < Recording time>

Recording screen: When stopped (☞ P. 457), press ⓐ ③ ▶ enter recording time (001 to 120) ▶ ●.

## Lock AV Input PIM <Security setting>

In stand-by, press ● B → B → E → (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ ① △.

## Note

• Recording does not begin when signal is detected if operated from stand-by status.

#### **Switching Record mode**

• Set to *Use rec settings* when recording video. (PP. 459)

## Switching audio

• Set to Audio settings when recording video. (P. 460)

## Recording time

- Set to 120 minutes when recording video.
- Record up to 120 minutes consecutively.
- Recording time may not be exact.
- Recording may stop before remaining time displayed reaches 0.

## Using a Schedule to Set Recording Timer < Program>

Save start/end date and time and channel for timer recording. Sound alarm before start time. Alternatively, use  $i-\alpha ppli$  to program. ( $\mathcal{CFP}$  P. 317)

Set one Program.

1

# 



- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Record video → Program from Top menu.
- Refer to "Scheduling Video Recordings" (P. 454) for details on saving.

7 Press 🗊 [Complete], select Yes and press 💿.

#### Note

Content of Agenda is automatically entered in file information. View it in movie/i-motion details screen.
 (P. 334)

## When set time arrives

Recording screen automatically appears and recording starts. Recording automatically ends at end time and the video is saved.

- Recording begins when the FOMA terminal receives a video signal (NTSC) from a VCR or TV. Make sure the connected device is turned on at the scheduled time of recording.
- Before recording, channel must be set on the video device. It is recommended to schedule the recording for both the FOMA terminal and the video device.
- Recording does not begin in the following status.
  - Not in stand-by ■ Flat-plug AV cable is not connected

  - Battery level is less than two bars miniSD Memory Card is not inserted
  - When available memory on miniSD Memory Card is less than 100 KB
  - When PIM is locked for AV input
  - When All lock is enabled
- Picture light flashes during recording.

# Viewing Details of Scheduled Recording < Check Schedule>



# In stand-by, press (●) B \*\* 2 # 3 €.



- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Record video → Check schedule from Top
- Press @ clr to end viewing.

# **Setting Recording Details < Detailed Settings>**

Apply detailed recording settings. Set Record mode, audio settings, incoming call settings and audio output settings.

# Setting Record mode < Record mode >

• The following setting is active if Record mode is set to Use rec settings.

# In stand-by, press (•) B \*\*\* 2 \*\* 4 \*\*\* 1.\*\* and select Record mode.



 Alternatively, select (Tools) → Record video → Detailed settings → Record mode from Top menu.

To record in standard QVGA (large)	Press 1.2.
To record in high quality hQVGA (small)	Press 2 %.
To record in standard hQVGA (small)	Press 3 .

# Setting incoming actions < Incoming calls>

While recording, set actions for incoming voice/video-phone calls, i-mode mail, Message R/F and SMS.

Setting	Incoming settings
	When a call is received, recording is automatically stopped. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears for one-touch recording. Recording is automatically saved for scheduled recording. When this happens, <i>Recording aborted due to incoming call</i> appears. When mail is received, recording continues and appears.

Setting	Incoming settings
	Self mode (126 P. 152) automatically activates when recording starts, and I appears. Self mode is disabled when recording is stopped. i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center and SMS is held at SMS center.

## 



Alternatively, select ( Tools) → Record video → Detailed settings → Incoming calls from Top menu.

Record first Press 2	Call first	Press 1.2.
	Record first	Press 2 de.

## Setting audio output <Audio output>

Output sound being recorded from FOMA terminal speakers.

## 



Alternatively, select (a) (Tools) → Record video → Detailed settings → Audio output from Top menu.

	Press T
To not output	Press 2

## Setting audio <Audio settings>

Switch among Stereo, Mono (L), and Mono (R) for audio recordings.

• The following settings is active when Switch audio is set to Audio settings.

# In stand-by, press • B \* Q \* A \* A \* A \* and select audio type.



Alternatively, select ( Tools ) → Record video → Detailed settings → Audio settings from Top menu.

Stereo	(1./2	Records audio from both the L and R channels of the recording device.
Mono (L)	2 // <sub>ABC</sub>	Records audio from only the L channel (Main) of the recording device.
Mono (R)	3 🎄	Records audio from only the R channel (Sub) of the recording device.

# **Accessing Functions Quickly**

Save frequently used functions as shortcuts for easy access.

# **Saving to Shortcut Menu**

Save up to 18 shortcuts. The following shortcuts are preset. Overwrite them with i-αppli software, bookmarks and other frequently used functions.





## Press for 1+ seconds in function with A shown to save.



• Some i-αppli cannot start unless the FOMA card that was used during the initial download of the i-αppli is inserted. If that original FOMA card is not inserted, shortcut cannot be saved even if A appears.

Select destination to save and press (•).

- Register confirmation screen appears.
- Select Yes and press ( ) to overwrite.
  - Saved as shortcut

#### **Note**

- When registered i-αppli software or URL bookmarks are deleted, they are automatically deleted from the
- When settings are reset (PP. 480), shortcuts return to default settings.

# **Running Shortcut Menu**

In stand-by, press (,), select shortcut icon and press (•).

- Saved function activates.
- When calendar is set in stand-by, press to change month. Press to disable calendar, and press (.).

# **Deleting from Shortcut Menu**



In stand-by, press  $(\cdot)$ , select shortcut icon and press  $[\cdot]$   $[\cdot]$ .

• The delete screen appears.

# Select deletion method.

To delete one shortcut	Press $\bigcirc A \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc A$ .
	Press $ otin \exists \exists \exists \to \text{ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits)} \to \bullet \to \bullet $ Yes $\to \bullet$ .

• Selected shortcut is deleted from Shortcut menu.

## Moving Shortcut Menu Icons < Move Icon>

Change placement of icons in Shortcut menu.



In stand-by, press (,), select shortcut icon and press (a) 2 2 2.

Select destination screen appears.



Select target location and press .

Shortcuts are switched.

## **Setting Shortcut Menu Icons < Icon Settings>**

Change Shortcut menu icons.

Set two images; one for selected and another for unselected.

- Use 76(W) × 76(H) pixel JPEG images, GIF images or animated GIFs.
- Up to three scenes are used for animated GIFs. Image for selected icon is not available.

1

In stand-by, press , select shortcut icon and press (a) (1.5).



- Select folder, press •, select still picture for unselected icon and press [OK].
  - The icon is set.
  - Icon settings confirmation screen appears.
  - To check still picture, select a still picture and press ( [Agree]. Press ( are to return.
- Select still picture for selected icon.

To set the same image for unselected and selected icon	Select $No \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To set a different selected icon	Select <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ folder $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ still picture $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ [OK].

• If an animated GIF is selected in step 2, the shortcut menu screen reappears.

#### Note

- Images that cannot be set to shortcut icons do not appear.
- Icons in the preset Shortcut menu are animated GIFs.
- If an image in My picture of Data box is set as a menu icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the menu icon setting is changed.

# Other Useful Functions

# Setting Action Focus to Shortcut Menu Icons <Action Focus>

Set Action focus for Shortcut menu icons.

• Action focus is applied to last image for animated GIFs.



# In stand-by, press ( ) and ( ) and select Action focus type.



Twister	1./-8	Squares appear from the lower part of the display. The inner area disappears and the remaining frames rotate.
Target	2 #sc	Small square frames appear and disappear.
Windmill	3 🏝	Three lines appear and rotate under the icon.
Globe	4 gr	Circular frames appear and rotate at varying speeds.
Stardust	5 #L	Light sparkles.
Ripple	6 #NO	Rings move outward.
OFF	7 🔅	Nothing is set.

# Setting Shortcut Menu Background <Set Background>

Default setting

メニュー背景1

Change Shortcut menu background.

• Use JPEG and GIF images. (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available.)



In stand-by, press • and • 4 5.

My picture of Data box appears.



Select folder, press •, select still picture and press [ [OK].

- Background is set.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press (•) [Agree]. Press (•) [Agree].

## **Note**

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- If a still picture in My picture is set as a background image, even if deleted, the image is retained until the background setting is changed.

# Resetting Shortcut Menu <Reset Icon>

Reset Shortcut menu to default items.



In stand-by, press ( ) and ( ) 6 km.

Reset confirmation screen appears.



Select Yes and press .

Settings are reset.

# **Saving Own Name and Image**

Save and edit name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, postal address, birthday, memo and own image.

Save three phone numbers (including Own number) and three mail addresses.

• Only own number is saved by default. Add acquired i-mode mail address.

## Items to set



Icon	Item
2	Name (up to 32 single-byte/16 double-byte characters)
R	Reading (up to 32 single-byte characters)
₩.	Own number (cannot be edited)
8	Phone number (two numbers, 26 digits per number)
	Mail address (three addresses, 50 characters per address)
Ŧ	Postal code (up to seven single-byte digits*)
•=	Postal address (up to 100 single-byte/50 double-byte characters)
#	Birthday (single-byte*, from January 1, 1900 to December 31, 2099)
<b>Q</b>	Memo (up to 200 single-byte/100 double-byte characters)
2	Own image

<sup>\*</sup>Appears as double-byte characters when entered.

1

# In stand-by, press ( ) ( and ( ) [Details].

• Terminal security code entry screen appears.

# 2

# Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits), press • and

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Edit owner information screen appears.

# 3

# Select items with ( ) and save details.

- Editing procedures are the same as phonebook. Refer to P. 98 to P. 100 for details.
- Screen of step 2 reappears after each item is saved. Continue setting other items.
- Press @sal in each entry screen to delete name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, postal address, birthday and memo. Select Not set to delete Own image.



# After saving items, press (i) [Complete].

• Select icon with • to show saved details.

#### **Note**

- Customize i-mode mail address. (♥ P. 249)
- Changes for i-mode mail address are not reflected in owner information. Save mail address manually.

# **Related Operations**

Check own i-mode mail address (i-mode subscribers only)

In stand-by, press ⓐ ▶ *iMenu* ▶ ③ オプション設定 (Options) ▶ ① メール設定 (Mail settings) ▶ アドレス確認 (Confirm Address) ▶ ●.

## **Showing Owner Information Details**

Show Owner information details.

Also, copy characters from owner information items and paste in other screens.



# In stand-by, press (●) \(\overline{\mathcal{O}}\)\(\text{\text{\$\infty}}\) and (●) [Details].

• Terminal security code entry screen appears.



## Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (●).

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Owner information appears.
- Press to view saved items in order.
- To copy Owner information, select item to copy with and press [2]. Names, own number, other phone numbers, mail addresses, postal addresses, and memos can be copied.

#### **Note**

• Alternatively, send owner information to other FOMA terminals with Ir exchange. (FPP. 400)

## **Related Operations**

## Copy while creating i-mode mail or SMS

In stand-by, press (ⓐ ④ ♣ ) Message ( ) ( ) ( Details ) enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● ▶ item ▶ ●.

## Note

Name, own number, other phone numbers, mail address, postal address, and memo can be copied.

## Voice Memo (During Call)/Voice Memo (Stand-by)

# Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice in Stand-by

Record other party's voice during a call (Voice memo (during call)) or own voice in stand-by (Voice memo (stand-by)).

- Use recorded Voice memos for Hold tone or On hold tone. (PP. 69)
- Record up to three Record messages (voice calls) and Voice memos of 15 seconds each (@P. 72).
- Record up to two Record messages (video-phone) of 15 seconds each.

## Recording Other Party's Voice During a Call < Voice Memo>



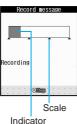
During a voice call, press • 2 or press • (1) for 1+ seconds.

- To stop recording within 15 seconds, press . (Voice is recorded until stopped.)

### Recording Own Voice in Stand-by <Stand-by Voice Memo>

7

In stand-by, press ( ( ) ( )



- Recording begins.
- Speak within approximately 10 cm away.
- Unable to record anymore appears if three Record messages (voice calls) and Voice memos and two Record messages (video-phone) are recorded. You already have 3 voice memos saved appears if less than two Record messages (video-phone) are recorded. Delete unnecessary recordings.
   (ビ音 P. 76)
- Recording automatically ends after approximately 15 seconds.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- When calendar is set in stand-by press () (□) to change month. Press □ to disable calendar, and press () (□)
- To stop recording within 15 seconds, press •. (Voice is recorded until stopped.)

#### Note

- Refer to P. 75 for details on playing/deleting Voice memos during calls and stand-by.
- Voice memos of three seconds or less may not be recorded.
- Own voice is not recorded in Voice memo (during call). However, Own voice may be recorded due to line status.
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, etc. cannot be recorded.
- Keypad sound is silenced while recording Voice memo (stand-by).

When call is received during Voice memo (stand-by)

• Recording is stopped. Press end to answer the call. (Voice is recorded until stopped.)

Keep a separate memo and note recorded memos

 Recorded content may be altered or lost by misuse, static, electronic noise, malfunction, repairs, changing FOMA terminal or other handling. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

### Calculator

### **Using as Calculator**

Add, subtract, multiply, divide, calculate percentages and sales tax.

• Refer to P. 580 for examples of various calculations.

1

### 

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Calc from Top menu.
- Or, enter numbers to calculate  $\rightarrow$  [Quick]  $\rightarrow$  *Calc* in stand-by.
- Calculator appears.

2

### Enter numbers to calculate.



Use the following to enter.

Ore to 9 s	Numbers 0 to 9
<b>X</b> ₽	Decimal point
# ===	Switch between + and -

• Press @ ar to erase all entered numbers. (Press @ ar when number is 0 to end.)

### Select calculation.



Mathematical functions are allotted to guide key.



• Also perform the following.

ê	CM Clear memory		RM Recall memory	<b>(i)</b>	% Calculate percentage		Calculate tax		M+ Add memory
---	-----------------------	--	------------------------	------------	------------------------------	--	------------------	--	---------------------



### Enter numbers to calculate and press • [=].

- Calculation results appear.
- Press ( to end Calculator. Stand-by reappears.

#### **Note**

- When in Calculator, stand-by reappears if alarm time arrives, or Schedule alarm or Remote lock all activates.
- · Results are retained if memory is used.

### **Related Operations**

### Use results in Money calculator

Press (i) for 1+ seconds during calculation.

### Change tax rate

In Calculator, press for 1+ seconds ▶ enter tax rate (01 to 99) ▶ .

#### Calculate tax

Display results and press (TAX).

• To calculate amount without tax: Display results and press (TAX) (TAX).

### Copy calculation contents

Press For 1+ seconds during calculation.

#### Note

#### **Using in Money calculator**

• The amount after the decimal point is not shown.

Example: Enter 120 + 249 and press 📵 for 1+ seconds. ¥369 appears in Money calculator.

Example: Enter 123÷4 and press (a) for 1+ seconds. **¥30** appears in Money calculator.

#### **Calculating tax**

- $\bullet$  The default setting for tax rate is 5%.
- The amount after the decimal point is rounded off.

Example: If 120 [TAX] is pressed, 5Tax appears.

### **Money Calculator**

### **Adding Monetary Amounts**

Use Money calculator to add amounts automatically. Useful when calculating trip expenses.

• Enter up to 100 entries. (Calculate totals up to 99,999,900 yen. Enter up to 999,999 yen per entry.)



In stand-by, press • B \*\* 9 \*\* and enter amount or calculation in Calculator.

### Press (i) for 1+ seconds.



- When ±1,000,000 yen or more is entered, error tone sounds, Enter 999,999 yen
  or less appears and Calculator reappears. (When Keypad sound is set to
  Silent, error tone does not sound.)
- Only number is saved.
- For 101 or more entries, error tone sounds, Unable to calculate appears and Calculator reappears. (When Keypad sound is set to Silent, error tone does not sound.)
- Alternatively, enter amount and press (in a) to start Money calculator.
- Select detail name and press .
  - Amount entered in Money calculator is added and Calculator reappears.
  - Date entered is automatically registered.
  - Repeat steps 1 to 3 to add to Money calculator.
  - The amount after the decimal point is not shown.

### **Note**

• When Calculator is started from Assistant View, Money calculator is not available.

#### Keep a separate memo and note details.

 Saved content may be altered or lost by misuse, static, electronic noise, malfunction, repairs, changing FOMA terminal or other handling. Data may be lost if FOMA terminal is left without battery or with an empty battery for longer than approximately one month. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

### **Checking Money Calculator**

I

### In stand-by, press Bright Ore.

- Alternatively, select (Tools) → Money Calc from Top menu.
- Money calculator details appear.
- Press (₤) [Switch] to switch in order of This month total → Current balance → Grand total.
- To view continuation or total, press (\*). (Total appears in bottom row.)

### Changing Name of Money Calculator Details < Change Details >

Change name of Money calculator details.

- Enter up to ten single-byte (five double-byte) characters per entry.
- **Other** cannot be changed.

7

### 

- Current name appears.
- Select detail name to undo, press , delete present detail name and press . Default detail name reappears.

2

### Select detail, press (•), enter detail name and press (•).

• Repeat the step to change other detail names.

### **Entering New Items from Money Calculator**

1

• Date entry screen appears.

- Enter date and time and press .
  - Amount input screen appears.
- Enter amount and press .

   Detail name selection screen appears.
- Select detail name and press .
  - New item is added to Money calculator.

### **Editing Money Calculator Items**

- In stand-by, press B 📆 □ 🏋, select Money calculator and press 📵 🗷 🚉 .
- Edit date and time, amount and detail name and select save method.

• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on "Entering New Items from Money Calculator" for editing procedures.

To save edited details as a new item	Press 1.4.
To overwrite edited details	Press 2
	Saved contents are changed.

### **Displaying Total <Switch Total Display>**

In stand-by, press ● 🗷 💯 💯 and 📵 🕰 and select content.

• Press **(i)** [Switch] to switch in order of *This month total* → *Current balance* → *Grand total*.

To view this month total	Press 1.4.
To show current month's balance	Press 2 de la company.
To show grand total	Press 3

### Calculating Total for Specified Period by Detail <br/> Calculating Total for Specified Period by Detail

In stand-by, press • B \*\* O \*\* and • 5 \*\* and select time span.

To display this month's	Press 1.3.
total	Current month's total appears by detail.
To specify (tally) time	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow$ enter date and time $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
span	Totals for specified time span appears by detail.
To calculate all time spans	Press 3.
	All totals appear by detail.

• To copy, press (a) [Copy] and select range.

### **Setting Budget <Set Budget>**

In stand-by, press 🌘 🖪 📆 O TE and 📵 🗗 and 1.0 [ON].

Budget input screen appears.

### Tenter budget and press .

- Enter up to 99,999,999 yen.
- If Current balance is selected in Switch total display (@P. 469), the amount shown is the current month's total subtracted from the amount entered.

### **Deleting Money Calculator**

In stand-by, press 🍑 🗷 নি, select Money calculator to delete and press 🐿 🗷 ক্রি.



- Select Money calculator item to delete only when deleting one item.
- When deleting all items, press ( [Switch] to set to Total: All.

### Select deletion method.

To delete one item	Press $\overbrace{\mathbb{I}_{-\mathbb{A}}^{\otimes}}$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To delete all items	Press $ ot\!$
To delete multiple items	Press $3 \implies \rightarrow \text{item} \Leftrightarrow \bigcirc $
To delete up to previous month	Press $\textcircled{4.5} \rightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow$ $\bigodot$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigodot$ .

### **Related Operations**

Lock Money calculator PIM <Security setting>

In stand-by, press ● 🗗 🗁 ▶ 📾 ▶ 🕊 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ • ▶ ७ 🍱.

### Talk Time/Charge

### Displaying the Call Duration/Charge

Check previous or total call duration/charge for voice calls, video-phone calls, etc.

- Voice call duration, video-phone call duration and 64K data communication duration appear for call duration.
   Duration time includes calls made and received.
- Call charge includes only calls made. When calls are made to toll-free numbers, directory assistance (104), etc., OYEN or \*\*\*\*\*\*YEN appears.
- Call charges for switching between video-phone and voice call appear as Last call cost ¥○○ and V-phone
  call cost ¥○○. Charges for calls switched multiple times appear for each voice call and video-phone call in
  total.
- Call charge is saved on the FOMA card. If a different FOMA card is inserted, the total call charges stored (those calculated since December, 2004) on the currently inserted card appears.
  - \*\*Total call charges on a FOMA card cannot be viewed on models released prior to the FOMA 901i series. (However, total charge is saved on the FOMA card.)
- Call duration/charge that appears can be reset.
- Call duration/charge is an estimate and may differ from actual amount. Call charge does not include consumption tax.

### **Displaying the Call Details**

7

### In stand-by, press ( ) 4 ½ 7 ½.



- Alternatively, select \(\infty\) (Settings) → Services → Talk time/cost from Top menu.
- Call details settings screen appears.
- While accessing the FOMA card, *Reading FOMAcard* appears.
- If the information has never been reset, --/--/--- appears for the reset date and time.
- When total call charge is reset, the charges at the time of resetting are saved for the reset date and time
- Press to end viewing.

Ohat \_ Gaing

### **Note**

- Transmission duration and charge for i-mode and packet transmissions are not counted. Refer to "FOMA
  i-mode User's Manual" for details on checking i-mode charge.
- If previous call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- If total call duration exceeds 999:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- Time used receiving or making a call is not counted.
- Last call cost is reset to XXXXXX YEN when the power is turned off.

### **Resetting Call Duration/Call Cost**

Recorded previous or total call duration/cost can be reset to 0.

1

In stand-by, press ( ) 4 % and press ( ) [Reset].



2

### Select item to reset.

To reset total call cost	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow$ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow $ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

• The reset month and day are saved in reset date.

### Setting Call Cost Limit Notice <Limit Settings>

Default setting
Disable

Set the maximum limit for call cost and display a message in stand-by or sound alarm when the limit is exceeded. Show reset notification and reset total call cost on the first of the month.

1

In stand-by, press ( ) (4 ﷺ ) Z

- Call duration/cost screen appears.
- Press (a) (1,2), enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press (a).
- Press 🕼 [Enable], enter maximum cost limit and press .
  - Enter from 10 to 100,000 yen in 10 yen increments.
  - The default setting is 3,000 yen.





### Select notification method.

To display message in stand-by	Press 22.
To display message in stand-	Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ set alarm tone/alarm volume/ring duration $\rightarrow$
by and sound alarm	[Complete].
	• Refer to P. 435 for details on setting alarm tone, alarm volume, and
	ring duration. Movies and i-motion cannot be set as alarm tone.

 When alarm is set to sound, it stops if Power saver mode is activated when Limit setting alarm is enabled.

### 5

### Select whether to notify reset.

To show reset notification	Press ♠ enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) → press ♠.  • When 12 AM of the first of the month passes or at a later date set in date settings (❤ P. 48), <b>Reset time passed</b> appears in stand-by and call cost can be reset.
To not show reset notification	Press $2  \rightarrow$ enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .

### Note

• If Limit settings message appears in stand-by, reset to delete message.

### **Related Operations**

### Delete Limit settings message in stand-by <Delete notice>

In stand-by, press ● ④ ☑ ☑ ▶ enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ▶ ●.

### Reset call charge from reset notification screen

When *Reset time passed* appears in stand-by, press ● ▶ ● enter PIN2 code (four to eight digits) ▶ ● Yes ▶ ●.

#### **Note**

#### **Delete notice**

 When Limit settings message is deleted, the message is not displayed until All calls cost is reset or Limit settings is set again.

#### **Reset notification**

Reset notification is deleted when reset is canceled or NO is selected in the confirmation screen. Reset
notification is not displayed again until midnight of the first day of the next month.

### **Text Memo**

### **Entering Memos**

Save frequently used phrases and use them when composing message, Schedule and ToDo list.

• Save up to ten text memos. Sort them into 21types.



### 



Alternatively, select (Tools) → Text memo from Top menu.

Text memo list





- To preview saved memo, select a memo and press [Display].
- When 10 memos are already saved, *Unable to save anymore* appears.
- Select *Text*, press , enter message and press .
  - Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.
- Select Ctgry, press •, select category icon and press •.
  - Select category from 21 types. Refer to P. 446 for categories.
  - Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.
- Press [ [Complete], select Yes and press .

   Text memo is saved.

### Note

#### Ir exchange

- Send and receive Text memos saved on FOMA terminal handsets using Ir exchange. (☞ P. 400) miniSD Memory Card
- Copy Text memos saved on the FOMA terminal handset to miniSD Memory Cards (P. 385) or view Text memos saved on miniSD Memory Cards. (P. 387)
- Copy Text memos saved on miniSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset (@P. 388).

Note information saved in Text memos separately or transfer/store them on a PC using miniSD Memory Cards (P. 381) or Data Link Software (P. 584).

### **Using Memos**

Use saved memos when composing message, Schedule or ToDo list.

In text memo list (☞ P. 472), select memo and press .



### Select memo function.

To use for composing a message	Press (a) (2.6).  ● Compose message screen appears. Content of memo is entered in <i>Text</i> .
To use for Schedule	Press ⋒ ③ ③ .  The schedule saving screen appears. Content of memo is entered in <i>Agenda</i> and memo type is entered in <i>Ctgry</i> .
To use for ToDo list	Press (♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣ ♣

#### Note

Press ■ to view or copy Text memo during a voice call or while composing message (press • (shutter) for 1+ seconds when in viewer position). (

### **Editing Saved Memos**

1 In text memo list (P. 472), select memo and press 22.

• Memo editing screen appears.

### Edit memo.

• Editing procedures are the same as when saving. (FP P. 472)

When finished editing, press 📵 [Complete] and select save method.

To save a new text memo	Press T.A.
To overwrite	Press 2 kg.

• When 10 memos are already saved, *Unable to save anymore* appears.

### **Deleting Memos**

In text memo list (P. 472), select memo and press 6 5 5.

Select deletion method.

To delete one memo	Press $\bigcirc \longrightarrow$ Yes $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ .
To delete all memos	Press $ ot\!$
To delete multiple memos	Press $3 \implies \rightarrow \text{memo} \Leftrightarrow \bullet$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow \bullet$ [Complete] $\rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ .

### **Related Operations**

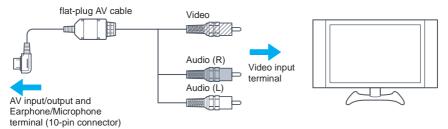
Lock Text memo PIM <Security setting>

In stand-by, press ● ② □ □ □ □ □ ► ■ ► ★ (for 1+ seconds) ► enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) ► ● ► □ □.

### **AV Output**

# Output Video-phone/My Picture/i-motion/PDF Viewer/Document Viewer to TV Screen

Show video-phone, My picture, i-motion, PDF viewer, and Document viewer images on TV screen using flat-plug AV cable (sold separately).



- After connecting flat-plug AV cable and setting Automatic output to ON, still pictures, movies, PDF viewer or
  Document viewer images automatically appear on TV screen when viewed. (For video-phone, images do not
  automatically appear.)
- Connect to other devices with video input terminals to output video.

- Still pictures and movies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages with the FOMA terminal as well as
  pre-installed data cannot be output. A message appears on TV screen explaining that data is prohibited from
  being output. Pre-installed data from the Pre-install folder is not displayed on TV screen.
- Still pictures shot during video-phone calls, still pictures cut and saved from PDF viewer, and shots of Charaden that have restrictions set after shooting cannot be output.

#### Note

- Exact screen shown on FOMA terminal appears on TV screen for video-phone. Icons at upper part and guidance at lower part of the display do not appear on TV screen for My picture, i-motion, PDF viewer, and Document viewer.
- Images set as the background pattern, notice window or pop-up window are not shown.
- Select size for TV screen from Actual size (QVGA: 240×320, 320×240) and Zoom (twice the size of QVGA: 320×240).
- When display size is set to Zoom (twice the size of QVGA: 320×240), entire image may not be viewable
  depending on the output device.
- Depending on the connected device, image may be scrambled or blurred.
- For downloaded PDF files, AV output is available for data without file restrictions but is not available for data with file restrictions.

### About the flat-plug AV cable

- Firmly connect the flat-plug AV cable. Do not pull on the cable or twist terminals when connecting.
- When disconnecting the plug, pull out slowly.
- Turn power off of device when connecting to or disconnecting from before pulling the plug.
- For AV output (PP . 474), adjust the volume of the TV or other device connected to the FOMA terminal.
   Additionally, verify that the volume of the TV is not too loud and turn off the TV or VCR before disconnecting the FOMA terminal.
- Connect the flat-plug AV cable to the video input terminals of the TV or VCR. Connecting cable to the video output or other terminals may cause a malfunction.

### Switching Image Output <AV Output>

Show FOMA terminal image on a TV screen.

• Enlarge image to show on TV screen. Change direction for My picture, Document viewer and PDF viewer data.

### Outputting video-phone image

Connect flat-plug AV cable during video-phone call.

? Press 🕼 [Start/end AV out].

- Image is output to TV screen. FOMA terminal display is blank.
- To change display size, press 2, select display size and press .

Press • 9 to return to FOMA terminal display.

### Outputting My picture/i-motion In stand-by, press ( ) ( ), select folder, press ( ), select still

- A still picture in My picture of Data box appears.
- For movies/i-motion, in stand-by, press (●) (Z.♣) (E.♣), select folder, press (●), select movie/i-motion and press (●).
- Connect flat-plug AV cable.

picture and press (•).

Press , select Switch AV output, and press .



/ Press 1.5 [AV output].

- Handset image off while AV out appears.
- To change display size, before starting image output, press (3), select display size and press (•).
- Press 💽.
  - Image is output to TV screen. FOMA terminal display is blank.
  - Show previous/next image with •.
  - During AV output, same functions as in full screen (PP. 415) are available.
  - Press any key other than  $oldsymbol{oldsymbol{\odot}}$  to return to FOMA terminal display.
    - For movies/i-motion, press @ ar or movies/i-motion.
    - FOMA terminal display appears when returned to still picture list, movie/i-motion list or movie is stopped.

### **Related Operations**

Set automatic AV output <Auto output set>

In the screen of step 3, press ②♣ ▶ ①♣ ▶ (•) [Confirm].

- To set from image list: Press 
   ▶ Switch AV output ▶ 
   1.24 1.24 ▶ (•) [Confirm].
- Outputting still picture slideshow
- - List of folders in My picture of Data box appears.
- Connect flat-plug AV cable.
- Select folder and press (Switch AV output).



Press ( [Auto output set], press ( [ON] and press ( [Confirm].

- To change display size, press ②♣, select display size and press ⑥.
- Press @ car twice and press 5 m [Slideshow].
  - Slideshow is output to TV screen. FOMA terminal display is blank.
  - FOMA terminal display returns when playback ends.

### Outputting continuous playback movie/i-motion

Connect flat-plug AV cable.



Press (Auto output set), press (ON) and press (...)

• To change display size, press 2 , select display size and press •.

Press @ cr twice and press 5 [Continuous play].

- Continuous play is output to TV screen. FOMA terminal display is blank.
- FOMA terminal display returns when playback ends.
- Outputting PDF viewer/Document viewer

In stand-by, press ( 2 %), select folder and press (...

- · File list appears.
- For PDF viewer, in stand-by, press 9 . select folder and press •.
- Onnect flat-plug AV cable.
- Select file, press and press ★② [Switch AV output].



Press 💯 [AV output] and press 💽.

- Image appears on TV screen. FOMA terminal display is blank.
- During AV output, same functions as in full screen (P. 415) are available.
- To change display size, in the screen of step 3, press ③♣, select display size and press ⑥. To set from file list, press ⋒⑤♣(2♣), select display size and press ⑥.
- ∠ Press @ ar or □ to return to FOMA terminal display.
  - Even when a message such as Document may not be fully displayed appears, AV output ends and display returns to FOMA terminal.

### **Note**

- Default melody plays for set slideshow even if downloaded melody is set for BGM.
- Images set as the background pattern, notice window or pop-up window are not shown.
- Display size of movie/i-motion continuous play and still picture slideshows can be set in slideshow settings screen and continuous play settings screen respectively.
- If a call is received or alarm activates while in AV output mode, display returns to FOMA terminal.

### **Related Operations**

### Set automatic AV output <Auto output set>

In the screen of step 3, press  $2 \frac{2}{3} \sqrt{3}$ 

- To set from the PDF viewer file list: Press 
   ▶ B 
   ↑ 1.2
   ↑ 2.3
   ▶ 6.
- To set from the Document viewer file list: Press 
   ▶ 5 ♣ 1 ♣ 1 ♣ 1 ♠ ●.

#### Note

- Set to **ON** to automatically set AV output in step 3.
- The default setting is OFF.
- After recording video (FP A455), make sure that flat-plug AV cable is connected correctly.

### Earphone/Microphone with Switch

### Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Connect flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) to earphone/ microphone terminal to call numbers saved in phonebook or answer voice/video-phone calls with switch. Also use switch as camera () (shutter). (@P. 190)

- Use earphone/microphone individually or in conjunction with the following.
  - Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch
  - Earphone/microphone with switch + Earphone plug adapter P001
  - Stereo earphone set P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001
  - Earphone terminal P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001 (Separate stereo earphones are required.)
- Use FOMA terminal keys to place video-phone calls.

### Setting Earphone/Microphone with Switch < Earphone>

Default setting

ON Memory number: 499

Set flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to make voice calls using only the switch. Save phone numbers to FOMA terminal phonebook and specify memory number.

- Save one entry from memory numbers 000 to 499 from the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- Video-phone is not available from switch.



In stand-by, press (a) 5 \$\frac{1}{2}\$ and press (1.7) [ON].



Enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 499) and press (•).



• Earphone calling is set.

### **Placing Voice Calls with Switch**



### Connect flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

• Insert plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

### In stand-by, press switch for 2+ seconds.

- The phone number for the memory number set for earphone calling is dialed automatically.
- If multiple phone numbers are saved for memory number set for earphone calling in the phonebook, the first phone number saved is called. If the slot for the first phone number is empty, then the second phone number is called. If the slot for the second phone number is empty, then the third phone number is called.

### 3

### Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

• The call is disconnected. (Alternatively, press 📼 on FOMA terminal to disconnect.)

#### Note

- When a memory number set for earphone calling is set as Secret, set Secret mode to ON before using switch to call.
- Calls may be placed accidentally if FOMA terminal is carried in bags with flat-plug earphone/microphone
  with switch connected. Disconnect when not in use.
- Calls cannot be placed while phonebook PIM is locked.
- Calls may be placed if earphone/microphone without switch is rapidly inserted and removed.
- Keypad sounds are output to flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch when connected.
- The volume for earphone is the same as set in Earpiece volume (PP. 68).
- Do not forcefully pull rubber earphone/microphone terminal cover. May damage the cover.

### **Answering Calls with Switch**



### Connect flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

• Insert plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

### 2

### Ring tone sounds when call is received.

• Ring tone sounds from the device set for Ring output (PP. 125).

### 3

### Press switch for 2+ seconds.

- Call is connected. (Alternatively, press on FOMA terminal to connect.)
- When a video-phone call is received, press switch to send image set in Substitute image (P. 90).
   Press ① [Me] on FOMA terminal to switch and send camera image. (P. 88)



### Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

• The call is disconnected. (Alternatively, press 📼 on FOMA terminal to disconnect.)

#### Note

- Call may be answered accidentally if connected while ring tone is ringing. Disconnect when not in use.
- Do not press switch repeatedly. Call may be placed and received automatically.
- Do not wrap cord for flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around FOMA terminal handset. Internal
  antenna may not work properly.
- Placing cord for flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch near internal antenna causes noise.
- Secure plug. Sound may not be audible if not completely inserted.
- A beep sounds when plug is inserted only halfway during a call. This is not a malfunction.
- A pop may sound when power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.
- Do not forcefully pull rubber earphone/microphone terminal cover. May damage the cover.

# **Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone**

Default setting OFF

Automatically connect voice/video-phone calls received while flat-plug earphone/ microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- Set time before call is automatically connected (Receive time).
- Auto answer set is not available when flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is not connected.
- 1

### In stand-by, press ( ) 5 % 7 % and press ( ) [ON].

- Alternatively, select  $\mathbf{X}_{\mathbf{I}}^{\mathbf{I}}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Phone settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Auto answer set** from Top menu.
- Receive time entry screen appears.



### Enter Receive time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press .

- Call is automatically answered after two seconds if is pressed without entering time. (The default setting is 2 seconds.)
- Calls are answered without ringing or vibrating when set to 000 seconds.

### Note

- Calls from those set for Reject calls or Accept calls are not answered automatically.
- Set different Auto answer set and Record message ring times (P. 74).
- Voice Mail Service (P. 484) and Call Forwarding Service (P. 488) may be prioritized if Auto answer set is set to same time.

To prioritize Auto answer set, set Receive time shorter than for Record message, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

• For video-phone calls, the image set in Substitute image (PP. 90) is sent to the other party. Setting can be switched to send camera image instead. (PP. 88)

### **Reset Settings**

### **Resetting Settings**

### Restore default values.

• Refer to "Menu Lists" on P. 562 to P. 568 for default settings.

### 1

### In stand-by, press $\bullet$ # $\Longrightarrow$ , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press $\bullet$ .

- Alternatively, select  $\mathcal{X}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **Reset settings** from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Reset confirmation screen appears.

### 2

### Select Yes and press .

Settings are reset.

#### Note

#### When reset

• The following are not reset (deleted/changed). Refer to respective pages to reset.

Date settings (©FP. 48)	ToDo list (喧P. 441)
Terminal security code (© P. 144)	Screen memo (CFP P. 224)
Owner information (© P. 464)	Sent/Received and Unsent mail (PP P. 283)
Accept calls list (@P. 158)	Saved signature (PP P. 291)
Reject calls list (@PP. 159)	Network service settings (P. 484 to P. 497)
Recordings such as Record message (©FP. 75)	Phonebook entries (© P. 114)
Data box data (@P. 392, P. 377 and P. 395)	miniSD Memory Card data (© P. 389)
Camera images (PPP. 392 and P. 395)	Text memo (© P. 474)
Select language (🖙 P. 142)	Money calculator (©FP. 470)
Alarm (© P. 437)	User dictionary (© P. 556)
Schedule (© P. 453)	Download dictionary (PP P. 558)

- Refer to P. 234 for details on resetting i-mode.
- Refer to P. 295 for details on resetting mail settings.

### **Delete User Data**

### **Deleting All Saved Data**

### Delete all saved data and return all functions to default settings.

- Terminal security code returns to default number 0000.
- Protected data in FOMA terminal is also deleted.
- Other functions are not available while deleting. Alarms and receiving calls/mail are also not available while deleting.
- Recharge battery before deleting data. If battery level is low, data may not be completely deleted.
- Do not turn off handset while deleting.
- Melodies in Pre-install folder in Melody of Data box and still pictures, animated GIFs, and Flash movies in Pre-install folder in My picture of Data box are not deleted. However, i-αppli, Chara-den, i-motion and Deco-mail images are deleted. (\*\*E\*P. 562 to P. 568)

Deleted data	Phonebook, still picture/movie/melody/Chara-den of Data box, i-αppli,
	mail, Message R/F, bookmarks, screen memo, download dictionary, Voice
	memo, Text memo, ToDo list, Alarm settings, Money calculator, Received
	calls, Redial, Mail history, URL history, signature, User dictionary, e-book
	bookmarks, folders*, chat mail, SMS, i-αppli mail data, mail templates,
	Record messages (including recorded voice guidance), data read by Bar
	code reader, Schedule (including saved/changed holidays), PDF files in
	My Document.
Data not deleted (returns to default	Functions that can be reset (PP. 480) and the following functions return
settings)	to default settings.
	<ul> <li>Standby display, Ring tone, Record message reply message, phrases,</li> </ul>
	memory term item, General settings, terminal security code, Date
	settings, Top menu icons, Shortcut menu, call duration, Personalize
	setting, reply message, USSD, owner information (excluding own
	number), mail member, entered URL, Last URL, international prefix,
	i-αppli history, My picture of Data box, i-motion, melodies, Chara-den,
	My document settings, mail setting, i-mode setting, i- $\alpha$ ppli setting.

<sup>\*</sup> Preset folders are not deleted but folder names return to default settings.

- - Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → Security → Delete all data → Delete user data from Top menu.
  - Security code entry screen appears.
- Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits), press •, select Yes and press •.



Select Yes and press .

• Delete and restart. OK? appears.

Select Yes and press .

• FOMA terminal restarts after deleting.

### Note

- Download preset i-αppli, Chara-den, i-motion and Deco-mail images from the iMenu site SH-MODE.
   Packet transmission charges apply when downloading. (EP P. 225, P. 229, P. 312, P. 333)
- Data saved/registered/set in FOMA card or miniSD Memory Card is not deleted.
- Other functions are not available while deleting.
- More time may be required when deleting large amounts of data collectively.
- While deleting data collectively, the display may become garbled, so do not close the FOMA terminal.

### Deleting Secret Data Collectively < Delete All Secret Data>

Delete secret phonebooks, schedule and ToDo lists collectively.

· Available regardless of Secret mode settings.

- 1 In stand-by, press 6 ﷺ 2 元.
  - Alternatively, select (Settings) → Security → Delete all data → Del secret data from Top menu.
  - Security code entry screen appears.
- 2 Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits), press •, select Yes and press •.
  - Numbers are masked with asterisks.
  - All secret data is deleted.

# **Network Services**

Network Services from the FOMA Terminal	
Using Voice Mail Service	
Using Call Waiting Service	<rall service="" waiting="">487</rall>
Using Call Forwarding Service	 Call Forwarding Service>488
Using Nuisance Call Barring Service	. <nuisance barring="" call="" service="">490</nuisance>
Sending Handset Number	< Notify Caller ID Service>491
Using Caller ID Request Service	< Caller ID Request Service > 492
Using Dual Network Service	< Dual Network Service > 492
Switching Guidance Language	<english guidance="">493</english>
Using Service Numbers	<service number="">494</service>
<ul><li>Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call</li></ul>	<arrival act="" call="">494</arrival>
Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions	<set act="" arrival="">495</set>
Setting Remote Control	<remote control="">495</remote>
Using Multi Number (Not Yet Available)	
Using Additional Services	< Additional Services (USSD)>496

# Network Services from the FOMA Terminal

Use the following network services on the FOMA terminal.

Service name	Subscription	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service*	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 484
Call Waiting Service	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 487
Call Forwarding Service*	Necessary	Free	P. 488
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Necessary	Free	P. 490
Notify Caller ID Service	Not necessary	Free	P. 491
Caller ID Request Service	Not necessary	Free	P. 492
Dual Network Service	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 492
English Guidance	Not necessary	Free	P. 493

- Deactivate does not mean that the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service subscription is canceled.
- For details on services that require registration, contact number listed in "For General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

#### Note

- Network services are operated by connecting to the network service center and are not available while handset is outside the service area.
- Add services to the menu when new network services become available from DoCoMo.
   (PP P. 496)

### **Voice Mail Service**

### **Using Voice Mail Service**

Stores messages while handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off. Reply message answers incoming voice calls

- Voice Mail Service is a paid option that requires subscription.
- Access recorded messages from anywhere in Japan.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

#### Note

- Record up to 20 messages of three minutes each.
- Messages are saved for 72 hours.
- Messages simply stating unavailability are also available. Set in Voice Mail Service settings.
   (PP P. 485)

#### Note

- Voice calls are available as normal when Voice Mail Service is set to Activate.
- Ring tone sounds for approximately 10 seconds (can be changed: 管 P. 485) when a voice call is received while Voice Mail Service is set to Activate. Answer while ringing to connect call. Calls are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center after set time. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by (管 P. 71) and Received calls (管 P. 66). However, when ringing time is set to 0 seconds, calls are not saved in Received calls.
- Forward calls manually to Voice Mail Service center by pressing (Auto forward) while receiving.
- Calls received while engaged in a call can be set to be automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center.
- Voice Mail Service is automatically deactivated if Call Forwarding Service (PP P. 488) is set to
- Voice Mail Service cannot be set from FOMA terminal when outside the service area. In such cases, access Voice Mail Services from touch-tone telephones and payphones using Network security code. Remote control settings (PP. 495) must be set in advance.
- Message requesting caller ID is played when User unset calls are received while Caller ID Request (EP P. 492) is set to Activate. Voice Mail Service is not available.
- Press ## while Reply message is playing to skip the message and switch to record voice memo.
- If Record message is also set, set ring time for Voice Mail Service shorter to prioritize Voice Mail Service.
- Transmission fees to play messages are required in addition to monthly Voice Mail Service fee.
- If video-phone call is received from a 901iS series model when Voice Mail Service is set to Activate, after the set ringing time passes, Please redial phone call appears and the call is disconnected. When video-phone call is received from a pre-901iS series model, Failed to connect appears and the call is disconnected. Answer during the set ringing time to connect call.

### **Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service**

STEP 1 Start Voice Mail Service.

STEP 2 Voice call is received.

STEP 3 Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.

STEP 4 Caller records a message.

STEP 5 Play back message.

### **Activating/Deactivating Voice Mail Service** <Activate/Deactivate>

### **Activating Voice Mail Service**

- The default setting for ringing time is 10 seconds. Ringing time can be changed when first setting Voice mail.
- In stand-by, press (•) 4 ½ (1./2 3 def).
  - Alternatively, select (Settings) → Services → Voice mail → Activate from Top menu.
  - · Activate voice mail screen appears.

### Select activation method.

To activate Voice Mail Service	Press $\underbrace{\text{7.2}} \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \underbrace{\text{0}}$ .
before activating	Press $\boxed{2}$ , enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .

- Voice Mail Service is activated and message appears.
- **Deactivating Voice Mail Service**

### In stand-by, press

(•) 4 5 1. 2 5 3 , select Yes and press (•).

- → Voice mail → Deactivate from Top menu.
- Voice Mail Service is deactivated and message appears.

#### Note

• Deactivate does not mean that the Voice Mail Service subscription itself is canceled.

### **Playing Back Messages** <Play Messages>

- In stand-by, press (•) 4 5 1. 2 2 3 , select Yes and press (•).
  - → Voice mail → Play messages from Top menu.
- Play back messages according to voice guidance.

#### Note

- When \*\* voice mail(s) is shown, press twice to play back message. If i-αppli is set as stand-by, message disappears when ( ) is pressed.
- Number that appears is the number of new messages notified by guidance when playing back. Saved messages are not included.
- This function is not available during calls.
- Pressing may not end calls after operating according to voice guidance. In such cases, press again.

### **Setting Voice Mail Service Using** Voice Guidance <Voice Mail Settings>

Set Voice Mail Service according to voice guidance.

- In stand-by, press ( ) (4 ½) (1.½) (7 ½), select Yes and press (•).
  - Alternatively, select (Settings) → Services → Voice mail → Voice mail settings from Top menu.
- Press and set according to voice guidance.

To set message stating unavailability	1./2
To confirm or set Reply message or	2 #c
announcement	
To confirm or set Caller ID guidance	3 our

#### Note

- This function is not available during calls.
- Pressing may not end calls after operating according to voice guidance. In such cases, press again.
- If animated GIF or Flash movie is set as stand-by, does not appear until animation is finished.

### Checking for New Messages <Check Messages>

Check the Voice Mail Service center for new messages.



### In stand-by, press (●)4 ﷺ (1.½ (1.½).

- Alternatively, select \( \mathbb{\ceil} \) (Settings) → Services → Voice mail → Check messages from Top menu.
- · After checking, message appears.
- If there are new messages, \*\* voice mail(s) and fa appear in stand-by.

#### Note

 This function may not recognize messages received after checking for messages.

#### Note

 Number that appears is the number of new messages notified by guidance when playing back. Saved messages are not included.

### Checking and Changing Voice Mail Service Settings <Status Request>

Check Voice Mail Service settings and change activation, deactivation and ringing time settings.

### In stand-by, press



- Alternatively, select \( \)
   (Settings) → Services
   → Voice mail →
   Status request from
   Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

### Press and select function.

To activate Voice Mail Service	Press $\overbrace{1.2}$ $\overbrace{1.2}$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To set ringing time before activating Voice Mail Service	Press $\overbrace{\text{La}}$ $\rightarrow$ enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To deactivate Voice Mail Service	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{=} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To change ringing time	Press $3 \stackrel{\circ}{=} \rightarrow \text{enter}$ ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

### Sounding Alarm when New Message is Stored <Voice Mail Alarm>

Sound ring tone when new message is received.

- Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{1}\) (Settings) → Services
   → Voice mail → Voice mail alarm from Top menu.
- · Voice mail alarm is set.

#### **Note**

Ring tone set for SMS sounds in Select mail tone.
 P. 118)

### Deleting New Message Icon < Delete Display>

Delete fa that appears when new message is received.

### In stand-by, press • 4 ﷺ, 1.28 9 ﷺ, select Yes and

- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Services →
   Voice mail → Delete display from Top menu.
- madisappears.

### Note

 If messages are still stored at Voice Mail center, even if disappears, these messages are not deleted.
 reappears when message is checked.

### Using Voice Mail Notification Function

Receive SMS (Short message) notifying missed calls received while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.

 Although the Voice mail notification function is one part of the Voice Mail Service, activate/deactivate operations must be performed separately. (Even if Voice Mail Service is deactivated, Voice mail notification is still available.)

### Activating Voice mail notification

In stand-by, press

- Alternatively, select \(\infty\) (Settings) → Services →
   Voice mail → Start notification from Top menu.
- Activate Voice mail notification screen appears.

### Select whether to notify calls with no ID or not.

To notify calls with no ID	Select $Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{0} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \textcircled{0}$ .
To not notify calls with no ID	Select $No \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

 Select Yes in the activate Voice mail notification screen. The function is activated and a message appears.

### Deactivating Voice mail notification

# In stand-by, press • 4 5 1 2 7 3, select Yes and press •.

- Alternatively, select \(\infty\) (Settings) → Services →
   Voice mail → Stop notification from Top menu.
- Voice mail notification is deactivated and message appears.

### Checking Voice mail notification settings

### In stand-by, press

- (●) (4 ﷺ (1./-@ # ਜ਼ਾ).
- Alternatively, select \(\int\) (Settings) → Services →
   Voice mail → Confirm status from Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

#### Note

- SMS is received free of charge.
- Up to five Voice mail notifications can be received from one SMS.
- Even if a call is received from a caller saved in the phonebook, the phone number is displayed instead of the name.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

### **Call Waiting Service**

# Using Call Waiting Service

A series of beeps during a call notifies you of another call. Place the current call on hold while answering the other call.

- Call Waiting Service is a paid option that requires subscription
- Call Waiting cannot be set from outside the service area
- Call Waiting is not available for the following.
  - When connected to 110, 119, 118, 117 or 104 (when connected to 117, received calls cannot be answered but are recorded in Missed call history)
  - While dialing or ringing other party
  - When the caller is connected to the Voice Mail Service center
  - When call is being forwarded to forwarding destination
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

#### Note

- Charges are incurred by caller when call is on hold.
- Beeps sound when call is received during another call, but call cannot be answered unless subscribed to Call Waiting Service.
- Message requesting caller ID is played when User unset calls are received while Caller ID Request is set to Activate.

### Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting Service <Activate/Deactivate>

### Activating Call Waiting Service

# In stand-by, press (a) (A sa) (D sa) (D sa), select Yes and press (a).

- Alternatively, select \(\infty\) (Settings) → Services
   → Call waiting → Activate from Top menu.
- Message indicating activation appears.

### Deactivating Call Waiting Service

### In stand-by, press

• 4 5 2 7 2 Red, select Yes and press •.

- Alternatively, select (Settings) → Services
   → Call waiting → Deactivate from Top menu.
- Call Waiting Service is deactivated and message appears.

#### Note

 To use Call Waiting Service, set Arrival call action (№ P. 494) to Answer. If set differently, Call Waiting Service is not available even if Call Waiting Service is set to Activate.

### Checking settings

### In stand-by, press



- Alternatively, select ↓↓
   (Settings) → Services
   → Call waiting →
   Status request from
   Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

### Placing current call on hold and answer a voice call

When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press & ...



 Original call is placed on hold and incoming call is connected.

### Press 🐠 when finished.

- · Original call is reconnected.
- Press to switch between callers.

### To end the call on hold

Press (●) 3 m/m.

#### Note

- Video-phone calls cannot be placed on hold to answer incoming voice/video-phone calls.
- Voice calls cannot be placed on hold to answer incoming video-phone calls.
- Disconnecting current call and answer a voice call
- When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press .
  - Ring tone for incoming call sounds.
- 7 Press 🐠.
  - Incoming call is connected.

### **Note**

- Video-phone calls can be answered by disconnecting a voice call but voice calls or video-phone calls cannot be answered by disconnecting a video-phone call.
- Placing current call on hold and place a separate call

Place the current call on hold and place a separate call to another party.

### Dial other party's phone number during a call.

 Alternatively, use phonebook, Received calls and Redials.

↑ Press 🌇 AF 🖫 .



- Speak to the new
  party
- Original call is automatically placed on hold.
- Press to switch between calls.
- Press when finished with the new call.
  - New call is disconnected.
  - Press to reconnect original call.

#### Note

 Video-phone calls cannot be placed on hold to place a new voice call or video-phone call.

### **Call Forwarding Service**

# Using Call Forwarding Service

Forward voice/video-phone calls received on FOMA terminal to a designated phone number (for landline phones, mobile phones or video-phones, etc.) while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.

- Call Forwarding Service is a free option that requires subscription.
- Calls are automatically forwarded while handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.
- Toll-free numbers, Quicknumber, three-digit numbers such as 110 are not available as forwarding destinations.
- Forwarding for video-phone calls are only available for video-phones that comply with 3G-324M (PP P. 78).
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

#### Note

- Set one forwarding destination.
- Voice/Video-phone calls are available as normal when Call Forwarding Service is set to Activate.
- For video-phone calls, the caller sees a message that the call is being forwarded. The forward guidance is not played.
- Ring tone sounds for approximately seven seconds (can be changed: P. 489) when Call Forwarding Service is set to *Activate*. Answer while ringing to connect call. Calls are automatically forwarded to the set destination after set time passes. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and saved in Received calls. Calls are not saved in Received calls if ringing time is set to 0
- Collect calls (receiver accepts charges) are not connected when Call Forwarding Service is set to Activate.
- Press (33) [Forward calls] while receiving to forward calls manually.
- Calls received while engaged in a call can be automatically forwarded.
- Call Forwarding is automatically deactivated if Voice Mail Service (PP P. 484) is set to Activate.
- Setting Call Forwarding Service from FOMA terminal is not available from outside the service area. In such cases, access Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone telephones and payphones using network security code. Remote control settings (EPP. 495) must be set in advance.

#### Note

 Message requesting caller ID is played when User unset calls are received while Caller ID Request (EP P. 492) is set to Activate. Call Forwarding Service is not available.

### Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

- STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.
- STEP 2 Activate Call Forwarding Service.
- STEP 3 Call is received.
- STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

# Activating/Deactivating Call Forwarding Service <Activate/Deactivate>

Activating Call Forwarding Service

- In stand-by, press
  - Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Services
     → Call forwarding → Activate from Top
    menu.
  - · Activate call forwarding screen appears.
- Press [Forwarding number] and enter the number to send to.

	Press $\bigcirc \longrightarrow$ enter phone number $\longrightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To enter from phonebook	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Press } \underline{\mathcal{Z}} \xrightarrow{\mathscr{E}} \to \text{name} \to \\ \bullet \to \bullet. \end{array}$

- Press [2] [Set ringing time], enter ringing time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press .
  - The default setting is 7 seconds.
- Press (1.28) [Activate], select Yes and press (1.29).
  - Call Forwarding Service is activated and message appears.

### **Note**

- Call costs stemming from forwarding calls from the registered area to destination is charged to the subscriber. Charges may increase if forwarding destination is set and FOMA terminal is left turned off.
- Video-phone calls can only be forwarded to 3G-324M (PP. 78) compliant devices. Check before setting.

#### Note

- Calls are automatically forwarded without sounding ring tone while handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off. Call cost for forwarding to destination is charged to the subscriber.
- Forwarding service may be canceled if requested from the destination and deemed by DoCoMo.
- Calls forwarded to PBX systems, pagers\* and faxes may confuse the caller.
- Answer while ring tone is ringing to connect call.

### Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

# In stand-by, press (a) (4 (a) (3 (a) (2 (a)), select Yes and

- Call Forwarding Service is deactivated and message appears.

#### Note

press (•).

- Deactivate does not mean that the Call Forwarding Service subscription itself is canceled.
- Forwarding calls received during calls

Forward calls received during calls (or during i-mode stand-by) to forwarding destinations.

### While the handset beeps during a call, press • 3 decision.

- Received call is forwarded to set destination.
- Forwarding calls while ring tone is sounding

While ring tone is sounding, press ● ③ ♣.

- Received call is forwarded to set destination.
- Setting Call Forwarding guidance

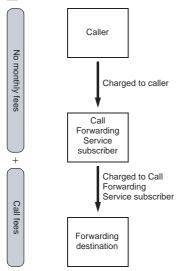
### In stand-by, press

(1./-@ (4 chi 2 / ABC 9 (5) (4 AF (4)

- Set according to voice guidance.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.
- As of January 2001, DoCoMo paging service is named "QUICKCAST".

### Call Forwarding Service fees

Call fees



※ Operations for setting destination, activating and deactivating are not charged.

### Changing Forwarding Destination < Register Number >

In stand-by, press

(a) (4 \( \hat{B} \) (3 \( \hat{B} \) (3 \( \hat{B} \)), select input method and edit phone number.



Press $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ enter phone number $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
Press $2 \frac{2}{3} \rightarrow \text{enter}$ name $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .

Select whether to activate Call Forwarding Service or not.

•	
To just change forwarding destination	Press 1.3.
To change the forwarding destination and activate the service	Press 2 2.

Forwarding number is changed.

# Using Voice Mail Service when Forwarding Destination is Busy < Forwarded Party Busy>

Subscription for Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) is required.

# In stand-by, press • 4 ﷺ 3 ﴿ 4 ﴾ , select Yes and press • .

- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Services
   → Call forwarding → Forwarded party busy
  from Top menu.
- Voice Mail Service for Forwarded party busy is activated and message appears.

#### **Note**

 When video-phone call is received, even if Voice Mail Service is set to Activate, video-phone call is not forwarded to Voice Mail Service center and busy signal sounds.

### Checking Call Forwarding Service Settings

- Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{1}\) (Settings) → Services
   → Call forwarding → Status request from
   Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

### **Nuisance Call Barring Service**

# Using Nuisance Call Barring Service

Bar prank calls, persistent sales calls, and other calls from specified individuals. Save up to 30 callers.

- Nuisance Call Barring Service is a free option that requires subscription.
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- When a video-phone call is received from a number registered to the Nuisance Call Barring Service, the call is rejected and a guidance message is played.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

### Barring Last Caller < Register Caller>

1

### In stand-by, press

- 4 5 4 5 1.2 , select Yes and press •.
- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Services
   → Bar nuisance calls → Register caller
  from Top menu.
- Phone number is registered and message appears.
- Last caller is registered for Nuisance Call Barring Service.
- If 30 phone numbers are already registered,
   Exceeds limit. Delete oldest entry and save new one? appears. Select Yes and press to overwrite.

### Deleting All Saved Numbers < Delete All Entries>



### In stand-by, press

- $\bullet$   $4\frac{5}{6}$   $4\frac{5}{6}$   $2\frac{7}{8}$ , select Yes and press  $\bullet$ ).
- Phone numbers are deleted and message appears

### Deleting last saved number

### In stand-by, press

- 4 st 4 st 3 st , select Yes and press •).
- Alternatively, select ¾ (Settings) → Services
   → Bar nuisance calls → Delete last entry
   from Top menu.
- The phone number is deleted and message appears.

#### Note

 Use Delete all entries or Delete last entry to delete phone numbers. Deleting only specified numbers cannot be performed.

### When other services are active

The following actions are taken when various services are activated.

Service	Response
Voice Mail Service	Rejection message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Rejection message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting Service	Rejection message is played.
Caller ID Request Service	Rejection message is played.

### Note

- Barring can only be registered for the caller of the last received call. Alternatively, follow guidance.
- Reject callers with no ID.
- International calls may not be rejected.
- Rejected numbers cannot be checked. Keep a separate memo and note rejected numbers.
- Calls from rejected callers are not recorded in Received calls.

### **Notify Caller ID Service**

### Sending Handset Number

Send handset number with outgoing calls. Handset number is important personal information. Use caution when setting.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- The default setting is Set to unsend.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

### Sending Handset Number <Notify Caller ID>



### In stand-by, press

● 4 th 5 th 2 th ABC.

- Alternatively, select \$\mathbb{\ceil}\$ (Settings) → Services
   → Notify caller ID → Notify caller ID from
   Top menu.
- Network security code entry screen appears.

# Enter network security code (four digits), select Yes and press (a).

Notify caller ID is set and message appears.

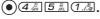
#### Note

- Caller ID Service is only available for compliant phone devices.
- Handset number is important personal information.
   Use caution when setting.
- Notify caller ID can be set also when phone number is entered or shown using phonebook, Redial or Received calls.
- If guidance requesting caller ID is played when calling, set Notify caller ID to Set to send and call again.

### Checking Settings <Status Request>



### In stand-by, press





- Alternatively, select \( \) (Settings) → Services
   → Notify caller ID →
   Status request from
   Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

When set to not send

### Caller ID Request Service

### Using Caller ID Request Service

Play Caller ID Request and automatically disconnect unknown callers. Avoid problems by knowing who's calling and allow for safer use of the mobile phone.

- Caller ID Request Service does not require subscription.
- Service is only available when callers have intentionally withheld their caller ID. (Excludes Reject payphone and Reject not support.)
- Caller is charged for duration of guidance message.
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- The default setting is Deactivate.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

#### Note

- Caller ID request message is played to unidentified callers.
- Caller ID Request Service settings are only available from handset with contracted FOMA card inserted. Remote operation is not available.
   Transmission/Calling charges are not incurred when activating/deactivating.
- User unset voice calls and video-phone calls received are not recorded in Received calls or missed calls when Caller ID Request is set to Activate.
- Caller ID Request Service is prioritized when set together with Reject by reason of non-disclosure (PP P. 160).

### When other services are active

The following actions are taken when Caller ID Request Service is set along with the various services.

Service	Response to unidentified callers
Voice Mail Service	Caller ID request message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Caller ID request message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting Service	Caller ID request message is played.
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Rejection message is played when called by a rejected nuisance number.

### Activating Caller ID Request Service <Activate>



# In stand-by, press (a) (4 55) (5 150) (7.75), select Yes and press (a).

- Alternatively, select \(\int\) (Settings) → Services →
   Caller ID request → Activate from Top menu.
- Caller ID Request Service is activated and message appears.

### Deactivating Caller ID Request Service < Deactivate >



### In stand-by, press



- Alternatively, select \(\int\_i\) (Settings) → Services →
   Caller ID request → Deactivate from Top menu.
- Caller ID Request Service is deactivated and message appears.

### Checking Settings <Status Request>



### In stand-by, press

- Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{1}\) (Settings) → Services
   → Caller ID request → Status request from
   Top menu.
- Current settings appear.

### **Dual Network Service**

### Using Dual Network Service

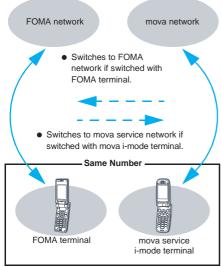
Selectively use high quality FOMA services and wide range mova i-mode services with the same phone number.

- Dual Network Service is a paid option that requires subscription.
- Switch among all networks including i-mode center and network services center with Dual Network Service.
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.

- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for
- After switching to mova service, operations are not available from a FOMA terminal.

### **Switching Dual Network Service**

Switch between networks using unavailable FOMA terminal or mova service i-mode terminal in the service area.



- ※ Certain services are restricted.

### **Switching to FOMA Network**

Switch handset to FOMA network.



### In stand-by, press (•) (4 ﷺ (\* ﷺ 1. ½) .

- → Dual network → Switching from Top menu
- Network security code entry screen appears.

### Enter network security code (four digits), select Yes and press (•).

- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- Network is switched.

#### Note

• Check signal status before switching. indicates signal strength, not availability of network service.

### **Checking Settings** <Status Request>

### In stand-by, press ● 4 ﷺ \*\* 2 Å 2 Å .

- Alternatively, select 
   (Settings) → Services → Dual network → Status request from Top menu
- · Current settings appear.

### **English Guidance**

### **Switching Guidance** Language

Change language of audio guidance for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and other services. Also set language of guidances played when called, such as Caller ID Request Service.

- Japanese and English are available.
- Set for outgoing and incoming calls respectively.
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- If caller subscribes to this service, caller's settings are prioritized.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for

### **Available guidances**

	Menu item	Details
Outgoing (Played when	Japanese	All guidances are in Japanese.
setting network services)	English	All guidances are in English.
Incoming (Played when	Japanese	All guidances are in Japanese.
called)	Japanese+ English	English follows Japanese guidance.*
	English+ Japanese	Japanese follows English guidance.*

- The default settings are Japanese.
- English only guidance cannot be set for incoming
- If between DoCoMo mobile phones, outgoing guidance settings are prioritized.

### In stand-by, press (金麗) #元 (金麗) and select Guidance type.



Alternatively, select
 ↓ (Settings) →
 Services → English guidance →
 Guidance setting from Top menu.

To set outgoing and incoming guidance	Press 1.3.
To set only outgoing guidances	Press 2
To set only incoming guidances	Press 3 der.

### Select language.

Outgoing guidance		Incoming guidance	
Japanese	Press	Japanese	Press
English	Press	Japanese+ English	Press
		English+ Japanese	Press

 The procedure for setting outgoing and incoming guidance is the same as that of outgoing guidance.

### Checking Settings < Status Request>

1

### In stand-by, press





- Alternatively, select ↓ (Settings) → Services
   → English guidance
  - → Status request
- from Top menu.

   Current settings
- Current settings appear.

### Service Number

### **Using Service Numbers**

Phone numbers for Repair inquiries and General inquiries are stored in FOMA card phonebook by default. Use menu operations to call.

• Calls cannot be made from outside the service area.

### **Repair Inquiries**

Refer to "Troubleshooting" (P. 586 to P. 588) before requesting repairs.

#### Note

- If contact numbers for General inquiries or Repair inquiries are not stored on the FOMA card, this function is not available.
- The displayed screen or number to dial may vary depending on the FOMA card.

### In stand-by, press

● Alternatively, select 汎 (Settings) → Services → Service number → ドコモ故障問い合せ (Repair inquiries) from Top menu.

### **General Inquiries**

• Refer to back of this manual for service numbers.

In stand-by, press

● Alternatively, select 【 (Settings) → Services → Service number → ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General inquiries) from Top menu.

### **Arrival Call Act**

### Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call

Select actions for calls that are received while engaged in another call.

- Set arrival actions to *Activate* to use Arrival call
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

### Available actions

Voice mail	Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center regardless of Call Waiting Service settings. Messages are stored regardless of Voice Mail Service settings.
Call forwarding	Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded regardless of Call Waiting Service settings. Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded regardless of Call Forwarding Service settings.
Call rejection	Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically rejected.

### Answer

Follows Call Waiting Service settings if activated. If deactivated, one of the following applies.

- Disconnect current voice call and answer incoming voice call.
- Manually connect incoming voice calls to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or reject.
- Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service settings are used if set to Activate.
- To use Call Waiting Service, set Arrival call action to Answer.
- No matter the Arrival call action setting, if a call is received while engaged in another call it is saved in Received calls.
- The default setting is Answer.



### 

Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{1}\) (Settings) → Services →
 Arrival call act from Top menu.

Voice mail	Press 1.3.
Call forwarding	Press 2 2.
Call rejection	Press 3 de.
Answer	Press 4 2.

#### Note

 Settings are not applied during video-phone calls, when receiving video-phone call or when receiving 64K data communications.

### **Set Arrival Act**

# Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions

Set arrival actions to *Activate* to receive another voice call according to Arrival call act (PP P. 494) during a call.

- Manually connect incoming voice calls to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- The default setting is *Deactivate*.
- To set arrival actions, subscription for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is required.

### Activating Arrival Actions <Activate>



# In stand-by, press (a) (4 5 or | B 7 or | 1.5 or | 5 or |

- Alternatively, select \(\int\_i\) (Settings) → Services
   → Set arrival act → Activate from Top menu.
- Arrival action is activated and message appears.

### Deactivating Arrival Actions <Deactivate>



# In stand-by, press (a) (4 (5) (B (7)) (2 (5)), select Yes and press (a).

- Alternatively, select \$\int\_{i}^{\color{1}}\$ (Settings) → Services
   → Set arrival act → Deactivate from Top menu.
- Arrival action is deactivated and message appears.

### Checking Settings < Status Request>



### In stand-by, press

- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Services
   → Set arrival act → Status request from Top
  menu.
- Current settings appear.

### **Remote Control**

### **Setting Remote Control**

Set Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service remotely from landline phones and NTT payphones. Remote control is also available from outside the FOMA service area.

To perform remote operations, set Remote control to *Activate* in advance.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details.

### Activating Remote Control <Activate>

Set to activate remote control.



- Alternatively, select \(\int\) (Settings) → Services →
   Remote control → Activate from Top menu.
- · Remote control is activated and message appears.

### Deactivating Remote Control <br/> <Deactivate>

Set to deactivate remote control.

- Alternatively, select (Settings) → Services → Remote control → Deactivate from Top menu.
- Remote control is deactivated and message appears.

### **Checking Settings < Status Request>**

In stand-by, press

( ) (4 টুল) [০ গুল (৪ টুল).

- Current settings appear.

### Accessing network services from other phones

Set Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service remotely from landline phones, NTT payphones, DoCoMo mobile phones and car phones using FOMA terminal phone number and four-digit network security code.

• Set Remote control to Activate in advance.

Dial the following number.

090-310-XXXX

 Replace XXXX with one of the following four digits.

Voice Mail Service

Activate 1411
Deactivate 1410
Play back new message 1417
Play back saved message, set service 1416
Set ring time 1419

Call Forwarding Service

Various service settings 1429Activate (Set forwarding destination) 1421

■ Deactivate 1420

Set following guidance.

 Follow guidance and enter FOMA terminal phone number and network security code.

### **Multi Number**

# Using Multi Number (Not Yet Available)

As of May 2005, this service is not yet available.

### **Additional Services (USSD)**

### Using Additional Services

Save up to 10 new DoCoMo network services and use.

Cannot be set from outside the service area.

### Special numbers and service codes (USSD)

- Special numbers or service codes for new services are notified when new services are available.
- Save these new service special numbers or codes in the FOMA terminal.
- When there is a service code, it is saved as a USSD on the FOMA terminal.

### Saving Services < USSD>

In stand-by, press ● ④ ♣ ♣, select ■ Additional service and press ●. Then press ① ♣.

- Alternatively, select \(\int\) (Settings) Services →
   Additional service → USSD from Top menu.
- Save USSD screen appears.
- Select a number to save, press [Edit], enter service name and press (•).
  - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
  - · Command entry screen appears.
- 3 Enter special number or service code for the service to add and press •.
  - New service is added.

# **Network Services**

### **Using Saved Services**

- In stand-by, press 4 5 , select Additional service and press . Then press 1.4.
  - Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Services
     → Additional service → USSD from Top
    menu.
  - Save USSD screen appears.
- Select service and press 
  [Call].

### **Deleting Registered Services**

- In stand-by, press ④ ♣ ♣ , select Additional service and press ●. Then press ① ♣ .
  - Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Services
     → Additional service → USSD from Top
     menu.
  - Save USSD screen appears.
- Select service and select deletion method.

	Press $\bigcirc 2^{\frac{7}{400}} \rightarrow Yes \rightarrow \bigcirc$ .
To delete all services	Press

Service is deleted.

### Changing Receive Display for Saved Service <Reply Message>

- In stand-by, press ④ ♣ , select Additional service and press ●. Then press ② ♣.
  - Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → Services
     → Additional service → Reply message
     from Top menu.
  - USSD reply message registering screen appears.

### Select Receive display and edit.

New name is added or changed.

To edit Receive display	Press (1.5) → enter receive display name → (1.5) → enter special
	number or service code  → .  • Enter up to 20 single- byte (10 double-byte) characters for receive display name.
To delete one Receive display	Press
To delete all Receive displays	Press



# **Data Communication**

Data Communication
• General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication502
Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC
• Installing the Communication Setting File
• Communication Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software
• Communication Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software
• Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX)
AT Command List

### **Data Communication**

### Data Communication Available from the FOMA Terminal

FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea™, sigmarion® and sigmarion®. Update musea™ and sigmarion® before using.
   Refer to the DoCoMo web page for details on how to update.

### Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service "mopera U"/"mopera", and sends and receives data at speeds up to 64 kbps and 384 kbps respectively. (A besteffort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions.)

For packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for when sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds.

Sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is

### 64K data communications

possible. (PP P. 428)

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet Communication Service "mopera U"/"mopera", or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point. Connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents.

### Data transfer

Transfer or exchange data using a FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or Ir exchange. Charges are not incurred. Send or receive data such as phonebook entries, sent/received messages, and bookmarks.

Use infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to another FOMA terminal or mobile phone. Use either the FOMA USB cable or infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC.

### Things to Keep in Mind

### Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees. Use the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera". Subscription to "mopera U" requires a charge. "mopera" requires no subscription and charges no monthly usage fee.

### Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For packet transmission, use a host that supports FOMA packet transmission, and for 64K data communications, use a host that supports FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.
- Connecting to PHS 64K/32K data communication data access points (such as PIAFS) is not possible.

### User authentication

Depending on the host, user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using communication software (dialup network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact them for more information.

### Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for communication using the FOMA terminal.

- PC must support FOMA USB cable.
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For packet transmission, access point must be compatible with FOMA packet transmission.
- For 64K data communications, host must support FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

#### Note

 When performing packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

### Data communication terminology

### **APN (Access Point Name)**

A character string used by Internet service providers and corporate LANs for identification purposes. The APN of the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service mopera is *mopera.ne.jp* and mopera U is *mopera.net*.

### cid (Context Identifier)

Registration number assigned when an APN is registered to the FOMA terminal. On the FOMA terminal, numbers 1 to 10 can be used.

### **DNS (Domain Name System)**

System that converts domain names (for example, *mopera.ne.jp*) into IP addresses used on the computer.

### IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

Organization that establishes the standard for infrared exchange.

### IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standard created for the purpose of transferring data between mobile phones or PDAs (Personal Digital Assistants). Exchange phone numbers and schedules between mobile phones or PDAs with IrMC-compliant infrared terminals.

### **OBEX (Object Exchange)**

One of the international data communication standards. Enables sending and receiving data between OBEX-compatible devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

### QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality. Technology for using lines as the user intends, during communication. Set communication speed for connection, etc. on the FOMA terminal. (©P P. 532, P. 539, P. 540)

### W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000) recognized as a global standard. The FOMA terminal is compliant with the W-CDMA standard.

#### W-TCP

A TCP parameter for maximizing TCP/IP transfer capabilities when using packet transmission on the FOMA network. Use this communication setting to maximize the communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

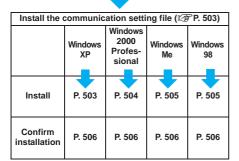
### Users with PC administrator rights

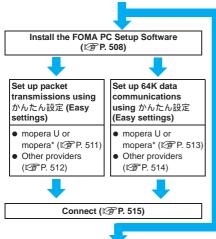
Authority that makes access to all OS systems possible, when using Windows XP and Windows 2000 Professional. On a single PC, at least one person is set as a user with PC administrator rights. Normally, users without PC administrator rights cannot install or uninstall drivers or software.

# **General Flow to Prepare** for Data Communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC (PP. 503)





Set up communication without using FOMA PC Setup Software

● Packet transmissions (愛P. 517)

• 64K data communications (© P. 517)

Connect (128 P. 527)

\* Use "mopera U" (subscription necessary) for broadband Internet and international roaming. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is "mopera", a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

#### **Communication Setting File**

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC for data communication, installation of the communication setting file from the included CD-ROM is required. (PP P. 503 to P. 506)

#### Note

- If installation fails and FOMA SH901iS is not listed in the screens of step 3 on P. 506, uninstall the communication setting file (PP P. 507) and install it again
- If, for some reason, the PC is unable to recognize the FOMA terminal, uninstall the communication setting file (127 P. 507) and install it again.
- If the wrong OS driver is installed using auto-search settings, it will not run properly. First uninstall the communication setting file, and then install it again correctly.

#### FOMA PC Setup Software/ FirstPass PC Software

Install the FOMA PC Setup Software from the included CD-ROM to PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform packet transmission and 64K data communications connecting the FOMA terminal to PC. (PP. 507)

FirstPass PC Software enables access to

FirstPass PC Software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal.

Refer to FirstPassManual on the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view

"FirstPassManual" (PDF format). Download the newest version of Adobe Reader from the Adobe Systems Incorporated web page if not installed (additional transmission fees are charged). Refer to the Adobe web page for details.

### **Confirming the Operating Environment**

Communication setting file and FOMA PC Setup Software have the following system requirements.

Item	System requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP (all Japanese versions)
Required memory*2	Windows 98, Windows Me: At least 32 MB Windows 2000 Professional: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB
Hard disk*2	At least 5 MB free space

- \*1 A USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) is required.
- \*2 Required memory and hard disk are for the FOMA PC Setup Software operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

The FirstPass PC Software has the following system requirements.

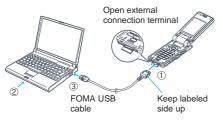
Item	System requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible
os	Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP (all Japanese versions) (not compatible with Windows 98)
Required memory*	Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB
Hard disk*	At least 10 MB free space
Browser	Internet Explorer 5.5 and above  ■ Internet Explorer 6.0 and above for Windows XP

- Required memory and hard disk space may vary depending on system configuration.
- Depending on the operating environment, use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

#### Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC with both devices turned on. If the communication setting file is already installed, 💨 appears on the FOMA terminal screen.

#### **Connecting Using the FOMA USB Cable**



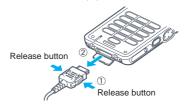
- Insert the FOMA side of the FOMA USB cable into the external connection terminal on the FOMA terminal ( ).
- Insert the included CD-ROM into your PC ( ).

# Insert the PC side of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector ( ).

 When connecting for the first time, the PC automatically recognizes that the FOMA USB cable is connected and displays a wizard screen.

#### How to remove

■ Press the release buttons on the FOMA terminal side of the FOMA USB cable (①), and pull out from the FOMA terminal (②).



2 Pull the FOMA USB cable out from the PC.

#### Note

 Connecting the FOMA terminal while charging in the desktop holder is also possible.

# Installing the Communication Setting File

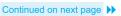
# Installing the Communication Setting File (Driver)

Installing on Windows XP
Install on the PC using a user with
administrator rights.

- Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.
  - A wizard startup screen appears.
- Select 一覧または特定の場所からインストールする(詳細)(Install from the list or a particular location (Advanced)) and click 次へ (Next).



Search location screen appears.



#### Specify the search location.



- Select 次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する (Find best driver in the next location).
- Select 次の場所を含める (Include next location) and click 参照 (Browse).
  Specify the directory below.
  <CD-ROM drive name>:¥USBDRV
- El Click 次へ (Next).
  Installation begins. When installation is completed, the finish screen of the search wizard appears.
- If 新しいハードウェアの検索ウィ ザードの完了 (Search wizard for new hardware completed) appears, click 完了 (Finish).
  - Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.

## Continue to install other drivers.

- Repeat steps 2 to 4 above, and install the following drivers in order.
  - Modem driver
     OBEX port driver
     Command port driver
  - When installation of all the drivers is completed, a pop-up screen with the message 新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができま
  - リエアがインストールとは、使用学順かとさま した (New hardware has been installed and is ready to be used) appears from the task bar indicator for several seconds.
- Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. (FP. 506)

#### Installing on Windows 2000 Professional

Install on the PC using a user with administrator rights.

# Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC and click 次へ (Next).



Search method selection screen appears.

Select デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)(Find the best driver for this device (Recommended)) and click 次へ (Next).



Search location screen appears.

# 3 Select 場所を指定 (Specify location) and click 次へ (Next).

 A screen to specify the location to copy from appears.

Specify the location to copy from and click *OK*.



- A search completed screen appears.
- Specify the directory below as the location to copy from.
  - <CD-ROM drive name>:\USBDRV
- When 参照 (Browse) is clicked, select any file from the directory above and click 開< (Open).</li>
- If ドライバファイルの検索 ハードウェアデバイスのドライバファイル検索が終了しました(Driver file search for hardware device completed) appears, click 次へ (Next).
  - Installation begins. When installation is completed, the finish screen of the search wizard appears.
  - The folder name that appears will differ depending on the PC you are using.

#### 🧲 Click 完了 (Finish).

 Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.

#### Continue to install other drivers.

- Repeat steps 2 to 6 above, and install the following drivers in order.
- Modem driver ② OBEX port driver
- 3 Command port driver
- Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. (PP P. 506)

#### Installing on Windows Me

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, select ドライバの場所を指定する (詳しい知識のある方向け)(Specify the driver location (For experienced users)) and click 次へ (Next).



Search location screen appears.

#### Specify the search location.



- Select 使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを 検索する (推奨) (Find the best driver for the devices in use (Recommended)).
- Select 検索場所の指定 (Look in) and click 参照 (Browse).

Specify the directory below. <CD-ROM drive name>:\text{\text{YUSBDRV}}

Click 次へ (Next).

A screen indicating the completion of installation preparation appears.

- If 新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの開始 (Start search wizard for new hardware) appears, click 次へ (Next).
  - Installation begins. When installation is completed, the finish screen of the search wizard appears.
  - The folder name that appears will differ depending on the PC you are using.

#### ✓ Click 完了 (Finish).

 Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.

#### Continue to install other drivers.

- Repeat steps 2 to 4 above, and install the following drivers in order.
  - Modem driver ② OBEX port driver
  - (3) Command port driver
- Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. ( P. 506)

#### Installing on Windows 98

**Connect the FOMA terminal to** your PC and click 次へ (Next).



Search method selection screen appears.

2 Select 使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)(Find the best driver for the devices in use (Recommended)) and click 次へ (Next).



Search location screen appears.

#### Specify the search location.

- Select 検索場所の指定 (Look in) and click 参照 (Browse).
  - Specify the directory below. <CD-ROM drive name>:\USBDRV
- Click 次へ (Next). Installation confirmation screen appears.
- Select 更新されたドライバ (推奨) (Updated drivers (Recommended)) and click 次へ (Next).



 A screen indicating the completion of installation preparation appears.

- If 次のデバイス用のドライバファ イルを検索します。(Search driver file for next device) appears, click 次へ (Next).
  - Installation begins.
  - The folder name that appears will differ depending on the PC you are using.

- If 新しいハードウェアデバイスに必 要なソフトウェアがインストールさ れました。(Software required for new hardware device installed.) appears, click 完了 (Finish).
  - Installation finishes, and the search window for the next driver appears.
- If 次の新しいドライバを検索して います: (Searching for next new driver:) appears, click 次へ (Next) and install other drivers.
  - Repeat steps 2 to 6 above (excluding step 4), and install the following drivers in order. 1) Modem driver 2 OBEX port driver After restarting. (3) Command port driver
  - . Confirm the types and names of the devices to be installed. (See below)

#### Confirming the Installed Communication Setting File (Driver)

If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, set up and communications are not possible. Example: Confirming Windows XP drivers.

Click A > - (Start) menu  $\rightarrow A > -$ トロールパネル (Control Panel), and then click the パフォーマンス とメンテナンス (Performance and Maintenance) icon  $\rightarrow$  システム (System) icon.

System properties screen appears.

#### Windows 2000 Professional, Me and 98

- Select スタート (Start) menu → 設定 (Settings) → コントロールパネル (Control Panel), and then double-click the システム (System) icon.
- Click the ハードウェア (Hardware) tab and then click デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager).
  - The device manager screen appears. Windows 2000 Professional
  - Click the ハードウェア (Hardware) tab and then click デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager).

The device manager screen appears.

#### Windows Me and 98

● Click the デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager) tab.

The device manager screen appears.

#### Click on each device, and confirm the name of the installed device.

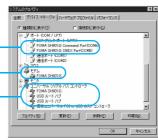
Confirm that the names of all the installed devices are displayed for  $\#- \vdash (COM \succeq LPT)$ (Ports (COM & LPT)) or ポート (COMÅ/LPT) (Ports (COM/LPT)), ユニバーサルシリアルバス コントローラ (Universal Serial Bus controllers) or USB (Universal Serial Bus)コントローラ (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers) and モデ ム (Modems).



Windows XP



Windows 2000 Professional



Windows Me and 98

If recognized, they will appear in this manner.

 The following drivers are installed when the communication setting file is installed.

Device Type	Device Name
Ports (COM/LPT)	FOMA SH901iS     Command Port     (COMx)     FOMA SH901iS OBEX     Port (COMx)
Modem	FOMA SH901iS
USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers	FOMA SH901iS

※ The "x" from "COMx" differs depending on the PC.

#### **Related Operations**

If installation fails or *FOMA SH901iS* does not appear in the screen of step 3

• Uninstall the file, and then install again.

Click ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) in the スタート (Start) menu ▶ specify <CD-ROM drive name>: ¥USBDRV¥sh901isu.EXE ▶ click OK.

# Uninstalling the Communication Setting File (Driver)

This section describes how to uninstall the communication setting file. Screens differ depending on the OS.

 When uninstalling the Communication Setting File on Windows XP or Windows 2000 Professional, be sure to use a user with administrator rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software. Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

- Insert the included CD-ROM into your PC.
- Click ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) in the スタート (Start) menu.
  - The ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) screen appears.
- Enter < CD-ROM drive name>: ¥USBDRV¥sh901isu.EXE and click OK.



When アンインストールを開始 しますか? (Start uninstalling?) appears, click はい (Yes).

• Uninstallation of the communication setting file begins.

When アンインストールが完了 しました。(Uninstallation completed.) appears, click *OK*.

Uninstallation of the communication setting file finishes.

#### Windows 98

● If 今すぐ再起動しますか? (Restart now?) appears, click はい (Yes), and restart your PC.

#### Note

 After uninstalling the communication setting file from Windows Me, depending on the PC environment, proper communication may not be possible when using data communication after immediate reinstallation of the file. In such cases, remove the FOMA USB cable once, insert it again, and then use data communication.

# Communication Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software

#### **FOMA PC Setup Software**

Various network settings are required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to send packet transmissions and 64K data communications. Use the FOMA PC Setup Software to easily make the following settings.

#### Easy settings

Follow instructions to create dial-up settings for FOMA data transmissions and to automatically configure the W-TCP setting.

#### W-TCP settings

This optimizes the network settings in the PC before using *FOMA packet transmission*. Use the *W-TCP settings* to optimize the transmission settings and fully utilize the transmission performance.



#### Setting the Host (APN)

This configures the host (APN) required for packet transmissions.

Unlike in the case of 64K data communications, the host for FOMA packet transmissions does not use a telephone number. A host name, called an APN (Access Point Name), is registered to the FOMA terminal for each host in advance. The registration number (cid) of the APN is assigned to the host telephone number field and a connection is established. The APN mopera.ne.jp is registered in the first cid (cid1) and mopera.net is registered in the third cid (cid3) at the time of purchase for connection to mopera or mopera U. Configure a separate APN to connect to another provider or a corporate LAN. cid (Context Identifier) ...

This number corresponds to the host (APN) for packet transmissions. This is configured when an APN is registered in the FOMA terminal.

#### Note

- Alternatively, configure packet transmissions and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software. (@P. 517)
- From installing the FOMA PC
  Setup Software to connecting to
  the Internet

Check the operating environment of the FOMA PC Setup Software. (© P. 502)

STEP 1 Install the FOMA PC Setup Software
If the W-TCP System Setup Software
(earlier version W-TCP Setup
Software) and FOMA Data
Transmission Setup Software (earlier
version FOMA Data Transmission
Setup Software) supplied in the
FOMA terminals listed below are
installed in the PC, uninstall these

ristalled in the FC, unlinistall triese software in advance. (FOMA N2001, FOMA N2002, FOMA P2401, FOMA P2002, FOMA F2611, FOMA T2101V)

The FOMA PC Setup Software can be used with all FOMA terminals enabled for data transmission.

STEP 2 Setup preparation

Check the following before making any settings.

- The FOMA terminal is connected to a PC (© P. 503)
- The FOMA terminal is recognized on the PC (௴P. 506)



- Packet transmissions using mopera U or mopera (PP P. 511)
- Packet transmissions using other providers (© P. 512)
- 64K data communications using mopera U or mopera(PP. 513)
- 64K data communications using other providers (©P. 514)

Refer to P. 517 and following pages for other settings.

STEP 4 Establish a connection (© P. 515) Connect to the Internet.

#### Note

 When the FOMA terminal is recognized as a number larger than COM20, host (APN) information cannot be acquired or read in the Host (APN) Setting.

## Installing the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

 To install the FOMA PC Setup or FirstPass PC Software on a PC running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to install this software.

Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

 Close all other programs before beginning installation.
 If other programs are running, click *Cancel* on the FOMA PC Setup Software screen, close all other programs after saving, then restart installation.

Example: Installing on Windows XP.

• The screens are different for other operating systems.

## Place the included CD-ROM in the PC and activate SETUP.EXE.

- Click ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) in the スタート (Start) menu.
- Specify <CD-ROM drive name>: ¥FOMA\_ PCSET¥SETUP.EXE and click OK.

#### To install FirstPass PC Software

- In Z, specify <CD-ROM drive name>: ¥First PassPCSoft¥FirstPassPCSetup.exe and click OK.
- Follow the instructions in FirstPassManual found in the FirstPassPCSoft folder of the CD-ROM to install.

#### 2 In the ようこそ (Welcome) screen, click 次へ (Next).

 Refer to P. 509 if a screen appears, stating that an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, an earlier version of FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software or the FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed.



# **3** Read the licensing agreement and click はい (Yes) to agree.



- This is the user licensing agreement for the FOMA PC Setup Software. Clicking いいえ (No) cancels the installation.
- Make sure that タスクトレイに 常駐する (Resident in task tray) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).



- After setup, the W-TCP Settings icon is added to the task tray. (@P. 516)
   Adding the icon to the task tray is recommended, as it enables optimization setting of W-TCP transmissions.
   This icon can be removed or added after installation.
- 5 Confirm the destination program folder and click 次へ (Next).



 To change the destination program folder, click 参照 (Browse), select a destination for installation and click 次へ (Next).

# Confirm the program folder name and click 次へ (Next).



- To change, enter a new folder name and click 次へ (Next).
- Click 完了 (Finish) on the セットアップの完了 (Setup complete) screen.
  - The FOMA PC Setup Software restarts.
     Now configure the settings.
     (PP P. 511)
- Notes about installing the FOMA PC Setup Software
- If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software is installed

If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software is installed, a warning screen appears. Delete the software, using アプリケーション(プログラム)の追加と削除 (Add/Remove application (programs).

 If an earlier version of FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software is installed

If an earlier version of FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software is installed, an inquiry screen appears. Click (はい (Yes) to automatically uninstall the software, and then install FOMA PC Setup Software.

#### If the FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed

If the FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed, an inquiry screen appears. Click はい(Yes) to automatically uninstall and reinstall the FOMA PC Setup Software.

### ● If キャンセル (Cancel) is clicked during installation

The setup cancellation screen appears if キャンセル (Cancel) or いいえ (No) is clicked during setup to cancel installation. To continue with the installation, click 継続 (Continue). To cancel the installation, click 中止 (Cancel).

# Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

#### Before uninstalling the software

Return the transmission settings changed for the FOMA back to their original settings before uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software.

 To uninstall the FOMA PC Setup or FirstPass PC Software on a PC running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.

Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

【 Right-click 圏 in the task tray and click 常駐させない (Do not stay resident).

Right-click



Click



End any programs that are running.



 The above screen will appear when attempting to uninstall, while FOMA PC Setup Software or W-TCP Setup Software are running. Cancel the uninstallation program and close the running programs.

#### Uninstalling the software

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

Click スタート (Start) menu → コントロールパネル (Control panel) and click the プログラム の追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs) icon.

- The add/remove programs screen appears.
   Windows 2000 Professional, Me and 98
- Click スタート (Start) menu → 設定 (Settings) → コントロールパネル (Control panel) and double-click the アプリケーションの追加と削 除 (Add/Remove programs) icon.
   The add/remove programs screen appears.

Select FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software) and click 変更と削除 (Change/ Remove).

> Select NTT DoCoMo *FOMA PC* 設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software).



#### To uninstall FirstPass PC Software

● Select *FirstPass PC* ソフト (FirstPass PC Software) and click 変更と削除 (Change/ Remove).

#### Windows Me and 98 SE

- Click 追加と削除 (Add/Remove). Windows 2000 Professional
- Click 変更と削除 (Change/Remove).
- 3 Confirm the program name to delete and click | ਹੈ। (Yes).



 Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software begins.

Click OK on the コンピュータからプログラム削除 (Remove programs from your PC) screen.

 Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software is completed.

#### **Disabling W-TCP optimization**

- The screen below appears when W-TCP is optimized.
- Click (\$\footnote{\text{th}}\$ (Yes) to uninstall.
   W-TCP optimization is disabled after the PC is restarted.



#### **Setting Up Communication**

Use this setup software to easily create a dialup setting for FOMA data communications.

 Check that the FOMA terminal is correctly connected to the PC before making any settings. (PP - 503)

1

#### Start the program.



● Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) (for Windows XP, select すべての プログラム (All Programs)) → *FOMA PC* 設定 ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software). The screen above appears when FOMA PC Setup Software starts.

#### To use the W-TCP setting icon in the task tray

 Click ₩ in the task tray to start W-TCP settings. (♥ P. 516)

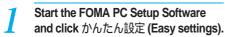


#### **Easy Settings**

#### Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions\* at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. The provider uses "mopera U" or "mopera", the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

\* High-speed Packet Transmissions: Charges are assessed according to the amount of data sent or received. Transmit data without worrying about the connection time. Receive high-speed packet transmissions at a maximum speed of 384 kbps and send at a maximum speed of 64 kbps (with the exception of some models in both cases). A best-effort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions. Using packet transmissions to browse web sites with images and sending and receiving large volumes of data, such as downloading data, may incur high transmission charges.





Select パケット通信 (Packet transmission) and click 次へ (Next).



3 Select mopera U への接続 (mopera U connection) or mopera への接続 (mopera connection) and click 次へ (Next).



• Using another provider (P. 512)

Click OK on the FOMA 端末設定 取得 (FOMA terminal setting acquisition) screen.

> The Host (APN) setting is acquired from the FOMA terminal connected to the PC.
>  Wait until acquisition is complete.

5 Enter the connection name and click 次へ (Next).



- Enter a name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.

¥/: \* ?!<>|"



### 6

#### Click 次へ (Next).

- User name and password are not required for mopera U or mopera.
- If the PC is running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



Windows XP and 2000 Professional



Windows Me and 98

#### 7 Make sure that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).



 The W-TCP setting required for packet transmissions is optimized. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized.



# Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

 The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショート カットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

# Click *OK* on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click (\$\dagger \text{\text{V}}\$ (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (©F P. 515)

# Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions\* at a maximum speed of 384 kbps.

\* High-speed packet transmissions (PP. 511)



#### Follow steps 1 to 4 on P. 511.

- Select その他 (Other) for the host in step 3.
- **2** Enter the connection name and click 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Host (APN) settings).



- Enter a name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.

  Y/1 \* 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2

¥/: \* ?!<>|"

- For 接続先 (APN) の選択 (Selected host (APN)), the default setting is mopera.ne.jp as the host (APN) for connecting to mopera.
- If 発信者番号通知を行う (Send caller ID) is checked ☑, the caller ID is sent when transmission is executed.

#### Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

 Click 詳細情報の設定 (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears.
 To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

#### Configure the host (APN).

 For the host (APN) to connect to mopera or mopera U, the default setting is mopera.ne.jp for cid1 and mopera.net for cid3\*.

■Click 追加 (Add).

The Add host (APN) screen appears.

☑Properly enter the FOMA packet transmission supported host name (APN) for the provider in the 接続先 (APN) (Host (APN)) field, and click OK.

The Host (APN) setting screen reappears.

- Enter only single-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) or period(.) for (Host (APN)).
- \* Register up to ten cids.

# 4 Click OK on the 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Host (APN) settings) screen.

- The screen in step 2 reappears. The host (APN) set in step 3 appears in 接続先 (APN) の選択 (Selected host (APN)).
- 5 Check the host name (APN) in 接続先 (APN) の選択 (Selected host (APN)) and click 次へ (Next).
- Enter the user name and password and click 次へ (Next).
  - Enter the user name and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
  - If the PC is running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



Windows XP and 2000 Professional



Windows Me and 98

#### Make sure that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is checked ☑ and click 次へ (Next).



 The W-TCP setting required for packet transmissions is optimized. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized.

# Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

• The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショート カットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

### **Olick OK** on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click (\$\frac{1}{2}\$\tau\$) (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (©F P. 515)

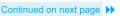
# Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for 64K data communications\*. The provider uses mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

 64K data communications: Charges are assessed according to the connection time. The stable transmission speed of 64 kbps enables more enjoyable Internet access.

### Follow steps 1 to 4 on P. 511.

 Select 64K データ通信 (64K data communications) for the connection method in step 2.



# Enter the connection name, select a modem and click 次へ (Next).



- Enter a name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.

¥/: \*?!<>|'

Make sure that FOMA SH901iS is set in モデムの選択 (Selected modem).

#### 🤰 Click 次へ (Next).

- User name and password are not required for mopera U or mopera.
- If the PC is running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



Windows XP and 2000 Professional



Windows Me and 98

# Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

 The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショート カットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

## 5 Click *OK* on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

• Sending and receiving transmissions (PP. 515)

# Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for 64K data communications\*.

\* 64K data communications: Charges are assessed according to the connection time. The stable transmission speed of 64 kbps enables more enjoyable Internet access.

#### Follow steps 1 to 4 on P. 511.

 Select 64K データ通信 (64K data communications) in step 2 and その他 (Other) in step 3.

### 2 Make the settings and click 次へ (Next).



- To connect to a provider with an ISDN synchronous 64K access point, make the following settings when creating a dial-up setting.
  - Connection name: Enter a connection name.
  - Selected modem: FOMA SH901iS
  - Phone Number: Enter the phone number provided by the provider.
- The following characters can be used.
   0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D P T W a b c d p t w
   ! @ \$ . ( ) + \* # , & and single-byte space
- If 発信者番号通知を行う (Send caller ID) is checked ☑, the caller ID is sent when transmission is executed.

#### Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

 Click 詳細情報の設定 (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

# Benter the user name and password and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter the user name and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- If the PC is running Windows XP or 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted.



Windows XP and 2000 Professional



Windows Me and 98

# Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

 The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショート カットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked ☑, a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

## Click OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

#### Executing the Configured Transmission

# Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

- Transmission starts.
- The name of the connection icon is the connection name created in the earlier setting.



The icon differs depending on the OS.

#### Establish a connection.



This is the screen in Windows XP. The screens differ for other operating systems.

- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank.
- If a user name and password are entered in step 3 on P. 514, that information is entered automatically into the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields.
- When using other providers or dial-up to connect, enter the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) and click ダイヤ ル (Dial).
- When Save user name and password field is checked √, the user name and password do not need to be entered next time.

#### Note

 When there is no connection icon on the desktop (Windows XP)

Click スタート (Start) menu  $\rightarrow$  すべてのプログラム (All programs)  $\rightarrow$  アクセサリ (Accessories)  $\rightarrow$  通信 (Communications)  $\rightarrow$  ネットワーク接続 (Network connections). (Windows 2000 Professional)

Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワークとダイヤルアッ ブ接続 (Network and dial-up connections).

(Windows Me, 98) Click スタート (Start)  $menu \rightarrow プログラム$ 

(Programs)  $\rightarrow$  アクセサリ (Accessories)  $\rightarrow$  通信 (Communications)  $\rightarrow$  ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up networks).

- A screen appears on the FOMA terminal showing the calling for packet transmission or dialing for 64K data communications.
- The transmission speed shown on the PC may differ from the actual transmission speed.

#### Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

## Double click I in the task tray and click 切断 (Disconnect).

• The connection is disconnected.

#### W-TCP Setting

#### W-TCP function

W-TCP Setup software is a TCP parameter setup tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capacity when sending and receiving packet transmissions over the FOMA network. Configure the transmission settings with this software to fully utilize the transmission performance of the FOMA terminal.

#### Enabling and disabling optimization

#### On Windows XP

On Windows XP, configuring optimization for each dial-up setting is possible.

Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click *W-TCP* 設定 (W-TCP setting).



### To use the W-TCP setting icon in the task tray

 Click in the task tray to start W-TCP settings.



#### Perform the next operation.

### When the system setting is not optimized

 The following screen appears.
 Click 最適化を行う (Optimize) and the W-TCP setting (Dial-up) screen appears.

Select the dial-up setting to optimize and click 実行 (Run). Optimization of the system setting and dial-up setting begins.

Follow the instructions on the screen to restart the PC. After the PC is restarted, optimization of the system setting is enabled.



#### When the system setting is optimized

The following screen appears.
 Make the necessary changes to the settings.
 The changes to the settings take effect after the PC is restarted.



#### **Disabling optimization**

● Click システム設定 (System settings) on the W-TCP setting (Dial-up) screen. The following screen appears. Click 最適化を解除する (Disable optimization) and follow the instructions on

Click 最週化を解除する (Disable optimization) and follow the instructions on the screen to restart the PC. After the PC is restarted, optimization is disabled.



- Windows 2000 Professional, Me and 98
- Perform the operation in step 1 of "On Windows XP".
- Perform the next operation.

  When the system setting is not

# optimized ● The following screen appears. Click 是適化を行う (Optimize) and all

The following screen appears.
Click 最適化を行う (Optimize), end all currently running programs and restart the PC to enable the optimization setting.



#### When the system setting is optimized

The following screen appears.

Click 最適化を解除する (Disable optimization) to disable the setting, for example, in order to send and receive transmissions without the use of the FOMA terminal. The restart confirmation screen appears. End all currently running programs and restart the PC to disable the optimization setting.



#### **Host (APN) Settings**

#### Reading Host (APN) information from the FOMA terminal

Click 接続先 *(APN)* 設定 (Host (APN) settings) and on the retrieve setting from FOMA terminal screen. click *OK*.



The connected FOMA terminal is accessed automatically and the registered host (APN) information is read. (This operation is not performed if the FOMA terminal is not connected.) The setting information can also be read by selecting from the toolbar ファイル (File)  $\rightarrow$  **FOMA** 端末から設定を取得 (Retrieve setting from FOMA terminal).

## Adding, editing or deleting a host (APN)

#### To add a host (APN)

Click 追加 (Add) on the host (APN) settings screen.

#### To edit a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click 編集 (Edit).

#### To delete a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click 削除 (Delete).

 The host (APN) registered to the first and third cid cannot be deleted.

#### Saving to a file

Select  $\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{I}}\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{I}}$  (File) from the toolbar to back up the host (APN) settings registered to the FOMA terminal or to save settings being edited.

#### Loading settings from a file

To load saved host (APN) settings in order to re-edit them or write them onto the FOMA terminal, select the appropriate function from the ファイル (File) menu on the toolbar.

### Writing host (APN) information onto the FOMA terminal

To write the indicated host (APN) setting to the FOMA terminal, click *FOMA* 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write settings onto FOMA terminal) on the Host (APN) setting screen.

#### Creating dial-up settings

On the host (APN) settings screen, select an added or edited host (APN) and click ダイヤルアップ作成 (New dial-up). A screen confirming the writing of the setting to the FOMA terminal appears. Click はい (Yes). After the setting is written to the host (APN), the New dial-up for packet transmission screen appears.

Enter a connection name and click アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Set account and password). (Can be left blank when using mopera U and mopera.)

Enter a user name and password (in Windows XP and 2000 Professional, specify the users to whom rights are granted) and click **OK**.

If the IP and DNS information from your provider are available, click 詳細情報の設定 (Advanced), enter the necessary information and click *OK*.

After entering the information, click *FOMA* 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write settings onto FOMA terminal), confirm that the old setting is to be overwritten and then write the settings.

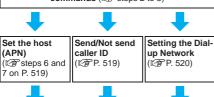
#### Communication Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software

#### Setting Communications for Packet Transmissions and 64K Data Communications

This section describes how to set up packet transmission and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software. To make the settings, communication software for entering AT commands are required. "Hyper Terminal", which is included as standard with Windows, is used here.

- The flow for setting up with use of AT commands is as follows.
- To use 64K data communications, there is no host (APN) setting.

Start up communication software that supports AT commands (© steps 2 to 5)



End communication software ( step 7 on P. 519)

#### Note

- Install communication setting file before making settings for packet transmission and 64K data communications. (PFP. 503)
- AT commands are commands for controlling the modem. The FOMA terminal is compliant with AT commands and also supports some extended commands, as well as some unique AT commands.
- Making host (APN) settings is not necessary when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service, since it is set as the default.
- Set Notify caller ID as necessary. (When using mopera U or mopera, set **Send**.) The default setting is **Not send**.
- Set other settings as necessary. Use is possible with the default settings.

#### **Setting the Host (APN)**

Set the host (APN) for using packet transmission. Register up to 10 numbers. Hosts are managed using cid numbers from 1 to 10 (PP. 519). The default setting for the APN to connect to the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service mopera and moperaU is *mopera.ne.jp* for cid1 or *mopera.net* for cid3. Set cid2 or 4 to 10 for the host number (APN). Windows Me is used as an example for how to set the host (APN) in the following explanation. Screens will differ when using a system other than Windows Me, however the method for making the settings is essentially the same.

- The registered cid is the connection number set in the dial-up connection settings.
- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for hosts (APNs) other than mopera.

- Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.
- 2 Select スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アク セサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ハイパー ターミナル (Hyper terminal).
  - Hyper terminal starts up.
  - When using Windows XP, すべてのプログラム (All Programs) appears instead of プログラム (Programs).
  - **3** Enter a name in the 名前 (Name) field and click *OK*.



 The advanced settings screen for phone number appears.

Select FOMA SH901iS from 接続方法 (Connection method), enter a temporary number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field that does not actually exist (such as 0), and click OK.



 For the area code, 03, the default setting in Windows, appears. Set any number for the area code, since it is not related to the host (APN) setting.

5 When the connection screen appears, click キャンセル (Cancel).

### 6

#### Enter host (APN) and press ...



Enter host (APN) in the format:
 AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, "PPP", "APN".
 (反管 P. 532)

<cid> : Enter 2 or 4 to 10.
"PPP" : Enter "PPP" as is.

"APN": Enter the host (APN) enclosed in " ".

- If **OK** appears, the APN is set successfully.
- To check the current host (APN) setting, enter AT+CGDCONT? and the settings appear in a list.
- When nothing appears on the screen when AT commands are entered
- ATE1 Refer to P. 535 for details on AT commands.

Confirm that OK appears and select ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit hyper terminal) from the ファイル (File) menu.



- · Hyper terminal ends.
- セッション×××を保存しますか? (Save session xxx?) appears. However there is no need to save.

### To reset APN settings using AT commands

When reset, <cid>=1 returns to "mopera.ne.jp" (default setting), <cid>=3 returns to "mopera.net" (default setting) and settings for <cid>=2 and 4 to 10 are unregistered.

AT+CGDCONT=
 AT+CGDCONT=
 To reset all the cids
 To reset only specific cids

### To confirm APN settings using AT commands

• AT+CGDCONT? Refer to P. 532 for details on AT commands.



#### **Setting Send/Not Send Caller ID**

Handset number (Caller ID) is important personal information. Use caution when setting.

Follow steps 1 to 5 on P. 518.

Set either Send caller ID (186) or Not send caller ID (184) during packet transmission.



Enter in the format: "AT\*DGPIR=<n>".
 (PF P. 532)

AT\*DGPIR=1**.**∃:

Adds "184" when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

AT\*DGPIR=2↓:

Adds "186" when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

Confirm that *OK* appears.



### Send/Not send setting on dial-up networks

Adding "186" (Send) and "184" (Not send) to the host number in dial-up networks is also possible.

Setting "186" (Send) and "184" (Not send) in both the \*DGPIR command setting and the dial-up network setting results in the following.

Dial-up network setting (when <cid>=1)</cid>	Using the *DGPIR command Send/ Not send setting	Send/Not send caller ID
*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send
	Set to unsend	Set to unsend
	Send	Send
184*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Set to unsend (dial-up network
	Set to unsend	"184" is given priority)
	Send	priority)
186*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send (dial-up network
	Set to unsend	"186" is given priority)
	Send	priority)

- Enter "AT\* DGPIR=0" to return "186" (Send)/"184" (Set to unsend) to Not set (default setting).
- Set Send for sending caller ID when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

#### **Setting the Dial-up Network**

Set the host and TCP/IP protocol. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.

#### Hosts

For packet transmissions, set the host (APN) in advance. Register numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for the host (APN) in advance, to enable using packet transmission by specifying control numbers. Host (APN) settings are the equivalent to a phonebook for packet transmissions on a PC. Compared to normal phonebook entries, they appear as follows.

In phonebook	In Packet transmission setting
Registered number (memory number)	Control numbers (cids) 1 to 10
Other party's name	Host name (host (APN))
Other party's phone number	*99*** <cid>#</cid>

For example, when the mopera host (APN), *mopera.ne.jp*, is registered for cid1, connecting to mopera is possible by specifying the host number "\*99\*\*\*1#". Other registered cids can be used similarly.

\*99\*\*\*1#: Connects to host (APN)

registered to cid1.

Alternatively, connect with just

\*99#.

\*99\*\*\*2# : Connects to host (APN) to registered to cid2.

\*99\*\*\*10# : Connects to host (APN)

registered to cid10.

As the default setting, *mopera.ne.jp* (cid1) and *mopera.net* (cid3), the hosts (APN) for connecting to mopera or mopera U, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service, are already registered for cid1 and cid3. When connecting to a corporate LAN or Internet service providers other than mopera or mopera U, register the host (APN) using cid2 and cid4 to 10. (PP . 519)

For 64K data communications, enter the access point phone number supplied by the Internet service provider or network administrator.

- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.
- Access point phone number is \*8701 for mopera U and \*9601 for mopera for 64K data communications.

### Setting a dial-up network on Windows XP

On Windows XP, use ネットワークの接続 ウィザード (Network connection wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol. Example: Using <cid>=1 to connect to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet

【 Click スタート (Start) menu → すべてのプログラム (All programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワーク接続 (Network connections).

Connection Service.

- The network connections screen appears.
- Click 新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection) in ネットワークタスク (Network tasks).
  - A new connection wizard screen appears.
- **Click** 次へ (Next).
  - The screen to select network connection type appears.
  - Select インターネットに接続する (Dial-up to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next).
    - A preparation screen appears.

- Select 接続を手動でセットアップ する (Manually set up Internet connection) and click 次へ (Next).
  - The Internet connection screen appears.
- Select ダイヤルアップモデムを 使用して接続する (Connect through phone line and modem) and click 次へ (Next).
  - A screen to specify the device appears.
- 7 Select モデム FOMA SH901iS (COMx) (Modem - FOMA SH901iS (COMx)) and click 次へ (Next).
  - A number will replace "x".
  - The connection name screen appears.
- **S** Enter a connection name in the *ISP*名 (ISP name) field and click 次へ (Next).



- The phone number to dial screen appears.
- **9** Enter the host number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field and click 次へ (Next).



- The Internet account connection information screen appears.
- To connect to <cid>=1 (mopera), enter \*99\*\*\*1#.

Met options in the screen, as shown below, leaving the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields blank, and click 次へ (Next).



- The new connection wizard completed screen appears.
- When connection to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワー ド (Password) fields.
- If 新しい接続ウィザードの完了 (New connection wizard completed) appears, click 完了 (Finish).
  - The newly created connection wizard appears.
- 12 Confirm the setting information and click キャンセル (Cancel).
  - Only confirming the settings without actually connecting.
- **13** Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.
  - Properties screen for the host appears.
- 14 Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.



- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that *FOMA SH901iS* in 接続の方法 (Connect using) shows ☑. When appears instead, change to ☑. For modems other than *FOMA SH901iS*, change ☑ to □.
- Confirm that ダイヤル情報を使う(Use dialing rules) shows □. When ☑ appears instead, change to □.

# 15 Click the ネットワーク (Networking) tab, confirm all settings, and click 設定 (Settings).



- Set 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server to call) to PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet.
- In the この接続は次の項目を使用します (Components checked are used by this connection) field, ☑ should appear only for インターネットプロトコル (*TCP/IP*) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)). Leve **Qos** バケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler) settings as is. No changes are necessary.
- The PPP setting screen appears.
- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.
- Check all options to show and click *OK*.



- Properties screen of the host reappears.
- <mark>【</mark> Click *OK* on the プロパティ (Properties) screen.
  - The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
  - Refer to P. 527 for details on connecting to dial-up network.
- Setting a Dial-up Network on Windows 2000 Professional

On Windows 2000 Professional, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network Connection Wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.

Example: Using <cid>=1 to connect to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

【 Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and Dial-up Connections).

• The network and dial-up connections screen appears.

#### 2 Double-click the 新しい接続の 作成 (Create new connection) icon.

- The location information screen appears.
- This screen appears the first time the 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection) icon is double-clicked.
   For the second and subsequent times, proceed to step 5.
- **Enter** 市外局番 (Area code) and click *OK*.
  - The phone and modem options screen appears.

#### ✓ Click OK.

• A network connection wizard screen appears.

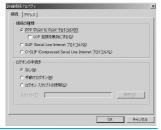
#### Click 次へ (Next).

- The screen to select network connection type appears.
- Select インターネットにダイヤ ルアップ接続する(Dial-up to the Internet) and 次へ (Next).
  - · A wizard startup screen appears.
- Select インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Connect to Internet manually or through local area network (LAN)) and click 次へ (Next).
  - The screen to select the Internet appears.
- Select 電話回線とモデムを使っ てインターネットに接続します (Connect through phone line and modem) and click 次へ (Next).
  - A screen to specify the modem appears.
- Confirm that FOMA SH901iS is set in インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use to connect to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next).
  - The Internet account connection information screen appears.
  - Set to FOMA SH901iS if not set.
  - Screen does not appear when no modems other than FOMA SH901iS are installed.

10 Enter the host number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field and click 詳細設定 (Advanced).



- Advanced connection properties screen appears.
- Confirm that 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial-up information) shows □. When ☑ appears instead, change to □.
- 11 Confirm that all settings in the 接続 (Connection) tab are set as shown in the example screen below.



12 Click the アドレス (Addresses) tab and confirm that all settings are set as shown in the example screen below.



 Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

13 Click OK.

• Internet account connection screen reappears.

【 Click 次へ (Next).

● The Internet account login info

The Internet account login information screen appears.

- 15 Leave the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields blank, and click 次へ (Next).
  - The PC configuration screen appears.
  - When connection to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワー ド (Password) fields.
- **16** Enter a connection name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field and click 次へ (Next).



- The e-mail account configuration screen appears.
- 17 Select いいえ (No) and click 次へ (Next).
  - A Internet connection wizard completed screen appears.
- 18 Be sure that 今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選んで [ 完了 ] をクリックしてください (To connect to the Internet immediately, select this box, and then click Finish) shows □ and click 完了 (Finish).



- Network and dial-up connections screen reappears.
- Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.
  - Properties screen for the host appears.

# 20 Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.



- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that *FOMA SH901iS* in 接続の方法 (Connect using) shows 例. When appears instead, change to ☑. For modems other than *FOMA SH901iS*, change ☑ to □.
- Confirm that ダイヤル情報を使う(Use dialing rules) shows □. When ☑ appears instead, change to □.
- 21 Click the ネットワーク (Networking) tab and check all the settings.



- Set 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server to call) to PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet.
- Only インターネットプロトコル *(TCP/IP)* (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) should show ☑.
- 22 Click 設定 (Settings).

   The PPP setting screen appears.
- Check all options to show 
  and click OK.



Properties screen of the host reappears.

#### Click OK.

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 527 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

### Setting a dial-up network on Windows Me

Example: Using <cid>=1 to connect to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

- 【 Click スタート (Start) menu → プロ グラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ダイヤルアッ プネットワーク (Dial-up Networks).
  - When using for the first time, ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to dial-up networks) screen appears.
  - For the second and subsequent times, this screen will not appear. Proceed to step 3.
- **つ** Click 次へ (Next).
  - The dial-up network screen appears.
- **3** Double-click 新しい接続 (New connection).
  - The connection name entry screen appears.
- 4 Enter a connection name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field and click 次へ (Next).



- A screen for specifying the host phone number appears.
- Make sure that FOMA SH901iS is specified in モデムの選択 (Selected modem). Set to FOMA SH901iS if not set.
- 5 Enter the host number and click 次へ (Next).



- Complete dial-up network connection screen appears.
- Leave the 市外局番 (Area code) field blank.

# Confirm the host name and click 完了 (Finish).



- The host is set.
- 7 Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.
  - The advanced settings screen for the host appears.
- Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.



- Confirm that 市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う (Use area code and dial-up properties) shows □. When ☑ appears instead, change to □.
- Make sure that FOMA SH901iS is set in the 接 続の方法 (Connect using) field. Set to FOMA SH901iS if not set.

#### Click the ネットワーク (Networking) tab and check all the settings.



- Set *PPP:* インターネット, *Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me* (PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me) in the ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server) field.
- Only *TCP/IP* in 使用できるネットワークプロトコル (Internet Protocol) should show ☑.
- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.
- 10 Click the セキュリティ (Security) tab, leave the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields blank, and click *OK*.



- TCP/IP is set.
- When connecting to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワー ド (Password) fields.
- Refer to P. 527 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

### Setting a dial-up network on Windows 98

Example: Using <cid>=1 to connect to mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

- 【 Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アク セサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ダイヤル アップネットワーク (Dial-up Networks).
  - When using for the first time, ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to dial-up networks) screen appears.
  - For the second and subsequent times, this screen will not appear. Proceed to step 3.
- **↑** Click 次へ (Next).
  - The dial-up network screen appears.
- 3 Double-click 新しい接続 (New connection).
  - The connection name entry screen appears.
- **E**nter a connection name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field and click 次へ (Next).



- A screen for specifying the host phone number appears.
- Make sure that FOMA SH901iS is set in モデムの選択 (Selected modem). Set to FOMA SH901iS if not set.
- Enter the host number and click 次へ (Next).



- Complete dial-up network connection screen appears.
- Leave the 市外局番 (Area code) field blank.

Confirm the host name and click 完了 (Finish).



- The host is set.
- 7 Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.
  - The general settings screen for the host appears.
- Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.



- Confirm that 市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う (Use area code and dial-up properties) shows □. When ☑ appears instead, change to □.
- Make sure that FOMA SH901iS is set in 接続 の方法 (Connect using) field. Set to FOMA SH901iS if not set.
- Click the サーバーの種類 (Server type) tab and confirm all the settings.



- Set PPP: インターネット Windows NT Server, Windows 98 (PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98) in the ダイヤルアップサー バーの種類 (Type of dial-up server) field.
- Only TCP/IP in 使用できるネットワークプロ トコル (Internet Protocol) should show **V**.
- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

Click OK.

#### Connecting to the Dial-up Network

Example: Connecting with Windows Me

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

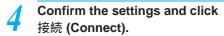
Click  $\Delta 9 - 1$  (Start) menu  $\rightarrow 20$ グラム (Programs)  $\rightarrow$  アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ダイヤルアッ プネットワーク (Dial-up Networks).

• The dial-up network screen appears.

Double-click the connection icon.



- The connection screen appears.
- Select the host icon and then select 接続 (Connect) in the 接続 (Connect) menu to display the connection screen.





- The FOMA is connected to the host.
- The phone number set in "Setting the Dial-up Network" (CFP. 520) appears in the 電話番号 (Phone number) field.
- When using mopera U and mopera, user name and password can be left blank.

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

#### Double click **I** in the task tray and click 切断 (Disconnect).

The connection is disconnected.

#### Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX)

#### Sending/Receiving FOMA Terminal Data to/from a PC

- The FOMA terminal has OBEX as a data communication protocol. OBEX data communication enables sending and receiving phonebook, owner information from the Own number screen, Schedule, ToDo list, sent mail (including SMS), received mail (including SMS), unsent mail (including SMS), text memos, melodies, My picture, i-motion, My document, and bookmark data to and from a PC. The FOMA SH901iS is also equipped with an Ir exchange function. Send and receive phonebook entries or data from received mail to/from other FOMA terminals also equipped with the Ir exchange function. Sending and receiving data (for Melody, My picture, i-motion, My document) to/from a PC using cable connection is not supported. Data transfer via miniSD Memory Card is necessary. (@P. 584)
- Use the following three types of data communication with the FOMA terminal.
  - Send data one item at a time, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write 1).
  - Send data in bulk, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write all).
  - Send data in bulk, from a FOMA terminal to a PC (Read all).
- During data communication, the handset will be outside the service area, and functions such as voice/ video-phone call, i-mode, i-mode mail, and packet transmission will not be available.
- of service area) may be displayed for a short time.

#### **Note**

- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Fully charge the FOMA terminal and check whether there is enough remaining battery power. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.



#### Note

- Check the PC power supply as well. If not turned on, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Perform data communication with the FOMA in stand-by. When movie/i-motion is set to stand-by, stop movie/i-motion playback before performing data communication.
- During communication (voice/video-phone call, and data communication) data cannot be sent or received. Also, when sending and receiving data, other data communication cannot be performed. However, receiving a call, right after data communication has begun, may be possible. In such cases, the sending or receiving of data is canceled.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent.
- During Ir exchange, melodies, still pictures, i-motion files or PDF files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or being sent outside the FOMA terminal to a PC cannot be sent. However, still pictures and movies shot with the built-in camera can be sent even if File restriction is set to Restricted.
- Mail with melody (MFi) data attached and mail with i-αppli start up designations can be sent after attached data has been deleted.
- Attached JPEG images 10,001 bytes or more or 500 KB or less are deleted and only message is sent
- Data such as phonebook data cannot be transmitted while All lock (近子 P. 149), PIM lock (近子 P. 153), or Self mode (近子 P. 152) is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock (PP P. 154) is set.
- Depending on data size, data communication may take some time. In addition, the FOMA terminal may not be able to receive data due to data size.
- When receiving phonebook data, data will be added from memory number 010 for single entry, or in accordance with memory number information when receiving all entries.
- When receiving all phonebook entries, Owner information (excluding first phone number) registered in Own number will be overwritten.
- Phonebook entries are sent in memory number order.
- When sending all phonebook entries, Owner information from own number screen is also sent.
- PDF files which exceed 1.2 MB cannot be sent.

### Devices required for data communication (OBEX)

- To perform data communication, downloading OBEX-compliant data transfer software from the Internet (127 P. 584), and installing this software to your PC is necessary. Refer to the software manual for information on operating environment and installation methods. In addition, installation of the FOMA SH901IS Communication setting file (127 P. 503 to P. 506) is necessary beforehand.
- A FOMA USB cable is required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

#### Note

 The FOMA terminal data communication (OBEX) function conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.

# Sending Single Data Item (Write 1)

- Send data from a PC to a FOMA terminal one item at a time.
- Sending one item at a time from a FOMA terminal to a PC is not possible.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

# Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Write 1).

 Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.

#### Note

- When phonebook data is sent (from a PC to the FOMA terminal handset) one entry at a time, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number from 010 to 499. If all memory numbers from 010 to 499 are already used, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number between 000 and 009.
- When phonebook data is received and 500 entries (names, phone numbers, or mail addresses) are already registered, or more than 500 entries have been registered, a message appears notifying that no further entries can be saved.

# Sending All Data (Write All/Read All)

- Send and receive all data at once, between a PC and the FOMA terminal.
- "Write all" and "Read all" operations require data transfer software and your FOMA terminal authentication password.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.
- Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Forward all).
  - Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.
  - Entering your authentication password on the PC will be necessary.
  - Enter your authentication password (four digits).
- Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and the authentication password (four digits).
- Start data transmission.

#### Note

- Performing Write all from a PC to your FOMA terminal replaces all data stored in the FOMA terminal. All data previously stored in your FOMA terminal will be deleted. This includes phonebook, Schedule, and protected mail data saved as secret data.
- If an error occurs during data transmission from a PC to the FOMA terminal, all data stored in the FOMA terminal may be deleted. Check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal battery level, and the PC power supply before performing Write all. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Depending on the connected device, the transmission status (bar display) may not appear.

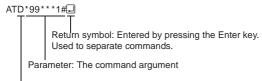
#### **AT Command List**

#### **AT Commands**

AT commands are commands used to set FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations.

#### AT command input format

AT commands must always start with "AT". Enter in single-byte alphanumeric characters. Below is an input example.



Command: The command name

Each AT command including parameter (number or symbol) following the command must be entered on a single line. A single line means the characters from the first character until the character directly before the  $\square$  is pressed. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered.

#### AT command input modes

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, set the PC to terminal mode. In terminal mode, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate the FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode
  - The FOMA terminal is in stand-by. Normally, this mode is used to operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands.
- Online data mode
  - The FOMA terminal is connected and performing data communication. When a AT command is entered in this mode, the characters are sent directly to the receiver, and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands in this mode.
- Online command mode
  - Even when the FOMA terminal is connected and performing communication, with special operations (described below), operation by AT commands is possible. When in this mode, AT commands are executed while remaining connected to the receiver, and communications can be resumed after the operation is completed.

#### Note

 Terminal mode enables a single PC to operate like a communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

#### Switching between online data mode and online command mode

Use either of the following methods to switch the FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode.

- Enter "+++" command, or enter the set code in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C\* ER signal OFF when set to "AT&D1".

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO 4".

 USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, enabling RS-232C signal line control by the communication application.

#### **AT Command List**

[M]: AT commands that can be used with the FOMA SH901iS Modem Port.

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT%V	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	_	AT%VI Ver1.00
[M]			OK
AT&C <n></n>	Sets operating condition for circuit CD (DCD) signals sent to DTE. 1	n=0: Circuit CD always ON n=1: Circuit CD signal changes according to line connection status (default setting) When "&C1" is set, the CD signal is turned "ON" directly before the CONNECT signal is sent when connection is completed. The CD signal is turned "OFF" right before "NO CARRIER" is sent when the circuit is disconnected.	AT&C1_OK
AT&D <n></n>	Sets the operation when the	n=0: Ignores status (always considers	AT&D1₽
[M]	circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE changes from "ON" to "OFF" during online data mode.*1	signal ON) n=1: Sets online command mode when signal changes from ON to OFF n=2: Disconnects line and activates offline mode when signal changes from ON to OFF (default setting)	OK .
AT&E <n></n>	Selects speed display specifications when connecting.*1	n=0: Wireless area transmission speed appears. n=1: DTE serial transmission speed	AT&E0₽ OK
[M] AT&F <n></n>	Deserte the FONAA terroinelle AT	appears. (Default setting)	AT0 [
[M]	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to their values at time of factory shipment. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected." <sup>2</sup>	Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	AT&F↓ OK
AT&S <n> [M]</n>	Controls when the signal of data set ready (DR) is set to DTE.*1	n=0: Always ON (default setting) n=1: DR signal ON when line is connected	AT&S0₽ OK
AT&W <n> [M]</n>	Stores the current settings in the FOMA terminal's memory.*2, *5	Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	AT&WI OK
AT*DANTE	Displays number of antennas on TE.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. *DANTE: <m></m>	AT*DANTE *DANTE:3
		*DANTE.<	OK
[M]		<m> O: Status where outside the service area appears on the FOMA terminal 1: Status where one antenna appears on the FOMA terminal 2: Status where two antennas appears on the FOMA terminal 3: Status where three antennas appears on the FOMA terminal</m>	
AT*DGANSM = <n></n>	Sets Accept/Reject call modes for incoming packet communications. This setting is only valid for incoming packet communications	n=0: Sets Reject call and Accept call settings to <i>OFF</i> (Default setting) n=1: Sets Reject call settings <i>ON</i> n=2: Sets Accept call settings <i>ON</i>	AT*DGANSM=0 OK AT*DGANSM? *DGANSM:0
[M]	after entering setup commands.*2		OK
AT*DGAPL= <n> [,<cid>]</cid></n>	Sets host (APN) to accept transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT".*2</cid>	Adds or deletes from Accept calls list with <n>parameter. If <cid>parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid>to list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with "+CGDCONT" to list with this command.   n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Accept calls list.)   n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Accept calls list.)</cid></cid></cid></cid></n></n></cid></n>	AT*DGAPL=0,1』 OK AT*DGAPL?』 *DGAPL:1

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Eyplanetian	Execution
		Parameter/Explanation	Example
AT*DGARL= <n> [,<cid>]</cid></n>	Sets host (APN) to reject transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT"."2</cid>	Adds or deletes from Reject calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> to list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with "+CGDCONT" to list with this command. n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Reject calls list.) n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> to Reject calls list.)</cid></cid></cid></cid></n></n></cid></n>	AT*DGARL=0,1 OK AT*DGARL? *DGARL:1
AT*DRPW	Displays the reception power sent from MTF. *2	The result from this command is in the following format. *DRPW: <m></m>	AT*DRPW↓ *DRPW:0
[M]		m: 0 to 75 (reception power)	OK
	Setting this command is valid when establishing communication. Enables adding 186 (send caller ID) and 184 (not send caller ID) to host number. Also available in dial-up network settings. <sup>2</sup>	n=0: When establishing packet transmission, connects to a host (APN) directly (default setting) n=1: When establishing packet transmission, adds 184 and connects to host (APN) n=2: When establishing packet transmission, adds 186 and connects to host (APN) When 186 (send caller ID)/184 (not send caller ID) are set by this command and in the dial-up	AT*DGPIR=0- OK AT*DGPIR?- *DGPIR:0
[M]	Switches the FOMA terminal	network settings, refer to the table on P. 520.	(Desire a
+++ [M]	mode from online data mode to online command mode. Escape guard interval is fixed at one second.*2	_	(During communication) +++ (Does not appear.) OK
AT+CACM[= <p asswd&gt;]</p 	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM.*2	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM, if the password matches.	AT+CACM="012 3"↓ OK
[M]		<pre><passwd>: SIM PIN2 % Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (" ") when entering.</passwd></pre>	
AT+CAOC[= <m ode&gt;]</m 	Inquires the current accumulated cost.*2	<mode> 0: Inquires the cost of current call.</mode>	AT+CAOC- +CAOC:"00001E"
[M]		The result from this command is in the following format. +CAOC:" <ccm>"</ccm>	OK
AT+CEER	Displays disconnection reason for preceding communication session.*2	Refer to "Reasons for Disconnection". (PP P. 538)	AT+CEER↓ +CEER:36
[M]			OK
AT+CGDCONT [M]	Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.*2	Refer to "More on AT Commands". (定 P. 538)	Refer to "More on AT Commands". (© P. 538)
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from network when establishing packet transmission.*2	Refer to "More on AT Commands". (© P. 539)	Refer to "More on AT Commands". (です P. 539)
	Sets QoS (Quality of Service)	Refer to "More on AT Commands".	Refer to "More on
[M]	requested of network during packet transmission.*2	(© P. 540)	AT Commands". (© P. 540)
AT+CGMR	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2	_	AT+CGMR 1234567890123 456
[M]			ОК

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CGREG= <n></n>	Sets whether to send network registration status. Service area information (inside/outside) is sent.*1	<n> on Does not set (default setting)  Sets When "AT+CGREG=1" is set, information is sent in the format "+CGREG<stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> Cutside area Inside area (home) Inside area (visitor)</stat></stat></n>	AT+CGREG=1 AT+CGREG? AT+CGREG? AT+CGREG:1,0  OK (Indicates outside area) +CGREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CGSN	Displays the FOMA terminal's serial number. 2	_	AT+CGSN- 123456789012345
[M]			OK
AT+CLIP= <n></n>	Shows PC calling number when receiving 64K data communications. 11	<n> <ol> <li>Does not output results (default setting)</li> <li>Outputs results         Displays +CLIP:</li> <li>"AT+CLIP?".</li> <li>NW setting to not send own number during transmissions</li> <li>NW setting to send own number during transmissions</li> <li>Unknown</li> </ol></n>	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP? +CLIP:0,1
AT+CLIR= <n></n>	Sets whether to send terminal's phone number when establishing 64K data communications. <sup>2</sup>	<n> 0: Follows the service agreement 1: Does not send 2: Sends (default setting) Displays+CLIR:<n>,<m> is displayed. <m> 0: CLIR is not running (always send) 1: CLIR is always running (never send) 2: Unknown 3: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is "Do not send") 4: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is "Send")</m></m></n></n>	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:2,3 OK
AT+CMEE= <n></n>	Sets the manner to display FOMA terminal error reports.*1	Sets whether to display errors only as "ERROR", or to display reason with text or numerical value. <n> 0: Displays "ERROR" and no result codes (default setting)  1: Displays result codes with numerical values  2: Displays result codes with text When reports are set to display by setting "n=1" or "n=2", they are displayed in the following format:  +CME ERROR:xxxx (xxxx is a numerical value or text. Refer to "Error Reports"</n>	AT+CMEE=0-OK AT+CNUM-ERROR AT+CMEE=1-OK AT+CNUM-CMEE=1-OK AT+CNUM-CMEERROR:10
AT+CNUM	Displays FOMA terminal phone number.*2	number: Phone number type : 129 or 145	AT+CNUM- +CNUM:,"+8190 12345678",145
[M]		129: Does not include + international access code 145: Includes + international access code	OK



AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution
	Overview	r drameter/Explanation	Example
AT+CR= <mode></mode>	Sets whether to display packet transmission/64K data communications before "CONNECT" result code is displayed during line connection. 1 "GPRS" is displayed for packet transmission, and "SYNC" is displayed for 64K data communications.	<mode> 0: Does not display when line is connected (default setting) 1: Displays when line is connected</mode>	AT+CR=1 OK ATD*99***1# +CR:GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC= <n></n>	Sets to use extended results code at reception. 1	n=0: Does not use extended results code (Default setting) n=1: Uses extended result codes	AT+CRC=0₽ OK
	Sets service area information on or off.*1	When "AT+CREG=1" is set, information is set in the format "+CREG: <stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat>. <n> 0: Does not send (default setting) 1: Sends <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)</stat></n></stat></stat>	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to send) AT+CREG? +CREG:1, 0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CUSD=[ <n< td=""><td>Changes setting toward net for optional services, etc. 11</td><td><n> <ol> <li>Answers without intermediate result (default setting)</li> <li>Answers with intermediate result <str></str></li></ol>   Service code ※ Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide". <dc>&gt; O: fixed value</dc></n></td><td>AT+CUSD=0,"xx xxxx" OK</td></n<>	Changes setting toward net for optional services, etc. 11	<n> <ol> <li>Answers without intermediate result (default setting)</li> <li>Answers with intermediate result <str></str></li></ol>   Service code ※ Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide". <dc>&gt; O: fixed value</dc></n>	AT+CUSD=0,"xx xxxx" OK
AT+GMI	Displays FOMA terminal maker name in single-byte alphanumeric characters.*2	_	AT+GMI↓ SHARP
[M]			OK
AT+GMM	Displays abbreviated FOMA terminal product name (FOMA SH901iS) in alphanumeric characters.*2	_	AT+GMMIFOMA SH901iS
AT+GMR	Displays FOMA terminal version. 2	_	AT+GMR- Ver1.00
[M]			ОК
AT+IFC= <n,m></n,m>	Sets local flow control format between the PC and FOMA terminal.*1	DCE by DTE ( <n>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting) DTE by DCE (<m>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting)</m></n>	AT+IFC=2,2↓ OK
AT+WS46= <n> [M]</n>	Sets wireless network used to call. Incoming signals are not affected.*1	n=22: FOMA network (fixed value)	AT+WS46=22- OK
A/ [M]	Performs the preceding executed command.	_	A/ OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
ATA [M]	Performs incoming process for packet or 64K data if entered when receiving the data.	Enter "ATA184" (arrival call action for anonymous call) or "ATA186" (arrival call action for identified call) while receiving packets.	RING ATA CONNECT
[M]	Establishes communication.*2,*3	● Packet transmission ATD*999*** <cid>#□ When "ATD*999#" is entered: Uses <cid>&gt;=1 (default setting). (When <cid> is not entered, setting becomes "<cid>&gt;=1".) When syntax starting with "ATD184*99***<cid>#" is entered: "184" is added to host (APN) defined by specified <cid>. (Alternatively, "186" can be added by same operation to turn caller ID sending to ON.) ■ 64K data communications ATD [parameter] [phone number] □ Number cannot be dialed if characters other than 0 to 9, *, #, +, A, a, B, b, C, c, D, d, hyphens (-), spaces, T, t, P, p, !, W, w, @, or commas (,) are included. Characters highlighted with be entered but are ignored during dialing.</cid></cid></cid></cid></cid></cid>	ATD*99***1#』 CONNECT
ATE <n> [M]</n>	Sets whether the FOMA terminal returns echo of AT commands sent from the PC.*1	n=0: Does not return echo n=1: Returns echo (default setting) Normally, set to n=1. If the PC has an echo function, set to n=0.	ATE1— OK
ATH	Disconnects line when entered during packet transmission or 64K data communications. 2		(During communication) +++ (Does not appear.) OK ATH NO CARRIER
ATI <n></n>	Displays the verification code.*2	n=0: NTT DoCoMo n=1: Displays abbreviated product name (FOMA SH901iS) n=2: Displays the product version in a format such as "VerX.XX"	ATION NTT DoCoMo
ATO [M]	Returns to online data mode from online command mode during communication.*2	_	ATO CONNECT
ATQ <n> [M]</n>	Sets whether to display result codes.*1	n=0: Displays result codes (default setting) n=1: Does not display result codes	ATQ0- OK
ATV <n> [M]</n>	Sets manner of displaying result codes.*1	Displays all result codes with numbers or text. n=0: Displays result codes with numbers n=1: Displays result codes with text (default setting)	ATV1II OK



AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution
ΔTX <n></n>	Sets whether to include speed	Busy tone detection:	Example ATX1
ATX <n></n>	Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. Also detects busy tone or dial tone. 1	Busy tone detection: Sends BUSY response when number dialed is busy. Dial tone detection: Determines whether FOMA terminal is connected. Speed display: Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. n=0: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, no speed display n=1: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=2: No busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display n=3: Busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=3: Busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display n=4: Busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display (default	ATX1OK
[M]		setting)	
ATZ <n></n>	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings. 2, 4	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to the values set in non-volatile memory. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected.  Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	(When online) ATZ NO CARRIER (When offline) ATZ OK
ATS0= <n></n>	Sets number of rings before	n=0: No automatic receiving (Default setting)	ATS0=0₽
[M]	FOMA terminal automatically receives.*1	n=1 to 255: Automatically receives after sets number of rings	OK
ATS2= <n></n>	Sets the escape character.	n=0 to 127 (default setting: n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is disabled.	ATS2=43  OK ATS2?  043
[M]	0	D. C	OK
ATS3= <n></n>	Sets the carriage return (CR) character.	Defines the character used to recognize the end of a AT command character string. Appended to the end of the echoed command character string and result code. The settings cannot be entered (default setting: n=13).	ATS3=13- OK ATS3?- 013
ATS4= <n></n>	Sets the line feed (LF) character.	Appended after the CR character, when result codes are displayed as text. The settings cannot be entered (default setting: n=10).	ATS4=10- OK ATS4?- 010
[M] ATS5= <n></n>	Sate the backeness (DC)	When detected while entering on AT	OK
	Sets the backspace (BS) character.	When detected while entering an AT command, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. The settings cannot be entered (default setting: n=8).	ATS5=8- OK ATS5?- 008
[M]			OK
ATS6= <n> [M]</n>	dialing.	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 2 to 10 (default setting: n=5)	ATS6=10↓ OK
ATS7= <n></n>	Sets connection timeout time (seconds). 1	n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=60) When establishing 64K data communications or packet transmission, if the FOMA terminal cannot send "CONNECT" signal to the PC within the set number of seconds after receiving ATD input from the PC, it returns a "NO CARRIER" result, and proceeds to disconnect. If the value is set between 121 and 255, the "OK" result is returned, but the timeout time is set to 120.	ATS7=60 OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
ATS8= <n> [M]</n>	Sets pause time (seconds) until comma dialing.	Sets a register but does not affect the pause time (3 seconds). n=0: Does not pause n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=3)	ATS8=3- OK
ATS10= <n> [M]</n>	Sets the delay time (seconds) for automatic disconnection (1/10 seconds).*1	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=1)	ATS10=1↓ OK
ATS30= <n></n>	Disconnects when no data is sent/received for at least this amount of time.	Only valid during 64K data communications. <n> is set in minutes. n: 0 to 255 (default setting: n=0) n=0 sets inactive timer off.</n>	ATS30=3- OK
ATS103= <n></n>	Sets delimiter used when adding an incoming sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: *Asterisk n=1: /Slash (default setting) n=2: ¥Yen mark or backslash	ATS103=0₽ OK
ATS104= <n> [M]</n>	Sets delimiter used when adding an outgoing sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: #Pound sign n=1: %Percent symbol (default setting) n=2: &Ampersand	ATS104=0- OK
AT¥S	Displays current command and S register settings. 2		AT¥S. E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=001 S103=001 S104=001
AT¥V <n></n>	Selects response code type	Only valid when the ATX <n> command</n>	OK AT¥V1₽
[M]	used during connection.	Only valid when the ATX-TS command  (F) P. 536) setting is not n=0.  The command of the command	OK

<sup>\*1</sup> Stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands.

<sup>\*2</sup> Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

<sup>\*3</sup> Perform Redial with ATDN or ATDL ...

<sup>\*4</sup> If the ATZ command is executed before the AT&W command is used, terminal settings return to last written memory, and prior changes are erased.

<sup>\*5</sup> Settings written into the FOMA terminal's memory using the AT&W command is stored as non-volatile data when power is turned off.

#### **Reasons for Disconnection**

#### Packet transmissions

Value	Reason
27	Host (APN) does not exist, or was incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	No packet transmission subscription.
36	Disconnected properly.

#### 64K data communications

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected properly.
17	Line busy.
18	Number was dialed, but no response received within specified time.
19	Dialed number is making a call.
21	Dialed number refused incoming call.
63	Network service or option is not valid.
65	Transmission capacity not provided was specified.
88	Dialed number of terminal with different terminal attribute, or call was received.

### **Error Reports**

Numerical Display	Text Display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	FOMA card not inserted.
15	SIM wrong	A non-DoCoMo SIM (IC-card equivalent to FOMA card) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Password is incorrect.
100	unknown	Unknown error occurred.

#### **More on AT Commands**

### Command name: +CGDCONT= [parameter]

#### **Overview**

Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.

Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

#### **Syntax**

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]] [

#### **Parameter description**

<cid>\* : 1 to 10

<APN>\*: Any number

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA. As the default setting, *mopera.ne.jp* (cid1) and *mopera.net* (cid3), the hosts (APN) for connecting to mopera or mopera U, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service, are already registered to cid1 and cid3. APN is a user-specified character string for each connection, indicating the host.

#### **Execution example**

#### Operation when parameter is abbreviated

AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears specified <cid> setting. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.

AT+CGDCONT=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGDCONT?

Displays current settings.

### Command name: +CGEQMIN= [parameter]

#### Overview

Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.

The command execution examples below describe the four available setting patterns. Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

#### **Syntax**

AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,, <Maximum bitrate UL> [, <Maximum bitrate DL>]]] []

#### Parameter description

<cid>\*

: 1 to 10

<Maximum bitrate UL>\* : None (initial setting) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>\* : None (initial setting) or 384 <cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the

FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA. Maximum bitrate UL and Maximum bitrate DL set the minimum uplink and downlink transmission speed (kbps) between the FOMA and base station. When set to None (default setting), all speeds are permitted. Note that when set to "64" and "384", connections established under these speeds are not permitted, so packet transmission connection may not be established.

#### **Execution examples**

Set one of the following four patterns. Setting (1) is the initial setting for all cid.

- (1) Command permitting all uplink/downlink speeds (for <cid>=2) AT+CGEQMIN=2-OK
- (2) Command permitting only uplink speeds of 64 kbps and downlink speeds of 384 kbps (for <cid>=3)

AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384

- (3) Command permitting uplink speeds of 64 kbps and all downlink speeds (for <cid>=4) AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64
- (4) Command permitting all uplink speeds and downlink speeds of 384 kbps (for <cid>=5) AT+CGEQMIN=5,..384

### Operation when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGEQMIN?

Displays current settings.

## Command name: +CGEQREQ= [parameter]

#### **Overview**

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) required of the network when establishing PPP packet transmission. The command execution example below describes the setting pattern which is also set as the

initial setting.

Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

#### **Syntax**

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

#### **Parameter description**

This setting is assigned to each cid by default value.

<cid>\*: 1 to 10

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA.

Command when requesting connection at uplink speed of 64 kbps, or downlink speed of 384 kbps

#### **Execution example**

for <cid>=3

AT+CGEQREQ=3

OK

#### Operation when parameter is abbreviated

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> settings to default settings.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGEQREQ?

Displays current settings.

#### **Result Codes**

#### Result codes

Numerical Display	Text Display	Meaning
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected to number dialed.
2	RING	Call detected.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not accepted.
6	NO DIAL TONE	No dial tone detected.
7	BUSY	Detecting busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed. The server connection timed out.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redial restricted.

#### Extended result codes

Numerical Display	Text Display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 1,200 bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 2,400 bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 4,800 bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 7,200 bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 9,600 bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 14,400 bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 19,200 bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 38,400 bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 57,600 bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 115,200 bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 230,400 bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 460,800 bps.

#### Note

- When n=1 is set for the ATV<n> command (EFP. 535), result codes are displayed as text (default setting). When set to n=0, they are displayed as numerical values.
- Transmission speed is displayed to maintain compatibility with conventional modems connected by RS-232C. However, since the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC via FOMA USB cable, the displayed speed will differ from the actual speed of connection.
- When "RESTRICTION" (Number: 100) appears, the transmission network is congested. Try connecting again later.

#### **Communication Protocol Result Codes**

Numerical Display	Text Display	Meaning
1	PPPoverUD	Connected with 64K data communications
5	PACKET	Connected with packet transmission

#### Result code display examples

When ATX0 is set

The CONNECT display appears only when connection is completed, regardless of the AT¥V<n>command (PP P. 537) setting.

Text display example: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#

CONNECT

Numerical display example: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#

1

When ATX1 is set

When ATX1 and AT¥V0 are set (initial value)

When connection is completed. CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> appears in the syntax.

Text display example: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#

**CONNECT 460800** 

Numerical display example: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#

1 21

When ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set\*

When connection is completed, the information below appears in the syntax.

CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> PACKET <host (APN)>/<maximum uplink speed (FOMA terminal to mobile network base station)>/<maximum downlink speed (mobile network base station to FOMA terminal)>

Text display example: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#

CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/64/384

(Indicates terminal connected to *mopera.ne.jp*, at maximum uplink speed of 64 kbps and maximum downlink speed of 384 kbps.)

Numerical display example: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#

1 21 5

Dial-up connection may not be processed correctly when ATX1 and AT¥V1 are simultaneously set. Using only AT¥V0 is recommended.



# **Text Input**

Entering Text	<text input="">544</text>
● 5-touch Input Method Text Entry	<5-touch>544
Editing/Saving Phrases	Save Phrases>553
<ul><li>Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text</li></ul>	
Inputting Kuten Code	<kuten code="" input="">555</kuten>
Registering Frequently Used Words	<register (user="" dictionary)="" words="">556</register>
<ul><li>Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates</li></ul>	Clear Memory Terms>557
Using a Downloaded Dictionary	< Download Dictionary > 557
<ul><li>Selecting Conversion Method </li></ul>	Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess>558
<ul><li>2-touch Input Method Text Entry</li></ul>	<2-touch>559

## **Entering Text**

Enter text for various functions on the FOMA terminal, such as phonebook and mail. Before entering text, it is recommended to learn about the text input methods.

#### Text input methods

Each key is assigned multiple characters. Press key multiple times to enter character. Refer to P. 569 and P. 570 for details on key assignment. Press end to scroll backwards through characters.
Use two-digit combinations to enter character, as when sending text to pagers*. Refer to P. 571 for details on two-digit combinations.

- Refer to P. 559 for details on selecting input method.
- Each method has input modes for entering different types of characters. (PP P. 548, P. 559)

#### Types of characters which can be entered

Double-byte	Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols, pictographs
Single-byte	Katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols

- Use double-byte alphanumeric mode to enter double-byte numbers.
- Refer to P. 569 to P. 571 for details.

#### Quick dictionary and Next word guess

,	For every one to five hiragana characters entered, conversion candidate words starting with those characters appear. Commonly used words are registered in a specialized dictionary.
Next word guess	After characters are confirmed, the next word is predicted from previous input/conversion records, automatically showing candidate characters that follow confirmed characters.

- Both conversion functions are enabled as the default setting. Functions can be disabled individually.
   (№ P. 558)
- Memorized conversion candidates can be reset. (P. 557)

#### Note

• Design of the text input screen depends on the function.

#### 5-touch

## 5-touch Input Method Text Entry

### Entering Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (Double-byte)

In kanji mode, convert hiragana to kanji, hiragana, katakana (double-byte) and symbols.



## In text input screen, press the dial key and enter hiragana.



- Enter hiragana with the dial key. Every time the key is pressed, the character changes.
- Kanji candidates appear every time a hiragana character is entered.
- To enter katakana or alphanumerics, press ⑤ (文字). Every time the key is pressed, Input mode (type of characters) changes.

# Move the cursor to the kanji candidate field with , select character and press .



• Press @cr to stop selection. The cursor returns to the text input screen.

To show the next list	Press 🗓 🗒 .
screen	<ul> <li>◆ Press ⊕ once when the cursor is on the last candidate</li> </ul>
	of the list.
To show the previous	Press 🕮 🕮 .
list screen	<ul> <li>◆ Press <sup>®</sup> once when the cursor is on the first candidate</li> </ul>
	of the list.
When the kanji is not	When the cursor is on the text input screen, use    to
available	change highlighted characters and convert again.
	<ul> <li>When the cursor is on the select candidate screen,</li> </ul>
	press $\widehat{\blacksquare}$ [ $\leftarrow$ Reselect] or $\widehat{\blacksquare}$ [ $\rightarrow$ Reselect] to change
	characters.
	■ Press ( for 1-touch conversion (PP P 547)

#### **Related Operations**

Add dakuten ( ) Enter text ▶ ※≅.

Add handakuten (°)

Enter text ▶ ★雲 ★雲.

Convert to lower case

Enter text ▶ @.

Add a space at the end of message

Press • at the end.

Undo entry <Undo>

Enter text ▶ confirm operation (delete, cut) ▶ ⋐...

Change font size <Font size>

- 2 Press T. [Large font], 2 [Default] or 3 [Small font].

Check key operation <Key list>

#### Note

#### **Dakuten and handakuten**

• For single-byte katakana, press \*\* once for dakuten ( ), twice for handakuten ( ), three times to add a prolonged sound ( – ) and four times for a line break ( ). Press five times to return to dakuten ( ). The added marks count as one character.

#### Lower case

• For alphabet, text is converted to lower case. The entry mode is also switched to lower case.

#### Entering a space

• A single-byte space will be entered regardless of input mode. Each space counts as one character.

#### **Undo operation**

- If is pressed 11+ times, Unable to undo anymore appears and the first undo screen reappears.
   When entering message, undo is available only once. (Error tone sounds when is pressed 2+ times. Error tone does not sound when Keypad sound is set to Silent.)
- After text is edited, operations in memory are cleared.

#### **Related Operations**

#### **Note**

#### Font size

- Font size setting is not available in some text input screens.
- Large font is 24 pixels, Default is 20 pixels and Small font is 12 pixels.
- In the input screen for i-mode mail address and subject, or compose chat mail/SMS screen, select from
   Large font, Default and Small font. This is also reflected in the message details screen. (Font size
   cannot be changed while entering an i-mode mail message.)
- In the input screen for saving to phonebook, select between Large font and Default.
- Font size remains set even when power is turned off.
- Also set display font width. (@P. 142)

#### 1-character conversion

After a kanji has been entered, characters will convert to that kanji next time when the first character is entered.

#### When the kanji cannot be found <On/Kun conversion>

Enter a single kanji by its on or kun reading.

1

In text input screen, enter hiragana and press 🗐 [On & Kun].



2

## Select kanji and press .

#### **Note**

- Kanji candidate display order varies depending on the dictionary memory function.
- There are 6,355 kanji available from JIS level-1/level-2 kanji sets.
- Complex kanji are changed in part or excluded.

## Quickly specifying character string <1-touch conversion>

Use 1-touch conversion to convert kanji using all the hiragana combinations assigned to each key. The same key does not need to be pressed multiple times for the hiragana.

#### Example: When entering おはよう

## I

## In text input screen, press 1.4 6 5 8 7 1.2.



- 1-touch conversion works best with nouns.
- In 1-touch conversion, the cursor turns blue.
- Press (a) or (a) in 1-touch conversion status (blue cursor) to the pre-converted change the characters to convert. Further conversion is 1-touch conversion.
- The character strings used most frequently appear first in the list.
- When candidates appear, press @aar to return to the pre-converted hiragana. If
   is pressed, normal conversion candidates appear.
- For characters with dakuten/handakuten marks, press the key for the unmarked character once, then enter the dakuten/handakuten mark.
   (Example: for べんきょう, enter (多数) (全球) (全球) (全球) (全球) (金数)
- Reading is not automatically entered if 1-touch conversion is used to enter name when adding to phonebook.

## 2

## Press 🖜



3

## Select candidate and press .

#### Predictive headword conversion

In 1-touch conversion, words that start with the characters assigned to the pressed key (words starting with  $\delta$ , V,  $\delta$ ,  $\lambda$  when  $\delta$  is entered) appear according to the time of day.

- Displayed words are already registered.
- Displayed words are grouped into the following times: 5:00 to 10:59, 11:00 to 16:59, 17:00 to 22:59, and 23:00 to 4:59.

### 1-touch single-character memory

lf the first character for a character string previously used in 1-touch conversion is entered (example: あ when あたあさわ was converted into お父さん), the previously converted word (お父さん) appears.

### **Switching Input Modes in 5-touch Input**

Switch input modes to enter various types of text.

#### Input mode

- Kanji/hiragana
- Double-byte alphanumeric characters
- Kuten code

- Double-byte katakana
- Single-byte alphanumeric characters
- Single-byte katakana
- Single-byte numbers

### In text input screen, press 🖲 (文字).



- Press 
   ⊕ to cycle through
   ¬ (double-byte katakana) → ¬ (single-byte katakana) → △ (double-byte alphanumeric) → △ (single-byte alphanumeric) → 1 (single-byte numbers) → □ (kuten code) → □ (kanji/hiragana).
- After pressing , pressing will switch the input modes in the same way. Press to switch in the reverse order.

#### Note

When Pict/Sym appears on text input screen, press (☐) [Pict/Sym] to switch to pictograph or symbol mode.
 (№ P. 552)

#### **Canceling text input**

Press @ to cancel text input and return to previous screen. If text is already entered, press @ to delete all text (PP. 549), and press @ again.
 If cursor is in middle of text, press @ for 1+ seconds twice.

### **Editing Text**

### Adding characters

### Move cursor to location to add characters and input text.

Example: When entering 最 in front of 接近



## **Deleting text**

## Move cursor to the left of the character to delete and press @c.R.

- The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.
- When the cursor is on a character, the character at the location is deleted.

#### Example: When deleting ごろ



- Press @cm for 1+ seconds to delete multiple characters according to the location of the cursor.
  - When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters on and after the cursor are deleted.
  - If there are characters only before the cursor, characters before the cursor are deleted.

#### Changing characters

#### Delete and re-enter characters.

#### Example: When changing ごろ to 近く



### **Entering Katakana (Single-byte)**

- Enter single-byte alphanumerics and single-byte katakana in viewer position when viewing sites and Internet web pages. Refer to Related Operations for "Entering text in viewer position" on P. 215 for details.
- Press  $\Theta$  (文字) multiple times and  $\mathcal{F}$  appears.
- Press the dial key to enter single-byte katakana. When entering text for i-mode mail message, press ( ) to confirm.
  - Enter next character, or press ( ) or ( ) to confirm.
  - To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press to move the cursor or, after entering a character, press that same key for 1+ seconds. (Example: To enter 71, press  $4 \rightarrow 9 \rightarrow 4$  or  $4 \rightarrow 4$  (for 1+ seconds)  $\rightarrow \boxed{1.3}$ )

### **Related Operations**

Convert hiragana to katakana (double- and single-byte) <Kana/Alphanumerics> Enter hiragana ▶ 🍙 [kanaABC123] ▶ Double-byte katakana/single-byte katakana ▶ 💿.

#### **Entering Alphanumeric Characters**

 Enter single-byte alphanumerics and single-byte katakana in viewer position when viewing sites and Internet web pages. Refer to Related Operations for "Entering text in viewer position" on P. 215 for details.

### Entering alphabet

## 1

### 

- Enter double-byte alphanumerics when △ is showing and single-byte alphanumerics when △ is showing.







Upper case

Lower case

## 2

## Press the dial key to enter alphabet.



- Enter next character, or press or to confirm.
- When entering text for i-mode mail, press 
   o to confirm.
- To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press → to move the cursor or, after entering a character, press that same key for 1+ seconds.
   (Example: To enter AB or ab, press ②♣) → ②♣ ②♣ or ②♣ → ②♣ (for 1+ seconds) → ②♣)
- If an English word is entered in kanji mode (example: はうす), single-byte English (example: House, house, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.
- If hiragana is entered in kanji mode (example: ひとみ), single-byte English (example: hitomi, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.

## Entering numbers



### Press 🖲 (文字) multiple times and 1 appears.



### Press the dial key to enter numbers.



- Confirms automatically.
- In double-byte alphanumeric mode (upper/lower case), press key multiple times for double-byte number.

Example: For  $1 \rightarrow \text{Press}$  1.4 five times.

For  $2 \rightarrow$  Press 2 = seven times (upper case)/press 2 = four times (lower case).

 Alternatively in kanji mode, enter hiragana and select numbers from conversion candidates.

## **Related Operations**

Convert hiragana to alphabet/numbers < Kana/alphanumeric conversion> Enter hiragana ▶ ⓐ [kanaABC123] ▶ alphabet/number ▶ ④.

#### **Note**

• Conversion candidates appear for the number or alphabet allotted to the key. Example: Enter あした (①過国副団副(通副) and press (kanaABC123]. アシタ (double-byte katakana), 7汐 (single-byte katakana), 1334 (single-byte numbers),

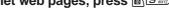
. EG (double-byte upper case alphabet), .EG (single-byte upper case alphabet), . eg (double-byte lower case alphabet), .eg (single-byte lower case alphabet) appears.

### **Using Bar Code to Enter Characters**

Enter text read from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) in text input fields while connected to i-mode. (@ "Entering text and selecting items in sites/web pages" on P. 213)



In text input fields on sites and Internet web pages, press (a) 9 miles.



Show bar code in the center of the display and press (•).

Refer to P. 195 for Bar code reader usage.

#### **Using Preset Phrases < Insert Phrase>**

Use preset phrases (PP. 575), original phrases (PP. 553) and enter mail addresses easily.

### In text input screen, press 6 5 %.



- Alternatively, press @ for 1+ seconds in the text input screen to display Insert
- To show all phrases, press (a) [Switch]. Phrase selection screen appears.

Insert phrase

Select type of phrase and press (●).

Phrase selection screen appears.

Select phrase, press (•), confirm phrase and press (•).



### Inputting mail address easily

Mail addresses use single-byte characters.

In text input screen, press of for 1+ seconds, select preset phrase and press (•).



## **Entering Symbols <Symbol Input>**

## In text input screen, press (a) [Pict/Sym] (a) [Symbol].



To show the next list	Press 🖦 🗓 .
screen	<ul> <li>Press  once when the cursor is on the last symbol of</li> </ul>
	the list.
To show the previous	Press ଔଷ୍ଟି.
list screen	Press and once when the cursor is on the first symbol of

## Select symbol and press .

Enter consecutively.

To switch between single- and double-byte symbols	Press   .
To return to the previous input mode	Press @ cur.

#### Note

- Refer to "Symbol/Special Character List" on P. 572 for details on symbols and special characters.
- The ten symbols used most recently appear on the first line.
- Use the same operation for 2-touch input.

### **Entering Pictographs < Pictograph Input>**

## In text input screen, press (a) [Pict/Sym].



To show the next list screen	Press ⊕.  Press once when the cursor is on the last pictograph of the list.
To show the previous list screen	Press ၍.  ● Press ၍ once when the cursor is on the first pictograph of the list.

## Select pictograph and press (•).

• Enter consecutively.

To switch between Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2	Press  .
To return to the previous input mode	Press @ CLR.

#### **Note**

- Convert keywords (reading) to pictographs. Refer to "Pictograph List" on P. 573 and P. 574.
- The ten pictographs used most recently appear on the first line.
- Use the same operation for 2-touch input.

### **Entering Emoticons < Emoticon>**

Emoticon table (P. 574)

1

## In text input screen, press (a) (4 ).



To show the next list	Press 🗒 🗒 .
screen	<ul> <li>Press ⊕ once when the cursor is on the last line of the</li> </ul>
	list.
To show the previous	Press 🕮 🗓 .
list screen	<ul> <li>Press <sup>®</sup> once when the cursor is on the first line of the</li> </ul>
	list.

2

## Select emoticon and press .

• Alternatively, enter two-digit code.

#### Note

• Enter かお in hiragana and press ( ) to see emoticons in the kanji candidates list.

#### **Save Phrases**

## **Editing/Saving Phrases**

Register frequently used original phrases and edit preset phrases.

- Refer to P. 575 for preset phrases.
- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters for each phrase.
- Phrases can be reset to default settings.

1

### In stand-by, press ( ) 3 \$\overline{\mathbb{E}} \overline{\mathbb{E}} \overline{\mathbb{

- Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → General settings → Edit phrase from Top menu.
- Original phrase list appears.
- To edit saved phrases, select 7. [Greetings] to 5. [Internet].

## 2

## Select number to register to and press 📵 [Edit].

• Edit phrase screen appears.

3

## Enter phrase and press .

### Resetting to default phrases <Reset>

Reset phrases to their default settings.

The following reset commands are available.

Reset one	Resets one phrase at a time.		
Reset folder	Resets all phrases in one category.		
Reset all	Resets all phrases.		

#### **Related Operations**

#### Reset one/folder <Reset one/Reset folder>

- 1 In stand-by, press 3 ♣ 6 ♣ ▶ category ▶ ▶ phrase ▶ ඬ.
  - Submenu does not appear for folder not edited.
- 2 Press 1.3 [Reset one].
  - To reset all phrases in a folder: Press 22.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ ●.
  - To not reset: Select No ▶ .

#### Reset all phrases <Reset all>

- 1 In stand-by, press 3 ♣ 6 ♣ ▶ ♠.
- 2 Select Yes ▶ .
  - To not reset: Select No ▶ (●).

#### **Copy Characters**

## **Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text**

#### Copy/cut a character string and paste it to a different location.

- Paste text onto the same screen or another text input screen. (Cannot paste to a screen in which streen is not displayed.)
- Cut text is deleted from its original location.
- Cut/Copy up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters at once.
- Only one character string can be copied/cut at a time. Copying/cutting again will replace the old text with the new text.

### **Copying/Cutting Text**

In text input screen, move cursor to the first character to copy or cut.

Select copy or cut.

Press ★★ for 1+ seconds.		
● From the menu, press ⓐ Ղὧ and ⑥ [Start].		
Press ## for 1+ seconds.		
● From the menu, press 🔊 🗷 and 🂽 [Start].		

Move cursor to the last character and press .

- Selected text to copy will be highlighted. (The highlighted text is copied or cut.)
- Press 🕞 for 1+ seconds to select all characters after character selected in step 1.
- Press ) for 1+ seconds to select all characters before character selected in step 1.

### **Copying the Contents of Mail**

**Example: When copying message text** 

## Open received mail and press 6 5 m.

- For sent mail, press a in sent messages screen.
- Copy selection screen appears.

## Select item to copy.

Address	Press T.A.		
	The address is copied and operation ends.		
Subject	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de		
Message	Press 3.		

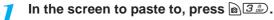
Copy screen appears.

Move the cursor to the first character to copy and press 

[Start].

Move the cursor to the last character to copy and press ● [Copy].

### **Pasting Text**



Paste text screen appears.

Move cursor to the paste location and press .

· Character string in memory is inserted.

#### **Note**

- In fields that accept only single-byte characters such as the *Reading* field in the phonebook, only single-byte characters are pasted. Depending on the location, only the allowed number of characters are pasted.
- Text stays in memory until new text is copied/cut or power is turned off.
- Press @ cer to return to the previous screen in step 1 of "Pasting Text".

#### **Kuten Code Input**

## **Inputting Kuten Code**

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a specific character.
   Refer to "JIS Kuten Code List" on P. 576 to P. 579 for details on kuten codes and the corresponding characters.
- In text input screen, press ۖ (文字) multiple times and ☑ appears.

## Enter four-digit kuten code.

- After the fourth digit is entered, the character appears.
- Before the fourth digit is entered, press @aa to clear the numbers when the wrong kuten code is entered. Re-enter correct code.

## **Registering Frequently Used Words**

Register up to 100 frequently used words with a short keyword (up to eight double-byte hiragana) for easy retrieval. When a keyword is entered, the registered word appears in the kanji candidate list and can be easily entered.

• The same keyword can be registered up to five times.

### **Registering a New Word**

In stand-by, press ( ) 3 EF (4 GH).

- Alternatively, select  $\prod_{i=1}^{n}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **General settings**  $\rightarrow$  **User dictionary** from Top menu.
- User dictionary list appears.
- Press (i) [Switch] to switch between word and keyword lists.

Select Save new and press (●).

- User dictionary entry screen appears.

Enter word and press (●).

- Enter up to 15 double-byte characters.
- Line breaks cannot be entered.

Enter keyword and press (●).

• Enter up to eight hiragana.

### **Editing Registered Words**

In stand-by, press ( ) 3 \$\frac{1}{64}\$, select word and press ( ).

- User dictionary editing screen appears.

Edit word and press (•).

Edit keyword, press • and select save method.

• To not edit, press (•) and select save method.

To save a new word	Press 1./a.
	New word cannot be registered if the same keyword is registered five
	times.
To overwrite	Press 2 de la companya del companya del companya de la companya de

## **Deleting Registered Words**



In stand-by, press (•) 3 \$\overline{a}\$, select word and press (a) 1.2.

- Delete confirmation screen appears.

Select Yes and press .

Word is deleted

## **Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates**

All conversion candidates memorized through functions such as Quick dictionary and Next word quess can be reset.

• Pictograph and symbol conversion candidates are also reset.



In stand-by, press  $\bullet$   $3 \div 9 \div$ , enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press  $\bullet$ .



- Alternatively, select \(\frac{1}{4}\) (Settings) → General settings → Clear memory terms from Top menu.
- Numbers are masked with asterisks.

## 2

## Select Yes and press .

Conversion candidates are reset.

#### **Download Dictionary**

Default setting

No dictionary registered

## **Using a Downloaded Dictionary**

Save up to five dictionaries for Japanese conversion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages on the FOMA terminal. Use two of these dictionaries for kanji conversion. When dictionaries for such as technical terms are downloaded, the terms in the dictionaries appear as the conversion candidates.

- User dictionary can be replaced with Downloaded dictionary.
- Refer to P. 229 for details on downloading dictionaries.

### **Setting/Clearing a Dictionary**



## In stand-by, press ( ) 3 th left | 5 th le

- Alternatively, select  $\mathcal{X}$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  *General settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Dwnld dictionary* from Top menu.
- Registered dictionaries appear. Dictionaries currently in use appear with 3.

## 2

## Select dictionary and set or clear.

To set/clear a dictionary	Press ♠ ☑.  If two dictionaries are already set, 2 dictionaries can be saved appears. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again.  If a set dictionary is selected, it is cleared.
To change the title of a dictionary	Press $\widehat{\underline{\mathbb{A}}}$ $\xrightarrow{\mathfrak{F}}$ $\rightarrow$ edit title $\rightarrow$ $\widehat{\bullet}$ .
To check Dictionary Information	Press (♣ ♣ ♣ .  Dictionary information (name, author, version, download date, etc.) appears. Press (♣ ♣ or ♠ [Back] and the previous screen reappears.

#### **Note**

• Alternatively, press in text input screen and select *Dwnld dictionary* to set/clear dictionary.



In stand-by, press (a) (3 ) (5 ), select dictionary and press (a).

- A list of words registered in the dictionary appears.
- Press @ ar to end checking.
- To show a list of keywords, press [ [Switch]. Press [ [Switch] to switch between word list and keyword list.

### **Deleting a Dictionary**

Delete dictionaries individually or collectively.



In stand-by, press (a) 3 \$\overline{1}{2} \overline{1}{2} \overline{1} \overline{1}{2} \overline{1}{2} \overline{1} \overline{1}{2} \overline{1} \overline{1} \overline{1}{2}

• The delete screen appears.

#### Select deletion method.

To delete one dictionary	Press $\overbrace{1.6}$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ .
To delete all dictionaries	Press $2 \stackrel{?}{\sim} \rightarrow \text{Yes} \rightarrow \bullet$ .

#### **Note**

• If a FOMA card is inserted that is different from the FOMA card that was inserted when the dictionary was downloaded, a FOMA card restriction mark appears next to the dictionary. In such cases, dictionary contents cannot be checked, but can be deleted.

## Replacing with Download Dictionary < Download Dictionary>

Replace the User dictionary with Download dictionary.



In stand-by, press (a) 3 th 4 th and (a) 2 th.

• Save destination setting screen appears.

Select save destination, press •, select Yes and press •.

#### Note

• User dictionary is deleted when replaced with Download dictionary.

### **Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess**

## Selecting Conversion Method

Default setting Quick dictionary ON (YES) Next word guess ON (YES)

Set to enable/disable Quick dictionary (P. 544) and Next word guess (P. 544).

In text input screen, press (ON).



• To select Next word guess function, press @ 8 and 1.2 [ON].

## 2-touch Input Method Text Entry

#### **Setting 2-touch Input <Text Entry>**

Use 2-touch input to enter hiragana with two keys. This method is recommended for users accustomed to 2-touch character input.

1

### In text input screen, press 6.5.



2-touch input screen

- 2-touch input continues until handset is set back to normal input (5-touch).
- Operation for inserting preset phrases is the same for 2-touch and 5-touch.
- Katakana/alphanumeric conversion is not available.
- To return to 5-touch input, press [5-touch] in the text input screen.

## **Changing Input Mode**



### In text input screen, press 🖹.

#### **Note**

- Switch upper/lower case while in single/double-byte mode.
   After entering text, press ᠖ to convert characters one by one. (₺ P. 550)

## **Entering Text**

In 2-touch input, enter two digits to specify a character.



## In text input screen, enter two digits.

Example: 2 € 2 € → き



Refer to P. 571 for details on character assignments.



# **Appendix**

<ul><li>Menu List</li></ul>
• Dial Key Assignments (5-touch)569
• Dial Key Assignments (2-touch)57
• Symbol/Special Character List
• Phrase List
• JIS Kuten Code List
• Using the Calculator
• Multiaccess Combinations
• Assistant View Combinations
• Services Available from the FOMA Terminal < Services > 582
Options and Accessories
• Using with External Devices
• Data Link Software
■ Music playback
• Playing i-motion (Including Audio Data) Created with PC on the FOMA Terminal 588
■ Troubleshooting
• Troubleshooting
List of Error Messages
• Warranty and After-sales Services
• Updating Software <software update="">59</software>
• Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files < Scanning Function > 600
• Main Specifications
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

## **Menu List**

## Settings Menu

## Sound

Function	menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
■Select volume	Phone ring vol	• 1.½ 1.½ 1.½	Phone ring tone, V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support: Volume 3☆	P. 121
	Mail ring vol	• 1.½ 1.½ 2 ½	Mail ring tone, MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Volume 3☆	P. 121
	Chat mail ring vol	●1.Ã1.Ã3♣	Volume 3☆	P. 121
	Setting sound vol	●1.31.34 <i>5</i>	Keypad sound, Open sound, Close sound, Rotation sound, Charge start sound, Charge end sound, Timer sound: Volume 3☆	P. 122
<b>②</b> Select sound	Select ring tone	• (1.12 E (1.13)	Phone ring tone: 着信音1/ V-phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Not support: Phone ring tone☆	P. 118
	Select mail tone	●(1.½2 ½ 2 ½	Mail ring tone: 着信音2/ MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Mail ring tone☆	P. 119
	Chat mail tone	●1. <b>2 2 3 3</b>	着信音 2☆	P. 119
	Setting sounds	●1.82£4£	Open sound: OP (Default tone)/ Close sound: CL (Default tone)/ Rotation sound: TU (Default tone)/ Shutter sound: Default tone/ Timer sound: Default tone☆	P. 120 P. 120 P. 190
<b>❸</b> Vibrator	Vibration mode	● 1.Ã 3 ♣ 1.Ã	OFF☆	P. 123
VIDIALOI	Mail vibration	●1.Ã3 ã 2 Ã	OFF☆	P. 123
	Normal	● 1.½ 4 ± 1.½	_	P. 126
	Silent	●1.½4£2 %	_	P. 126
4 Manner mode	Original	●(1.Ā(4 Ã 3 Ã)	Record message, Vibration mode, Mic sensitivity: ON/ Ring tone, Mail ring tone, Keypad sound, Low power alarm: OFF☆	P. 127
<b>⑤</b> Ring output		●1. <b>%</b> 5 <b>%</b>	Earp.+speaker☆	P. 125
Mail ring duration		● (1./2) (5 ½)	ON/3 seconds☆	P. 125
Set mute seconds		●1.2 7 m	OFF☆	P. 161
3Hold/On hold tone	On hold tone	● 1.Ã B ° 1.Ã	On hold tone 1☆	P. 69
i ioid/On noid tone	Hold tone	● 1.Ã B ° 2 Ã	Hold melody 1☆	P. 69
Stereo effects		●1.8 9 5 807	Stereo · 3D sound☆	P. 123

<sup>•</sup> When settings are reset ( $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{CP}}$  P. 480), functions return to default settings (marked with a  $\prescript{\delta}$ ).

## Display

Functio	n menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
	Stand-by display	● 2 ‰ 1 . ‰ 1 . ‰	待受画面 1 ☆	P. 128
Stand-by display	Clock display	● 2 % 1. Æ 2 %	ON☆	P. 130
	Calendar display	●2½(1.½3å)	OFF☆	P. 130
2Font style		● 2 % 2 %	Bold☆	P. 142
	Picture call set	● 2 ﷺ (1.♣	ON☆	P. 132
	Pop-up window	● 2 ‰ 3 ∰ 2 ‰	ポップアップ 1 ☆	P. 136
	Notice window	<b>●</b> 2 ♣ 3 ♣ 3 ♣	お知らせ 1 ☆	P. 136
	Background	● 2 ﷺ 3 ♣ 4 ♣	背景パターン 1☆	P. 135
<b>6</b> Personalize	Call/Rcv display	● 2 £ 3 £ 5 £	Outgoing voice calls: 電話発信 1 / Incoming voice calls, Incoming video phone, Payphone, User unset, Not support: 電話着信 1 ☆	P. 131
	Send/Rcv display	• 2 % 3 % 6 %	Send display: メール送信 1 / Receive display: メール受信 1 ☆	P. 131
	Title & Status color	●2 <b>2</b> 3373	Pattern 1☆	P. 137
	Guidance keys	● 2 ﷺ 3 ﷺ B **	Left key: 操作ガイド左 1 / Center key: 操作ガイド中央 1 / Right key: 操作ガイド右 1 ☆	P. 137
	Called LED color	●2 % 4 % 1.%	Phone: Green/ Video-phone: Green☆	P. 141
4Called LED	Mail LED color	• 2 % 4 % 2 %	Blue☆	P. 141
	Called LED ON	●2 # 4 # 3 #	Without melody☆	P. 141
	Mail/Msg LED set	● 2 % 4 % 4 %	Without melody☆	P. 141
	Normal mode	●2 <b>%</b> 5 <b>%</b> 1. <b>%</b>	-	P. 132
	Power saver mode	●2 £ 5 £ 2 £	_	P. 132
<b>⑤</b> Power saver set	User Set	<b>●</b> [2 <u>£</u> ]5 <u>£</u> [3}	Display light time: 15 seconds (charging/during i-mode: Same as normal, during video-phone: Always ON)/ Screen dsp time: 2 minutes (LED display off)/Screen saver: OFF/ Brightness: 12☆	P. 132

When settings are reset (☑ P. 480), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

## General settings

Functi	on menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
■Check memory		●3 ÷ 1.△	_	P. 396
2Battery level		<b>●3</b>	_	P. 46
	Sound	●3 ♣ 3 ♣ 1 . Å	_	P. 428
	Display	●3 <b>♣3♣2</b> ♣	_	P. 428
	General settings	●3 <b>♣3♣3</b> ♣	_	P. 428
Check settings	Phone settings	●3 ♣ 3 ♣ 4 ♣	Default setting	P. 428
<b>D</b> Check settings	Security	●3 ♣ 3 ♣ 5 £	_	P. 428
	i-mode	●3 ♣ 3 ♣ 6 ♣	_	P. 428
	Mail/Message	●3 <b>3</b> 3374	_	P. 428
	i-αppli	●3 ♣ 3 ♣ 8 ™	_	P. 428
4User dictionary		(a) (3 dir) (4 dir)	_	P. 556
5Dwnld dictionary		●3 <b>♣</b> 5 €	_	P. 557
6 Edit phrase		●3 ♣ 6 ♣	*1	P. 553
7 Auto power ON/OFF	Auto power ON	●3♣7♣1.Ã	OFF☆	P. 431
MAUIO power ON/OFF	Auto power OFF	●3 m 7 m 2 m	OFF☆	P. 432
Date settings		● 3 ♣ 8 ਐ	*2	P. 48
Clear memory terms		● 3 th 9 th	_	P. 557
Select language		<b>●</b> 3 ♣ □ ?₹	日本語	P. 47
	Update patterns	●3 * * * * * 1 .	-	P. 603
■Scanning function	Scanning setting	●3♣¥≌2Æ	Enable☆	P. 603
	Display version	●3************************************	_	P. 604
Software update		<b>●</b> 3 ♣ # ₹		P. 597

- When settings are reset (☼ P. 480), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).
   \*1 Refer to P. 575 for preset phrases.
- January 1, 2005 00:00

### **Services**

Funct	tion menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
	Check messages	● 4 <sup>E</sup> / <sub>SH</sub> 1./2 1./2	_	P. 485
	Play messages	● 4 m 1.m 2 m	_	P. 485
	Activate	●4 € 1.5 3 €	Ring time:10 seconds	P. 485
	Set ringing time	● 4 m 1.5 4 m	Ring time:10 seconds	P. 485
	Deactivate	●4 th 1.5 5 th	_	P. 485
<b>■</b> Voice mail	Status request	●4 m 1.5 6 m	_	P. 486
	Voice mail settings	●4 £ 1.₺ 7₺	_	P. 485
	Voice mail alarm	● 4 m 1.5 B m	ON☆	P. 486
	Delete display	● 4 th (1./2 9 th)	_	P. 486
	Start notification	● 4 m 1.5 0 m	_	P. 486
	Stop notification	●4 m 1.m ★ m	_	P. 486
	Confirm status	● 4 gr 1./2 # 77	_	P. 487

Func	tion menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
	Activate	● 4 m 2 m 1.m	_	P. 487
2Call waiting	Deactivate	● 4 % 2 % 2 % 2 % C	_	P. 487
	Status request	● 4 m 2 m 3 m	_	P. 487
	Activate	● 4 th 3 th 1.1.a	Ring time: 7 seconds	P. 489
	Deactivate	● 4 5 3 5 2 Ac	_	P. 489
Call forwarding	Register number	● 4 th 3 th 3 th	_	P. 490
	Forwarded party busy	(a) (4 th) (3 th) (4 th)	_	P. 490
	Status request	● 4 th 3 th 5 th	_	P. 490
	Register caller	(a) (4 %) (1.1%)	_	P. 491
4Bar nuisance calls	Delete all entries	● 4 5 4 5 2 7 2 ABC	_	P. 491
La nuisance cans	Delete last entry	(1) (4 th (4 th (3 th))	_	P. 491
Motify college	Status request	● 4 th 5 th 1.th	Set to unsend	P. 492
5 Notify caller ID	Notify caller ID	● 4 ½ 5 ½ 2 ½	_	P. 491
	Activate	● 4 E 6 E 01.1.2	_	P. 492
Caller ID request	Deactivate	● 4 E 6 E 2 7 2 ABC	_	P. 492
	Status request	● 4 E 6 E 3 E	_	P. 492
Talk time/cost		● 4 ½ 7 ½	_	P. 470
	Activate	● 4 \$ B \$ 11 1./2	_	P. 495
■Set arrival act	Deactivate	● 4 % B % 2 %	_	P. 495
	Status request	● 4 & B ? 3 &	_	P. 495
Arrival call act		● 4 E 9 E	Answer☆	P. 494
	Activate	● 4 th □ th 1.th	_	P. 496
■Remote control	Deactivate	● 4 & O N 2 ABC	_	P. 496
	Status request	● 4 th □ 0 th 3 th	_	P. 496
<b>X</b> Dual network	Switching	● 4 ﷺ <b>**</b>	_	P. 493
Dual network	Status request	●4 ∰ <b>*</b> * * * 2	_	P. 493
<b>⊞</b> English guidance	Guidance setting	● 4 ﷺ # ₹ 1.1.2	_	P. 493
English guidance	Status request	● 4 ﷺ # ₹ 2 Ã	_	P. 494
☐Service number	ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair inquiries)	● 4 % (1./3)	_	P. 494
Service Humber	ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General inquiries)	● 4 gr (1 0 hr 2 ksc)	-	P. 494
Additional service	USSD	● 4 ﷺ [■ Additional service]	_	P. 496
, admonar service	Reply message	● 4 ẫ [■ Additional service]	-	P. 497
Call barrings	Not available with this ha			
Multi number	Multi number (Service not yet available)			

When settings are reset (☑ P. 480), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

## Phone settings

Fund	tion menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
■Noise reduction		● 5 ½ 1.½	ON☆	P. 61
2Alarm during call	Reconnect	● 5 ½ 2 ½ 1.½	Alarm on (high) ☆	P. 61
	Quality alarm	● 5 ½ 2 ½ 2 ½	Alarm on (high) ☆	P. 124
	Redial voicecall	● 5 ½ 3 ₺ 1.₺	OFF☆	P. 93
	Set sending image	● 5 ½ 3 ½ 2 ½	*3☆	P. 89
Screen size	Screen size	● 5 ½ 3 å 3 å	Large☆	P. 92
	Display setting	● 5 ½ 3 ₺ 4 ₺	Show me small☆	P. 92
	Subscreen disp	● 5 ½ 3 ½ 5 ½	Upper left☆	P. 92
	Image quality	● 5 ½ 3 ₺ 6 ₺o	Normal☆	P. 90
	Indicate V-phone	● 5 煮 3 ♣ 7 ♣	Activate	P. 94
4 Record message	Record message	● 5 € 4 € 1.Æ	OFF☆	P. 72
	Answering duration	● 5 ½ 4 ½ 2 ½	8 seconds☆	P. 74
En Record message	Reply message	● 5 € 4 € 3 €	Reply message 1☆	P. 74
	V-phone reply image	● 5 € 4 € 4 € 6 F	伝言メモ画像☆	P. 85
Close operation		● 5 ½ 5 ½	Finish call☆	P. 65
Any key answer		● 5 ½ 6 ½	ON☆	P. 64
Auto answer set		● 5 ½ 7 Å	OFF☆	P. 480
Self mode		● 5 ‰ 8 v	OFF☆	P. 152
1 Int'l prefix		● 5 ∰ 9 mm	First entry: 009130-010☆	P. 59
Sub address		● 5 ∰ O ₽ ₽	ON☆	P. 60
XInt'l calling	Auto assist set	● 5 煮 ★ ※ 1. Æ	Auto prefix☆	P. 60
MITILE Calling	IDD prefix setting	● 5 % (**** 2 %)	World call 009130-010☆	P. 59
#Earphone		<b>● 5 % # ?</b>	ON/Memory number: 499☆	P. 478

- When settings are reset ( $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{P}}$  P. 480), functions return to default settings (marked with a  $\prescript{\delta}$ ).
- \*3 Substitute image: ブンブン (Dimo) (通話中画像 1 when Reset settings (© P. 480) is performed after deleting ブンブン (*Dimo*)), Camera image sending: *ON*, On hold image: 応答保留画像, Hold image: 保留画像

## Security

Functi	on menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
■Secret mode		● 6 mm 1./mm	OFF/No auto disable☆	P. 156
	PIN code input set	● 6 Mm 2 Mm 1./m	OFF	P. 146
2UIM settings	Change PIN code	● 6 th 2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /2 /	_	P. 147
	Change PIN2 code	● 6 # 2 # 3 m	_	P. 147
	Accept calls	● 6 # 3 # 1./2	OFF☆	P. 158
	Reject calls	● 6 # 3 # 2 #c	OFF☆	P. 159
<b>❸</b> Accept/Reject calls	Reject unknown	● 6 m 3 m 3 m	OFF☆ Accept☆	P. 161
E receptive jest cans	Reject user unset	● 6 mm 3 mm 4 mm	Accept☆	P. 160
	Reject payphone	● 6 # 3 # 5 #	Accept☆	P. 160
	Reject not support	● 6 # 3 & 6 # MMC	Accept☆	P. 160

Functi	on menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
4 Show call/received	Show rcvd calls	● 6 m 4 m 1./2	ON☆	P. 155
Silow call/received	Show redial	● 6 Mm 4 Mm 2 Mm	ON☆	P. 155
Show sent/received	Show sent messages	● 6 Mm 5 Mm 1.72	ON☆	P. 156
Silow sell/received	Show rcvd messages	● 6 # 5 # 2 #c	ON☆	P. 156
	All lock	● 6 H 6 H 1.72	_	P. 149
	Keypad dial lock	● 6 H 6 H 2 H	OFF☆	P. 154
(C) and anothing a	PIM lock	● 6 # 6 # 3 #	OFF☆	P. 153
6 Lock settings	IC-card lock	● 6 m 6 m 4 m	OFF☆	P. 154
	Remote lock all	● 6 th 6 th 5 th 5 th 5 th 5 th 5 th 5 th	OFF/License number: none/ # of rcvd calls: 5 times/ Monitoring: 3 minutes☆	P. 150
Change sec code		● 6 H 7 K	0000	P. 145
3Delete all data	Delete user data	● 6 km 8 m 1.2	-	P. 481
Esperete an data	Del secret data	● 6 # 8 P 2 # 2 # 8c	_	P. 482

ullet When settings are reset ( $oxed{\mathbb{CP}}$  P. 480), functions return to default settings (marked with a  $\upphi$ ).

## Other settings

Functio	n menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
Own number		● [ ] **	Own number	P. 49
Initial settings		•**	_	P. 48
Reset settings		<b>●</b> # ₹	-	P. 480

## Data Box Menu

Function menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
My picture	<b>●</b> 7♣1.♣	-	P. 342
i-motion	● <b>7</b> ፟፟፟፟፟፟፟ <b>2</b> ፟፟	_	P. 359
Melody	● <b>7</b> ∰ <b>3</b> ∰	_	P. 378
Chara-den	●7 € 4 €	_	P. 371
My document	● <b>7</b> ፟፟፟፟፟5፟፟፟፟፟፟	_	P. 405
Print setting (DPOF)	●7 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-	P. 425
Security setting	● 7 巻 ★ ☆ (for 1+ seconds)	OFF	P. 392

## **Tool Menu**

Fun	ction menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
■Voice recorder		● B * 1./-2	_	P. 403
<b>2</b> Record video	One-touch	● B * 2 % 1.%	_	P. 457
	Program	● 8 % 2 ABC 2 ABC	_	P. 458
	Check schedule	● 8 % 2 % 3 &	_	P. 459
	Detailed setting	● 8 % 2 % 4 %	_	P. 459
	Security setting	● <b>B</b> ※ <b>2</b>	OFF	P. 458

Fund	ction menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
Receive Ir data	Receive	● B * 1.2	_	P. 400
Meceive ir data	Receive all	● B * 3 * 2 %	_	P. 401
4 Schedule		● B * 70V 4 50 000	_	P. 442
<b>5</b> ToDo list		● B ** 5 **	_	P. 438
<b>6</b> Alarm		● B * C B MEC	_	P. 433
<b>7</b> Timer		● B * 7 / 1/2	_	P. 433
Text memo		● B ** B **	_	P. 472
<b>9</b> Calc		● B * P B * E N B * E	Tax rate: 5%☆	P. 466
Money calc		● B P D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D	_	P. 467
	View miniSD data	● B ** (*** *** 1./**	_	P. 387
	Backup/restore	● B *** (*******************************	_	P. 385
<b>⊠</b> miniSD manager	Import	● B * # * 2 3 * #	_	P. 391
	New manager info	● B * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	_	P. 390
	Format	● B * * * * * * 5 * *	_	P. 389
#Bar code reader		● B ** # ***	_	P. 195
Character reader		● B 등 [■ Character reader]	-	P. 198

When settings are reset (☐ P. 480), functions return to default settings (marked with a ☆).

## **KEITAIViewer**

Function menu	Key operation	Default setting	Page
BookReader	● 9 5 1./3	_	P. 418
DocumentViewer	● 9 th 2 ke	_	P. 413
PDF Viewer	● 9 m 3 m	_	P. 405

## **Dial Key Assignments (5-touch)**

Use dial keys to enter text. Each key has multiple characters assigned to it.

• Press the key multiple times to switch characters.

Example: If The is pressed three times in double-byte katakana mode,

① [ブ] ▶ ① [ブ] ▶ ① [ヴ] appears. (Press 🖛 to scroll backwards through characters.)

### **Double-byte Characters**

Key	漢 Kanji (hiragana)	Double-byte katakana	Double-byte alphan	Kuten					
	input mode	input mode	A Upper and lower case	a Lower case	code mode				
1./2	あいうえおぁいうえぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ	. /_@ 1 (space)	. /_@ 1 (space)	1				
2 //c	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	a b c 2	2				
3 Š	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	def3	3				
4 to	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	ghi4	4				
5 %	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkI5	j k I 5	5				
6 iii	はひふへほ	ハヒフへホ	MNOmno6	mno6	6				
7 # PORS	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	pqrs7	7				
8 ***	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	tuv8	8				
9 "5 WXYZ	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	wxyz9	9				
0 % <sup>e</sup>	わをん (space)	ワヲン 🌅 (space)	O (space)	O (space)	0				
O ☼º ~ 9 ∰ For 1+seconds	1 10~9								
<b>★</b> ***	* ° (for characters to which they can be added) $\downarrow$ 1 $\uparrow$ 1								
# ===		Double-byte symbol co	onversion (-, 。!?	- )	n/a				
0	1-touch conversion (previous candidate)		Cursor u	ıp					
	Normal conversion (next candidate)		Cursor down	/J *1					
① ① ①	Shrink highlighted segment		Cursor left						
0	Expand highlighted segment		Cursor right						
<b>5</b>		Chang	ge character input mode	es					
For 1+ seconds		Show '	"Internet" preset phrase	es					
		er case characters h can be lower case)	Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between uppenlower case character input modes	Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	n/a				
For 1+ seconds			Insert phrase						
	Single character deletion, cancelling conversion Single character deletion conversion Conversion								
For 1+ seconds	Deletion of all characters in front of the cursor 2								
•	Apply, OK		OK						
<b>€</b> AF ©		Show in rever	rse order or undo		Undo				

<sup>\*1</sup> Press after confirming a character to enter a line break (◄). ↓ appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, Schedule, ToDo list and Text memo.

<sup>\*2</sup> When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters at and after the cursor are deleted.

<sup>\*3</sup> Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.

<sup>•</sup> Some hiragana and katakana with a dakuten mark may be partially omitted.

#### **Single-byte Characters**

17	P Company								
Key	Single-byte katakana mode	■ Upper and lower case	■ Lower case	Single-byte numeric input mode					
1./2	アイウエオァィゥェォ	. / _ @ 1 (space)	. / _ @ 1 [] (space)	1					
2 #sc	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	a b c 2	2					
3 č	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	def3	3					
(4 tr Gira	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	ghi4	4					
5 #k	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	j k l 5	5					
6 m	ハヒフへホ	M N O m n o 6	mno6	6					
7 gt PORS	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	pqrs7	7					
8 ***	ヤユヨャュョ	TUVtuv8	tuv8	8					
9 5	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	w x y z 9	9					
0 p*	<b>ワ ヲ ン</b> ∭ (space)	(space)	0 (space)	0					
☐ ☼ ~ ☐ ☼ For 1+ seconds		*5							
***	, , – †	X							
# 550	Single-byte symbol conversion (-, ?;^^()',";;;\delta\&) *3 #								
•	Cursor up P (during entry of a phone number) / Cursor up								
		Cursor down	<b>/</b> ↓ <sup>*1</sup>						
0		Cursor le	ft						
•		Cursor rig	ht						
<b>3</b>		Change character i	nput modes						
For 1+ seconds		Show "Internet" pre	set phrases						
Ŕ	Conversion to lower case characters (for characters which can be lower case)	Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	n/a					
For 1+ seconds	Insert phrase								
€ CLR		Single character	deletion						
G CLR For 1+ seconds		eletion of all characters in	front of the cursor*2						
•		OK							
<b>€</b> AF©		Show in reverse order or u	ndo	Undo					

<sup>11</sup> A new line (♣) is entered. ♣ appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, Schedule, ToDo list and Text memo.

- \*2 When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters at and after the cursor are deleted.
- During single-byte alphanumeric input (entering mail addresses, URL), "、", " 。" or " " cannot be entered.
- \*4 Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.
- 5 Press Of 1+ seconds to enter +.

#### How characters are counted

One double-byte character is counted as two single-byte characters. A single-byte dakuten/handakuten mark is counted as a single character.

## **Dial Key Assignments (2-touch)**

### **Double-byte**

### **Upper case mode**

			2n	ıd di	igit (	(nex	t ke	y to	ent	er)	
			2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	あ	1)	う	え	お	А	В	С	D	Е
	2	か	き	<	け	ت	F	G	Н	1	J
1st d	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	М	N	0
igit	4	た	5	つ	て	٤	Р	Q	R	S	Т
1st digit (first key to enter)	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	٧	W	Х	Υ
key	6	は	S	ふ	^	ほ	Z	?	!	_	/
toe	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		<b>a</b>	
nter	8	ゃ	(	ゆ	)	よ	×	#		•	*
	9	6	IJ	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ю	٠	۰	6	7	8	9	0

#### Lower case mode

			2nd digit (next key to enter)											
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0			
	1	あ	()	う	え	お	а	b	С	d	е			
	2						f	g	h	i	j			
1st digit (first key to enter)	3						k	1	m	n	0			
igit	4			つ			р	q	r	S	t			
(first	5						u	٧	W	Х	У			
key	6						z							
toe	7													
nter	8	ゃ		ゆ		ょ					*			
	9													
	0	わ			,	0								

<sup>\*</sup> Press @ O to switch between upper case mode (left) and lower case mode (right).

## Single-byte

#### **Upper case mode**

			2n	d di	git	(nex	t ke	y to	ent	er)	
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	7	1	ġ	I	オ	A	В	С	D	Е
	2	л	+	þ	ケ	٦	F	G	Н	1	J
1st digit	3	Ħ	ý	Z	t	y	K	L	M	N	0
ligit	4	Ą	Ŧ	ŋ	Ŧ	+	Р	0	R	S	T
(first	5	t	Ξ	Z	ネ	1	U	٧	W	χ	γ
key	6	/\	Ł	7	٨	木	Z	?	!	-	/
to e	7	₹	""	Д	Х	ŧ	¥	&		<b>a</b>	
(first key to enter)	8	t	(	1	)	3	X	#		•	*
	9	Ē	IJ	l	V	П	1	2	3	4	5
	0	7	7	ン	*	۰	6	7	8	9	0

#### Lower case mode

			2nd digit (next key to enter)										
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0		
	1	7	1	ġ	I	才	a	b	С	d	е		
	2						f	g	h	i	j		
1st digit (first key to enter)	3						k	1	m	n	0		
igit	4			'n			р	q	r	S	t		
(first	5						u	٧	W	Χ	у		
key	6						Z						
to e	7												
nter	8	t		1		3					*		
	9												
	0				,								

- \* Press @ D to switch between upper case mode (left) and lower case mode (right).
- 🚡 and ♥ count as two single-byte characters each.

#### Note

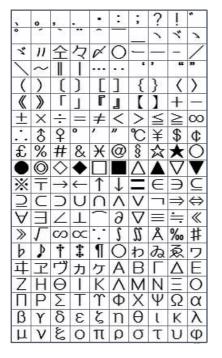
- Empty boxes in charts above indicate spaces.
- For \_\_, press @ after entering text to switch between upper case and lower case.

## Symbol/Special Character List

Press (a) in the text input screen to switch between *Symbol* and *Pict*.

Press (a) when inputting symbols to switch between *Half pitch* and *Full pitch*. Press (a) when inputting pictographs to switch between *Pictograph 2* and *Pictograph 1*.

#### Double-byte symbols/special characters





Special symbols

\* Special characters may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

### Single-byte symbols



### **Pictograph List**

Enter reading to convert to pictographs.

### Pictograph 1

Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph
はれ	*	ひこうき	4	ぱーすでー	íÍí	いす	Ħ	は一と、はあと	₩
くもり	ထ	いえ	•	でんわ	8	よる、つき	9	は一と、はあと	
あめ、かさ	<del>•</del>	びる		でんわ、 けいたい		すーん	SOON	しつれん、 はーと、はあと	₹∌
ゆき	8	ゆうびんきょく	亩	めも		おん	ÓN!	は一と、はあと	y v
かみなり	4	びょういん	Ē.	てれび	Ě	えんど	ena	かお、にこ	6
うずまき、 たいふう	<u>බ</u>	ぎんこう	<u>BK</u>	げーむ	æ	とけい	0	かお、むか	×
きり		ぎんこう、 えーてぃーえむ	ATH	レーでぃー	<b>③</b>	でんわ	₽₽	かお、かなしい	$\hookrightarrow$
こさめ	1	ほてる	Ĥ	はーと、はあと	٧	めーる	₩.	かお、かなしい	Ω.
おひつじざ	Υ	こんびに	<u>cvs</u>	すペーど	•	ふぁっくす	₹ <del>)</del> FAX	かお、ふらふら	××
おうしざ	8	がそりん、 すたんど	GS	だいや	+	あいもーど	8	やじるし、 ぐっど	•
ふたござ	$\square$	ちゅうしゃじょう	Ð	くろーばー、 くらぶ	+	あいもーど	8	おんぷ	<b>)</b>
かにざ	9	しんごう	<b>P</b>	め	99	めーる	$\square$	おんせん	الله
ししざ	ત	といれ	İlė	みみ	3	どこも	Đ	かわいい	$\odot$
おとめざ	M\$	れすとらん	¥g	<-	ත	どこも	Ð	きす	*
てんびんざ	$\overline{\mathbf{U}}$	きっさてん	☞	ちょき、ぶい	<u>u</u>	ゆうりょう	¥	ぴかぴか、 きらきら	¢ <sub>¢</sub>
さそりざ	M <del>t</del>	ぱー	Ý	ぱー	<u>m</u>	ふりー、 むりょう	THEE	ひらめき	-ģ-
いてざ	7	びーる、さけ	₩	やじるし、 みぎした	7	あいでぃー	<u>ID</u>	むか、いかり	×
やぎざ	የያ	はんばーがー	=	やじるし、 ひだりうえ	Γ,	かぎ、しーくれっ と、ぱすわーど	Ŧ	ぱんち	æ
みずがめざ	6667 6667	ぶていっく	a	あし	Ü	りたーん	#	ばくだん	•
うおざ	<del>) (</del>	はさみ、 びよういん	X	くつ	63	くりあ	<u>CL</u>	おんぷ	N <sub>p</sub>
すぽーつ	Ä	からおけ	<b>.</b>	めがね	ფი	むしめがね、 るーペ、さーち	્	やじるし、 ばっど	<b>→</b>
やきゅう	00	えいが	2	くるまいす	رخ.	にゅー	<u>YEV</u>	ねる、ねむい	ZZZ
ごるふ	a/	やじるし、 みぎうえ	7	しんげつ、つき	•	はた	₽	びっくり	<u>!</u>
てにす		ゆうえんち	と	つき	0	ふりーだいやる	ळ	びっくり	!?
さっかー	❸	おんがく	ទ	はんげつ、つき	•	しゃーぶだいや る	#	びっくり	!!
すきー	uL.	あーと	*	みかづき、つき	•	もばきゅー	<b>(b)</b>	しょうげき、 いらいら	Σζ
ばすけっと、 ばすけ	<u>o</u>	えんげき	3	まんげつ、つき	0	いち	1	あせ	20
はた	yxx	いべんと	Ā	いぬ	∵	[C	2	あせ	b
ぽけっとべる、 ぽけべる	₩	ちけっと		ねこ	4 <u>- المنا</u>	さん	3	だっしゅ	=3
でんしゃ	貝	たばこ、 きつえん	2	よっと、 りぞーと	4⊾	よん、し	4	-	~~
ちかてつ	М	きんえん	@	くりすます	*	ť	5	-	787
しんかんせん	₫	かめら	10	やじるし、 ひだりした	4	ろく	6	おーけー	<u>0K</u>
くるま	4	かばん		かちんこ		なな、しち	7		
くるま	4	ほん	<b>V</b>	ふくろ	8	はち	Θ		
ばす		りぼん	D×3	ぺん	Ø	きゅー、く	9		
ふね	Æ	ぶれぜんと	Ě	ひとかげ	Ω	ぜろ	0		

The pictographs above may not appear properly depending on the receiving model. In addition, pictographs
may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

Pictographs other than ♥, ♥ and appear as spaces in SMS.

When keyword (reading) is entered, Pict-1 appears after the conversion candidate. However, even if the
candidate is selected, the characters of Pict-1 are not entered.

#### Pictograph 2

Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph
あいあぶり	æ	すなどけい、 とけい	Ω	ねこ	66	やじるし、 さゆう	<b>+</b>	らーめん、 どんぶり	₩
あいあぶり	œ	じてんしゃ	♣	かお、かなしい	ä	やじるし、 じょうげ	<b>‡</b>	ぱん、 しょくばん	17
てぃーしゃつ、 しゃつ	꿈	おちゃ、ゆのみ	Ö	かお、なみだ、 かなしい	*ŏ	がっこう	6	かたつむり	ağ
さいふ	<u></u>	うでどけい、 とけい	•	えぬじー	NG	なみ	<u> </u>	ひよこ	♡
くちべに、 けしょう	₫	かお	~~	くりっぷ	0	ふじさん、やま		べんぎん	2
じーんず、 じーばん、ずぼん	N.	かお、にこ	v	こぴーらいと	0	くろーばー	æ	さかな	<b>®</b>
すのぼ	4	かお、あせ	20	てぃーえむ、とれーど まーく、しょうひょう	ТМ	さくらんぼ、 ちぇりー	•4	かお、うまい	Ϋ́
べる、ちゃぺる	<b>√</b>	かお、あせ	<u>=0</u>	はしる、ひと	:#:	ちゅーりっぷ、 はな	#	かお	â
どあ	₽	かお、むか	)~(	まるひ	秘	ばなな	Ð	うま	₹,
おかね、 どるぶくろ	<b>E</b>	かお、ぼけ		りさいくる	Ð.	りんご	<b>i</b>	ぶた	9.
ぱそこん	4	は一と	దేది	まるあーる、 しょうひょう	®	め	4	わいん、さけ	₽
らぶれたー	***	おーけー、 ぐっど、ないす	<u>:</u>	きけん、 けいこく	<u> </u>	もみじ	*	かお、げっそり さけび	νον V
れんち、こうぐ	4	かお、ベー	땅	きんし	禁	さくら	舜		
えんぴつ	$\oslash$	かお、ういんく	Ŀ	あき、くうしつ、 くうせき、くうしゃ	空	おにぎり、 おむすび	<u></u>		
おうかん	ш	かお、にこ、 うれしい	<b>*</b> ¢	ごうかく	合	けーき			
ゆびわ	to	かお、がまん、 かなしい	**	まんしつ、まん せき、まんしゃ	湛	とっくり、さけ	ひ		

- The pictographs above may not appear properly depending on the receiving model. In addition, pictographs
  may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.
- Pictographs other than ♥, ♥ and î appear as spaces in SMS.
- Some of the above pictographs may not appear properly depending on the site.
- When keyword (reading) is entered, Pict-2 appears after the conversion candidate. However, even if the candidate is selected, the characters of Pict-2 are not entered.

#### **Emoticon List**

Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon	Code	Emoticon
01	(^O^)	14	(T_T)	27	(゜▽゜)	40	( <sup>−</sup> ∇−;)
02	0(^-^)0	15	(¥_¥)	28	!(^^)!	41	( ^^)Y☆Y(^^ )
03	(^0^)/	16	(@_@)	29	0(><)0	42	0(^-^0)(0^-^)0
04	p(^^)q	17	(?_?)	30	(。。;)	43	(プº)ノ
05	(>_<)	18	(;_;)	31	Φ()	44	(° 0° ) \ ()
06	(X_X)	19	(0_0)	32	(^人^)	45	(U0U)
07	m()m	20	(^_^)	33	< ( ) >	46	( ^ ^) \ (° ° )
08	f^_^;	21	(~~ ऱ	34	(´Д`)	47	\^0^/
09	(:_;)	22	(☆_☆)	35	\(^^:;)	48	(
10	(;)	23	(ノ><)ノ	36	(#^.^#)	49	??(° Q. )??
11	(+_+)	24	(#)	37	$(\ \ 0) = 3$	50	(^)-☆
12	()	25	(";)	38	(; ´ · `)		
13	(v_v)	26	(メ)	39	(´~`;)		

ullet Alternatively enter b (Face) and convert it to view emoticon candidates and enter into text.

### **Phrase List**

1 おはようございます   2 おやすみなさい   3 昨日は、どうもありがとうございました   4 行ってきます   5 いってらっしゃい   6 お疲れ様でした   7 お世話になっております   8 こんにちは   9 こんばんは   0 よろしくお願い致します   1 直行します   2 直帰します   3 休暇をとります   4 半休します   5 電車遅延のため、遅れます   5 電車遅延のため、遅れます   5 電車遅延のため、遅れます   6 本日の会議は中止となりました   7 出欠をご連絡ください   8 次の指示を待ってください   9 携帯の電源を切ります   0 外間がありません   1 がいます   1 がいで行こう   2 飲みに行きませんか?   3 がいとう   2 がみに行きませんか?   3 がいとう   2 がみに行きます   4 がいます   5 中止です   6 先に行きます   7 先に帰ります   8 時間です   9 何してるの?   0 どこにいるの?						
3 昨日はどうもありがとうございました   4 行ってきます   5 いってらっしゃい   6 お疲れ様でした   7 お世話になっております   8 こんにちは   9 こんばんは   0 よろしくお願い致します   1 直行します   2 直帰します   3 休暇をとります   4 半休します   5 電車遅延のため、遅れます   2 で。   2 で。   3 で。   3 で。   4 でのかった。   5 で。   6 本日の会議は中止となりました   7 出欠をご連絡ください   8 次の指示を待ってください   9 携帯の電源を切ります   0 水ールで連絡してください   1 遊びに行こう   2 飲みに行きませんか?   3 遅れます   4 変更します   4 変更します   5 中止です   6 先に行きます   7 先に帰ります   9 何してるの?		1	おはようございます		1	OKです
4 行ってきます		2	おやすみなさい		2	NGです
S		3	昨日は、どうもありがとうございました		3	ありがとう
7 お世話になっております   7 後で連絡入れます   8 保留です   9 こんばんは   9 キャンセルです   0 時間がありません   1 直行します   2 直帰します   3 .ac.jp   2 .co.jp   3 .ac.jp   4 .or.jp   5 .go.jp   6 .com   7 @docomo.ne.jp   6 .com   7 @docomo.ne.jp   8 http:// 9 携帯の電源を切ります   0 .html   1 遊びに行こう   2 飲みに行きませんか? 3 遅れます   4 変更します   5 中止です   6 先に行きます   7 先に帰ります   9 何してるの?   9		4	行ってきます		4	ごめんなさい
7 お世話になっております   7 後で連絡入れます   8 保留です   9 こんばんは   9 キャンセルです   0 時間がありません   1 直行します   2 直帰します   3 .ac.jp   2 .co.jp   3 .ac.jp   4 .or.jp   5 .go.jp   6 .com   7 @docomo.ne.jp   6 .com   7 @docomo.ne.jp   8 http:// 9 携帯の電源を切ります   0 .html   1 遊びに行こう   2 飲みに行きませんか? 3 遅れます   4 変更します   5 中止です   6 先に行きます   7 先に帰ります   9 何してるの?   9	iree	5	いってらっしゃい	Re	5	待ってて
7 お世話になっております   7 後で連絡入れます   8 保留です   9 こんばんは   9 キャンセルです   0 時間がありません   1 直行します   2 直帰します   3 .ac.jp   2 .co.jp   3 .ac.jp   4 .or.jp   5 .go.jp   6 .com   7 @docomo.ne.jp   6 .com   7 @docomo.ne.jp   8 http:// 9 携帯の電源を切ります   0 .html   1 遊びに行こう   2 飲みに行きませんか? 3 遅れます   4 変更します   5 中止です   6 先に行きます   7 先に帰ります   9 何してるの?   9	ting	6	お疲れ様でした	ply	6	今忙しい
9	on .	7	お世話になっております		7	後で連絡入れます
Dusing   1    直行します   2    直帰します   2    直帰します   3		8	こんにちは		8	保留です
Table   Ta		9	こんばんは		9	キャンセルです
Private   Pr		0	よろしくお願い致します		0	時間がありません
National Private   Pri		1	直行します		1	.ne.jp
Private   Pr		2	直帰します		2	.co.jp
Table   Ta		3	休暇をとります		3	.ac.jp
Private       7       出欠をご連絡ください       7       @docomo.ne.jp         8       次の指示を待ってください       8       http://         9       携帯の電源を切ります       0      html         1       遊びに行こう       1	_	4	半休します		4	.or.jp
Private       7       出欠をご連絡ください       7       @docomo.ne.jp         8       次の指示を待ってください       8       http://         9       携帯の電源を切ります       0      html         1       遊びに行こう       1	3usi	5	電車遅延のため、遅れます	Inte	5	.go.jp
Private       7       出欠をご連絡ください       7       @docomo.ne.jp         8       次の指示を待ってください       8       http://         9       携帯の電源を切ります       0      html         1       遊びに行こう       1	ness	6	本日の会議は中止となりました	rnet	6	.com
9 携帯の電源を切ります       9 www.         0 メールで連絡してください       1 遊びに行こう         2 飲みに行きませんか?       2	0,	7	出欠をご連絡ください		7	@docomo.ne.jp
Private     0 メールで連絡してください     0 .html       1 遊びに行こう     1		8	次の指示を待ってください		8	http://
1 遊びに行こう       1 ご		9	携帯の電源を切ります		9	www.
2 飲みに行きませんか?     2		0	メールで連絡してください		0	.html
Recomposition of the content of		1	遊びに行こう		1	
4     変更します     4		2	飲みに行きませんか?		2	
8 時間です     8       9 何してるの?     9		3	遅れます		3	
8 時間です     8       9 何してるの?     9		4	変更します	Orig	4	
8 時間です     8       9 何してるの?     9	Priv	5	中止です	jinal	5	
8 時間です     8       9 何してるの?     9	'ate	6	先に行きます	phr	6	
9 何してるの? 9		7	先に帰ります	ase	7	
		8	時間です		8	
0   どこにいるの?		9	何してるの?		9	
		0	どこにいるの?		0	

Original phrases are not registered in handset at the time of purchase.

### **JIS Kuten Code List**

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols, and alphanumeric characters.

• Each kuten code corresponds to a particular character. Refer to "Inputting Kuten Code" on P. 555 for details.

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit	Kuten Kuten 4th digit	Kuten	Kuten 4th digit
1 to 3	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	1 to 3 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	1 to 3	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
010 011 012 013 014 015 016 017 018 019 020	! *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *	073 074 075 076 077 078 080 081 082 083	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197	0     1     2     3     4     5     6     7     8     8     8     6     7     8     8     8     3     4     5     6     7     8     8     8     4     5     4     5     4     5     4     5     4     5     4     5     4     5     4     5     4     5     4     7     8     1     8     4     8     1     3     1     8     1 </td
021 022 023 024 026 027 028 029	= - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	130 131 132 133 134 135 135 km mg kg cm 1 136 137	198 199 200 201 202 202 203 204 205 206 207	叶噛 勘幹款竿諫舘廣權 刊干棺看観館 歌等 歌等 建氯化 寒寬桓監莞韓岩 医遗嘱 医遗嘱 医复数
031 032 033 034 035 036 037 038 039 040 041 042 043 044 045 046	3 GQ eoy おこそでばほゆわ 1 EOYcmw えけぜてばべやわ 9 CMWaku うくすつねぶめる 8 BLV jt いきじぢぬぶむり 7 AKU is いきしちにふみらん 6 JT hr あがざだなびまよを 5 IS gq あかさたどびぼょゑ	160 161 葵西梅惠握渥旭童台 162 梓压斡扱宛姐鲑台絢 163 鮎或粟祫安庵按暗案 164 鞍杏	207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221	基旗 紀鬼犠吉客宫究巨禦 侧有既機徽亀疑吃脚弓窮拒魚供则奇既機徽亀疑吃脚弓窮拒魚供则奇既機徽龟疑或黄橘丘朽糾渠京党城有人就是前盖,次处享属墙高,然处享属墙、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、大型、
050 051 052 053 054 055 056 057 058	エゲゼテバホュワ マカガザダナピマヨヲ アガザダナピマヨヲ アガザダナピマヨヲ アガザダナピマヨヲ アガザダナピマヨヲ アカサットヒボコヱ アカサットヒボコュ アカサット	173   三運雲	226 227 228 229 230 231 232	海 大
061 062 063 064 065 070 071 072	μ	179 180 181 181 182 182 182 183 184 185 186 186 187 187 187 187 188 189 189 189 189 189 189 189 189 189	235 236 237 238 239	生 持數 第

#### Note

- If an unregistered kuten code is entered, an error alarm will sound (short beeps) and either a space or nothing will be entered. (Error tone does not sound when Keypad sound is set to Silent.)
- Some entries in the kuten code list may differ from on the screen.

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit	Kuten	Kuten 4th digit	Kuten	Kuten 4th digit
1 to 3 241	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 肩見謙賢軒遣鍵険顕験	1 to 3 309	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 醸錠嘱埴飾	1 to 3 370	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
242	肩兒謙員軒追雖陝顕級 鹸元原厳幻弦減源玄現 絃舷言諺限	310		371	的笛適鍋溺哲徹撤轍迭
243	絃舷言諺限	311 312	蝕辱尻伸信侵唇娠寝審   心情振新恶森梼浸涩由	372 373	的笛適鏑溺哲 徹撤
243	子個古呼固	313	職 拉馬爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾爾		
244 245	姑孤己庫弧戸故枯湖狐   糊終股胡茄 电	314 315	身辛進針震人仁刃塵壬 	373 374	鬼吐 送涂 妬 屡 徒 込 杜 渡 啓 苺
246	姑糊顧御乞効 工物 在		<del></del> ,	375	賭途都鍍砥砺努度土奴
247 248	御悟梧檎瑚碁語誤護醐   夕鯉交佼屋候倖光公功	315 316	新	376 377	
249	<b>动</b> 勾厚口向	317	炊睡粋翠衰遂酔錐錘随	378	盗淘湯涛灯燈当痘祷等
250 251	后喉坑垢好孔孝宏上   巧巷幸広庚康弘恒慌抗	318 319	''	379 380	
252 253	拘控攻昂晃更杭校梗構	320	須酢図厨逗吹垂帥銀頭水 須炸睡粋霉烫遂酔錘錘 湯数枢趨雛据杉 電質摺寸	381 382	鐙陶頭騰闘働動同堂導
253	江洪 洁 港 萬 中 呈 健 禍 棣     紅 紘 絞 綱 耕 考 肯 肱 腔 膏	320		383	は 大学 (本) (本) 大学
255 256	航荒行衡講貢購郊酵鉱	321 322	勢栖西的 经基础 医生物 的复数 医甲毒素硷 化性性 医胆素性 医胆素性 医胆素性 医胆素性 医胆素性 医胆素性 医胆素性 医胆	384 385	独読栃橡凸突椴届鳶苫
257		323	西誠誓請逝醒青静斉税	386	更 日 <i>康</i> 喂 七 字 教 产
258 259	告国穀酷鵠黒獄漉腰甑	324 325	脆隻席惜戚斥昔析石積	386	本 那 巾 乍 回 苺
260	此頃今困坤墾婚恨懇	326	接展折設窃節説雪絕舌	387	奈那内乍凪薙 謎灘捺鍋楢馴縄畷南楠
261	効 巧拘江紅航磁号告忽 昏 切 巧拘江紅航磁号告忽 昏 河后巷控洪紘荒鋼合国惚此昆 可信巷控洪紘荒鋼合国惚此昆 可信巷控,以	327 328	蝉仙先千占宣専尖川戦	388	軟難汝 に―――
		329	勢栖西施籍接蝉扇煽 選全性計畫 医骨髓 人名英格兰人姓氏 医克里勒斯 人名英格兰人姓氏 医克里勒斯 人名英格兰 医克勒氏 医克勒氏 医多种原体 医原体 医原体原体 体 医原体原体 医原体原体 医原体原体 医原体原体原体原体	388	一尺式亦句賬肉
262 263	佐义 哸 嗟 左 差 盆 沙 瑳 砂   詐 銷 裟 坐 座 挫 倩 催 再 最	330 331		389 390	虹廿日乳入 如尿韮任妊忍認
264	性非哉災載堺咋鮭 鯖惨讃 佐詐哉災載堺咋鮭 鯖惨讃 吃災妻犀剤肴昨匙拶錆散酸 吃災妻犀剤肴昨匙拶錆散酸 吃災妻犀剤肴昨匙拶錆散酸 吃災妻犀剤肴昨匙拶錆散酸 吃災妻犀剂肴昨匙拶錆散酸 吃災妻犀剂肴的一撮飲桟餐 吃以镇塞采際榊搾笹察捌撒贊 下。 一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、	332	全禅繕膳糎		<u> </u>
265 266	災 采 摩 碎 岩 奈 斎 細 采 萩     載 際 剤 在 材 罪 財 冴 坂 阪	332		390 391	濡禰 祢寧葱猫熱年念捻撚燃
267 268	堺榊肴咲崎埼碕鷺作削	333 334	自楚狙疏疎礎祖租粗素	392 393	祢寧葱猫熱年念捻撚燃 粘乃廼之埜囊悩濃納能 脳膿農覗蚤
269	性 作 的 知 而 有 泉 系 頭 校 鮭 笹 匙 冊 刷	335	<b>倉喪壮奏爽宋層匝惣想</b>		™ 辰 呪 虫 ―――
270 271	察拶撮擦札殺薩雑皐	336 337	捜掃挿掻操早曹巣槍槽   連帰争痩相窓糟蚣綜配	393 394	巴把播覇杷油派琴爾萨里斯
272	惨撒散栈燦珊産算纂蚕	338	草荘葬蒼藻装走送遭鎗	395	<b>持排敗杯盃牌背肺</b> 輩配
273	讃賛酸餐斬暫残	339 340	曾素叢想槽聡銷 息続遜曾素叢想槽聡銷 息続遜 曾素叢想槽歌館 息続遜東祖和創匠巢総送 則賊損狙訴壮挿争葬像蔵測其推角争葬像蔵測其 化俗孫 中	396 397	地 大 大 大 大 大 大 大 大 大 大 大 大 大
273	使子施紙諮字 耳軸湿屡社尺惹腫綬 終輯從夙對 使子施紙諮字 耳軸湿屡社尺惹腫綬 終輯從夙對 門市枝肢賜慈滋蒔雫疾縞者灼取酒囚就習酋柔淑對 門市枝肢賜慈滋蒔雫疾縞者灼取酒囚就習酋柔淑對 門市枝肢賜慈滋蒔雫疾縞者灼取酒囚就習酋柔淑對 一里的,四氏視齒 璽鹿執部射遮釈朱受 愁寬戲獸藏別 四氏視齒 璽鹿執部射遮釈朱受 愁寬戲獸戲 四声传放赐慈滋蒔雫疾縞者灼取酒囚就習酋柔淑智 一种大人,一种大人,一种大人,一种大人,一种大人,一种大人,一种大人,一种大人,	341 342	捉束測足速俗属賊族続	398	柏泊白箔粕舶薄迫曝漠
274 275		342	卒 他柁岱腿台宅諾 棚担綻暖 本 他柁岱腿台宅諾 棚担綻暖 本 他柁岱腿台宅諾 棚担綻暖 本 他柁岱腿台宅諾 棚担綻暖 本 他柁岱腿台宅諾 棚担短壇	399 400	
276 277	施旨枝止死氏獅祉私糸	343 344	他多太汰詑唾堕妥惰打	401 402	畑畠八鉢溌発醗髪伐罰
278		345	岱带待怠態戴替泰滞胎	403	半反叛帆搬斑板氾汎版
279 280	字寺慈持時	346 347	腿苔袋貸退逮隊黛鯛代	404 405	犯班畔繁般藩販範釆煩
281	耳自蒔辞汐鹿式識鳴竺	348	宝托択拓沢濯琢託鐸濁	105	
282 283		349 350	諾耳   明	405 406	里 里 否 妃 庇 彼 悲 扉 批 披 斐
284	医蕊 編 舍 写射 捨 赦 斜 煮	351 352	棚谷狸鱈樽誰丹単嘆坦	407 408	比泌疲皮碑秘緋罷肥被誹費避非飛樋簸備尾微
285 286		353	担 採 旦 默 淡 湛 灰 短 斒 里     綻 耽 胆 蛋 誕 鍛 団 壇 弾 断	409	計算 姓 非 形 愧 販 佣 尾 似 枇 毘 琵 眉 美
287 288	惹主取守手朱殊狩珠種	354	暖檀段男談	410 411	卑比詐批 財政避琵柊必長廟品 心療避琵柊必長廟品 心療避琵柊必長廟品 心療避琵柊必長廟品 心療避琵柊必長廟品 一個人 一個人 一個人 一個人 一個人 一個人 一個人 一個人
289	經歷百百	354	值知批批	412	百謬俵彪標氷漂瓢票表
290 291	宗就州修愁拾洲秀秋悠ெ總習皇典苗喪龍雙踹	355 356	智斯 医甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基甲基	413 414	評豹廟描病秒苗錨鋲蒜蛭鰭品彬斌浜瀕貧賓頻
292	輯週酋酬集醜什住充十	357	中仲宙忠抽昼柱注虫衷	415	敏瓶
293 294	従 戎 柔 汁 渋 獸 縦 重 銃 叔    夙 宿 淑 祝 縮 粛 塾 孰 出 術	358 359	註	415	不付埠夫婦富富布
295	述俊峻春瞬竣舜駿准循	360	帖 帳 庁 弔 張 彫 徴 懲 挑	416	府怖扶敷斧普浮父符腐
296 297	1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1	361 362	暢朝潮牒町眺聴脹腸蝶調諜超跳銚長頂鳥勅捗	417 418	膚美 譜 貝 賦 赴 早 附 侮 撫 武 舞 葡 蕪 部 封 楓 風 葺 蕗
298 299	署書薯藷諸助叙女序徐	363	調謀超跳銚長頂鳥勅捗直朕沈珍賃鎮陳	419 420	不付埠夫婦富富符 不付埠夫婦富富符 不付埠夫婦富富符 不付 上, 一
300	心 黝 陝 陽 隕 勝 匠 升 召 哨 商 唱 嘗 奨	363		421	物鮒分吻噴墳憤扮焚奮
301 302	妾娼宵将小少尚庄床廠	364 365	槌追鎚痛通塚栂掴槻佃 漬柘辻蔦綴鍔椿潰坪壷 嬬紬爪吊釣	422	粉糞紛雰文聞
303	松梢樟樵沼消涉湘燒焦	366	<b>嬬紬爪吊釣鶴</b>	422	丙併兵塀
304 305	照 症 省 硝 礁 祥 称 章 笑 粧    紹 肖 菖 蕗 萑 衝 棠 꽔 証 挈	366		423 424	幣 平 弊 柄 並 瞥 夷 房 併 兵 塀 頁 際 壁 癖 碧 別 遁 遍 便 勉 娩 弁
306	從夙述旬醇署恕 妾彰松照紹詳丈情 我宿俊楯順書鋤勝娼承梢症肖象丞擾 柔淑峻殉処薯除匠宵抄橇省菖賞乗条 決縮瞬準所諸償召小掌沼確蕉鉦剰淥 決縮瞬準所諸償召小掌沼殖蕉延剰 數發測暑助 哨少捷消祥衝鍾城状 整舜盾曙叙 商尚昇涉称袞鐘場 電款 與流行 一個, 一個, 一個, 一個, 一個, 一個, 一個, 一個, 一個, 一個,	367	亭低停偵 剃貞呈堤定帝底庭廷弟 锐抵挺提梯汀碇禎程締	425	片篇編边返遍便勉娩弃
307 308	人	368 369		426	鞭
	117人のスカックロス 京阪		THE REAL PRINCES		

1103	Kuton	Kuton 4th digit	Kuton	Kuton 4th digit	Kuton Ath digit
474 426 427 426 477 478 427 427 427 428 428 428 429 429 430 427 428 64 477 478 429 430 427 429 430 427 429 430 427 429 430 427 428 64 477 428 64 477 428 64 477 428 64 477 428 64 477 429 430 427 429 430 427 429 430 427 429 430 427 429 430 427 429 430 427 420 430 427 421 648 648 648 422 648 648 648 423 648 648 424 648 648 425 649 426 648 648 427 448 648 428 64 648 429 430 428 429 430 428 420 430 428 430 430 428 430 430 438	Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Kuten Kuten 4th digit 1 to 3 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	400			<b>枠鷲亙亘鰐詫藁蕨椀湾</b>	5/18
447   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   610   607   608   607   608   608   607   608		保舗鋪圃捕歩甫補輔		碗腕	549   厠 厢 廈 厩 廏 550   廖 庵 廊 廚 庫 廢 廡 廄 廥
447   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   610   607   608   607   608   608   607   608	428	俸包呆報奉宝峰峯崩庖	477		551 廬廱廳配入迪升弃弉昇
447   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   610   607   608   607   608   608   607   608		抱捧放方朋	478 479		552   彜弋弑弓弩弭弸彁彈彌
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	431	蜂褒訪豊邦鋒飽鳳鵬乏	480	弌丐丕个丱、丼丿乂	554 徃徂彿徊很徑徇從徙徘
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611		亡傍剖坊妨帽忘忙房暴	481	乖乘亂」豫事舒式于亞	555 來徨徭徼忖忻忤忸忱忝
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	434	望 呆 悴 盲 約 肋 脚 謎 況 貝 鉾 防 吠 頬 北 僕 卜 墨 撲 朴	483		557 怕怫怦快怺恚恁恪恷恼
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611		牧 晊 䅟 邽 勃 没 殆 咄 帳 奔	484	<b>佝佗佇佶侈侏侘佻佩佰</b>	558 協恆恍恣恃恤恂恬恫恙
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	430	<u> </u>	486	11   14   14   15   16   16   16   16   16   16   16	560   悄慢惊悚
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611		整 摩 磨 麻 埋 妹	487	<b>  碎                                   </b>	561 惠惨悴忰悽惆悵惘慍愕
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611					563   悠惶意愀懦惺恒惚恻怆 563   殷愎殷愾榖愧慊愿惟愬
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	439	繭麿万慢満	490	<b>金属 傳傳 傳傳 傳播</b>	564 愴博慂慄慳慷慘慙慚怨
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	440			僅價	505 憎愦慥慱慟慝憬慵急怨566 趙惶惟惟備馮憫性愕
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611		味未魅巳箕岬密	493	兢競兩兪兮冀囗囘册冉	567 應懷懈懃懆憺懋罹懍懦
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	441				500   漆懶懺懿懼懼懾戀戈 569   戊戌戌多夏
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611		務	496	几處凩凭凰山凾刃刋刔	570 ~ 夏戡截戮戰戲戳扁扎
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	442	罗無年矛霧鵡椋婿娘		別 却	5/1   打扣扛扠扨扼抂抉找拧 572   抓抖拔坛坏拗坩坤孥拿
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611		宣	499	劒剱劈劑辨	573 拆擔拈拜拌拊拂拇抛拉
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611		名命明盟迷銘鳴姪牝滅		辨劬劭劼券勁勍勗勞	5/4   各括拱捌挂挈拯拵捐挾575   捍埋垻城Ь城城城县
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611		元 m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m	502	<b>闽匍匐匏匕匚匣匯匱匳</b>	576 掉掟掵捫捩掾揩揀揆揣
447   448   449   448   449   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   605   611	444 445	摸模茂妄 子毛狂盲細託夢傑木默			577   揉插揶揄搖搴搆搓搦搶
447   448   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   450   60	446	目杢勿餅尤戻籾貰問悶	505	殿	579 撓撥撩撈撼
447	447	紋門匁		叭 叭 吁 吽 呀 听 吭 吼 吮 吶	580   據擒擅擇撻擘擂擱擧
449   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   440   450   451   451   452   452   453   454   455   456	447	也冶夜爺耶野弥	508	咒呻咀呶咄咐咆哇咢咸	582 擺攀擽攘攜攢攤攀攫攴
449   449   449   449   449   449   449   449   440   450   451   451   452   452   453   454   455   456		矢 厄 役 約 薬 訳 躍 靖 柳 薮			583 女 牧 攸 畋 效 敖 敕 敍 敍
452   453   454   455   456   457   456   457   458   459   458   459   450   45		— ф ——	511	唔哽哮哭哺哢唹啀啣啌	585 斷旃旆旁旄旌旒旛旙无
452   453   454   455   456   457   456   457   458   459   458   459   450   45		愉 愈 油 癒 論 鹼 唯 佐 優 甬 友 宕 幽		售 啜 倬 啖 啗 唸 唳 唎 喙 喀     咚 喊 唱 帝 瞅 啱 卿 留 啼 喃	586   先 旱 杲 昊 昃 旻 杳 昵 昶 昴
452   453   454   455   456   457   456   457   458   459   458   459   450   45	451	悠憂揖有柚湧涌猶猷由	514	<b>喻喇喨鳴嗅嗟嗄嗜嗤嗔</b>	588 晟哲晰星量暎暉喧暘唳
452   453   454   455   456   457   456   457   458   459   458   459   450   45	452	布裕誘遊邑郵雄融夕 ————————————————————————————————————		温	589   壁運
454   横尾   455   456   456   456   456   457   458   460   461   462   463   464   465   466	452	予	517	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	591 曳易朏朖朞朦朧霸朮朿
456   457   458   45		余 与 晉 輿 預 傭 幼 呔 谷 庸 提 垤 擁 噿 槔 栳 洋 淧 恢 田			592 保队初初杆杞杠代础机593 压木态场地粉枯柏料料
456   457   458   45	455	窯羊耀葉蓉要謡踊遥陽		園園園園園園園園園	594 枷柯枴柬枳柩枸柤柞枥
461	456	春 窓 抑 欲 沃 浴 翌 冀 浞	521 522		595   枇 柮 枹 柎 柆 杣 橧 栞 框 桃
461		羅	523	埔坪埓堊埖埣堋堙堝塲	597 梟 梏 梭 梔 條 梛 梃 檮 梹 桴
461		螺裸来莱賴雷洛絡落酪	524 525		598   梵梠 梺 椏 梍 桾 椁 棊 椈 刺
461			526	<b>壗壙壘壥壜壤壟壯壺壹</b>	600
461		利 吏 履 李 梨 理 瓖	527 528	肯	601   棹棠棯椨椪椚椣倒棆楹602   楷楜楸娟樹槐娘栳棋姥姥
405   阿彦寮科采凉猟療阪核 532   阿娃奶颯登婢安妍/媚/痛 507   惺良諒塗量陵領力線倫 533   媛婢媽媛嫦嫩媛媚嫻 607   撰槫燮榕榁樣棲榴檔標格 465   厘本林淋燐淋臨輪隣鱗 534   嫣嬋壁鵬嫐嬪嬶嬢媛 608   優福 466   電整決累類令伶例冷励 537   写文字: 写文第字 2字 2字 3   電影 2   電影	460	南裏裡里離陸律率立	529	マーラス ラス エスス 奢 莫 奥 奬 奩	603 楙椰榆楞楝榁楪榲榮槜
405   阿彦寮科采凉猟療阪核 532   阿娃奶颯登婢安妍/媚/痛 507   惺良諒塗量陵領力線倫 533   媛婢媽媛嫦嫩媛媚嫻 607   撰槫燮榕榁樣棲榴檔標格 465   厘本林淋燐淋臨輪隣鱗 534   嫣嬋壁鵬嫐嬪嬶嬢媛 608   優福 466   電整決累類令伶例冷励 537   写文字: 写文第字 2字 2字 3   電影 2   電影		律 掠 略 劉 流 溜 琉 留 硫 粒 降 音 龍 侶 虐 旅 慮 了 声 侮		叶 妁 妝 佞 佞 妣 妲 姆 姨 美 妍 析 姚 娥 娟 沙 娜 廸 娌	604   榿稿槙榾槎寨槊槝榻槃
Y	463	両凌寮料梁涼猟療瞭稜	532	<b>婀</b> 婬婉娵娶婢婪媚媼媾	606 樛槿權槹槲槧樅榱樞欘
1535   1535		糧良諒遼量陵領力緑倫		嫋 嫂 媽 嫣 嫗 嫦 嫩 嫖 嫺 嫻	607  樔槫樊樒榁樣樓橄樌槽608  楊楊楊縣終矯韓蝶
466   467   468   467   468   469   469   470   470   470   471   472   473   173   47			535	媚子孕孚孛拏孩孰孳孵	609 檍檠檄檢檣
468				学学孺宀它臣辰冤寇寉宫寐窕宦宫窭	610   葉檗檻櫃櫂檸檳檬櫞611   櫑繼終棚甁棚機廢煙總
409	468	<b>齢</b> 暦歴列劣烈裂廉恋憐	538	寶尅將專對尓尠九尨尸	612 攬鬱觀欸欷盜欹飮歇動
470		浬 陳 簾 練 聯 蓮 連 錬			613   軟歐 軟 敷 敷 敷 쀻 歸 歹 歿 614   殀 殄 砕 쟫 璲 쟫 瑂 碹 碠 瑂
470   古魯櫓炉 脂路 542		3 <i></i>	541	<b>- 公公</b>	615 殯殲殲殳殷殼毆毋毓笔
472		古魯 櫓 炉 賂 路 露 労 婁 廊 弄 朗 楼 榔 湞 湿		合 時 我 峽 峺 峭 蔦 峪 崋 崕   崗 嵜 峑 崛 崑 崔 崜 崚 崟 崘	616
4/3   加録調	472	牢狼篭老聾蝋郎六麓禄	544	嵌嵒媽嵋嵬嵳嵶嶇嶄嶂	618 汾汩汳沒沐泄浃泓沽泗
473   倭和話歪賄脇惑  547   幣帛帶帷幄幢幀幀幗幔  621   治洸洙洵洳洒洌浣涓浤	4/3			峨 峨 曛 嶽 隆 疑 嶼 巉 魏     巓 戀 巖 巛 巫 已 后 帋 帚 帙	620
	473	倭和話歪賄脇惑		<b>帑帛帶帷幄幃幀幎幗幔</b>	621

Kuten	Kuten 4th digit	Kuten	Kuten 4th digit	Kuten	Kuten 4th digit
1 to 3	<ul> <li>○ 浚涵淅渙湃滉溥滲 潛澳瀰瀏溛怉熙熕燠 爲犂狆猗獎瓎琅瑁璧 瓷甦畩疊</li> <li>○ 浚涵淅渙湃滉溥滲 潛澳瀰瀏溛怉熙熕燠 爲犂狆猗獎瓎琅瑁璧 瓷畦畩疊</li> <li>○ 沒涵淅渙湃滉溥滲 潛澳瀰瀏溛怉熙熕燠 爲犂狆猗獎瓎琅瑁璧 险聽於電行</li> <li>2 淅淦淙湟湎滓溟滯瀉潭灤濱瀛灣烋煦熬燧耀爼犇狎猜默玳琥瑩瓏瓣甃甼暑曇沽涔溝淦濱滿瀬漑滌澆潼澹濛潴炒烙煌熹燼爐牀犖狢猝穑玻琲瑣珱瓩甌畍畭疚湿涸淤渾渤澥濱灖 渥濱濱瀍鴈戶場燒 爨牋镜狡猯獰聑瑕瑶 瓲甍畉富疥湿涸淤渾渤濱濱灌溪潴炒烙煌熹儘爐縣発猧珀琺瑪 瓮甎畊崎虾伍號大臺海水漁滨灣濱瀍炯青媛熾 爛牆犢狠猴獨珀琺環 飥甓畆畼痂等過光減減減減</li> <li>○ 浚涵淅渙湃滉溥滲澄 潛澳瀰瀏溛怉熙熕燠 爰牾狃條猾郧瑂瑙璞 瓸管台畴疳。</li> </ul>	1 to 3 695	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	1 to 3	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 跟跣跼踈踉跿踝踞踐踟
623		696	岸	769	
624 625	浙淺淙淤淕淪淮渭湮菏	697 698	「經繙辦纖 罟羇羮翦耙聚聿胛脛 腦膣臂臠舍艝艷苣苞 茯莫茛嶌菻蒂蒿蒡蓼 薨藉蘊虍b經縹縩繿纛罅罠羌羶翩耜聟肄胥脩隋腴腟膺臧舐艚艸苟茆茵茫沙菴萇葭葩蒟蔡蕀蕁蕭薺蘓乕怙縲纙續歘鑩罨羔羸翳耡聢肆胙曆腆腽膓臉臺舖艟艾苒苜茴茗莇萓菠萪葆蓙蓿蕣蘂薔藏蘋皮纖纏纏纏纏緩級攤と電光蒸點,下曆腆腽膓臉臺舖艟艾苒苜茴茗莇萓菠萪葆蓙蓿蕣蘂薔藏蘋皮纖絡縭纔 罔羃羲翔耒聒聹冐胯 腮膕膽臚與艙舻芬苻 荐莢莠萋萸蒭葢蓆蔕 薑蕾藜緩蚩織紡纔。罔羃羲翔耒聒聹冐胯 腮膕膽臚與艙舻芬苻 荐莢莠萋萸蒭葢蓆蔕 薑蕾藜纋蚩熾縮繽纔 罖羆羯竧耄聊聰肚胖 胼膂腨雘吾舳艨莌莓 茱莚莵菽萢蒄萵蓚菡 薤藜藝蘸蚓粒鄉緣縭纔 罖羆羯竧耄聊聰肚胖 胼膂腨欍触驗較节 芍茭莠萋萸蒭葢蓆蔕 薑蕾藜纋蚩□繳絡縭纖 罘羈羮翡耘聘聽肬胱 腥膤臀臓舊艘艱苡苹 苔莖莉菁蓤蒑蒹藣蔔 薊薐藹蘿蚪以綠縞纖纖 罘羈羮翡耘聘聽肬胱 腥膤臀臓舊艘艱苡苹 苔莖莉菁蓤葮蒹藣蔔 薊薐藹蘿蚪	770 771	I菜 蹣躊躱軾輌轆澣逅逧 遞邊郭酥醪釟鈕鉋鋩 鍼鏨鏉鑒鑷閔閹關陏 險雋霈蘼靤靺鞴韶顧踵蹇蹕躓躾輊輦輤辯迹逶逷遬邊鄂酩醿釡鈑鉐錏鍿緰鏥鐃鑄靅閖闏閳陋陜隧雉霓霽靦鞆韃韵顋ଞ蹇蹕躓躾輊輦輤辯迹逶逷遬邊鄂酩醿釡鈑鉐錏鍿緰鏥鐃鑄鐨삃閳閬閘陜陦隲槜霑靏勒鞜韜頣贤蹜躦市輒轅輕迴逑 迺遲邱鄰醉靌釶鈜銛 錺鎭鏐鐫鑞蠼閬闌I 陀嘩隰雜霏靆靫鞐韋頸顰似蹬銷聫輌轗轆連辺逡 迺遲邱鄰醉靌釶鈜銛 錺鎭鏐鐫鑞蠼閬闌I 陀薩猩霖龗皺靫鞜韜頤 了 と
626		699	新 篇 瀬 縜 縜 鯥 秧 桜 綫 趣 繊 纛 纜 缸 缺	772	M   E   M   B   B   B   B   B   B   B   B   B
627 628	滉溷滓溽溯滄溲滔滕溏	700 701	罅罌罍罐网罕罔罘	773	<b>躲 躾 軅 軈 軋 軛 軣 軼 軻 軫</b>
629		701 702	古民 色 早 林 訂 絹 熊 幕 轉 羇 羌 羔 羞 羝 羚 羣 羯 羲 羹	774 775	
630 631	漾 漓 滷 澆 潺 潸 澁 澀 潯	703 704	羹羶羸譱翅翆翊翕翔翡 煎贸殿翻题考考考 ま	776 777	糖轎 糖轎 轉 等   <
632		705 706	弱	778	m
633 634	濔濘濱濮濛瀉瀋濺瀑瀁	706 707	聚智聢聯聳聲聰聶聹聽	779 780	道逶逵達迸 湯 淵 連 滿 洒 追 渝 滿 溝
634 635		708	押胥胙胝胄胚胖脉膀胱	781 782	遞遨遯遶隨遲邂遽邁邀
636 637	炮烟 烋 烝 烙 焉 烽 焜 焙 煥 熙 熙 晦 怒 鸠 煋 惺 〓 爅 慎	709 710	脛脩脣脯腋	782 783	邊邊邏邨邯邱邵郢郤扈
638	点	711 712	腦腴膃膈膊膀膂膠膕膤	783 784	酥酪醋醋醉醂醢醫醯
639 640	燠 燬 燧 燵 燼 豩 熤 雌 嘘 爛 擧 妥 爬 妥	712 713	膣腟腸膩膰膵膾膸膽臀	785 786	醪醵 醴 醺 釀 釁 釉 釋 釐 釖
641	爲爻爼爿牀牆牋牘牴牾	713 714	鬱臧臺臻臾舁舂舅與舊	787	鈕飯鉞鉗鉅鉉鉤鉈銕鈿
642 643	犂犁犇犒榮犢犧犹犲狃	715 716	舍舐舖舩舫舸舳艀艙艘	788 789	鉋 鉐 銜 銖 銓 銛 鉚 鋏 銹 銷   丝 岙 筎 筎
644	清稅猜循稅稅稅 精額積額 排	717	贈	790	<b>劉 錢 錚 錣 錺 錵 錻 鍜 鍠</b>
645 646	獎 獏 默 獗 獪 獨 獰 獸 獵 獻 湖 珈 ዦ 农 玦 珀 珥 珥 玹 珥	718 719	苣苟苒苴苳苺莓范苻苹	791 792	鍼鍮鍖鎰鎬鎭鎔鍅鏖鏗 新嫁缴締縄缀縛舞頌縛
647	琅瑯琥珸琲琺瑕琿瑟瑙	720 721	茵茴茖茲茱荀茹荐荅	793 794	会
648 649	瑁瑜瑩瑰瑣瑪瑶瑾璋璞	721 722	茯芫茗荔莅莚莪莟莢莖	794 795	鑒鑄鑛鑠鑢鑞鑪鈩鑰鑵   毎绺缕霧線響點門問問
650	華 资	723 724 725	莨菴萓菫菎菽萃菘萋菁	796	関閉開開盟里與問別間
651 652	瓷甄 甃 甅 甌 甎 甍 甕 甓 甞 畔 甬 里 畄 짠 畦 畉 畛 畆 畚	724 725	幕長菠菲萍萢萠莽萸蔆	797 798	
653 654	<b>畩時畧畫畭畸當疆疇畴</b>	726 727	帝葩葆萬葯葹萵蓊葢蒹	799 800	隋 陋 陷 陝 陞
654 655	瓷姓畩疊痃痣瘋瘰癩 皖 新甄角時疊疵痞瘍瘻癪癲惟 與 所 所 所 所 所 所 所 所 所 所 所 所 所	727 728	高莠蔘	800 801	陝陟陦陲陬隍隘隕隗
656	法痞痾痿痼瘁痰痺痲痳	729 730	蓼蕀蕣蕘蕈	802 803	馬雉雍襍雜霍雕雹雷霆
657 658	風傷 希 温 瘧 瘠 瘡 瘢 瘤 瘴 痩 瘻 癇 癋 癍 癜 瘴 癖 癢 癨	730 731	尋 蘂 蕋 蕕 薀 薤 薈 薑 薊 夢 蕙 蒌 苺 藪 莎 苺 蒻 蕎	803 804	
659 660	瀬癪癧癬癰	732 733	藉齊藏臺藐藕藝藥藜藹	805 806	<b>配配 藍勒 靫 靱 靹 鞅 靼 鞁</b>
661	腫	733 734	組	806	<b>鞂 納 鞋 掌 鞐 鞜                                </b>
662 663	<b>盍盖盒盞盡盥盧盪蘯盻</b>	735 736	纳蚌蜡蚯蛄蛆蚰蛉蠇蚫	808	韶韵頏頌頸頤頡頷頹顆
664		736	型 蛄 蛍 蛬 蚥 珠 蛯 蜒 現 蜈 蜀 蜃 භ 晉 蜉 蜍 蛹 蜊 暢 蜿	809 810	<b>精韶顏 飆餞饐溤駲驅驢髏鬙 関魎</b> 雞頂顛顳飩餤饋駇駻驂驔憪鬖髺閒顫 句話以下影響閱數區的餐戶票 音頭顰颪銄餥餺駝騑騾欇龣髷鬚岒鮢 音頭顰颪銄餥餤點騑騳鼺髟 鬟閛魻 音頭蟹颪銄飺豑騑驜骮髣 罿魃鮖
665 666	瞎瞋瞑瞠瞞瞰瞶皧瞿瞼	738 739	蜷蜻蜥蜩蜚蝠蝟蝸蝌蝎	811 812	飆
667	督 暖 暖 隻 證 矚 芳 矢 发 红     砌 砒 確 砠 礪 硅 碎 硴 碆 硼	739 740	蝴 壁 蝇	813	践
668 669	<b>倍碌碣碵碪碯磑磆磋磔</b>	741 742	螽蟀蟐雖螫蟄螳蟇蟆螻	814 815	馮馼駟駛駝駘駑駭駮駱
670	帳 帳 愣 裙 \	742	<b>垙 甀 蟠 縣 蠍 蟾 蟶 蟠 蟒 蟒</b> 睽 <b>蠖 橒 蠢 蠡 騺 蠶 蠹 蠹</b> 鬹	816	新
671 672	礫祒祠祗祟祚祕祾谌禄	744 745	<b>衄</b> 奶 衒 衙 衞 衢 衫 袁 衾 袞	817 818	驢驥驤驩驫驪骭骰骼髀
673		746	兩 孟蟯蟆衄衵袍裝褓褸 覈覺訃詒點蟟蟟露蟠蠕衙祈衽裱裡蘗 襷覬ണ調整蠍蟲衞袗裃禆禠 欄覩퇪訌詗蟟螳螳擊齏而袄衽裱褪襞襪覡觚訛詭螢數蟾蝨衟衿祽禆禠 欄覩觗詽罰螢蟄蟾蟲而袮衽裱祻饕襠囊瓷納我祖許高兴。 下親縣古說	819	腰胸 腿 脰 麻 쉾 色 芳 笔 再 髫髮 髴 髱 髷
674 675	稟禀稱稻稾稷穃穗 <b>穉穑</b>	747 748	裝裹褂裼裴裨裲褄褌褊	820 821	至
676		749		822	
677 678	竊針竏竕竓站竚竝竡娭	750 751	<b>杰</b>	822 823 824	鮠鮨鮴鯀鯊鮹鯆鯏鯑鯒
679		752	敷 鶤 見 柷 柷 멊 眖 瓧 柷 軦 覺 覽 覿 觀 觚 觜 觗 觧 觴 觸	825	>
680	筐笄筍笋筌筅筵筥筴	753 754	彭訖証証誑訝訥訶詁詛	826	鰛鰥鰤鰡鰰鱇鰲鱆鰾鱚
681 682	見作似成巫疳園昆砸空	754 755		827 828	黯 聴 離 殟 兎 兎 楄 稨 傌 馬 鳥 鴆 鴆 鴆 鴦 鶯 鴣 鴟 鵄 鴕 鴒
683 684	箴篆籍篩簑簔篦篥籠簀 笠簓笛篴笏簭笼箅笋	756 757	諚鯟諳諧諤諱謔諠諢 <u>颽</u>	829 830	<b>鵁鴿鴾鵆鵈</b> 鵝鑗鰉ӹᅖӹ蛐鹋軸
685	医 原 の 軍 産 に に に に に に に に に に に に に	757 758	<b>調 以 可 営 唖 益 改 価 </b>	831	璃 鳥 膈 膈 ೄ ೄ ೄ 焉 焉 焉 鶇 鵯 鵺 鶚 鶤 鶩 鶲 鷄 鷁 鶻
686 687	院盍眈眸瞎暫砌碚碾 礫褉秕稟穢窖竊竦笞 筧箚箴簇簟籘粭粽糲 紵瘤甛盖眇睇瞋瞻砒碌碼碃祀複秧禀穗窩竍竭笵筺筰箋蒃簓簅籟粢糀鑺紂絆癶晳盒眄睚暞矇礦碣磅磚鸻憘秬稱糧竃竏竰笨筓峳箒篝篳簘籖粫糅糶紜綘彔皺蘯眛峷瞿矮碆磋 礙褀禺稙穉窕邃竡笘 筥箍篌籬簧箍籵椝檿 皋皺蘯眛峷瞿矮碆磋 礙褀禺稙穉窕邃竡笘 筥箍篌籬簧箍籵椝檿 紮級皋皺蘯眛峷瞿矮碆磋 礙褀禺稙穉窕邃竡笘 筥箍篌籬簧箍籵椝檿 紮聚泉皺蘯眛峷瞿矮碆磋 礙褀禺稙穉窕邃竡笘 筥箍篌籬簧箍籵椝檿 紮級泉酸遷眛峷瞿矮碆磋 礙褀禺稙穉窕邃竡笘 筥箍篌籬簧箍籵椝檿 熬彩 岩鄉	759 760	證語替譚譜編輯論議與論	832 833	鴉鶺鵙鵙鷂騺鷓鷸鷦鷭 雜觷鵙難醬点鹹腦 <b>冬</b> 鹿
688	宗 糀 糅 糂 稼 精 糜 糢 鬻 糯	761	讓讖讙讚谺豁谿豈豌豎	834	兩 馬 夠 鰤 鳥 幽 膷 鰮 鹿 崖 塵 塵 廔 麒 麿 麑 麝 麥 麩 麸 麪
689 690	糲糴糶糺紆 섫纭妣蚉焬슚敽绁绐	762 763	豐豕豢豬豸豺貂貉貅貊	835 836	<b>麪靡黌黎黏黐黔黜點黝</b> 點當鹽冶壓鹽光點
691	<b>紵絆絳絖絎絲絨絮絏絣</b>	764	<b>貳貳貶賈賁賤賣賚賽賺</b>	837	電 整 整 鼓 鼕 鼡 鼬 鼾 齊 齒
692 693	經 绣 條 綏 絽 綛 綺 綮 綣 綵	765 766	期	838 839	鰛鱠鴃鳼 鷞鶲鷯麋菀黠黽齔齵鰥鱧鴧鳹鶕鵙鷝鸇鶅麠湬鳰磶 鵙鶲鷓飅蘂霒灩齨齧鯸鱧鴪鳹鶕鵙鷝靎鷩麙萟鰴鼕魪ঙ叶魚鴣 鵙鶲鷓鷉麥霒黷鼬齧 歐濟縣 鳴鶴鷹黎醋歐韶鰸搖 治 化铅谱谱谱谱 医唇囊瘤 医大點蔽弯趾 医皮肤
694	村紅 新紅 新 新 新 新 新 新 新 新 新 新 統 就 然 將 條 緩 緩 網 網 為 為	767	計計語說論語證 語語語語語語語 計語語語語語語 記談語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語語	840	堯槇遙瑤凜煕
1					

### **Using the Calculator**

#### Example of various calculations

	Examp	le calculations	Operation	Displayed result
Ad	dition,	14×3+5=	14[×]3[+]5[=]	47
mu	otraction, Itiplication, ision	(-24)÷4-2=	[—]24[÷]4[—]2[=]	<b>-</b> 8
Co	nstants	34 <u>+57</u> = 45 <u>+57</u> =	34[+]57[=] (The addend becomes ) 45 [=] (the constant.	91 102
		48 <u>-23</u> = 14 <u>-23</u> =	48[-]23[=] (The subtrahend becomes the constant.)	25 —9
		68×25= 68×40=	$68[\times]25[=]$ The multiplicand becomes the constant.	1700 2720
		35 <u>÷ 14</u> = 98 <u>÷ 14</u> =	35[÷]14[=] (The divisor becomes the constant.)	2.5
Per	centages	What is 10% of 200?	200[×]10[%]	20
		9 is what % of 36?	9[÷]36[%]	25
	nsumption calculation	How much tax is included in 3000 yen?	3000[TAX]	142 tax
		How much is 3000 yen without tax ?	3000[TAX][TAX]	2858 w/o tax
	emiums, counts	10% increase of 200?	200[+]10[%] (Or 200[×]10[%][+][=])	220
		20% discount of 500?	500[—]20[%] (Or 500[×]20[%][—][=])	400
Pov	wers	$(4^3)^2 =$	4[×][=][×][=]	4096
Inve	rse numbers	1/8=	8[÷][=]	0.125
-	Sum	27×5=	[CM] 27[×] 5 [M+]	M 135
1em		+)87÷3= +)68+15=		M 29 M 83
ory		$\frac{+,08+13=}{(Sum)}$	[RM] as a [=]	M 247
Memory calculations	Temporary memory	, ,	[CM]13[M+]3[X]4[M+]50[-]45[X][RM][=]	M 125
ulat	Constant	135×(12+14)=	[CM] 12[+]14[M+]	M 26
ions	memory	$(12+14) \div 5 =$	135[×][RM][=]	M 3510
0,			[RM][÷]5[=]	M 5.2

• M appears for any value other than 0.

#### Note

• Press @ [CM] to clear the memory before starting.

#### When E appears

0.01 [%])

- When *E* appears as a result, no further calculations can be made. Press @ar [C · CE].
  - ① When dividing by 0 (Example: 5 [÷] 0 [=])
  - ② When the number of integers in the memory exceeds 12 digits (Example: [CM] 99999999999 [M+] 1 [M+])
    ③ When the number of integers in a calculation result is 12 digits or more (Example: 1000000000 [÷]
- Numbers after the decimal point are left off when calculating tax.
   Example: If 120 [TAX] is pressed, 5Tax appears.

### **Multiaccess Combinations**

Below are the main combinations of transmission functions operable simultaneously.

Transmission type				-phone all	i-mode		ode ail	S	MS		trans cket)	Data trans
transmission	Make	Receive	Make	Receive		Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	(64K)
Voice call	×*1	×*1	×	×*2	×	×	○,3	×	O <sub>*3</sub>	O*7	○*7	×
Video-phone	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	O <sub>*3</sub>	×	×	×
i-mode	O*4	0	×*5	×*10	×	○,46	○,3	×	O <sub>*3</sub>	×	×	×
i-αppli transmission	×	0	×	×	×	×	O <sub>*3</sub>	×	O <sub>*3</sub>	×	×	×
Data transmission (Packet)	×*8	○*9	×	×	×	×	×	×	○,3	×	×	×
Data transmission (64K)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○,3	×	×	×

- O: Current transmission is retained and new transmission is processed.
- ×: Current transmission is retained. (Cannot process new transmission.)
- \*1 Available when subscribed to Call Waiting Service. (@P. 487)
- \*2 Continue voice call, or disconnect and receive video-phone.
- \*3 Check new message/Check new SMS are not available. Auto receive is available.
- \*4 Calls from Phone To (AV Phone To) are available. (PP. 230)
- \*5 Calls from Phone To (AV Phone To) are available, but i-mode is disconnected. Previous screen reappears after video-phone ends. (126 P. 230)
- \*6 Sending from Mail To is available. (@P. 230)
- \*7 During a call, transmitting data (packet) screen appears on FOMA terminal. When ending transmission, first, data transmission ends and then phone ends with subsequent ending operations.
- \*8 Calls can be made hands-free when a hands-free device is connected.
- \*9 During transmission, phone screen appears. When \*\* is pressed, voice call ends, and then data transmission (packet) ends with subsequent ending operations. (When ending transmission with a device such as a PC. it is possible to end data transmission (packet) regardless of above.)
- \*10 Video-phone calls can be answered anytime except during transmission.

### **Assistant View Combinations**

Below are the main combinations of functions operable simultaneously.

		Mail	Phone- book	Schedule	ToDo list	Text memo	Calculator	Support book	Book- Reader	Document- Viewer
	Voice call	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	×	×
0	i-mode	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Original	i-mode mail/SMS	0*	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Ţ.	Phonebook	0	_	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
ction	Schedule	0	0	-	×	0	0	0	0	0
ľ	ToDo list	0	0	×	_	0	0	0	0	0
	Text memo	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0

- O: Available X: Not available -: Same function; not available.
- \* Not available during Chat mail.

#### **Note**

 When connecting to URL read from Bar code reader or Character reader, Assistant View may not be available during i-mode. Bookmark URL and connect using bookmark. (P. 220)

### Services Available from the FOMA Terminal

Servi	ce	Phone number
Collect calls (transmission charged to rec	eiver)	(No area code) 106
General landline and DoCoMo mobile ph (Phone numbers of customers who declir	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	(No area code) 104
Telegrams (fees apply)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time tone service (fees apply)		(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (fees apply)		Area code of region + 177
Police emergencies		(No area code) 110
Fire Department/Medical assistance		(No area code) 119
Emergencies and accidents at sea		(No area code) 118
Busy signal inquiries		(No area code) 114
Disaster message (fees apply)		(No area code) 171

#### Note

- An additional 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) handling fee is charged for each call when collect calls (106) are made. (As of May, 2005)
- An additional 100 yen (105 yen including tax) directory fee is charged when using directory assistance (104). People with disabilities in vision or upper limbs can receive this service free of charge. For details, call 116 (NTT sales counter) from a landline phone. (As of May, 2005)
- When calling 110, 119, 118 from your FOMA terminal, your location cannot be pinpointed. For verification
  purposes, the police or fire stations may return your call. State that you are calling from a mobile phone,
  and give your phone number and exact location.
  - Remain stationary to ensure that you are not disconnected while making an emergency call, and keep handset turned on to receive calls for about ten minutes afterwards.
- Depending on the region, calls to the police or fire station may not be connected. In such cases, use the nearest payphone or landline phone.
- If landline phones subscribed to Call Forwarding or Voice Warp Services are set to forward calls to mobile
  phones, callers may hear the phone ringing even if the mobile phone is busy, outside the service area, in
  Self mode or turned off depending on the settings for the landline phones/mobile phones.
- Services such as 116 (NTT sales counter), Dial Q2, message service and credit card calls are not available.
  - (Automatic credit card calls to a FOMA terminal can be made from a landline telephone or payphone.)

### **Options and Accessories**

Combine the FOMA terminal with various optional accessories (sold separately) for expanded personal and business use.

Some products may not be available in some areas. Contact a DoCoMo retailer for details. Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details.

- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch P01/P02
- Earphone plug adapter P001
- Earphone/Microphone with switch P001\*/P002\*
- Stereo earphone set P001\*
- Earphone terminal P001\*

Earphone plug adapter.

- FOMA indoor supplementary antenna

- FOMA USB cable
- Flat-plug stereo earphone set P01
- In-car holder SH04
- Carrying case SH05
- Flat-plug AV cable P01
- Overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01

### **Using with External Devices**

Using supported external devices, movies saved on miniSD Memory Cards can be played back on the FOMA terminal\*.

\* Earphone/Microphone with switch, Stereo earphone set and Earphone terminal cannot be used without

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (PP. 381)

For details on compatible devices, refer to http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/products/sh901is.shtml. Or, contact the number below.

- Play i-motion created on external devices (including audio data) on the FOMA terminal. (PP P. 585)
- \* Some movies cannot be played back depending on the file format or the type of external device.

#### Sharp Data Communication Support Center

TEL: 03-5396-2351

Hours: 10:00 am to 12:00 noon, 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm, Monday through Friday (Closed on weekends, national holidays, and company holidays)

• Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

#### **About Movie Player Software**

QuickTime<sup>™</sup> Player (Free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3+3GPP) provided by Apple Computer, Inc. is required to play back movies on a PC.

QuickTime<sup>™</sup> Player can be downloaded from the Apple Computer, Inc. web page.

- To download, a PC connected to the Internet is required. Additional transmission fees are charged for downloading.
- Refer to the Apple Computer, Inc. web page for details on system requirements, downloading, and usage instructions

#### **Data Link Software**

Use SH Series Data Link Software to transfer data, such as phonebook, mail messages, bookmarks, and schedules, between a FOMA terminal and a connected PC. Also transfer data between a miniSD Memory Card and a PC.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (1287 P. 381)

Download Data Link Software from http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/soft/soft.html.

Refer to the web page above or the software's help feature, for details on downloading, transferable data, operating environment, how to operate, restrictions, etc.

- To download, a PC connected to the Internet is required.
- Additional transmission fees are charged for downloading.
- The FOMA USB cable (sold separately) is required to connect to a PC and to use Data Link Software.
   Ir exchange is not available.
- Due to copyright laws, information downloaded cannot be transferred from the FOMA terminal, even with use
  of Data Link Software. Data prohibited from use outside the FOMA terminal cannot be transferred either.

#### Compatible OS

Microsoft Windows 98 Second Edition/Windows Me/Windows 2000 Professional/ Windows XP Home Edition/Windows XP Professional (all Japanese versions) \*\* Above OS compatible PC/AT models

#### Using Data Link Software

Copyright

While Data Link Software is distributed free of charge, the copyright belongs to the Sharp Corporation.

Disclaimer

Sharp Corporation assumes no legal liability to provide indemnities for defects (including faulty software operation or failure to operate), and assumes no other warranty liability. Nor does Sharp Corporation warrant the software's merchantability, or its compatibility to any specific user purpose.

#### For technical questions regarding Data Link Software

Sharp Data Communication Support Center

TEL: 03-5396-2351

Hours: 10:00 am to 12:00 noon, 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm, Monday through Friday

(Closed on weekends, national holidays, and company holidays)

Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

# Appendix

## Playing i-motion (Including Audio Data) Created with PC on the FOMA Terminal

Use a PC to save songs from a purchased CD to the miniSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (FF P. 381)

- Songs saved on the miniSD Memory Card can be used for personal use only.
- Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party's copyrighted material.
- Do not copy or transfer songs saved on the miniSD Memory Card to PC or any other medium.

## Convert songs taken from CDs to AAC format using commercially available software, and save them on a PC.

• For details on how to use the software, see the maker's homepage, etc.

### Insert the miniSD Memory Card into a PC and copy audio files.

- Copy procedure is as follows.
- Rename the file created in step 1 to "VOICExxx.3gp". ("xxx" is a single-byte number between 001 and 100.)
  - To rename files, first set the PC to show extensions.
- 2. Copy to the ¥PRIVATE¥SHARP¥VOICE folder in the miniSD Memory Card.
  - If there is no VOICE folder in the miniSD Memory Card, insert the miniSD Memory Card into the FOMA terminal so it is recognized, and re-insert into the PC.
  - For details on creating folders in the miniSD Memory Card, refer to P. 384.

## In stand-by, press ● 乙基 ② ② ■ # □ , select a song from the *Music/Voice* folder and play i-motion (including audio data).

 Refer to P. 359 for details on i-motion playback, P. 361 for Repeat playback, and P. 364 for Continuous play.

#### **Note**

- Playback is stopped if alarm activates or call is received.
- Audio files may not play properly depending on the software.

## **Troubleshooting**

Check to see if software update is necessary. If so, perform update. (Updating Software P. 597)

Problem	Explanation	Page
Does not function	Is the FOMA terminal turned off?	P. 47
	Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 46
	Is the battery pack inserted properly?	P. 41
Does not turn on	Was pressed for 2+ seconds?	P. 47
	Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 46
	If handset does not turn on after alert tone sounds, recharge the	
	battery.	
	Is the battery pack inserted properly?	P. 41
Power turns off	Is the IC portion of the FOMA card dirty?	P. 38
	Is the battery pack connector terminal or FOMA terminal charger	P. 41
	terminal dirty?	
Does not recharge	Is the battery pack inserted properly?	P. 41
	Is the charger terminal dirty?	_
	Clean terminal with a cotton swab.	
	Is the AC adapter connector properly connected to the FOMA	P. 44
	terminal and Desktop holder?	P. 45
	Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder?	P. 45
Handset is recharged	Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder?	P. 45
but quickly loses power	Is the battery still usable?	P. 43
	Is the charger terminal dirty?	_
	Clean terminal with a cotton swab.	
	Battery duration varies depending on handset use.	P. 43
Keys do not respond	Is the FOMA terminal turned off?	P. 47
	Is All lock or Key guard active?	P. 149
		P. 155
酬 appears and calls	Is the handset outside the service area or in a place with a weak	P. 52
cannot be made	signal?	
self appears and calls	Is Self mode set?	P. 152
cannot be made		
Calls cannot be made	Is phonebook PIM locked?	P. 153
from the phonebook	Is All lock enabled?	P. 149
Calls cannot be made	Is Keypad dial lock set?	P. 154
with the dial keys	Is All lock enabled?	P. 149
Call is interrupted or	Is the handset in an area with a weak signal?	P. 52
disconnects	Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 46
The other party's voice is	Is the earpiece volume too high?	P. 68
too loud or is distorted	To and darpidod volume too mg	
When saving to	Is Show sent messages or Show received messages set to <i>OFF</i> ?	P. 156
phonebook, cannot	To chew some modelages of chew received medicages see to CFF.	1.100
select Sent messages		
or <b>Rcvd messages</b>		
When a message is	● Is In-use mail tone set to <b>OFF</b> ?	P. 295
received, set ring tone		1 - 200
does not sound		
Ring tone does not	● Is the earpiece volume set to <i>Silent</i> ?	P. 121
sound	Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 46
	Is the FOMA terminal turned off?	P. 47
	Has the current call finished?	P. 52
	• Is a call on hold?	P. 53
	1	P. 84

Problem	Explanation	Page
Ring tone does not	Is mute seconds set?	P. 161
sound (Continued)	Is Accept calls set?	P. 158
	Is Reject calls set?	P. 159
	Is Reject user unset set?	P. 160
	Is Reject unknown set?	P. 161
	Is the ring tone set to No ring tone?	P. 118
	Is the Voice Mail Service active and is the ringing time set to	P. 485
	0 seconds?	
	Is Drive mode active?	P. 70
	Is Manner mode active?	P. 126
When a message is	When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a	P. 100
received, a different ring	particular individual, that mail ring tone sounds.	
tone sounds	When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a	P. 106
	particular group, that mail ring tone sounds.	_
	When different mail ring tones are set for both individual and group,	P. 100
	the mail ring tone for the individual sounds.	
	When multiple messages are received, the specific mail ring tone of	_
	the last person sounds.	P. 100
	When the other party's mail address is	P. 100
	<b>phone number @docomo.ne.jp</b> , save only the phone number for the	
	mail address and set a specific mail ring tone.  • Is the sender's mail address saved correctly in the phonebook or is a	P. 100
	specific mail ring tone set?	P. 100
	When SMS is received, specified mail ring tone sounds if set in	
	phonebook.	_
	Is the phone number saved correctly?	P. 98
Busy signal sounds after	Has "090", "080", "070" or the area code dialed?	P. 52
dialing	Does      Appear?	P. 52
	If the other party's signal is weak, the call may not connect.	_
Clicks sound during a	The FOMA terminal has a weak signal and is switching areas.	_
call	The Fount terminal had a work digital and to ownering arous.	
Service is not	Subscription is required to use i-mode.	_
registered appears	If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal	
	power and restart.	
The date appears	Is Select language set to <i>English</i> ?	P. 47
backwards		
Please wait appears	The line is not in service or extremely congested. Try again later.	_
Cannot make/receive	Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 46
calls, send/receive mail	Does	P. 52
or use i-mode	• Is Self mode set to <b>ON</b> ?	P. 152
Cannot enter text	Has the character limit been exceeded?	_
Display is blank	Is the FOMA terminal turned off?	P. 47
1 1, 1, 1	Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 46
	• Is Power saver mode active? If <b>LED display on</b> is set, picture light	P. 134
	also flashes.	
	Is Auto power OFF set?	P. 432
Message on DoCoMo	Software needs to be updated.	P. 597
web page or お知らせ&	Update software.	
ヘルプ (News & Help)		
on iMenu says software		
update is necessary		
IC-card (for FeliCa	Is IC-card lock or Remote lock all enabled?	P. 340
functions) is unusable	Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 46



Problem	Explanation	Page
Timer recording screen	Is the FOMA terminal properly connected to TV?	P. 456
does not appear even	Press the input button on TV and set the channel to which flat-plug	
though TV and FOMA	AV cable is connected (such as Video 1).	
terminal clocks are		
synchronized		
Cannot record programs	Make sure the FOMA terminal is not in stand-by for reservation.	P. 459
currently being broadcast or video	Make sure to set channel of program being broadcast.     Could not receive an NTSC signal. Make sure video player is	
currently playing back	connected properly. PAL is not supported. If an NTSC signal is not	
currently playing back	received, one-touch recording does not start. However, Program	
	recording will start.	
Only a portion of the	When scheduled recording times on FOMA terminal and a video	P. 459
program is recorded	player overlap, the both will record programs. However, because of	
	the overlap, some programs may not be properly recorded.	
	Program may not be properly recorded if video player clock and	
	FOMA terminal clock are not synchronized. Synchronize both clocks.	
A different program is	Check the reservation details.	P. 459
recorded	Synchronize the clock of the video player with that of the FOMA	
	terminal. Program is not properly recorded if the clocks are not synchronized.	
	Are the reservation times and the set channel correct?	
	Is the program to be recorded on the video player the same as the	
	program to be recorded on the FOMA terminal?	
Video quality of file is not	Is the video recorded with relatively low quality modes like "L	P. 459
good	(Standard)" or "S (Standard)"? This is due to the file format and is not	
	the result of a malfunction.	
Video does not have	Adjust the FOMA terminal volume.	P. 460
sound	Is the handset connected properly to the sound terminal when	
	recording?  • Is Audio settings set to <i>Mono (L)</i> or <i>Mono (R)</i> ?	
Cannot record	Check that the video player and TV are functioning properly. In	P. 455
Carriot record	addition, check that the flat-plug AV cable is properly connected.	F. 433
	If the TV signal is not good, video may not record properly.	
Cannot record with good	Video signal degrades and handset may not record properly in the	P. 455
quality	following situations (when recording from a video tape).	
	<ul> <li>An extended period of time has passed since the video tape was</li> </ul>	
	recorded on	
	Video was recorded on video tape using long play mode	
\( \text{\text{\$\exitt{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitt{\$\text{\$\exittit{\$\text{\$\exittit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exittit{\$\text{\$\}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}}	Video tape has degraded	D /
Video does not play	Frames may skip or sound may jump depending on the miniSD  Mamon Cord used or the recorded vides.	P. 455
back normally (frames skip, sound jumps)	Memory Card used or the recorded video.	
There is no NTSC signal	Make sure video player is connected properly. PAL is not supported.	P. 455
The handset makes	Main camera uses a linear motor to move the lends, which may	P. 173
sounds or vibrates while	cause sound or vibrations.	P. 178
using the camera		P. 183
=		P. 189
Total call charge does	Total call charge for FOMA card does not increase when maximum	P. 471
not increase	limit (approximately 16,770,000 yen) has been reached. Reset total	
	call charge to 0 yen.	

### **List of Error Messages**

 A three-digit number will also appear with some messages. Some of the numbers are codes used only by DoCoMo.

Message	Explanation	Page
Invalid UIM, requested	Appears when an image or melody protected by FOMA card restriction	P. 39
service not available	functions is selected.	
	Appears when a screen memo or Message R/F protected by FOMA	P. 39
	card restriction functions is selected.	
Please insert UIM	Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted.	P. 38
Security code?	A restricted operation was attempted under PIM lock.	P. 153
	Enter correct terminal security code (four to eight digits) to temporarily	
	disable PIM lock and continue operation.	
PIN code locked	Appears when power is turned on while PIN code is locked.      The power is turned on while PIN code is locked.	P. 147
	Enter correct PUK when prompt appears to disable PIN lock.	
PUK is blocked	Appears when power is turned on or a FOMA card operation is used	P. 147
	while PUK is blocked.	
	Contact a DoCoMo retailer.	
Memory is full	Appears when the FOMA terminal handset phonebook has 500 phone	P. 96
	numbers or mail addresses saved and another number or address is	
	about to be added.	
This UIM cannot be	Appears when a FOMA card not usable by the terminal may have been	_
recognized	inserted.  • Appears when FOMA card may be damaged or not properly inserted.	P. 38
	Make sure the correct FOMA card is inserted.	F. 30
Secret data saved	Appears when Secret mode is not active and secret data is about to be	P. 114
Secret data saved	sent by 2-touch dialing.	F. 114
Self mode	A restricted operation was attempted while in Self mode.	P. 152
Service unavailable	Appears when network service is attempted but handset is outside the	P. 484
Service unavailable	service area or in a place with no signal.	F. 404
	Retry after moving to a location where 🖫 appears.	
Unable to use at the	Appears when Video-phone calling is attempted from outside the	P. 79
moment	service area or in a place with no signal.	1.70
Keypad dial lock	A restricted operation was attempted while Keypad dial lock is set.	P. 154
Security code is wrong.	Appears when an incorrect terminal security code (four to eight digits) is	P. 144
Please enter 4-8 digits	entered.	1.144
r loade chief i e aigite	Enter correct terminal security code.	
	To prevent the possibility that a terminal security code is changed by	
	anyone else, the FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring	
	identification (a driver's license, etc.) to the DoCoMo retailer in the case	
	of a forgotten security code.	
Enter correct network	Appears when an incorrect network security code is entered.	P. 145
security code	Enter correct network security code.	
	To prevent the possibility that a network security code is changed by	
	anyone else, the FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring	
	identification (a driver's license, etc.) to DoCoMo retailer in the case of	
	a forgotten security code.	
Unable to renew memory	Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same	P. 114
number xxx	memory number that stores secret data when Secret mode is not	D 457
	active.	P. 157
	Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores an entry for Accept/Reject call.	to P. 159
	momory number that stores an entry for Acceptive ject call.	1.108

Message	Explanation	Page
Switching failed - other	Appears when other phone terminal is busy and Dual network switching	P. 492
phone busy	is not available.	
	Switch after ending other phone's transmission.	
Please wait	The line is not in service or extremely congested. Try again later. Press	-
	a dial key to erase the message.	
	◆ The line is not in service or extremely congested. Try i-mode again	
	later.	-
	• 110, 119, and 118 can be called. However, a call may not be connected	
	depending on phone line conditions.	
Cannot use. Connected to	i-mode can only be disconnected. Other i-mode operations are not	P. 503
external device	available because handset is connected to an external device.	
Unable to open image	Flash movie has an error.	_

#### i-mode

 Numbers in brackets () appearing in i-mode error messages are sent from the i-mode center as a code to distinguish between errors.

Message	Explanation	Page
Invalid UIM, requested	Appears when an image or melody protected by FOMA card restriction	P. 39
service not available	functions is selected.	
	<ul> <li>Appears when a screen memo or Message R/F protected by FOMA</li> </ul>	P. 39
	card restriction functions is selected.	
Invalid UIM. Requested	<ul> <li>Appears when i-αppli software protected by FOMA card restriction</li> </ul>	P. 39
software unavailable	functions is selected.	
SMS is full. Unable to	• Appears when the maximum number of SMS are saved in the FOMA terminal	P. 307
сору	handset or the FOMA card and no further messages could be copied.	
"i-αppli To" function is not	Appears when attempting to start software, unauthorized to be linked,	P. 325
set.	from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, or i-mode mail. The	
	software could not be started.	
Content length exceeds	Appears when Normal type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and cannot be	P. 332
replayable size for i-motion	downloaded.	
Receiving data exceeds	Appears when Normal type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and could not	P. 332
replayable size for	be downloaded completely.	
i-motion		
Content length exceeds	Appears when Streaming type i-motion file exceeds 2 MB and cannot	P. 332
maximum size for i-motion	be downloaded.	
Receiving data exceeds	Appears when Streaming type i-motion file exceeds 2 MB and could not	P. 332
replayable size for i-motion	be downloaded completely.	
Service is not registered	Subscription is required to use i-mode.	P. 202
	● If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal	
	power and restart.	
SSL session cannot be	Appears when the attempt to connect to a site or Internet web page	P. 210
established	supporting SSL session failed. Try again later.	
SSL session failed	Appears when an error occurs during SSL authentication and the SSL	P. 210
	session is disconnected.	
Root certificate is not valid	<ul> <li>Appears when a certificate set to Disable is received.</li> </ul>	P. 241
	Confirm certificate contents, set Certificates setting to enable, and then	
	try connecting to the site again.	
URL is too long to register	URL exceeds maximum number of characters and cannot be registered	P. 219
	as a bookmark.	
No response (408)	Transmission disconnected due to no reply from the site or Internet web	P. 214
	page. Try again later.	
Cannot use. Connected to	i-mode can only be disconnected. Other i-mode operations are not	P. 503
external device	available because handset is connected to an external device.	

When dialing a video-phone call, the other party has Caller ID Request Service activated and the call does not connect. Set to send caller ID and call again.	Message	Explanation	Page
Your terminal ID and UIM   May appear while browsing sites or Internet web pages. Select Yes and press ● (OK) to send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select No and press ● (OK) to Send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select No and press ● (OK) to Send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select No and press ● (OK) to Send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select No and press ● (OK) to Send terminal ID and UIM ID are seven to the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.  • The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.  Out of service area.  • Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal.  To use i-mode service, move to a location where in appears.  • Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type setting is set to Normal type.  • Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  • Appears when interprited SSL certificate is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● (OK). To not connect, select No and press ● (OK).  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  • Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.  To connect, select Yes and press ● (Select). To not connect, select No and press ● (OK).  Set date and time.  • Appears when the SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select Yes and press ● (Select). To not connect, select No and press ● (OK).  Set date and time.  • Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages ex	Failed to connect	When dialing a video-phone call, the other party has Caller ID Request	P. 491
Your terminal ID and UIM   Dis requested. Send?   OK] to send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [OK] to send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [OK] to send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [OK] to send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [OK] to send terminal ID and UIM ID. To not send, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [OK] to send terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.    • The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.    • Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where			
Dis requested. Send?   OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send terminal ID and UIMI ID. To not send, select No and press ● [OKI, to send the service outside the service area or in a place with no signal.  Out of service area.  ■ Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal.  Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay?  Certificate is rejected (tampered)  ■ Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-imotion type setting is set to Normal type.  ■ Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-imotion type setting is set to Normal type.  ■ Appears when a terminal in St. certificate is received. St. session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  ■ Appears when new rewritten St. certificate is received. To connect, select No and press ● [OK].  ■ Appears when an St. server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  ■ Appears when the SSt root certificate in the terminal has expired. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  ■ Appears when the received St. server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  ■ Appears when in-motion fi		Ü	
and press		1 12	P. 209
■ Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.      ■ The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.  Out of service area.      ■ Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal.     To use i-mode service, move to a location where imageness.  Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay?  Certificate is rejected (tampered)?  This site is not certified.  Do you connect?  Appears when newritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  Appears when Insupported SSL certificate is received.  To connect, select Yes and press (DK). To not connect, select No and press (DK).  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.  To connect, select Yes and press (DK).  To connect, select Yes and press (DK).  Root certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  This certificate is not valid of this under the terminal has expired.  To connect, select Yes and press (DK).  Set date and time.  This certificate is not valid of this under the terminal has expired.  To connect, select Yes and press (DK).  Set date and time.  This certificate is not valid of this URL. Do you connect?  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  The data may not be replaye	ID is requested. Send?		
identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.  ■ The Terminal ID and UIMI ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.  Out of service area.  ■ Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where image pears.  ■ Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type setting is set to <i>Normal type</i> .  ■ Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type setting is set to <i>Normal type</i> .  ■ Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  ■ Appears when unsupported SSL certificate is received.  To connect, select Yes and press (OK). To not connect, select Normal press (OK).  ■ Appears when the SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select Normal press (OK).  ■ Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select Normal press (OK).  ■ Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select Normal press (OK).  ■ Appears when the select Normal press (OK).  ■ Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select Normal press (OK).  ■ Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Unable to protect and time.  ■ Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  ■ Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile			
and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.  ■ The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.  Out of service area.  ■ Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where if appears.    Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type for replay?			
each handset.  ■ The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.  Out of service area.  ■ Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where Im appears.  Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay?  ■ Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type setting is set to <i>Normal type</i> .  ■ Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or internet web page.  ■ Appears when unsupported SSL certificate is received.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [OK]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  ■ Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  ■ Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  ■ Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Set date and time.  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  ■ Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Set date and time.  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  ■ Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  ■ Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  ■ Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  ■ Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, eaded.  ■ A			
using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.  Out of service area.  • Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signat.  Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay?  • Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type setting is set to <i>Normal type</i> .  • Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type setting is set to <i>Normal type</i> .  • Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  • Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. To connect, select <i>No</i> and press ● [OK].  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  • Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.  To connect, select <i>Yes</i> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <i>No</i> and press ● [OK].  • Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  To connect, select <i>Yes</i> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <i>No</i> and press ● [OK].  • Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  • Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select <i>Yes</i> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <i>No</i> and press ● [OK].  • Appears when in the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect select <i>Yes</i> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <i>No</i> and press ● [OK].  • Appears when in more more site of the terminal has expired.  • Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  • Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum because of the protection of the protection of the protecti			
Dut of service area.    Phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.		The Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider)	
this operation.  Out of service area.  • Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal.  To use i-mode service, move to a location where in appears.  • Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type for replay?  Certificate is rejected (tampered)  • Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  • Appears when unsupported SSL certificate is received.  To connect, select Yes and press (OK). To not connect, select No and press (OK).  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  • Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select No and press (OK).  • Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select No and press (OK).  • Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select No and press (OK).  Set date and time.  • Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select No and press (OK).  • Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select No and press (OK).  • Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select Yes and press (Select). To not connect, select No and press (Select).  • Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select from site or internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  • Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  • Since the		using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's	
Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal.  To use i-mode service, move to a location where in appears.  Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type for replay?  Certificate is rejected (tampered)  Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type setting is set to <i>Normal type</i> .  Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  Appears when unsupported SSL certificate is received.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [OK]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Set date and time.  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Unable to protect anymore  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Whumber of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  (301)  Sice the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed.  If old URL is registered as bookm		phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in	
area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where in appears.    Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type for replay?			
To use i-mode service, move to a location where    Invalid content. Change   i-motion type for replay?	Out of service area.	1	_
invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay?  Certificate is rejected (tampered)  This site is not certified. Do you connect?  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect. Select Yes and press ● [OK].  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect.  This certificate is not valid information.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  This certificate is not valid information.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Size of this page is not supported in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Size of data received from site or Internet we		, e	
i-motion type for replay?  Certificate is rejected (tampered)  Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  Appears when unsupported SSL certificate is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● [OK]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Root certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of this page is not supported.  Which is page. Roceiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when in-motion file for maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  (301)  Connection failed (403)  P. 216  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail twihout the attachment appears on the i-mode mail ditting screen.  Page is not found (404)  P. 265	1 1 1 1 1 1		D 005
Certificate is rejected (tampered)  ■ Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.  ■ Appears when unsupported SSL certificate is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● [OK]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  ■ Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  ■ Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  ■ Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired.  ■ Appears when the SSL server certificate in the terminal has expired.  ■ Appears when the SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  ■ This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  ■ Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  ■ Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  ■ Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  ■ Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  ■ Size of this page is not supported.  ■ Size of this page is not supported.  ■ Size of this page when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  ■ Size of this registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  ■ Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  ■ Since the site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  ■ File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail ditting screen.	_	1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	P. 335
tampered)  De performed with this site or Internet web page.  This site is not certified. Do you connect?  Appears when unsupported SSL certificate is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● [OK]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Root certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of this page is not supported.  P. 217  Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  (301)  Connection failed (403)  P. 216  Size of Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Size or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  Pege is not found (404)  Pege is not found (404)  Pege is not found (504)  P. 265		**	D 210
This site is not certified. Do you connect? To connect, select Yes and press ● [OK]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK]. This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Root certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  This certificate is not valid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Set date and time.  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Unable to protect Anymore  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  (301)  Connection failed (403)  Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed.  If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Size of Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded.  File prohibited from i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (30	· ·	* *	P. 210
To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [OK]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired. To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK]. Set date and time.  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK]. Set date and time.  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 210  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 210  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 210  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 210  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 210  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 210  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 210  To connect on press ● [OK].  P. 211  Size of this page is not such an expired and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 212  To connect on press ● [OK].  Size of this page is not such an expired and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  P. 213  Size of this page is not such an expired and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  Size of this page is not such an expir	` ' '		D 210
and press ● [OK].  This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Set date and time.  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when in-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Inable to protect anymore Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Inable to protect anymore Size of this page is not supported.  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  (Site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Connection failed (403)  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.		· · · _ · · ·	1.210
This certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Set date and time.  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Unable to protect anymore  Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Size of this page is not suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  Connection failed (403)  Since the set Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  P. 210  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  P. 211  Size of this page is not suspension is displayed.  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  P. 212  Connection failed (403)  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded.  Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.	20 you commot:		
started its validity period is received. To connect, select *Yes* and press* (and press*) [Select]. To not connect, select *No* and press* (and press*) [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired. To connect, select *Yes* and press* (and press*) [Select]. To not connect, select *No* and press* (DK]. Set date and time.  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select *Yes* and press* (Select]. To not connect, select *No* and press* (DK].  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  (301)  Connection failed (403)  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the fold URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded.  Press* (DK) and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.	This certificate has		P. 210
and press ● [OK].  Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?  Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired. To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK]. Set date and time.  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of this page is not supported.  P. 210  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  (301)  URL address changed.  Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  Pile prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.	expired. Do you connect?		
Appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal has expired. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK]. Set date and time.  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of this page is not supported.  P. 210  Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed. Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  Connection failed (403)  An attached file will be deleted  Pile prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web		To connect, select Yes and press   [Select]. To not connect, select No	
To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK]. Set date and time.  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore		and press • [OK].	
and press ● [OK]. Set date and time.  • Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore • Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Size of this page is not supported.  ■ Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  ■ Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  ■ Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  ■ Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted • File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  ■ Appears when naximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  ■ Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  ■ Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  ■ File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.	Root certificate has	_ ::	P. 210
Set date and time.  This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect, select Yes and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select No and press ● [OK].  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore	expired. Do you connect?		
This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?  Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information.  To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  ■ Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  ■ Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  ■ Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  URL address changed. (301)  ■ Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  ■ Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  ■ File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  ■ Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web			
information. To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press ● [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press ● [OK].  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  ■ Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, p. 224 and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  ■ Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  ■ Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  ■ Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  ■ Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  ■ File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  ■ Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	T1: 00 0 1 1 1		D 040
To connect, select <b>Yes</b> and press (Select). To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press (OK).  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Size of this page is not supported.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  P. 214  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages protection.  Other of a light and sent messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message P/F, mail, and sent messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message P/F, mail, and sent messages for Screen memos, descrete protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, descrete		* *	P. 210
and press ( OK).  The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum protection.  Other of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages for Screen memos, mail protection.  Other of protected file of nations, maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  Other of one page Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspended and sent messages for Screen memos, maximum protection.  Other of one p	1	_	
The data may not be replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  Ohypears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Ohypears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.  Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  Size of this page is not supported.  Ohypears when maximum data size of Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  Ohypears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  Ohypears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  Ohypears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  Ohypears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  Ohypears when imotion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is possible and the imode maximum processed in a format other maximum. Disable protection.  P. 214  Ohypears when i-mode mail attachment or Internet web page moved, the URL changed.  If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Ohypears when i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the processed in a formation in the i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the processed in a formation in the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Ohypears when i-mode in a formation in the processed in any in the processed in a formation in the processed in a formation in the processed in a formation in the processed in any in the processed in a formation in the processed in any in the processed in the processed in the processed in the processed in any in the processed in the processed i	connect:		
replayed. Obtain?  Unable to protect anymore  Size of this page is not supported.  • Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  • Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  • Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  • Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  • File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press • [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  • Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	The data may not be		P. 364
Unable to protect anymore  • Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.  • Size of this page is not supported.  • Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  • Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  • Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  • Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  • File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press • [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  • Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	-		
Size of this page is not supported.  Size of this page is not supported.  Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed.  Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Connection failed (403)  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press (ICK) and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  Size of data received from site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	Unable to protect	<ul> <li>Number of protected messages for Screen memos, Message R/F, mail,</li> </ul>	P. 224
for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	anymore	and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.	P. 283
suspension is displayed.  Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	Size of this page is not	Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum	P. 217
<ul> <li>Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.</li> <li>URL address changed. (301)</li> <li>Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.</li> <li>Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.</li> <li>An attached file will be deleted</li> <li>File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press (ICK) and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.</li> <li>Page is not found (404)</li> <li>Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web</li> </ul>	supported.	for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to	
or a downloaded dictionary.  URL address changed. (301)  Connection failed (403)  An attached file will be deleted  Pile prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. P. 219  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press (OK) and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.			
URL address changed. (301)  Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web  P. 219  P. 219  P. 219  P. 219  P. 219			_
(301) If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.  Connection failed (403)  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded. Press (ICM) and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	LIDI II		D 040
Connection failed (403)  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason.  Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded.  Press (OK) and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web		i =	P. 219
Try again later.  An attached file will be deleted  • File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded.  Press • [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  • Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	, ,		D 214
An attached file will be deleted  • File prohibited from i-mode mail attachment or from being sent from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded.  • Press • [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  • Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	Connection falled (403)	1 =	F. 214
deleted FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded.  Press ( [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404) Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web	An attached file will be	, ,	P 265
Press ● [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404) ● Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web —		·	1.200
the i-mode mail editing screen.  Page is not found (404)  • Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web			
Page is not found (404) Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web -			
page may not exist.	Page is not found (404)		_
		page may not exist.	



No content is available. (204) Appears when there is no data to display at the connected site or Internet web page. Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-uppli software from Emode mail or Ir exchange function.  Requested software unavailable page, Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and the specified software could not be started.  Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504) Software terminated due to security error exception failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Connection interrupted.  Invalid action was attempted by i-uppli. Appears when i-uppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  Connection interrupted.  Invalid action was attempted by i-uppli. Appears when i-uppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  Connection interrupted.  Invalid action was attempted by i-uppli. Appears when i-uppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  Prode again after moving to an area with a strong signal.  Even if a signal is strong and inappears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.  Connection failed  Appears when host is set incorrectly. Property re-set Most selection in i-mode settings.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Connection is not valid  Connecting to i-mode is not possible if host number has been changed from the default settings. Restore defauts estings.  Pr. 233  Time out  Connection it meour telapated, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again form a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  Appears when internity in t	Message	Explanation	Page
Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-appli software from i-mode mail or ir exchange function.   Requested software   Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-appli software from all or ir exchange function.   Requested software   Appears when attempting to start software from a site, Internet web page. Message R/F, i-mode mail, or ir exchange function, and the specified software could not be started.   Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)   Site or internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.   Software terminated due   Invalid action was attempted by i-appli.   P. 328	No content is available.	Appears when there is no data to display at the connected site or	_
Finder mail or Ir exchange function.	(204)	Internet web page.	
Appears when attempting to start software from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and the specified software could not be started.  Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)  Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)  Software terminated due to security error  Conflaction interrupted.  Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  P. 328  P. 328  P. 328  P. 328  P. 328  P. 329  P. 231  P. 231  P. 231  P. 231  P. 232  P. 233  P. 245  P. 234  P. 234  P. 235  P. 236  P. 236  P. 237  P. 237  P. 238  P. 239  P. 239  P. 239  P. 239  P. 239  P. 230  P. 230  P. 231  P. 232  P. 232  P. 232  P. 232  P. 233  P. 245  P. 233  P. 245  P. 233  P. 245  P. 233  P. 245  P. 234  P. 235  P. 236  P. 236  P. 237  P. 237  P. 238  P. 238  P. 239  P. 239  P. 239  P. 239  P. 239  P. 230  P. 230  P. 231  P. 232  P. 233  P. 245  P. 233  P. 245  P. 234  P. 234  P. 234  P. 235  P. 236  P. 236  P. 237  P. 237  P. 238  P. 238  P. 239  P.	No requested software	<ul> <li>Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-αppli software from</li> </ul>	P. 325
unavailable page. Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and the specified software could not be started.  Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)  Software terminated due or loss page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Onnection interrupted.  Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  Connection interrupted.  Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  Connection interrupted.  Even if a signal is strong and if appears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.  Connection failed  Appears when host is set incorrectly.  Properly re-set Host selection in i-mode settings.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason.  Pry 243  Properly re-set Host selection in i-mode settings.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason.  Properly re-set Host selection in i-mode settings.  Connection is not valid  Appears when host is set incorrectly.  Connection is not valid entered web repair is set incorrectly.  Try again later.  Connection is not valid entered web page connection failed for an unspecified reason.  Properly re-set Host selection in i-mode settings.  From the default settings. Restore default settings.  From the default settings. Restore default settings.  From the default settings. Restore default settings.  From the default settings in Setting and its or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Transmission failed  From the default settings. Restore default settings.  From the default setting in SMB was not sent properly. Try again form a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode		i-mode mail or Ir exchange function.	
Specified software could not be started.	Requested software	Appears when attempting to start software from a site, Internet web	P. 325
Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)  Try again later.  Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  In invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  In invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  In invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  In invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  In invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.  Appears when i-αppli is oftware attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  P. 328  P. 328  Connection failed appears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.  Connection is not valid externed by a set incorrectly.  Connection is not valid externed by a set incorrectly.  Connection is not valid externed by a set incorrectly.  Connection is not valid externed by a set incorrectly.  Connection is not valid externed by a set incorrectly.  Appears when in-appli action timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when in-appli action timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when in-appli action site in the action site in the action with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending	unavailable	page, Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and the	
Try again later.  Onnection interrupted.  Onnection failed  Onnection failed  Onnection is not valid  Connection is not valid  Onnection is not vali		'	
Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.	Unable to retrieve the	Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason.	P. 214
<ul> <li>Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.</li> <li>Connection interrupted.</li> <li>i-mode has been disconnected due to a weak signal. Try i-mode again after moving to an area with a strong signal.</li> <li>Even if a signal is strong and ¼ appears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.</li> <li>Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set <i>Host selection</i> in i-mode settings.</li> <li>Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.</li> <li>Connection is not valid</li> <li>Connecting to i-mode is not possible if host number has been changed from the default settings. Restore default settings.</li> <li>Time out</li> <li>Time set in <i>Connection timeout</i> elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.</li> <li>Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When <i>Address is not valid</i> appears as well, resend after editing the address.</li> <li>When this message appears with <i>i-mode center is busy</i>, try sending again later. When <i>Server is full</i> appears along with this message.</li> <li>Software updated</li> <li>The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.</li> <li>P. 327</li> <li>This software contains an error land software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.</li> <li>I-cuppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.</li> <li>Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.</li> <li>Appears when downloading is canceled.</li> <li>Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.</li> <li>Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.</li> <li>Appears when ot</li></ul>	requested URL (504)	Try again later.	
Saved when software is terminated due to a security error.  Connection interrupted.  i - mode has been disconnected due to a weak signal.  Even if a signal is strong and ∭ appears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.  Connection failed  Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set *Host* selection* in !-mode settings.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Connection is not valid  Connection is not valid effort the default settings. Restore default settings.  Connection is not valid effort the default settings. Restore default settings.  Time out  Time out  Time set in *Connection is none default settings.  Appears when i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When *Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When *Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  This -αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.  This software contains an error.  □ -αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select Yes and press • Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appear	Software terminated due	<ul> <li>Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.</li> </ul>	P. 328
Firm of the property is the property in the property is property. This software contains an error. The property is the property in the property in the property in the property. The property is the property in the property in the property in the property. The property is the property in the property. The property is the property in the property. The property is the property. The property is property is property is property. The property is property is property is property is property. The property is property is property is property is property is property. The property is prop	to security error	<ul> <li>Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is</li> </ul>	P. 328
Try i-mode again after moving to an area with a strong signal.  Even if a signal is strong and iii appears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.  Connection failed  Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set Host selection in i-mode settings. Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Connection is not valid Connection is not valid Connection is not valid Time out Time set in Connection timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Transmission failed Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software is not supported by this phone Canceled download Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select Yes and press Ot try again.  Appears when ir exchange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press Ot try again.  Appears when it exchange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press Ot try again.		saved when software is terminated due to a security error.	
<ul> <li>Even if a signal is strong and  appears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.</li> <li>Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set  Host selection in i-mode settings.</li> <li>Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.</li> <li>Connection is not valid</li> <li>Connecting to i-mode is not possible if host number has been changed from the default settings. Restore default settings.</li> <li>P. 233</li> <li>P. 245</li> <li>Time out</li> <li>Time set in Connection timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.</li> <li>Transmission failed</li> <li>Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.</li> <li>Software updated</li> <li>The i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.</li> <li>i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.</li> <li>i-appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.</li> <li>Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.</li> <li>Appears when downloading is canceled.</li> <li>Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.</li> <li>Downloading is not possible.</li> <li>Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.</li> <li>Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.</li> <li>When creating</li></ul>	Connection interrupted.	i-mode has been disconnected due to a weak signal.	P. 52
is extremely congested. Try again later.  Onnection failed  Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set Host selection in i-mode settings. Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Connection is not valid  Connection is not valid  Connection is not valid  Connection is mest in Connection timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Transmission failed  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  This is software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error  i i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when oracling i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  Appears when canceling I exchange.  Onnection interrupted. No response. Retty?  Authentication failed. Retry?  Appears when ir exchange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press to try again.  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select Yes and press to try again.  Appears when ir exchange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press t		Try i-mode again after moving to an area with a strong signal.	
Onnection failed  Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set Host selection in i-mode settings. Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Connection is not valid  Connection is not valid  Time out  Time out  Time out  Time set in Connection timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  P. 232 connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Transmission failed  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  This software contains an error  i i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error  upgraded.  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select Yes and press on the symptom of the party could not be recognized. Select Yes and press on the page of the pag		• Even if a signal is strong and 🖫 appears, the site or Internet web page	-
Properly re-set Host selection in i-mode settings.  Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Connection is not valid  Connecting to i-mode is not possible if host number has been changed from the default settings. Restore default settings.  P. 233  Time out  Transmission failed  Appears when i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when i-mode mail transmission was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  This i-uppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error. Unable to download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  P. 226  P. 327  Appears when attempting to download an i-uppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  Opomloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appears when ir exchange was not property performed. Select Yes and press to try again		is extremely congested. Try again later.	
Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.  Connection is not valid  Connecting to i-mode is not possible if host number has been changed from the default settings. Restore default settings.  Time out  Time set in Connection timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Transmission failed  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted.  No response. Retry?  Authentication failed.  Retry?  Too much data was  entered	Connection failed	Appears when host is set incorrectly.	P. 233
Try again later.  Connection is not valid  Connecting to i-mode is not possible if host number has been changed from the default settings. Restore default settings.  Time out  Time set in Connection timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Transmission failed  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  This software contains an error  i i -αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid.  Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Connection interrupted.  No response. Retry?  Authentication failed.  Retry?  Too much data was  entered			
Connection is not valid from the default settings. Restore default settings.		Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason.	P. 214
from the default settings. Restore default settings. P. 245  Time out  Time set in Connection timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.  This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when ceating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted.  No response. Retry?  Authentication failed.  Retry?  Too much data was entered  F. 245  Time out internet web page connection interrupt when intered in text box or other input field was too long.		Try again later.	
Time out  Time set in Connection timeout elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  This software contains an error  This software contains an error  This software contains an error. Unable to download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when attempting to advantoad an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid.  Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Same address set  When treating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted.  No response. Retry?  Authentication failed.  Retry?  Authentication failed.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select Yes and press to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press to try again.  Appears when le sechange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press to try again.	Connection is not valid	Connecting to i-mode is not possible if host number has been changed	
connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.  Transmission failed  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.  This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid.  Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Appears when creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted.  No response. Retry?  Authentication failed.  Retry?  Too much data was entered  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.		from the default settings. Restore default settings.	P. 245
Transmission failed  Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address.  When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  This in-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  □ i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.	Time out	• Time set in <i>Connection timeout</i> elapsed, and site or Internet web page	P. 232
from a location with a strong signal. When Address is not valid appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with i-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated ● The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.  This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error. Unable to download This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download ● Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226 P. 312  Unable to download ● Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible. Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Same address set ● When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange) Connection interrupted. No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?  Too much data was entered  from a location with a strong signal. When receive the message.  P. 327  P. 328  P. 329  P. 339		connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.	
appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with <i>i-mode center is busy</i> , try sending again later. When <i>Server is full</i> appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated • The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.  This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error. Unable to download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  • Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  • Appears when downloading is canceled.  • Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  • Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Same address set  • When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted.  No response. Retry?  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press • to try again.  • Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press • to try again.  • Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.	Transmission failed	Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again	-
When this message appears with I-mode center is busy, try sending again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.           Software updated         • The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.         P. 327           This software contains an error         • i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.         — appli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.         — appli data contains		5 5	
again later. When Server is full appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated ● The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded. P. 327  This software contains an error with a contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error. Unable to download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download ● Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  ● Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid.  Downloading is not possible.  ● Downloading is not possible.  ● Downloading is not possible.  ● Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  ■ When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted.  No response. Retry?  Authentication failed.  Retry?  Too much data was entered  again later. When Server is full appears when well and well not be undersonated by the proses when it exchange was not properly performed. Select Yes and press for try again.  ■ Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.		- · ·	
cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.  Software updated  The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded.  i-αppli data contains		3 11	
This software updated  The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.  This software contains an error  i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error. Unable to download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  The i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226 P. 312  Unable to download  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Same address set  When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted. No response. Retry?  Authentication failed. Retry?  Too much data was entered  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.			
This software contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.  This software contains an error. Unable to download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  The software cannot be download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by this phone  The software cannot be download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by this phone  The software cannot be download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be download on i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be download on i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be download on i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  This software cannot be download on i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  This software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  This software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  This software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download in i-αppli not supported by the provided in the support in the suppor		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
error upgraded.  This software contains an error. Unable to download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  The software cannot be download in i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  This software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  This software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  This software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  Unable to download  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  P. 226  Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  P. 226  P. 312  The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  The software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226  P. 312  The software cannot be download.  P. 226  P. 312  The software cannot be download.  The software cannot be download.  P. 226  P. 312  The software cannot be download.  The software cannot be download.  The software cannot be download.  P. 226  P. 312  The software cannot be download.  The software cannot be download.  The software cannot be d	·		P. 327
This software contains an error. Unable to download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  This software is not supported by this phone  The software cannot be download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  The software cannot be download in i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  The software cannot be downloaded.  This software is not supported by the FOMA terminal is invalid.  The software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be downloaded.  The software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be downloaded.  This software cannot be downloaded.  The	This software contains an	<ul> <li>i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or</li> </ul>	-
error. Unable to download This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  P. 226 P. 312  Unable to download  Appears when downloading is canceled.  P. 226 P. 312  Unable to download  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Same address set  When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange) Connection interrupted. No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ● to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ● to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.			
This software is not supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Same address set  When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted. No response. Retry?  Authentication failed. Retry?  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press  to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press  to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.			-
Supported by this phone  Canceled download  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when downloading is canceled.  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  Same address set  When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted. No response. Retry?  Authentication failed. Retry?  Too much data was entered  P. 226  P. 227  Authentication failed. Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press • to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press • to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.	error. Unable to download	upgraded.	
Canceled download  Appears when downloading is canceled.  P. 226 P. 312 Unable to download  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  During Ir exchange) Connection interrupted. No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press  to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press  to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.	This software is not	<ul> <li>Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the</li> </ul>	-
Unable to download  Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible. Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  During Ir exchange) Connection interrupted. No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.	supported by this phone	FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.	
Unable to download	Canceled download	Appears when downloading is canceled.	
Downloading is not possible.  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted.  No response. Retry?  Authentication failed.  Retry?  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.			P. 312
Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.   Same address set  When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  During Ir exchange)  Connection interrupted. No response. Retry?  Authentication failed. Retry?  Too much data was entered  Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.  P. 257  Address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  P. 399	Unable to download		P. 226
Same address set  ■ When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange) Connection interrupted. No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?  Too much data was entered  ■ When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as address and send.  P. 257  P. 399			
address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  (During Ir exchange) Connection interrupted. No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?  Too much data was entered  address and broadcast. Delete duplicated addresses and send.  Appears when canceling Ir exchange.  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press  to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press  to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.			_
(During Ir exchange) Connection interrupted. No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?  Too much data was entered  ■ Appears when canceling Ir exchange. ■ Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ● to try again. ■ Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ● to try again. ■ Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long. ■ P. 399 P. 399 P. 399 P. 399 P. 399	Same address set	When creating i-mode mail, the same mail address cannot be set as	P. 257
Connection interrupted. No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?  Too much data was entered  Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ● to try again.  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ● to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.		'	
No response. Retry? Authentication failed. Retry? Too much data was entered  Pess (a) to try again. Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press (a) to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.			
Authentication failed.  Retry?  On much data was entered  Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press to try again.  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long.			P. 399
Retry? press  to try again.  Too much data was  Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text  obx or other input field was too long.			
Too much data was  • Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text entered  box or other input field was too long.		'' =	P. 399
entered box or other input field was too long.	•		
	Too much data was		_
Retry after erasing some text.	entered		
		Retry after erasing some text.	

Message	Explanation	Page
Input error (205)	Appears when server is about to reset contents after sending text entered in a site or Internet web page.  All text and settings entered on screen are deleted. (Contents sent before the error message appeared has already been sent.)	_
Authentication type is not supported (401)	Appears when authentication is not possible.     Previous screen reappears.	_
Authentication canceled	<ul> <li>Appears when Cancel is selected or earlier is pressed in the authentication screen.</li> </ul>	_
Password is not correct (401)	Appears when authentication is not possible on the authentication screen.	_
Attachable size exceeded. Unable to attach	File exceeds size limit and cannot be attached. Delete some of message text or send message without attaching the file.	P. 265
URL address is not valid (301) URL address is not valid (302)	Data received contains error and cannot be displayed. Received data is discarded.	_
Too many unsent mail	<ul> <li>Number of protected sent and unsent messages exceeds 101. A new mail cannot be created. Disable the protection of the sent messages, send or delete unsent messages, and compose the message again.</li> </ul>	P. 255 P. 283
Memory low	Software cannot be run due to lack of available memory.     Processing suspended and i-mode terminated due to lack of available memory.	_

### Document viewer

Message	Explanation	Page
Document may not be	File size is too large to be displayed in Document viewer.	P. 413
fully displayed	<ul> <li>Appears when file contains function unsupported by Document viewer.</li> </ul>	P. 413
	<ul> <li>Appears when memory is low and Document viewer does not start properly.</li> </ul>	_
	<ul> <li>Appears when connection times out while starting Document viewer.</li> <li>Occurs when file requires an extended period of time for analysis.</li> </ul>	_
	<ul> <li>Appears when attempting to display file properties and information cannot be accessed.</li> </ul>	P. 417
Operation not possible	Appears when memory is too low to activate functions such as	P. 415
	Magnifier, Zoom selected or Auto scroll.	P. 415
50 selected. Unable to select anymore	Appears when over 50 files are selected for Delete selected.	P. 417
An error has occurred. Viewer will close	<ul> <li>Appears when Document viewer is activated and an error has occurred in analyzing while loading the next page. Appears when file data is corrupted.</li> </ul>	_

### **Data box**

Message	Explanation	Page
Unable to copy part of data	Appears when there are files or folders on the miniSD Memory Card that were created on a PC or a handset other than the FOMA SH901iS.	P. 384
Unable to delete part of	<ul> <li>Appears when folders exist in folders such as xxxSHARP/xxxSH_UF/</li> </ul>	_
data	PPLxxx.	
	<ul> <li>Delete applicable folder with a PC or other device, or format a miniSD Memory Card.</li> </ul>	P. 389
This data cannot be replayed. Delete?	Appears when attempting to play i-motion after resetting date and time.	_
This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?	<ul> <li>Appears when attempting to play i-motion that has reached its playback count limit.</li> </ul>	P. 334
Replay period has	Appears when attempting to play i-motion that has passed its replay	P. 333
expired. Delete?	period.	
Replay period has not yet	<ul> <li>Appears when attempting to play i-motion before the set replay period.</li> </ul>	P. 333
started.		
Camera function is not	Appears when camera portion becomes hot from being stored in a hot	_
available now	place or being used for an extended period of time. Use the camera	
	after letting it cool down.	
Low battery level	Battery level is low. Camera mode cannot be activated. Use after fully	P. 43
	charging the battery.	
■ appears	Appears when available memory is less than 1.2 MB.	_
	Create available memory by sorting out data within Data box and	_
	i-αppli.	
appears	Appears when available memory is less than 100 KB.	_
	Create available memory by sorting out data within Data box and	_
	i-αppli.	
Unsupported. Cannot edit	Image data is invalid and image cannot be edited.	-
Memory is almost full.	Handset memory is low. Delete other pictures to save image with	_
Delete unneeded images	current settings.	

### Other messages

Message	Explanation	Page
Battery too low. Please recharge and retry	Appears when battery level is  or  while updating software.  Recharge battery to	P. 597
Connection failed	Appears when software could not be updated. Perform software update again.	P. 597
SSL session was terminated	Appears when FOMA terminal date is not saved correctly when updating software. Set the FOMA terminal date.	P. 597
Root certificate is not valid	Appears when Root Certificate is not set to valid when updating software. Set certificates one to five in <i>Certificates</i> to valid.	P. 597
Other functions running. Unable to activate	Software could not be updated at the set time because other functions are running. Update immediately or set another date and time.	P. 597
Unable to use the main camera at the moment	<ul> <li>Appears when FOMA terminal becomes hot from being stored in a hot place or used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down.</li> <li>Appears when using video-phone main camera while battery level is</li> </ul>	_
	low. Use after charging battery.	

### **AV Input**

Message	Explanation	Page
Battery low	Charge battery until indicator is over	P. 46
Copy protected	Video with copy guard signal cannot be recorded. Stop video recording.	P. 455
No miniSD	Cannot record because a miniSD Memory Card is not inserted in the FOMA terminal handset.	P. 455

Message	Explanation	Page
miniSD memory is full	Delete unnecessary data.	P. 455
miniSD has been removed	Insert useable miniSD Memory Card in FOMA terminal handset.	P. 455
Cable not detected	Cannot record because flat-plug AV cable is not connected to the FOMA terminal handset.	P. 455
Video cable has been disconnected	Check that the flat-plug AV cable is properly connected.	P. 455
Cable not inserted properly	Insert flat-plug AV cable.	P. 474
Video signal not received. Recording canceled	Check that the video player and TV are functioning properly.	P. 455
Recording aborted due to incoming call	To not abort recording due to an incoming call, set Incoming calls to Record first.	P. 459
Error	Appears when an error occurs in the miniSD Memory Card.	_
Recording failed	<ul> <li>Appears when an error occurs in the miniSD Memory Card during recording.</li> </ul>	_
PIM is locked	Disable PIM lock.	P. 153
Unable to set	Self mode cannot be activated.	P. 152

### **Warranty and After-sales Services**

#### Warranty

Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card. Be sure to keep it in a safe place. Contact the retailer if any necessary details on the warranty card are not completed. The warranty period is one year from the date of purchase.

- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- Information registered in your FOMA terminal, such as phonebook entries, may be lost or damaged if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled. It is recommended that a memo be kept of all data stored in the FOMA. If you own a PC (Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional), you can transfer and store registered information such as phonebook entries using special Data Link Software (PP. 584). If the FOMA terminal is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode and i-αppli cannot be transferred (excluding some cases) to a new handset due to copyright law.

#### **After-sales Services**

### If you have problems with your FOMA

Refer to "Troubleshooting" before requesting repairs.

Contact number listed in "For Repair Inquiries" on the back of this manual if problems persist.

#### If your FOMA needs repairs after contacting DoCoMo

Bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies. However, the repair shop is only open during business hours. Make sure to bring your warranty card with you.

• For details, refer to "全国サービスステーション一覧" (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal.

### During the warranty period

The FOMA terminal will be repaired in accordance with the terms of the warranty.

- When bringing the FOMA terminal in for repairs, be sure to bring the warranty card. Even during the warranty
  period, a fee will be charged for repairs of malfunctions or damage caused by improper handling by the
  customer, or when no warranty certificate is presented.
- Repairs for damages caused by the use of devices and accessories other than those specified by DoCoMo will also incur a fee.

#### Repairs may not be possible in the following circumstances

Repairs to your FOMA terminal may not be possible if the moisture detection seal has reacted, if damage from
water, condensation, sweat, or other liquids are found, or if the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed.
Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred because the warranty does not cover such
damage.

#### After the warranty period has expired

Where repair work can successfully restore the functionality of the FOMA terminal, charged repairs will be carried out upon request.

#### Replacement parts

Replacement parts (required to maintain the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of six years following termination of production. Repairs to the FOMA terminal are possible during this period. Repairs may be possible even after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact number listed on the back of this manual for details.

• For details, refer to "全国サービスステーション一覧" (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal.

#### IMPORTANT!

Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.

- May cause fire, injury, or malfunction.
- Technological standards for the FOMA terminal and FOMA card are established by law to avoid interference and malfunctions of the network. FOMA terminals and FOMA cards that do not meet standards cannot be used.
- If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously (replacement of parts, modification, coating, etc.), it will
  only be accepted for the repair of a malfunction if it has been restored to its original state (as a standard
  DoCoMo product). However, repairs may be refused depending on the extent of modification.
- Repairs for any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications will incur fees, even during the warranty period.

#### Memory dial (Phonebook) and downloaded information

- It is recommended that you keep a separate memo of the information you register on your FOMA terminal.
   DoCoMo shall not be liable for data that may be modified or lost.
- Created, imported or downloaded data may be modified or deleted when upgrading or repairing the mobile phone. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any modification or deletion of content. DoCoMo may, at our convenience, exchange your mobile phone for a substitute in lieu of repairs. Should this occur, some data may not be transferred. Images and melodies downloaded from official i-mode sites will be transferred at time of repair for FOMA 901i/700i series handsets. (Some contents may not be transferred.)

#### Do not peel off the model nameplate attached to the FOMA terminal.

 The nameplate seal functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the nameplate is removed or is replaced, repairs may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.

技術基準適合認証品

Information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as the total call charges and the ON/OFF settings of various functions, may be cleared or reset if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled.

• If this occurs, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.

If your FOMA terminal gets wet or has been in a humid location, turn off the power, take out the battery immediately, and bring it to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies as soon as possible. However, depending on the condition, repairs may not be possible.

 The FOMA terminal earpiece and speakers contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep ATM cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the FOMA terminal. Cards may become unusable. \* There is no packet transmission charge for updating software.

Check the DoCoMo web page or お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help) on iMenu for updates.

• When updating, select Now Update or Reserve.

Now Update: Update immediately.

Reserve: Software updates automatically on set date and time.

- Software is updated even when host for i-mode is changed to a custom host.
- Recharge battery before updating software.
- Software cannot be updated during the following conditions.
  - Date and time are not set
     Battery icon is or •
  - During a call/Outside the service area While in Self mode Connected to an external device
  - All lock is set
     PIM is locked (except i-mode)
- If PIN code is set to ON and software is updated, PIN code input screen appears after automatic reload.
   Correct PIN code must be entered to make/receive calls and use other communications functions.
- Downloading and rewriting software may take time.
- Other functions cannot be used while updating. (Receiving voice calls is possible.)
- While updating software, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- If i-mode mail or Message R/F is held at i-mode center, \(\overline{\o
- During software update, the handset makes an SSL connection with the server (DoCoMo site). Set the Root Certificate to valid. (The default setting is *Enable* © P. 241.)
- It is recommended to update software at a location with a strong signal (three bars for the antenna icon).
  - If signal status becomes weak or download is interrupted when downloading software, update software again in a location with good signal conditions.
- If software has already been uploaded, No update is needed. Please continue to use as before appears
  when software update is checked.
- When updating software, information about handset (model and serial number) is sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- Do not remove the battery pack while the software is updating. Failure to update software may occur.
- Software can be updated even if handset contains phonebook, camera or download data. However, DoCoMo cannot protect data that could be lost due to malfunction, damage, water leakage and so on. It is recommended that important data be backed up (@P. 385, P. 584) before updating. (Note that some data, such as downloaded data, cannot be backed up.)
- If software update fails, Rewrite failed appears and all operations become unavailable. In this case, bring FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies.

Appendix

### In stand-by, press ● 3 ﷺ.



### Enter security code (four to eight digits) and press .



- Numbers are masked with asterisks.
- The default setting is 0000.

### Press 1.5 [OK].



 When battery level is low, press [Za] [Cancel]. Fully charge battery and try again.

Software update confirmation screen



### Press 1.5 [OK].



- When updating software, information about handset (model and serial number) is sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- When updating is not necessary, No update is needed. Please continue to use as before appears.
   Press and resume operations.
- When updates are necessary, *Update is needed* appears. Select *Now update* or *Reserve*.
- Press <sup>☎</sup> to cancel.

### **Updating Software Immediately <Now Update>**

1

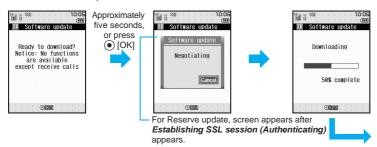
### Start software update. ( \*\* steps 1 to 5 on P. 598)

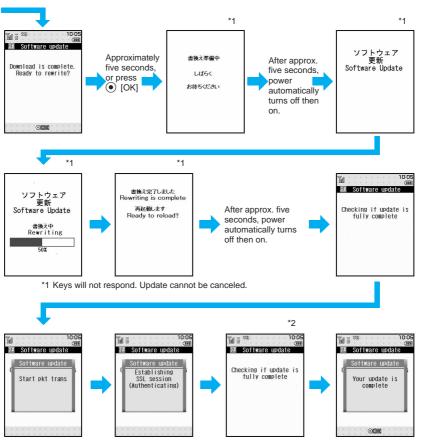


2

#### Press 1.5 [Now update].

- Software download starts. Software is automatically updated without selecting menus.
- Press 35 to not update.





\*2 After Checking if update is fully complete appears, next screen appears immediately.

A screen asking to end or not appears if spressed. If download is aborted, data downloaded up to that point is deleted. (Cannot operate during software rewrite.)



When Server is busy appears after Negotiating, press ☐ [Reserve]. Refer to steps 2 to 4 of "Updating Software Later <Reserve>" on P. 601 for subsequent operations. Press ☐ [Cancel] to not reserve. A screen appears prompting to stop. To stop, select Yes and press ⑥.

Press 💿.

- When Preparing update. Please wait, Software update, Software update rewriting or Rewriting is complete. Ready to reload? appears during steps 1 to 3, the handset status is the same as when outside the service area and calls cannot be answered. When these messages are not shown, calls can be answered but Record message is not available. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended.
- While performing steps 1 to 3, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- When Update complete or Check update appears in stand-by after software update, press 

   If terminal security code (four to eight digits) is entered when software update is incomplete, a message stating so appears. Press
   and retry update.

#### **Updating Software Later < Reserve>**

Set date and time to update software when downloading takes too much time or the server is extremely congested.



#### Perform steps 1 to 5 on P. 598 and press [Reserve].



- Total 10:05

  SE Software update
  Select your preferred
  day and time
  15/8(No) 17:16
  15/8(Mo) 20:26
- 139 Airu (Tille 157 8 (Wo) 77:16 157 8 (Wo) 20:26 157 8 (Wo) 20:26 157 8 (Wo) 21:07 157 8 (Wo) 22:05 157 8 (Wo) 23:54 167 8 (Tu) 0:16 167 8 (Tu) 1:47 167 8 (Tu) 2:14 167 8 (Tu) 3:25
- Schedule selection screen appears.
- The time and date are the same as the server time.
- To cancel operation, in steps 1 to 4, press (\*\*), select **Yes** and press (\*\*).

## 2

### Select preferred date/time and press (•).

- A confirmation screen appears.

In the screen to select times, schedule status appears as  $\bigcirc$ : Avail and  $\triangle$ : Limited for each time slot. Select a time and press  $\bigcirc$  to reconnect to the server and show schedule candidates. Select a schedule and press  $\bigcirc$ .

3

### Select Yes and press .

• The preferred date/time is reserved.



### Press [OK].

#### Note

Incoming calls can be received during the above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call
is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at
SMS center.

#### When the reserved date and time arrives



The screen on the left appears in the stand-by. Software update will automatically start. Software will not update if the handset is turned off when the reserved time arrives.

Refer to step 2 of "Updating Software Immediately <Now Update>" for subsequent operations.

After approximately five seconds or pressing  $\bullet$  [OK], software update automatically starts.

- Before software updates, make sure the handset is in a place with a strong signal. Software is not updated if
  the battery icon is I or I.
- Software is not updated if the handset at the reserved date and time is performing functions such as sending
  mail, i-mode, i-αppli, using menus, connecting to an external device, or is in Self mode/All lock/PIM lock
  (except i-mode). When receiving mail, software update begins after mail reception is completed.
- If the alarm or another function takes place at the same time (any time excluding Auto manner mode disable),
   alarm or the function is prioritized and software is not updated.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off at the reserved date and time for software update or when the FOMA terminal is turned off right after the update starts, the update will be canceled.
- If a call is in progress at the set date and time for software update, software update starts when returning to stand-by within 10 minutes. Software is not updated if 10 minutes pass before returning to stand-by.
- If Delete all data (Delete user data) (TP P. 481) is performed after reservation is completed, the reservation is canceled. Reserve the software update again.

#### Confirming/Changing/Canceling Reservation



## In stand-by, press • 3 # # ; enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press •.



Reserved date and time appears.

To confirm	Press 1.4.
	Press ②♣ → ⑦♠ [OK].  • Preferred date screen appears. Refer to "Updating Software Later" (❤ steps 1 to 4 on P. 601) for subsequent operations.
To cancel	Press $\bigcirc \longrightarrow$ Yes $\longrightarrow$ $\bigcirc \longrightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ After The reservation is canceled appears.

#### **Note**

Incoming calls can be received during the above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call
is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at
SMS center.

### **Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files**

First, renew pattern definitions to bring them up-to-date.

Stop activating or delete any data or applications that could cause operational malfunctions. These types of data include data or programs that are attached to i-mode mail, or downloaded from sites or external devices.

- Pattern definitions are used for checking. When new problems are discovered, pattern definitions are immediately upgraded. Update the pattern definitions.
- The scan function helps to protect the handset from damage caused by data such as data received from web
  pages or mail. If the pattern definition corresponding to a particular harmful file is not downloaded or saved,
  the scan function will not be able to protect the FOMA terminal.
- Pattern definitions vary depending on the phone model. Therefore, DoCoMo may discontinue offering pattern
  definitions for a particular model three years after the release date.

#### Setting Scan Functions <Scanning Setting>

Default setting

Enable

When Scan function is set to *Enable*, data and programs are automatically checked when run.

1

### In stand-by, press ● 3 ੈ \*\* \*\* 2 ੈ . . .



Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → General settings → Scanning function → Scanning setting from Top menu.

Press 💯 [Enable] and 💯 [Yes].

- When Scan function is set and malicious data is detected, security warning appears in five levels.
   (EFP. 604)
- Select No and the screen of step 1 reappears.

### **Updating Pattern Definitions < Update Patterns>**

1

In stand-by, press ● 3 ♣ ★☆ 1.₺.



Alternatively, select ¼ (Settings) → General settings → Scanning function →
Update Patterns from Top menu.

2

Press 1. [Yes].



• To not send terminal ID, press 22 or 22 and press 12.

3

Press 1. [Yes].

- Downloading starts.
- To cancel download, press or and press and press •...

4

Press • when updating is completed.

- When updating pattern definitions, information about the handset (model and serial number) is sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Correctly set the FOMA terminal date (year/month/day) beforehand.
- Download may be interrupted if signal is weak.

### **Displaying Scanned Results**

#### **Displaying detected errors**



- After scanning, detected errors are ordered by severity in the scanned results screen.
- Up to five detected errors are shown. etc. appears under fifth error if six or more are detected. If same error is detected more than once, it is only listed once.
- Errors are ordered by severity.

#### Scanned results display

Level 0	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
Error detected BehaviorLv0	Error detected BehaviorLy1	Error detected BehaviorLv2	Error detected BehaviorLv3	Error detected BehaviorLy4
Operation may not run properly.	Operation may not run properly. Cancel operation?	Operation may not run properly. Canceling operation.	Operation may not run properly. Delete data? Unyes	Deleting data.
Displaying, activating, and sending are available. Appears when there was an error previously, but there is no error presently. Press (Agree) to show, run or send.	Select <b>No</b> and press  to display, activate, or send. Select <b>Yes</b> and press to end.	Displaying, activating, and sending are not available. Press • [Agree] to end.	Displaying, activating, and sending are not available. <i>Delete data?</i> appears. Select <i>Yes</i> to delete. Select <i>No</i> and press of to end without deleting.	Displaying, activating, and sending are not available. <i>Deleting data</i> . appears. Press  (a) [Agree] to delete.

### Checking Version of Pattern Definitions < Display Version>



In stand-by, press ● 3 ♣ ★ 😭 3 ♣ .



• Alternatively, select  $\chi_i$  (Settings)  $\rightarrow$  **General settings**  $\rightarrow$  **Scanning function**  $\rightarrow$ Display version from Top menu.

### **Main Specifications**

Product nan	ne	FOMA SH901iS
Size (H × W	/ × D)	112 (H) × 52 (W) × 25 (D) mm (when folded) (thickest part)
Weight		Approximately 148 g (with battery pack installed)
	Туре	262,144 colors
LCD	Size	2.4 inches
	Pixels	320 (H) × 240 (W) dots
Continuous	stand-by time*1 *3	At rest Approximately 420 hours*4 When mobile Approximately 350 hours*5
Consecutive	e call duration*2 *3	Voice call Approximately 130 minutes Video-phone call Approximately 80 minutes
Maximum o	utput	0.25 W
Battery pack	k type	Specified lithium ion battery
Voltage		3.7 V
Battery capa	acity	830 mAh
AC adapter	charging time	Approximately 120 minutes
Desktop hol	der charging time	Approximately 120 minutes
DC adapter	charging time	Approximately 120 minutes
	Туре	Main camera/CCD*6, Sub camera/CMOS*6
Image pickup device	Size	Main camera Total CCD Pixels: Approximately 3.37 million pixels <sup>*6</sup> Sub camera Total CMOS Pixels: Approximately 120,000 pixels <sup>*6</sup>
	Effective pixels	Main camera 3.16 million pixels Sub camera 110,000 pixels
Camera	Recorded pixels	Main camera 3.15 million pixels Sub camera 100,000 pixels
	Zoom (Digital)	Main camera Up to approximately 31 times Sub camera Up to approximately 2 times

- \*1 Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the time when the FOMA terminal is folded and in a status where signals are received. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, stand-by display, functions used, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. In addition, composing messages, downloading i-αppli, and activating the i-αppli stand-by will also shorten call (transmission)/stand-by duration.
- \*2 Consecutive call duration is an estimate of the time when talking in a location where the signal is normal.
- \*3 The above mentioned call duration and stand-by time are shortened with the use of data communications, multiaccess, and the camera.
- \*4 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and in a status where signals are received.
- \*5 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and in *At rest*, *When mobile* or *Outside the service area* status.
- \*6 A CCD (Charge-Coupled Device) and a CMOS (Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor) are image devices equivalent to the film of silver salt cameras.

### Main Specifications (Data Box)

The following are estimates of the number of shot still pictures, movie shooting times, and voice recording times that can be saved to the miniSD Memory Card.

miniSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase miniSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops. (EFP. 381)

Depending on conditions, such as the shooting environment and subject, the number of still pictures and the
recording times that can be saved will decrease.

#### Estimated number of images that can be shot (32 MB)

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
Icon: 76 × 76	_	1,800 shots	_
sQCIF: 128 × 96	1,800 shots	900 shots	900 shots
QCIF: 176 × 144	1,800 shots	900 shots	600 shots
Stand-by: 240 × 320	900 shots	750 shots	300 shots
CIF: 352 × 288	900 shots	600 shots	300 shots
VGA: 480 × 640	600 shots	450 shots	300 shots
1.2M: 960 × 1280	300 shots	150 shots	90 shots
UXGA: 1200 × 1600	150 shots	90 shots	55 shots
3M: 1536 × 2048	90 shots	55 shots	35 shots

#### Estimated number of images that can be shot (16 MB)

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
Icon: 76 × 76	_	860 shots	_
sQCIF: 128 × 96	860 shots	430 shots	430 shots
QCIF: 176 × 144	860 shots	430 shots	280 shots
Stand-by: 240 × 320	430 shots	360 shots	140 shots
CIF: 352 × 288	430 shots	280 shots	140 shots
VGA: 480 × 640	280 shots	210 shots	140 shots
1.2M: 960 × 1280	140 shots	70 shots	40 shots
UXGA: 1200 × 1600	70 shots	40 shots	25 shots
3M: 1536 × 2048	40 shots	25 shots	15 shots

### Estimated movie shooting times (32 MB)

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
	For mail	Image + voice	90 seconds	61 seconds	30 seconds	_
	(short)	Image only	124 seconds	75 seconds	36 seconds	_
sQCIF: 128 × 96	For mail	Image + voice	152 seconds	103 seconds	51 seconds	_
3Q011 . 120 × 90	(long)	Image only	210 seconds	127 seconds	61 seconds	_
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	156 minutes	106 minutes	52 minutes	_
	Onrestricted	Image only	214 minutes	130 minutes	62 minutes	_
	For mail	Image + voice	77 seconds	45 seconds	16 seconds	11 seconds
	(short)	Image only	102 seconds	52 seconds	18 seconds	11 seconds
QCIF: 176 × 144	For mail	Image + voice	131 seconds	77 seconds	28 seconds	19 seconds
QCII . 170 × 144	(long)	Image only	172 seconds	89 seconds	30 seconds	20 seconds
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	130 minutes	79 minutes	28 minutes	19 minutes
	Onicatiolea	Image only	176 minutes	91 minutes	31 minutes	20 minutes
	For mail	Image + voice	_	_	_	_
	(short)	Image only	_	_	_	_
hQVGA: 240 × 176	For mail	Image + voice	_	_	_	_
11Q V 0/1. 240 × 1/0	(long)	Image only	_	_	_	_
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	_	31 minutes	15 minutes	10 minutes
	Onicatiolea	Image only	_	34 minutes	16 minutes	10 minutes

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
	For mail	Image + voice	_	_	_	_
	(short)	Image only	_	_	_	_
QVGA: 320 × 240	For mail	Image + voice	_	_	_	_
QVOA. 320 × 240	(long)	Image only	_	_	_	_
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	_	_	_	10 minutes
	Onrestricted	Image only		-	ı	10 minutes

### Estimated movie shooting times (16 MB)

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE		
	For mail	Image + voice	90 seconds	61 seconds	30 seconds	_		
	(short)	Image only	124 seconds	75 seconds	36 seconds	_		
sQCIF: 128 × 96	For mail	Image + voice	152 seconds	103 seconds	51 seconds	_		
SQCIF: 128 × 96	(long)	Image only	210 seconds	127 seconds	61 seconds	_		
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	72 minutes	49 minutes	24 minutes	_		
	Officied	Image only	101 minutes	61 minutes	29 minutes	_		
	For mail	Image + voice	77 seconds	45 seconds	16 seconds	11 seconds		
	(short)	Image only	102 seconds	52 seconds	18 seconds	11 seconds		
QCIF: 176 × 144	For mail	Image + voice	131 seconds	77 seconds	28 seconds	19 seconds		
QCII . 170 x 144	(long)	Image only	172 seconds	89 seconds	30 seconds	20 seconds		
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	61 minutes	37 minutes	13 minutes	9 minutes		
	Offiestricted	Image only	83 minutes	43 minutes	14 minutes	9 minutes		
	For mail	Image + voice	_	_	_	_		
	(short)	Image only	_	_	_	_		
hQVGA: 240 × 176	For mail	Image + voice	_	_	_	_		
11QVGA. 240 × 170	(long)	Image only	_	_	_	_		
	For mail (short)   Image + voice   90 seconds   61 seconds   30 seconds   124 seconds   75 seconds   36 seconds   125 seconds   127 seconds   51 seconds   128 seconds   127 seconds   128 seconds   129 minutes   129 minutes	4.75 minutes						
	Officied	Image only	_	16 minutes	7 minutes	4.9 minutes		
	For mail	Image + voice	_	_	_	_		
	(short)	Image only	_	_	_	_		
QVGA: 320 × 240	For mail	Image + voice	_	_	_	_		
Q V O.A. 320 x 240	(long)	Image only	_	_	_	_		
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	_	_	_	4.75 minutes		
	Officeatificted	Image only	_	_	_	4.9 minutes		

### Voice recording times (Voice recorder)

• Up to approximately five hours when using 32 MB. (2 hours and 20 minutes when using 16 MB)

### **Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)**

This model phone FOMA SH901iS meets the MIC's\* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)\*\* averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP\*\*\*.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.975 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO)

http://www.who.int/peh-emf/

http://www.icnirp.de/

MIC

http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html

TELEC

http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index\_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo

http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Japanese only)

SHARP Corporation

http://www.sharp.co.jp/products/menu/joho/cellular/

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
- \*\* The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
- \*\*\* International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

## Easy Search/Index/ Quick Manual

<ul><li>Easy Search</li></ul>	۱	 	 	 	 	 	٠.	 	 ٠.		 			 	 	 	610	J
• Index		 	 	 	 	 		 	 		 			 	 	 	612	2
<ul><li>Quick Manua</li></ul>	al	 	 	 	 	 		 	 		 		 	 	 	 	620	J



# **Easy Search**

Use this feature to find operations for any function.

# Changing the display



# **Useful functions for making calls**



### When unable to take a call

Setting the on hold guidance ............. 68 (On hold)



# Changing melody and illumination



# **Securing the FOMA terminal**

Keeping phonebook contents secret. . . . . . 114 (Set secret)

Locking a handset remotely . . . . . . . . . . . . . 150 (Remote lock all)

Locking the side keys . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 155 (Key guard)

Rejecting calls without caller ID ........... 160 (Reject by reason of

non-disclosure)

Rejecting callers not saved in the phonebook. . 161 (Reject unknown)



# Using the camera



# **Using mail**



## Other features



For details on other operations, refer to "Using this Manual" on the front inside cover of this manual.

Frequently used functions are described in the Quick manual. (PP. 620)

# Index

Symbols	В	Display
<b>X</b> 31#/#31#56	Background pattern 135	Set day color 444 Set holiday 444
Numerics	Bar code reader 195 Add to Phonebook 197	Set vacations
186/18456	Register as bookmark. 197	Call Forwarding Service 488
1-touch conversion	Battery	Forward calls
1-touch single character	Battery pack 41	Forwarded party busy . 490
memory 547	Charging	Register number 490
Predictive headword	Check battery level 46	Status request 490
conversion 547	Times of use 43	Call Waiting 487
2-touch dialing	Bilingual47	Activate/Deactivate 487
2-touch input	Bookmark 219	Call/Receive display 131
Change input mode559	Create folder 221 Delete 221	Called LED color (Illumination)
Enter text	Delete folder	141
Key assignments571	Edit folder name 221	Called LED ON 141
Text Input methods559	Edit title 221	Caller ID Request Service
3D sound	Move	
4 stills	Move folder 221	Activate 492
5-touch input 544	View 220	Deactivate 492
Key assignments 569	Bookmark folder 220	Status request 492
, ,	BookReader 418	Camera 164
A	Copy 421	Adjust brightness180
	Delete 425	Auto save mode 193
AC adapter	File property 425	Auto timer
Accept calls	Font size 421 Insert bookmark 420	Bar code reader 195 Character reader 198
Disable	Link 423	Continuous mode 174
Save list	Mail To 422	Display focus lock 189
Setting	Mask 423	Display indicators 167
Add signature	Move to bookmark 421	Effect shot 186
Additional services 496	Phone To (AV Phone To)	File size limit 183
Delete	422	Fix camera shake 187
After-sales service 595	Ruby text 421	Focus lock 189
Alarm	Save to My picture 423	Full screen
Schedule alarm447	Search dictionary 422 Set % move 421	Image quality 182
Snooze	Switch folder 421	Image size166 Key list171
	Table of contents 421	Noise reduction 188
All lock	Text direction 421	Number of recordable
Remote lock all 150	To end 421	images 166
Answering calls	To top 419	Original mode 193
· ·	Web To 422	Picture light 181
Antenna	Bracket multishot 175	Picture light color 188
Any key answer	Brightness 135	Release settings 190
Arrival call act		Retain settings 194 Save camera settings . 194
ASF file	С	Save to 192
Assistant View	CA Cartificate 244	Screen size 190
Combinations430, 581	CA Certificate 241	Select size182
Auto answer setting480	Cache	Send message 194
Auto power OFF	Calculator 466	Set ON time187
Auto power ON	Calculation example 580	Shoot
	Calendar	Shoot by scene 187 Shoot movie 177
	Cancel set vacations 444	SHOUL HIUVIE 1//

Shoot still picture	Update         298           Check mail address         464           Check newmory         396           Check new message         237, 270           Check settings         428           Clear memory terms         557           Close operation         65           Component names and functions         24           Continuous shooting         174           Copy         554           Copy entry         113	Disable/Delete/Change alarm settings
Download	Copy entry       113         Copy text       554         Cut       554         Paste       555         Create/Edit/Delete folder       392         Cut       554	Key list.       416         Light Up.       415         Magnifier       415         Move spec page       415         Move w/in screen       415         Sort       417         Switch AV output       415         Zoom selected       415
Character reader	D	Zoom/Shrink 415 Download
Register as bookmark       .200         Search in dictionary       .200         Chara-den       .371         Action list       .87, 374         Change action       .88, 374         Change Chara-den       .87         Chara-den call       .373         Chara-den Player       .372         Chara-den settings       .100, 373         Delete       .377         Download       .229         File properties       .373         Light up       .372         Play       .372         Playback light       .373         Protect       .377         Screen size       .373         Send substitute image       .86         Shoot movies       .375         Shoot still picture       .374	Data communication       500         Data Link Software       584         Date settings       48         DC adapter       44         Deco-mail       258         Check message image       276         Open template       262         Save template       276         Delete       Bookmark       221         BookReader       425         Chara-den       377         Document viewer       417         Download dictionary       558         i-αppli       328         Money calculator       470         PDF viewer       405         Phonebook data       114         Record message       76         Redial       56	Download   Chara-den   229   Client certificate   243   Deco-mail template   226   Dictionary file   229   Download icons collectively   228   i-αppli   312   i-melody   226   i-motion   333   Download dictionary   Check   558   Delete   558   Set/Clear   557   DPOF (Print setting)   425   Drive mode   70   Dual Network Service   492   Status request   493   E   Earphone/Microphone
Sort	Redial       56         Register word       556         Schedule       453         Screen Memo       224         Shortcut menu       461         SMS       308         Text Input       549         ToDo list       441         Delete all data       481         Delete all secret data       482         Desktop holder       45         Desktop style       360         Disable PIN lock       147	Answering calls

Correct image       .351         Face effects       .352         Face stamp       .355         Image editing screen       .348         Image sffect       .352         Image stamp       .356         Resize       .350         Rotate       .349         Show in one screen       .348         Trimming       .350	FOMA terminal security code	Image output       474         Switch AV output       475         Image viewer       342         i-mode host selection       233         i-mode mail       452         i-mode password       145         i-motion       332         Download       333
Edit movie       367         Capture still       369         Edit telop       369         Edit voice       370         Image cutter       368         Insert effect       371         Movie editing screen       367         Resize       371         Show ticker       367	Called LED       107         Edit group name       106         Mail ring tone       106         Mail/Message LED       107         Picture call set       107         Select ring tone       106         Guidance key       27         Guidance keys       137	File properties
Edit phonebook entries113 Emoticon Emoticon list574	Handling precautions 18	Web To
Enter	Hands-free. 61     Video-phone 81     Voice call. 53 Hold     Hold active call 53, 82     On hold 68, 84 Hold active call     Video-phone 82     Voice call. 53	Import
Error messages list	Hold tone	International prefix 59 Internet web page 217
FeliCa       .338         File restrictions       .394, 395         Flash movie       .345         Play       .345         Saved data       .234         Sound fx setting       .232         View       .212         Focus lock       .189	i-αppli Access phonebook/history	Ir exchange
FOMA card FOMA card (UIM) settings		JAN code
FOMA card phonebook Copy to FOMA terminal handset phonebook .105 Save	IC-card	Kana/Alphanumeric conversion
	Send 263	Last URL 210

Lock function149	Melody player 378	N
All lock	Adjust volume 379	
IC-card lock	Continuous play 380	Network security code 145
Key guard	Melody settings 381	Network service
Keypad dial lock 154	Play	Additional services 496
PIM lock	Playback effects 379	Arrival call action 494
Remote lock all150	Send mail 380	Call Forwarding Service
Self mode	Set equalizer 379	488
M	Start position 380	Call Waiting Service 487
	Memory number 99	Caller ID Request Service
Mail	Menu list 562	492
Attachment	Data box 567	Dual network Service . 492
Broadcast	KEITAIViewer 568	English guidance493
Check attachment 275	Settings Menu 562	Notify Caller ID 491
Check mail settings295	Tool menu 567	Nuisance Call Barring
Check new messages .292	Menu selections 33	Service 490
Delete	Function number 34	Remote control 495
Folder list	Submenu	Set arrival action 495
Font size289	Top menu	Voice Mail Service 484
Forward	Zoom menu 35	Network services from the
i-mode mail249	Message 235	FOMA terminal 484
i-motion mail 253, 366	Auto message display. 237	Next word guess 544
In use mail tone set295	Check file 239	Noise reduction 61
Inbox277	Delete 241	Normal position 27
Mail member	Message F 235	Notice window 136
Mail ring duration 125	Message R 235	
Message screen	Protect/Disable 241	Notify caller ID 491
Messages list layout280	Receive	Status request 492
Outbox	Reload image 239	Nuisance Call Barring Service
Protect/Disable	Sort	490
Quick reply	View	Delete all entries 491
Quick reply mail294	miniSD Memory Card 381	Register caller 491
Receive attachment 294	Backup/Restore 385	0
Receive image mail274	Copy to main 388	0
Receive option	Copy to miniSD 385	OCR198
Reply	Format	
Reset mail settings 295	New manager information 390	On hold
Save	View data 387	Video-phone 84 Voice call 68
Save to phonebook273		
Signature	Missed Calls 71	On hold tone 69
SMS	Mobile Wallet	One-touch operations 171
Sort	FeliCa	Operation guidance 28
Sort rules	IC-card lock 154, 340	Options and accessories . 583
Mail LED color	i-mode FeliCa 338	Original manner mode 127
Mail member	Money calculator 467	Outside the service area 52
Delete	Change details 468	
Edit member name293	Check 468	Overlap 175
Save address	Delete 470	Owner information 464
Mail To	Display period total 469	D
	Set budget 469 Switch total display 469	Р
Making calls	• •	Danis and in 57, 400, 545
Manner mode	Multiaccess 428, 581	Paging service 57, 489, 545
Auto disable	Combinations 428, 581	Paste 555
Disable	Multi-guide key 28	Pause Dial 57
Mic sensitivity	Multimedia	PDF viewer
Original manner mode .127	PIM Lock 153	Add bookmark 408
Setting	Music playback 585	Add mark
Melody auto replay 293	My menu 216	Delete 412

Delete bookmark 408	Postal address 100	Received calls 66
Delete folder	Postal code 99	Received messages history
Delete mark	Ring tone 100	
Display	Save 96	Save to phonebook 288
Display link	Save to FOMA card 103	Send message 287
Display mark	Search by 108	Reconnect 61
Edit folder name410	Secret code100	Record
Edit title	Set groups	Voice memo (during call)
File property	Switch view mode 112	
Folder security	Video-phone image 111	Voice memo (stand-by)
Full-screen	Phrase	
Go to first page408 Key list410	Edit 553	Record message
Light up	Insert	Answering duration 74
Magnification	Phrase list 575	Delete 76
Mark properties 408	Reset	Disable 72
Move	Save 553	Play
Move page	Pictograph	Quick message (voice call)
New folder 410	Input	
Page layout408	Pictograph list 573	Reply message 74
Page numbers 408	Picture call set 132	Setting72
Protect settings412	Picture light 181	Video-phone 85
Rotate 90° left 408	PIM lock 153	Video-phone reply image
Save	PIN code input setting 146	85
Scroll bar408	PIN code/PIN2 code 145	Record video 455
Search	Change 147	Check schedule 459
Search criteria	Disable lock 147	Detailed settings 459
Sort	FOMA card (UIM) settings	One-touch 457
Switch AV output 409		Program 458
Zoom in/Zoom out 407	PIN code input setting. 146	Recording time 458
Personalize	Play melody 378	Reserve TV program 454
Background	Pop-up window 136	Switch audio 458 Switch Record mode 458
Call/Receive display131		
Guidance keys	Power on/off 47	Record voice 403
Notice window 136 Picture call set	Power saver mode 132	Redial55
Pop-up window136	Print setting (DPOF) 425	Delete 56
Send/Receive display131	0	Save to phonebook
Title and status color137	Q	(handset)105
Phone ring volume	OD and a second	Registering words
Mail ring volume	QR code 195	Delete
•	Quality alarm 124	Edit
Phone To (AV Phone To)230	Quick alarm 434	Register556
	Quick dictionary 544	Reject by reason of non-
Phonebook (handset)	Quick manual 620	disclosure 160
Birthday	Quick silent 62, 127	Reason 160
Chara-den settings 100		Reject calls
Copy entry	QUICKCAST 57, 489, 545	Disable 160
Copy from FOMA card .105	R	Save list
Copy to FOMA card 104		Setting 159
Delete	Receive	Reject payphone 160
Dialing speed	Chat mail	Reject unknown 161
Image transfer112	i-mode mail 267	Reject unsupported ID160
Mail ring tone	i-motion mail 275	Reject user unset 160
Mail/Message LED 100	Inbox 277	Remote control 495
Making calls	Received messages history	Activate 496
Memo	286	Deactivate 496
Phonebook entry screen	SMS 304	Status request 496
97	Receive option (mail) 269	3.6.60.04.00
Picture call	1 ( /	

Replace with Download dictionary	Setting	Open sound 120, 122 Rotation sound 120
Reset i-mode	Security scan	Shutter sound 190
Reset settings	(Scanning function) 603	Timer 120, 122
Ring output	Security settings 143	Shoot movie
_	Accept/reject calls	Shoot still picture 172
S	157, 158	Shot image list 175
	All lock 149	Shortcut menu
Safety Precautions 8	Change PIN/PIN2 code	Action focus 463
SAR608	Change security code . 145	Delete 461 Icon settings 462
Save task	IC-card lock 154	Move icon 462
Saved data	Keypad dial lock 154	Reset icon 463
Schedule	PIM lock 153	Save 461
Change alarm tone 448	Secret mode 156	Set background 463
Change alarm volume .448	Set PIN code146	Show by contact (Schedule)
Check	Show call/received 155 Show sent/received 156	450
Create i-mode mail450		Show call/received
Delete	Select prefix 58	
Edit	Select ring tone Mail ring tone 119	Save to schedule 451
Make calls450	Not support	Show sent/received 156
Quick alarm	Payphone ring tone 118	Shutter sound 190
Reserve TV program454 Save	Phone ring tone 118	Select sound 190
Save from 1 month icon	User unset 118	Signature Save signature 291
calendar 445	Video-phone ring tone. 118	
Save from mail 452	Select volume	Silent
Save from My picture453	Earpiece volume 68, 122	Slideshow
Save from Received calls	Ring volume 121	SMS
Save from text memo452	Self Mode	Copy to FOMA card 307
Search My picture 450	Send Chat mail	Copy to FOMA terminal
Secret data	i-motion 263	
Show by category450	Movie/i-motion 366	Create/Send 301
Show by contact	Sent messages history	Delete
View Money calculator .450		Edit/Send
Screen display time 134	SMS	Reply
Screen memo	Still picture 347	Report request 306
Delete	Send/Receive display 131	Save 302
Edit title	Sent messages history 286	SMS center 306
Protect	Send message 288	SMS expiry 307
Save	Service number 494	View
Sort224	Services available from the FOMA terminal 582	Software update597
View		Sound fx setting
Screen saver134	Set alarm	Flash
Screen settings347	Set arrival action Activate 495	Specific Absorption Rate . 608
Search dictionary 422	Confirm 495	SPEEDYLAB 348, 367
Character reader424	Deactivate	Standard Parts Packaged with
Search phonebook	Set mute seconds 161	Unit and Main Optional Parts 22
By group	Set secret	Stand-by display 128
By memory number110 By reading109	Secret data 114	Calendar display 130
Secret code250	Set sounds/Set volume 120	Clock display 130
Secret mode	Charge end sound 122	i-αppli stand-by 326
Cancel	Charge start sound 122	Movie/i-motion366
Disable	Close sound 122	Still picture
	Keypad sound 122	Download 225

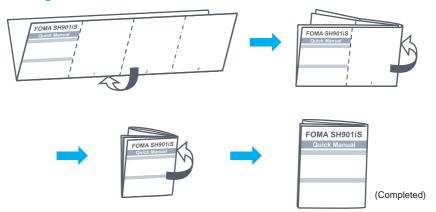
View	Undo 545	Video-phone 78, 82
Structure of this manual 1	Text input methods 544	Adjust brightness 89
Sub address settings 60	Text memo 472	Dialing speed 93, 111
Sub menu	Delete 474	Display setting 92
Supportbook	Edit 473	Earpiece volume 82 File playback 89
Surround	Save to Schedule 452	Hands-free 81
3D sound	Time 48	Hold active call 53, 82
Switch display (Select	Timer 433	Hold image 90
language)	Title and status color 137	Image quality90
Switch to video-phone 54	ToDo list	Indicate V-phone 94
	Change status 440	Lighting 92
Switch to voice call 82	Check 440	Making video-phone calls
Symbol/Special character Input	Delete 441	0n Hold
List	Edit 441	On hold image90
2.00	Save 438 Secret data 439	Picture memo 94
T	Set alarm 439	Receiving video-phone
	Show by category 440	calls
Talk time/charge	Show by status 440	Record message (video-
Display	Top menu	phone)85
Limit settings	Action focus 139	Redial voicecall 93
Reset notification 471	Background139	Self-portrait
Text Input	Icon settings 138	Send substitute image 88
1-touch conversion	Move Icon	Set screen size 92
	Reset Icon140	Subscreen display92
1-touch single character	Touch-tone signals 57	Substitute image 90
memory 547	Trace info 328	Switching camera 89
2-touch	Troubleshooting 586	Video-phone image
5-touch 544		\(\alpha\)
Add cpace 545	U)	video-phone repiv image
Add space	U	Video-phone reply image85
Add space545 Alphabet550 Alphanumeric characters	Undo 545	
Alphabet		Zoom
Alphabet	Undo 545	Zoom
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553	Undo	Zoom       .85         Zoom       .89         View sites       .208         Add to phonebook       .215         Bookmark       .219         Certification       .242         Character code       .218         FirstPass center       .242         Font size       .211         i-melody       .226         i-motion       .332         PDF file       .227
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545	Undo	Zoom       .85         Zoom       .89         View sites       .208         Add to phonebook       .215         Bookmark       .219         Certification       .242         Character code       .218         FirstPass center       .242         Font size       .211         i-melody       .226         i-motion       .332         PDF file       .227         Reload       .214
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545         Insert phrase       .551	Undo	Zoom       .85         Zoom       .89         View sites       .208         Add to phonebook       .215         Bookmark       .219         Certification       .242         Character code       .218         FirstPass center       .242         Font size       .211         i-melody       .226         i-motion       .332         PDF file       .227         Reload       .214         Save image       .225
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545         Insert phrase       .551         Katakana (single-byte)       .549	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545         Insert phrase       .551         Katakana (single-byte)	Undo	Zoom       .85         Zoom       .89         View sites       .208         Add to phonebook       .215         Bookmark       .219         Certification       .242         Character code       .218         FirstPass center       .242         Font size       .211         i-melody       .226         i-motion       .332         PDF file       .227         Reload       .214         Save image       .225         Screen memo       .222         Set connection timeout
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545         Insert phrase       .551         Katakana (single-byte)       .549	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545         Insert phrase       .551         Katakana (single-byte)       .549         Kuten code       .555         Lower case       .545         Next word guess       .544, 558         Numbers       .550	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout       232         Set image display       234         URL       215         URL history       218
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout       232         Set image display       234         URL       215
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545         Insert phrase       .551         Katakana (single-byte)       .549         Kuten code       .555         Lower case       .545         Next word guess       .544, 558         Numbers       .550         On/Kun conversion       .546         Pictograph       .552	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout       232         Set image display       234         URL       215         URL history       218         View Flash movies       212         View URL       215
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545         Insert phrase       .551         Katakana (single-byte)       .549         Kuten code       .555         Lower case       .545         Next word guess       .544, 558         Numbers       .550         On/Kun conversion       .546         Pictograph       .552         Predictive headword	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout       232         Set image display       234         URL       215         URL history       218         View Flash movies       212         View URL       215         Viewer position       28
Alphabet       .550         Alphanumeric characters       .550         Change character       .549         Clear memory terms       .557         Copy       .554         Cut       .554         Dakuten/Handakuten mark       .545         Delete       .549         Edit       .548         Emoticon       .553         Font size       .545         Insert phrase       .551         Katakana (single-byte)       .549         Kuten code       .555         Lower case       .545         Next word guess       .544         Next word guess       .545         Numbers       .550         On/Kun conversion       .546         Pictograph       .552         Predictive headword       conversion       .547	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout       232         Set image display       234         URL       215         URL history       218         View Flash movies       212         View URL       215
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout       232         Set image display       234         URL       215         URL history       218         View Flash movies       212         View URL       215         Viewer position       28         Viewing the display       30         Voice Mail Service       484
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout       232         Set image display       234         URL       215         URL history       218         View Flash movies       212         View URL       215         Viewer position       28         Viewing the display       30         Voice Mail Service       484         Activate/Deactivate       485
Alphabet	Undo	Zoom       85         Zoom       89         View sites       208         Add to phonebook       215         Bookmark       219         Certification       242         Character code       218         FirstPass center       242         Font size       211         i-melody       226         i-motion       332         PDF file       227         Reload       214         Save image       225         Screen memo       222         Set connection timeout       232         Set image display       234         URL       215         URL history       218         View Flash movies       212         View URL       215         Viewer position       28         Viewing the display       30         Voice Mail Service       484

Play messages	Voice memo (during call)	W
Voice mail alarm486 Voice mail settings485	Delete	Web To
Voice memo (during call)	Voice memo (stand-by) 465 Voice Recorder 403	Z
	Settings 404	Zoom Camera 180

# **Quick Manual**

Remove the Quick Manual by cutting along the perforated marks starting on the next page.

Folding the Quick Manual



# Warning

• Be careful of injuries when cutting out Quick Manual.

This manual is produced of recyclable material. Please recycle when no longer needed.

# Бо сомо FOMA SH901iS

### Quick Manual

### Registration/Contacts

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones: 151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only) You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

### When calling from ordinary (landline) phones: 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

 You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.

Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

## If you have problems with your FOMA

General contact for the DoCoMo group companies When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones:

### 113 (no area code) (toll free) X You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:

### 0120-800-000 (toll free) You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile

phones and PHS phones.

 Check the phone number carefully before dialing. ● Refer to "全国サービスステーション一覧" (Service

Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal for details.

### Add to Phonebook

or 22 [UIM].

2 Enter name ▶ ● ▶ ★ or ■ \* ▶ ● phone number ▶ ( ) ▶ phone number type ▶ ( ) ▶ ‰ or \* ▶ ( ) ▶ mail address ▶ ● ▶ mail address type ▶ ●. \*For FOMA cards

Press (■ [Complete] ▶ memory number (not available for FOMA card).

### Items to add

Icon	Item	Details
2		Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte). For FOMA card, up to 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
R		Automatically entered. (Up to 32 single-byte katakana. For FOMA card, up to 12 double-byte katakana.)
32	Group	20 types. For FOMA card, 11 types.
8	Phone number	Three entries. For FOMA card, one entry.

\_1\_

lcon	Item	Details
8 1 1 6 5	Phone	Seven types. For FOMA
食陶	number type	card, one type.
lb.	Mail	Three entries. For FOMA
₩	address	card, one entry.
<b>□</b> ♠Ы	Mail address	Four types. For FOMA card,
C 6556	type	one type.
_	Postal code*	Seven single-byte
-		characters
F=	Postal	Up to 100 single-byte (50
	address*	double-byte) characters
#	Birthday*	Only single-byte numbers
Ę.	Memo*	Up to 200 single-byte (100
-3		double-byte) characters
©==	Secret*	Not displayed
<b>\$</b>	Secret code*	Four-digit number
7	Select ring	_
1)	tone*	_
Š	Mail ring tone*	_
8	Called LED*	_
<b>□</b>	Mail/Message	
-8	LED*	_
2	Picture call set*	One
	Chara-den	

settinas\* Cannot be saved to FOMA card.

# **Editing Entries**

1 In stand-by, press (a) ▶ name ▶ (a) 3 ab ▶ item ▶ (a) ▶ edit.

### Making Calls from Phonebook Entries

In stand-by, press 🖹 To change search method: Press (a) 7.5 search method (b).

Select name ▶ (●)

3 Press 🕬 or 👀

### Text Input

# Changing input mode

In text input screen, press 🗐 Press 

to switch from 

(double-byte katakana) → 

(double-byte katakana) (single-byte katakana) → △ (double-byte alphanumerics) → A (single-byte alphanumerics) → 1 (single-byte numbers) → 🔯 (kuten code) → 🇯 (kanii/hiragana).

### Entering lower case letters

In double-byte/single-byte alphanumeric mode, press . Lower case input mode is enabled. To convert to lower case after entering text: Press @

### 1-touch conversion

After entering text, press (\*),

### Entering pictographs/symbols

In text input screen, press (a) [Pict/Sym]. Switch between modes.

\_3\_

### **Deleting text**

Move cursor to text, and press @as.

# To erase all text: Press @ or 1+ seconds.

Using phrases In text input screen, press (a) for 1+ seconds.

### Select phrase ▶ (●)

**Entering emoticons** 

### In text input screen, press (a) 4 € b) emoticon (b) Example

Ex.) 今日のテニス 3 時 🙊

1 In text input screen, press ② twice ▶ ○ ▶ 今日 ▶ ○



 Enter hiragana with the dial key. Every time the key is pressed, the character changes. Select conversion

candidates even from partial words. Press for lower case.

 To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key. press ( ) to move the cursor or, after entering a character, press that same key for 1+ seconds.

Press ( ) ▶ Ø ▶ ( ). Press 4 2 5 2 3 2 1 0

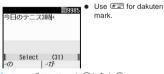


• Use (\*) for 1-touch 879988 conversion



 Press <sup>®</sup> five times for single-byte alphanumeric mode.

5 Press 🗓 twice ▶ ③動 twice ▶ 🐲 ▶ 🕡 ▶ 時 ▶ ④.



6 Press (a) [Pict/Sym] ▶ (1) ▶ (1) ♦ (1).

今日のテニス3時 Pictograph 1 \*∞+8+0至1 Y

### Camera - Still Pictures

-2-

In stand-by, press .

Press ( ) or ( ) (shutter) (fully). To lock focus: Press ( (shutter) (halfway) ) (shutter) (fully).

3 Press ( ) [Save].

### Camera - Movies

In stand-by, press (•) (shutter) for 1+ seconds. Press ● [Rec] or • (shutter) (fully) • (record).

Press ( ) [Stop] or ( ) (shutter) (fully).

Press (1.4) [Save].

## Viewing Still Pictures

1 In stand-by, press ( ) Z Is b folder b ( ) b still picture • (•).

-6-

# Viewing Movies

1 In stand-by, press (●) Z ♣ ≥ folder ▶ (●) ▶ movie • (•).

### Recording with Voice Recorder

1 In stand-by, press ● B ♣ 1 ♣ ● [Rec] or (shutter) (record) (Stop) or (shutter) 1.5 [Save].

### Video-phone

### Making video-phone calls

1 In stand-by, enter phone number • (i).

## Receiving video-phone calls

Incoming video-phone ▶ press (3).

# Sending Chara-den as a substitute image during call

1 Press (a) (for 1+ seconds) Chara-den (a).

### KEITAIViewer

# Displaying e-Dictionary and Book

In stand-by, press ( ) 9 ( ) book/dictionary ( ).

To scroll lines/pages: Press ... To view first/last page: Press @ 43 or @ 53.

To use table of contents: Press ( ) item ( ).

### Displaying PDF files

- 1 In stand-by, press 🗗 🗗 🕨 folder 🕨 ▶ PDF file ▶ .
  - To scroll up/down: Press ...
    To change display size: Press ...
  - To cut file: Press (a) [Cut off] Yes (a).

### Creating/Sending i-mode Mail

Sub

Compose msg

(No attachment)

● Sand OOK \_ OSMAN

Re 10000

- 1 In stand-by, press ⊚ for 1+ seconds ▶ T₀ ▶
- ②.2 Press ② → address →③.
  - To select from phonebook: Press ♠ recipient ♠ .
  - To select from Sent/ Received messages history:
  - Press 3 or 4 >
- To select from mail members: Press 5₺ member > ⑥.

  Select Subject > ⑥ > subject > ⑥ > Message >
- message ●.
- 4 Press (i [Send].

### Sending Deco-mail

- In message input screen, press 🔊
- 2 Select decoration ▶ ⓐ [Complete] ▶ enter text.
- 4 Press ●● I [Send].

# Sending Images/Melodies

- 2 Select folder ▶ ▶ file ▶ ●.
- 3 Press ( [Mail].

  For movies/i-motion: Press ( [Mail] ▶ file size ▶ ( ).

# Creating/Sending SMS (Short Messages)

- 1 In stand-by, press @ 5 %.
- 2 Select To ▶ ▶ ② ▶ address ▶ ▶ Message ▶ ▶ message ▶ ●.
- 3 Press (a) [Send].

### **Check New Messages**

1 In stand-by, press @乙基.
For SMS: Press 過度影.

### Auto Receive

- i-mode mail is automatically received.
- 2 Select *Mail* • folder • mail •.



### Menu List

### Selecting from Top menu

- 1 In stand-by, press •.
- Select icon from Top menu ▶ .
- Select function ▶ .

# Switching Top menu/Shortcut menu/Zoom menu

# 1 In stand-by, press ● ▶ ... Recalling function number

1 In stand-by, press ● function number.

### Sound

Menu	Function	Function number
Select	Phone ring vol	1.5 1.5 1.5
Volume	Mail ring vol	1.5 1.5 2 #
	Chat mail ring vol	1.5 (1.5 3)
	Setting sound vol	1.5 1.5 4 5
Select	Select ring tone	1.5 2 2 1.5
sound	Select mail tone	1.5 2 2 2 2
	Chat mail tone	1.2 2 2 3 2
	Setting sounds	1.5 2 2 4 2
Vibrator	Vibration mode	1.5 3 \$ 1.5
	Mail vibration	1.5 3 2 2
Manner	Normal	(1.5) (4 ± (1.5)
mode	Silent	1.5 4 2 2 2
	Original	(1.5 (4 ± 3 ±
Ring output		(1./3) [5 m]
Mail ring duration		(1./3 6 #)
Set mute seconds		1.5 7 5
Hold/On	On hold tone	(1.15) B 10 (1.15)
hold tone	Hold tone	(1.15 8 fm 2 #
Stereo effe	cts	1.5 9.

-10-

# -8Display

Wenu	FullClion	Function number
Stand-by	Stand-by display	2 # (1.5) (1.5)
display	Clock display	2 # (1.% 2 #
	Calendar display	2 1 1 1 3 2
Font style		2 # 2 #
Personalize	Picture call set	2 2 3 2 1.6
	Pop-up window	2 2 3 4 2 2
	Notice window	2 2 3 3 3
	Background	2 # 3 # 4 #
	Call/Rcv display	2 m 3 m 5 m
	Send/Rcv display	2 # 3 # 6 #
	Title & Status color	2 % 3 % 7 m
	Guidance keys	2 # 3 # 8 m
Called	Called LED color	2 2 4 2 1.7
LED	Mail LED color	2 / 4 Z 2 / E
	Called LED ON	2 # 4 # 3 #
	Mail/Msg LED set	2 # 4 # 4 #
Power save	r set	2 # 5 #

# -9General settings

Menu	Function	Function number
Check memory		3 3 1.5
Battery leve		3 * 2 *
Check	Sound	3 3 3 1.4
settings	Display	3 1 3 1 2 1
	General settings	3 3 3 3 3
	Phone settings	3 1 3 1 4 2
	Security	3 1 3 1 5 1
	i-mode	3 3 3 6 5
	Mail/Message	3 1 3 1 7 1
	i-αppli	3 3 3 8 8
User diction	ary	3 m (4 m
Dwnld diction	nary	3 m 5 m
Edit phrase		3 3 6 3
Auto	Auto power ON	3 \$ 7 \$ 1.5
power ON/ OFF	Auto power OFF	3 to 7 mm 2 to
Date setting	S	3 m 8 m
Clear memory terms		3 3 9 3
Select language		3 th 0 2°
Scanning	Update patterns	3 4 7 1.4
function	Scanning setting	34 *2 24
	Display version	3 \$\tau \tau \tau \tau \tau \tau \tau \tau
Software update		3 4 # 7 7

### **Services**

Menu	Function	Function number
Voice mail	Check messages	4 m 1.5 1.5
	Play messages	4 2 1.5 2 de
	Activate	4 2 1.2 3 m
	Set ringing time	4 2 1.2 4 2
	Deactivate	4 m 1.5 5 m
	Status request	4 2 1.5 6 4
	Voice mail settings	4 m 1.5 7 m
	Voice mail alarm	4 2 1.2 8 °
	Delete display	4 2 (1.5 9 a)
	Start notification	4 2 1.5 0 0 T
	Stop notification	4 = 1.5 * Z
	Confirm status	4 ± 1.5 # =
Call	Activate	4 E 2 E 1.5
waiting	Deactivate	4 2 2 2 2 2
	Status request	4 2 2 2 3 s
Call	Activate	4 2 3 m 1.5
forwarding	Deactivate	4 2 3 ar 2 2
	Register number	4 2 3 m 3 m
	Forwarded party busy	4 2 3 0 4 2
	Status request	4 2 3 m 5 2

### -1

Menu	Function	Function number
Bar nuisance	Register caller	4 2 4 2 1.2
calls	Delete all entries	4 2 4 2 2 2 E
	Delete last entry	4 2 4 2 3 s
Notify	Status request	4 2 5 x 1.2
caller ID	Notify caller ID	4 m 5 m 2 m
Caller ID	Activate	4 2 6 m 1.2
request	Deactivate	4 2 6 # 2 #
	Status request	4 2 6 2 3 s
Talk time/co	st	4 2 7 3
Set arrival	Activate	4 2 8 ° 1.7
act	Deactivate	4 2 8 % 2 %
	Status request	(4 2 8 ° 3 °
Arrival call	Voice mail	4 2 9 m 1.2
act	Call forwarding	4 2 9 0 2 #
	Call rejection	4 2 9 m 3 m
	Answer	4 2 9 0 4 2

-13-

-14-

-15-

-12-

<Cut here>

Menu	Function	Function number
Remote	Activate	4 2 0 0 1.2
control	Deactivate	4 2 0 2 2 2
	Status request	(4 ± 0 0 0 3 ±
Dual	Switching	4 £ *** 1.5
network	Status request	4 2 X X 2 2 2
English	Guidance setting	4 🗸 # 📆 1 🦓
guidance	Status request	4 m # 7 2 m
Service	ドコモ故障問合せ	4 £ (102 1.5)
number	(Repair inquiries)	(4 at / 1   0 % (1.25)
	ドコモ総合案内・	
	受付 (General	42 10 2 22
	inquiries)	
Additional	USSD	4 2
service		Additional service
		1.3
	Reply message	4 2
		Additional service
	l	2 2

_	н	h	_

Menu	Function	Function number
Receive	Receive	8 % 3 % 1.5
Ir data	Receive all	8 % 3 % 2 %
Schedu	ile	8 ° (4 Z
ToDo li	st	8 ° 5 °
Alarm		8 ° 6 an
Timer		8 ° 7 z
Text me	emo	8 ° 8 °
Calc		8 ° 9 °
Money	calc	8 ° 0 0 °
miniSD	View miniSD data	8 : X : 1.5
man-	Backup/restore	8 . ** 2 .
ager	Import	8 * * * * 3 *
	New manager info	8 % ** 4 z
	Format	8 % ** 5 £
	de reader	8 ° # 7.
Charac	ter reader	B 🖟 ▶ 🔳 Character
		reader

### KEITAIViewer

	Function number
BookReader	9.0 (1.75)
DocumentViewer	9 🛍 2 🛣
PDF Viewer	9 🖺 3 🍰

-20-

### Phone settings

	Filone settings	
Menu	Function	Function number
Noise reduc	tion	5 % (1.%
Alarm	Reconnect	5 # 2 # 1.5
during call	Quality alarm	5 # 2 # 2 #
Video-	Redial voicecall	5 % 3 % 1 %
phone set	Set sending image	5 % 3 % 2 %
	Screen size	5 % 3 % 3 %
	Display setting	5 % 3 m 4 %
	Subscreen disp	5 # 3 # 5 #
	Image quality	5 # 3 m 6 m
	Indicate V-phone	5 ± 3 ÷ 7 ±
Record	Record message	5 ± 4 ± 1.5
message	Answering duration	5 m 4 m 2 m
	Reply message	5 % (4 % 3 %)
	V-phone reply image	5 % 4 % 4 %
Close opera	tion	5 m 5 m
Any key ans	swer	5 # 6 #
Auto answe	r set	5 m 7 m
Self mode		5 # 8 m
Int'l prefix		5 # 9 m
Sub address	3	5 £ 0 %
Int'l calling	Auto assist set	5 # * 2 1.5
	IDD prefix setting	5 # * # 2 #
Earphone	•	5 £ # ;;

#### 17

### 

Officw redial	( )
Show received calls	0
Display Record message/ Voice memo	0
Display Shortcut menu	0
Display i-mode menu	ı
Display i-αppli screen	(for 1+ seconds)
Display Mail menu	Ô
Display phonebook	<b>D</b>
Activate camera (still picture mode)	
Activate camera (movie mode)	<ul><li>(shutter) for 1+ seconds</li></ul>
Display My picture	(for 1+ seconds)
Supportbook (preset)	view 🔟
Activate Assistant View	( (shutter) for 1+ seconds in viewer

# ⊙ (shutter) for 1+ seconds

Register shortcut menu

Picture light ON

### Security

Menu	Function	Function number
Secret mode		6 4 1.4
UIM	PIN code input set	6 4 2 4 1.5
settings	Change PIN code	6 m 2 m 2 m
	Change PIN2 code	6 m 2 m 3 m
Accept/	Accept calls	6 m 3 m 1.5
Reject	Reject calls	6 m 3 m 2 m
calls	Reject unknown	6 m 3 m 3 m
	Reject user unset	6 m 3 m 4 m
	Reject payphone	6 m 3 m 5 m
	Reject not support	6 m 3 m 6 m
Show call/	Show rcvd calls	6 m 4 m 1./2
received	Show redial	6 m 4 m 2 m
Show sent/		6 m 5 m 1./2
received	Show rcvd messages	6 m 5 m 2 m
Lock	All lock	6 m 6 m 1./2
settings	Keypad dial lock	6 m 6 m 2 m
	PIM lock	6 m 6 m 3 m
	IC-card lock	6 m 6 m 4 m
	Remote lock all	6 m 6 m 5 m
Change sec		6 in 7 m
Delete all	Delete user data	6 m 8 m 1./3
data	Del secret data	6 # 8 ° 2 #c

## -18-

# Network Services

# \* In the confirmation screen, select Yes and press •. Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

STEP 1 Start Voice Mail Service. STEP 2 Voice call is received.

STEP 3 Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.

STEP 4 Caller records a message.

STEP 5 Play message

STEP 5 Play message.	
Activate	In stand-by, press  • 4 = 1.5 3 = 1.5 .
Set ringing time before activating	In stand-by, press  ● 4 毫 1 . 為 3 念 2 念 ▶ enter ringing time ▶ ●.
Deactivate	In stand-by, press
Play messages	In stand-by, press
Set Voice Mail Service with voice guidance	In stand-by, press
Check new message	In stand-by, press
Check and change Voice Mail Service settings	In stand-by, press  (a) (4 ﷺ (5 ₪ 4 ﷺ ) setting.

-22-

### Other settings

Function menu	Function number
Own number	O 2*
Initial settings	(* Z
Reset settings	# ===

### Data box

Function menu	Function number
My picture	7.5 1.5
i-motion	7 m 2 m
Melody	7 sin 3 sin
Chara-den	7 5 4 2 as
My document	7 m 5 m
Print setting (DPOF)	7 .5 6 iii
Security setting	(for 1+ seconds)

### Tool menu

Menu	Function	Function number
Voice recorder		8 ° 1.5
	One-touch	8 m 2 m 1.5
video	Program	8 ° 2 ° 2 °
	Check schedule	8 % 2 % 3 m
	Detailed settings	8 ° 2 % 4 %
	Security setting	<u>8 № 2 € * ⊈</u> (for 1+ seconds)

-19-

Voice mail alarm	In stand-by, press
	● 4 型 1 型 B 型 1 型.
Delete display	In stand-by, press
	● 4 ± 1 1 ₺ 9 ± .
Start notification	In stand-by, press
	●4 <b>3</b> 1 <b>3</b> 0%.
Stop notification	In stand-by, press
	● <b>4</b> 基 <b>1</b> 基 <b>米型</b>
Confirm status	In stand-by, press
	<ul><li>●43 13 #₹.</li></ul>

### **Call Waiting Service**

Call Waiting Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

	In stand-by, press
	In stand-by, press ● 4 ♣ 2 ♣ 2 ♣ .
Status request	In stand-by, press ● 4 毫 2 毫 3 意 .
and answer a voice call	Beeps during call ▶  ▶ call ▶  ▶
and answer a voice call	
Place current call on hold and place a separate call	During call, dial number ▶ ﷺ  ▶ call ▶ ﷺ ▶ call.

position) during operations

Close handset and press

(for 1+ seconds) when ♣ appears

### **Call Forwarding Service**

Call Forwarding Service is a free option that requires subscription.

STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.

STEP 2 Activate Call Forwarding Service.

STEP 3 Call is received.

STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

Activate	In stand-by, press  • 4 2 3 1 1 3 1 1 4
Deactivate	In stand-by, press
Register number	In stand-by, press  • 4 ﷺ 3 ﷺ edit forwarding number
Use Voice Mail Service	In stand-by, press
Status request	In stand-by, press
Forwarding calls received while receiving call or during call	While receiving call or during call, press (a) (3 c).

### **Nuisance Call Barring Service**

Nuisance Call Barring Service is a free option that requires subscription.

Save last caller for	In stand-by,
Nuisance Call	● 4 ± 4 ± 1.5.
Barring Service	
Delete all saved	In stand-by, press
numbers	( ) (4 \( \tilde{z} \) (4 \( \tilde{z} \) (2 \( \tilde{z} \) (2 \( \tilde{z} \) (3 \( \tilde{z} \) (4 \( \tilde{z} \) (3 \( \ti

### **Caller ID Request Service**

Subscription is not required (no monthly fees).

	In stand-by, press
Deactivate	In stand-by, press

-25-

: Signal strength indicator

8 € : i-mode indicator

**∑** 

: Mail

: During a call

: During i-mode

-29-

### **Dual Network Service**

Dual Network Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

terminal	In stand-by, press  ● ④ ♣ ★ ★ ★ ● enter  network security code (four digits) ▶ ●.
Status request	In stand-by, press  ● 4 ﷺ 2 ﷺ.

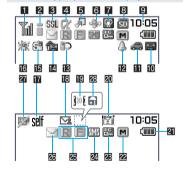
### Using Services from the FOMA Terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (recipient is charged for	(No area code)
call)	106
Standard directory assistance calls	(No area code)
or calls to DoCoMo directory	104
assistance for mobile phones (fees	
apply) (Only registered users appear	
in directory assistance.)	
Send telegram (fees apply) 8 AM to	(No area code) 115
10 PM	
Time (fees apply)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (fees apply)	Area code of
	area to inquire
	+ 177
Police	(No area code) 110
Fire/ambulance	(No area code) 119
Maritime emergency	(No area code) 118
Busy line inquiry	(No area code) 114
Disaster message (fees apply)	(No area code)
	171

-24-

### **Icon List**

Upper part of the display



3	SSL	: SSL indicator
4	Of the di	r [ℤ: i-αppli indicator
5	<b>,</b> =	: Shortcut menu registration indicator
6	<b>÷</b> 🗘 (g	reen): External device indicator
7	<b>(%)</b>	: Manner mode active
8	SO	: miniSD Memory Card indicator
9	Time	
10	<u></u>	: Record message set
	🖾 to 🛭	: Number of messages (one to four)
11	<b>3</b>	: Drive mode enabled
12	4	: Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm/alarm
		enabled
13	<b>₽</b> ⊃	: Earphone/microphone connected
14		: Voice mail message received
15	<b>S</b>	: Ring tone set to Silent
16	瀊	: Vibrator enabled
17	self	: Self mode enabled
18	Assista	ant View original function
	¥	: ToDo list
	$\Box$	: Phonebook
		: Text memo
	172	: Schedule

-26-)>> [ [ : Ir exchange/External device indicator 電電電像像◆ : Voice/Video-phone call : Battery level indicator (yellow): Memory is low (red) : Memory is very low Restriction enabled (red) (black) (blue) (yellow): SMS indicator 25 R : Message R E : Message F Mail indicator : Unread mail  $\sim$ : Inbox full : Message is held at center : Center is full : FOMA card error : Non-DoCoMo FOMA card is inserted ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ : Video-phone brightness

※ Refer to P. 30 to P. 32 of Manual for detailed explanations on displayed icons.

-30-

# -27-Do Co Mo FOMA SH901iS

### Quick Manual

### Registration/Contacts

General contact for the DoCoMo Information Center When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones: 151 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone. When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:

# 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

- You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

### If you have problems with your FOMA

General contact for the DoCoMo group companies

When calling from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHS phones: 113 (no area code) (toll free)

You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

When calling from ordinary (landline) phones:

# 0120-800-000 (toll free)

- You can also call this number from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.
- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
- Refer to "全国サービスステーション一覧" (Service

Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal for details. -31-

-28-

<Cut here>

# **Please Follow Proper Etiquette**

When using your FOMA terminal, please be considerate of those around you.

# **Turn off Your FOMA Terminal in the Following Places**

## When in an area where use is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Be sure to turn off your FOMA terminal in the following places.

★On an airplane ★In a hospital

\*\*There are people outside hospital wards who also use electric medical equipment. Please make sure that your FOMA terminal is turned off in the lobby and waiting room.

### While driving

Talking on FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous and may result in an accident. \*\*Please pull over to a safe place and use your FOMA terminal or set Drive mode.

When in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator

Your FOMA terminal may affect the operation of such equipment.

When in public places such as theaters, movie theaters, or museums Use of your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will annoy others.

# Be Careful of Where You Use Your FOMA Terminal and the Volume of Your Voice and the Ring Tone

When using your FOMA terminal in a restaurant or a hotel lobby, lower your voice. In crowded places, be careful not to obstruct other pedestrians.

# Be Considerate of the Privacy of the Individuals Around You



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

# The Following Functions Will Help You to Keep Your Manners in Public

There are useful functions you can use to set your FOMA terminal not to answer incoming calls, and to silence all sounds.

# Manner mode (@P. 126)/Original manner mode (@P. 127)

Silences the keypad sound and all the sounds from the FOMA terminal, and Record message is set (Manner mode). When in Manner mode, automatically set functions (Record message, Vibration mode, Mic sensitivity, Ring tone, Mail ring tone, keypad sound, Low power alarm) can be set to ON (enable) or OFF (disable) (Original manner mode).

# Drive mode (PP. 70)

The caller hears a guidance message that informs callers that the receiver is driving and unable to answer. The call then disconnects. Your FOMA terminal does not sound even when it receives calls, so you can drive safely.

# Vibration mode (PP. 123)

Notifies incoming calls by vibration.

# Record message (PP. 72)

When you are unable to take a call, the Record message function records the caller's message.

※You can also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service (译 P. 484) and Call Forwarding Service (译 P. 488).



Register for Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Barring Service. WORLD CALL. and WORLD WING at ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo's e-site).

From i-mode i Menu ▶ □ 料金&お申込 ▶ ■ ドコモeサイト | no packet charge

http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.ip/ From PC

DoCoMo registered Network Security Code is required to access from i-mode.

\* When accessed by i-mode, packet charges are free. Portions may be charged.

\* User ID and Password are required to access from PCs.

Contact below for lost or new issuance of Network Security Code and User ID/Password.

\* Depending on licensing agreement, some services may be unavailable.

\* Services may not be available due to system maintenance.

# For General Inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center)

For DoCoMo mobile phones/PHS

(no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)

\* Cannot be accessed from ordinary phones.

For ordinary phones

# 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

Can be accessed from DoCoMo mobile phones/PHS.

Confirm phone number before calling.

# For Repair Inquiries

For DoCoMo mobile phones/PHS



(no area code) (toll free)

※ Cannot be accessed from ordinary phones.

For ordinary phones

0120-800-000

\* Can be accessed from DoCoMo mobile phones/PHS.

Confirm phone number before calling.

● For details, refer to "全国サービスステーション一覧" (Service Station List) provided with the FOMA terminal.



### Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

### NTT DoCoMo Group Sales

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

**Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation** 





